

Quick answers to common problems

Joomla! 1.5 Top Extensions Cookbook

Over 80 great recipes for taking control of Joomla! extensions

Suhreed Sarkar

[PACKT] PUBLISHING open source community experience distilled

Joomla! 1.5 Top Extensions Cookbook

Over 80 great recipes for taking control of Joomla! extensions

Suhreed Sarkar

[PACKT] PUBLISHING
open source
community experience distilled

BIRMINGHAM - MUMBAI

Joomla! 1.5 Top Extensions Cookbook

Copyright © 2010 Packt Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embedded in critical articles or reviews.

Every effort has been made in the preparation of this book to ensure the accuracy of the information presented. However, the information contained in this book is sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the author nor Packt Publishing, and its dealers and distributors will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by this book.

Packt Publishing has endeavored to provide trademark information about all of the companies and products mentioned in this book by the appropriate use of capitals. However, Packt Publishing cannot guarantee the accuracy of this information.

First published: October 2010

Production Reference: 1131010

Published by Packt Publishing Ltd.
32 Lincoln Road
Olton
Birmingham, B27 6PA, UK.

ISBN 978-1-849511-80-3

www.packtpub.com

Cover Image by John M. Quick (john.m.quick@gmail.com)

Credits

Author
Suhreed Sarkar

Reviewer
Eric Tiggeler

Acquisition Editor
Usha Iyer

Development Editor
Swapna Verlekar

Technical Editors
Sakina Kaydawala
Rupal Joshi

Copy Editor
Leonard D'Silva

Indexer
Hemangini Bari

Editorial Team Leader
Mithun Sehgal

Project Team Leader
Priya Mukherji

Project Coordinator
Leena Purkait

Proofreader
Kelly Hutchinson

Production Coordinator
Adline Swetha Jesuthas

Cover Work
Adline Swetha Jesuthas

About the Author

Suhreed Sarkar is an IT consultant, trainer, and technical writer. He studied Marine Engineering, served on board the ship for two years, and then started his journey into the IT world with MCSE in Windows NT 4.0 track. Later he studied business administration and earned his MBA from the University of Dhaka. He has a bunch of BrainBench certifications on various topics, including PHP4, Project Management, RDBMS Concepts, E-commerce, Web Server Administration, Internet Security, Training Development, Training Delivery and Evaluation, and Technical Writing.

He taught courses on system administration, web development, e-commerce, and MIS. He has consulted for several national and international organizations, including the United Nations, and helped clients build and adopt their web portals, large scale databases, and management information systems. At present, he is working on building a framework for MIS in the education sector and promoting the use of ICTs in education.

Suhreed is a renowned technical author in Bengali—having dozens of books published on subjects covering web development, LAMP, networking, and system administration. He authored *Zen Cart: E-commerce Application Development*, *Joomla! E-commerce with VirtueMart*, and *Joomla! with Flash*—all published by Packt Publishing.

While not busy hacking some apps, blogging on his blog (`www.suhreedsarkar.com`), reading the philosophy of Bertrand Russell or Management Thoughts by Peter F Drucker—he likes to spend some special moments with his family. Suhreed lives in Dhaka, Bangladesh.

Firstly, I am grateful to the Joomla! community, and the developers and maintainers of the nice extensions discussed in this book; without this, the book could not have been written. I would also like to express my gratitude to the extension developers who have provided me with their commercially licensed extensions to test with and write about.

I would like to thank the Packt team for their excellent professional support, with special thanks to Usha Iyer, Swapna Verleker, Leena Purkait, Sakina Kaydawala, and Rupal Joshi who have helped me throughout the whole process. I express my heartiest gratitude to the reviewer, Eric Tiggeler, for providing insightful comments on the first drafts of this book. I thank my family and friends for being patient while I worked on this.

About the Reviewer

Eric Tiggeler is the author of *Joomla! 1.5 Beginner's Guide!* and a Dutch *Joomla! manual*, both of which got excellent reviews. He writes tutorials for computer magazines and for the Dutch Joomla! community website.

Eric is fascinated by the web as a powerful and creative means of communication—and by revolutionary software such as Joomla!, enabling anybody to create beautiful and user-friendly websites without having any technical knowledge.

On a daily basis, Eric works as a consultant and copywriter at a communication consultancy company affiliated with the Free University of Amsterdam. Over the last few years, he has written more than ten Dutch books on writing and communication. His passion is making complex things easy to understand.

Eric Tiggeler is married and has two daughters. He lives and works in Hilversum (The Netherlands). On the web, you'll find him at `www.schrijfgids.nl` (in Dutch) and `www.joomm.net` (in English).

This book is dedicated to:

Guruji Shahid El Bukhari Mahajataq, who has transformed my life and that of many others.

Table of Contents

Preface 1

Chapter 1: Producing and Displaying News and Content 7

- Introduction 7
- Adding a blog to your Joomla! site 8
- Adding multiple sections, categories, and articles from a single screen 13
- Adding a content slider to your front page 16
- Making your featured articles sticky on the front page 17
- Showing hot newsflash on the frontend 19
- Adding an article slideshow on the Joomla! frontend 22

Chapter 2: Using External Content 25

- Introduction 25
- Adding a Google Map to an article 26
- Displaying RSS content in Joomla! 29
- Reading RSS feeds through Ajax 32
- Displaying SlideShare presentations in Joomla! 34
- Embedding Google documents in Joomla! content 37
- Embedding PDF documents in articles 40
- Adding a map directory 41

Chapter 3: Sharing Content 49

- Introduction 49
- Adding social bookmarking to a Joomla! site 50
- Adding a "FOLLOW ME ON" badge 52
- Sending tweets automatically upon publishing articles 54
- Auto-compiling and e-mailing selected articles to subscribers 59
- Sending newsletters to subscribers 63
- Building newsletters with Joomla! articles 68

Chapter 4: Managing Events and Calendars 71
Introduction 71
Adding an event calendar to your Joomla! site 72
Showing your Google calendar on your Joomla! site 78
Adding a booking system for events 83

Chapter 5: Using Contacts and Feedback 91
Introduction 91
Adding a guestbook to your site 92
Adding comments to Joomla! content 99
Extending the "contact us" form 103
Adding an Ajax contact form with custom fields 107
Building a database application without coding 116

Chapter 6: Enhancing Communication 135
Introduction 135
Adding a chat service to your Joomla! site 135
Adding an Ajax Shoutbox 140
Adding a forum to your Joomla! site 143
Adding a private messaging system 156

Chapter 7: Using Communities and Groupware 161
Introduction 161
Extending user profiles with custom fields 162
Adding project management to Joomla! 166

Chapter 8: Using Photos and Images 181
Introduction 181
Creating thumbnails in articles 182
Creating a photo gallery inside an article 184
Adding a dynamic photo gallery 186
Adding a Flash photo gallery 193
Adding an Ajax image slideshow 200

Chapter 9: Enriching your Site with Multimedia 205
Introduction 205
Displaying a multimedia file in a Joomla! article 206
Adding a simple Flash video player 212
Adding an MP3 browser to your Joomla! site 218

Chapter 10: Building a Directory and Documentation 221
Introduction 221
Creating an alphabetical list of your sections, categories, and articles 222
Building a Yellow Pages-like directory 225

Building a document repository 233
Adding an attachment to an article 246

Chapter 11: Using Languages 251
Introduction 251
Adding a language to your site 252
Translating language files for your site 253
Translating your site's content using Google's translation service 259
Manually translating your site's content into your desired language 262

Chapter 12: Adding Ads, an Affiliate System, and E-commerce 269
Introduction 269
Improving banner ads on your site 270
Showing classified ads 272
Using Google AdSense 284
Using ads within your content 285
Adding a simple shop to your Joomla! site 287

Chapter 13: Managing Structure and Navigation 299
Introduction 299
Adding a drop-down menu 300
Adding a FishEye menu 301
Adding a Flash menu 303
Adding a quick jump menu 306
Adding a tree menu 308
Adding an image menu 311
Adding a sliding menu 312
Generating a site map based on the menu structure 314

Chapter 14: Working with Style and Design 321
Introduction 321
Creating reusable content templates 322
Viewing an external website in a Lightbox 325
Publishing modules as tabs 327
Using tabs and slides in content 331

Chapter 15: Managing the Site 335
Introduction 335
Adding Google Analytics to your Joomla! site 336
Implementing SEF URLs for your Joomla! site 343
Showing a visitor counter on your Joomla! site 349
Viewing user statistics on your Joomla! site 351
Watching visitor activity in real time 356

Chapter 16: Converting, Migrating, and Bridging 359
Introduction 359
Exporting site content to another site running the same or different versions of Joomla! 360
Migrating site content from Joomla! 1.0 to 1.5 365
Importing users from a CSV file 369
Integrating Joomla! with phpBB 373
Chapter 17: Enhancing the Core, Search, and Indexing 379
Introduction 379
Browsing and managing files on your Joomla! host 380
Automatically updating Joomla! to a newer version 381
Adding an Ajax search module to your Joomla! site 384
Adding tags to your Joomla! content 386
Chapter 18: Managing Access and Security 393
Introduction 393
Using Captcha on a user registration form 394
Using Captcha on a contact and password reset form 399
Implementing an ACL in the frontend and backend 402
Auditing the security settings of your Joomla! site 405
Creating a site backup that can be restored in any other Joomla! site 407
Restoring or cloning a Joomla! site 412
Chapter 19: Enhancing Administration and Other 417
Introduction 417
Better previewing of site content 418
Scheduling an administrative task 421
Using custom icons for the administration control panel 423
Adding custom code inside Joomla! content 427
Adding the FCK editor to Joomla! 432
Index 435

Preface

Joomla! is an award-winning open source content management system that satisfies all your website needs. It provides Joomla! extensions, which play their role when you need extra features which are not present in Joomla! by default. Many people using Joomla! build their site easily, but when they think of extending their site to the next level, they face hurdles.

You can get over these hurdles with the help of the Joomla! 1.5 Top Extensions Cookbook. This book contains top Joomla! extensions to add maps, image galleries, slideshows, audio and video players, security, forums, a shopping cart, guestbook, and other mind-opening functionalities to your site. This book provides step-by-step recipes to enrich and expand your site, using Joomla! extensions the way you want to.

If you choose to work through all the recipes from the beginning, you will learn how to have control of the access to the Joomla! site and ensure your site's security. You will then learn about migrating the website to a newer version and integrating Joomla with phpBB, how you can improve communication among the site users, collecting feedback from visitors by adding a guestbook, adding the Ajax contact form, and building database applications without coding. Furthermore, you will learn how these Joomla! extensions allow you to monitor users in real time, add Google Maps, improve advertising, add e-commerce functionalities, create better previews of the content.

What this book covers

Chapter 1, *Producing and Displaying News and Content*, shows you how to add a blog to your site. It shows you how to add multiple sections, categories, and articles from the same screen, add a content slider, newsflash, and make a featured article sticky on the front page.

Chapter 2, *Using External Content*, discusses the popular ways to use external content into your Joomla! website. You will learn how to add a Google Map inside an article, display RSS feeds from other sites, read RSS feeds using Ajax, display SlideShare documents, Google documents, and PDF documents inside articles, and build a map directory of your Joomla! site.

Chapter 3, *Sharing Content*, discusses popular ways to share your content through social networking and bookmarking services. It shows you how to add social bookmarking to Joomla!, add a 'Follow me on' badge, send tweets automatically upon publishing articles, automatically compile and e-mail selected articles to subscribers, and send periodical newsletters to subscribers.

Chapter 4, *Managing Events and Calendars*, discusses the popular extensions for adding an event calendar and a booking system. It shows you how to build an event calendar for your site, integrate Google calendar to your Joomla! site, and build an event booking system, for example, booking seminars.

Chapter 5, Using *Contacts and Feedback*, focuses on the popular extensions for enhancing functions of contacts and feedback systems in Joomla!. It shows you how to add a guestbook, add commenting, extend the contact form using Ajax, and build a database application without coding PHP.

Chapter 6, *Enhancing Communication*, discusses some popular ways to extend communication with users of the site. It shows you how to add a chat service, add an Ajax Shoutbox, add a forum, and add a private messaging system.

Chapter 7, *Using Communities and Groupware*, discusses ways to add community functionalities to your Joomla! website. It shows you how to extend user profiles with custom fields using Community Builder, and add a project management system.

Chapter 8, *Using Photos and Images*, focuses on photos and images on the site. It shows you how to build dynamic image galleries using several popular extensions, add an image slideshow, create thumbnails of images used in articles, and display a photo gallery inside an article.

Chapter 9, *Enriching your Site with Multimedia*, discusses popular extensions for using multimedia in a Joomla! site. It shows you how to display multimedia files inside articles, add a Flash video player, and add an MP3 browser to your Joomla! site.

Chapter 10, *Building a Directory and Documentation*, discusses building a document repository and directory services. It shows you how to add attachments to an article, create an alphabetical listing of sections, categories, and articles, build a directory service like the Yellow-Pages, and build a document repository where visitors can download several types of files.

Chapter 11, *Using Languages*, focuses on using multiple languages on a Joomla!-based site. It shows you how to add a language, translate language files, translate a site's content on the fly using Google's translation service, and translate your site's content manually using the Joom!Fish extension.

Chapter 12, *Adding Ads, Affiliate System, and E-commerce*, shows the different ways to improve advertising, how to add an affiliate system, and e-commerce functions. It shows you how to improve banner ads, show classified ads inside articles, use Google's AdSense, and add a simple shopping cart.

Chapter 13, *Managing Structure and Navigation*, focuses on managing the structure and the navigation of your site. It shows you how to add different types of menus, and generate a site map based on the menu structure.

Chapter 14, *Working with Style and Design*, mainly shows you how to work with the style and design of your site. It shows you how to create reusable content templates, view an external website in a lightbox, publish modules as tabs, and use tabs and slides in content.

Chapter 15, *Managing the Site*, discusses popular ways of improving site management. It shows you how to add Google Analytics, implement search engine friendly URLs, display a visitor counter, view visitor statistics, and watch visitor activities in real-time.

Chapter 16, *Enhancing the Core, Search, and Indexing*, discusses ways to enhance core functionalities, searching, and indexing. It shows how to browse files on a web server from within the Joomla! administration panel, update Joomla! to a newer version, add an Ajax-based search to the site, and add tags to the articles.

Chapter 17, *Converting, Migrating, and Bridging*, discusses exporting site content, migrating a site, and bridging Joomla! with other applications. It shows you how to export site' content to another site, migrate site contents from Joomla! 1.0.x to Joomla! 1.5.x, import users from a CSV file, and integrate Joomla! with phpBB using the JFusion extension.

Chapter 18, *Managing Access and Security*, shows the ways to manage access and security of a Joomla!-based site. It shows you how to use Captcha on the user registration form, use Captcha on the contact and password reset forms, implement the access control list (ACL), audit security settings, create a backup of a site, and clone a site from the backup.

Chapter 19, *Enhancing Administration and Other*, discusses some interesting and useful extensions that helps to administer the site better. It shows you how to preview the site's content better, schedule an administrative task, use custom icons for the control panel, add custom code inside articles, and add the FCK editor for WYSIWYG editing.

What you need for this book

The recipes presented in this book are for the Joomla! 1.5.x content management system. Therefore, to follow these recipes, you need a working installation of Joomla! 1.5.x on a web server—production or on a local development server. Recommended requirements for Joomla! 1.5.x are:

- PHP 5.2+
- MySQL 4.1+
- Apache 2.x (with `mod_mysql`, `mod_xml`, and `mod_zlib`) or Microsoft IIS 7

You can check updated requirements for Joomla! 1.5.x from `http://www.joomla.org/about-joomla/technical-requirements.html`. The latest version of Joomla! can be downloaded from `http://www.joomla.org/download.html`. If you need a development web server on a local computer, you may use one of the following packages for a quick setup of the development environment:

- LAMP (for Linux), which is available on most Linux distributions and installed by default
- WAMP (for Windows), that can be downloaded from `www.wampserver.com`
- MAMP (for Macintosh), that can be downloaded from `www.mamp.info`
- XAMPP (for multiple platform including Linux and Windows), that can be downloaded from `http://www.apachefriends.org/en/xampp.html`

The extensions covered in these books are all listed in the Joomla! Extensions Directory (JED) and can be downloaded by visiting `http://extensions.joomla.org`.

Who this book is for

If you want to build a basic Joomla! site and are looking for information on the use of Joomla! extensions and their customization, this book is for you. Prior knowledge of using extensions is not expected, but basic knowledge of setting up a Joomla! site will be required. Knowledge of PHP and database skills will be helpful, but not essential.

Conventions

In this book, you will find a number of styles of text that distinguish between different kinds of information. Here are some examples of these styles, and an explanation of their meaning.

Code words in text are shown as follows: "Type the path of the `KML` file."

A block of code is set as follows:

```
{tiframe linktext:="Joomla! Beginners Guide" width:="600"
height:="400" url:="http://docs.joomla.org/Beginners"
gal:="tutorial"}
```

When we wish to draw your attention to a particular part of a code block, the relevant lines or items are set in bold:

```
{tab=Support}
{Support for the Joomla! CMS can be found on several places. The best
place to start would be the Joomla! Official Documentation Wiki. Here
you can help yourself to the information that is regularly published
and updated as Joomla! develops. There is much more to come too!}
```

New terms and **important words** are shown in bold. Words that you see on screen, in menus or dialog boxes for example, appear in the text like this: "Click on **Extensions** | **Plugin Manager**".



Warnings or important notes appear in a box like this.



Tips and tricks appear like this.

Reader feedback

Feedback from our readers is always welcome. Let us know what you think about this book—what you liked or may have disliked. Reader feedback is important for us to develop titles that you really get the most out of.

To send us general feedback, simply send an e-mail to `feedback@packtpub.com`, and mention the book title via the subject of your message.

If there is a book that you need and would like to see us publish, please send us a note in the **SUGGEST A TITLE** form on `www.packtpub.com` or e-mail `suggest@packtpub.com`.

If there is a topic that you have expertise in and you are interested in either writing or contributing to a book on, see our author guide on `www.packtpub.com/authors`.

Customer support

Now that you are the proud owner of a Packt book, we have a number of things to help you to get the most from your purchase.

Errata

Although we have taken every care to ensure the accuracy of our content, mistakes do happen. If you find a mistake in one of our books—maybe a mistake in the text or the code—we would be grateful if you would report this to us. By doing so, you can save other readers from frustration and help us improve subsequent versions of this book. If you find any errata, please report them by visiting `http://www.packtpub.com/support`, selecting your book, clicking on the **errata submission form** link, and entering the details of your errata. Once your errata are verified, your submission will be accepted and the errata will be uploaded on our website, or added to any list of existing errata, under the Errata section of that title. Any existing errata can be viewed by selecting your title from `http://www.packtpub.com/support`.

Piracy

Piracy of copyright material on the Internet is an ongoing problem across all media. At Packt, we take the protection of our copyright and licenses very seriously. If you come across any illegal copies of our works, in any form, on the Internet, please provide us with the location address or website name immediately so that we can pursue a remedy.

Please contact us at `copyright@packtpub.com` with a link to the suspected pirated material.

We appreciate your help in protecting our authors, and our ability to bring you valuable content.

Questions

You can contact us at `questions@packtpub.com` if you are having a problem with any aspect of the book, and we will do our best to address it.

1
Producing and Displaying News and Content

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding a blog to your Joomla! site
- Adding multiple sections, categories, and articles from a single screen
- Adding a content slider to your front page
- Making your featured articles sticky on the front page
- Showing a hot newsflash on the frontend
- Adding an article slide show on the Joomla! frontend

Introduction

Content is the king, and in Joomla!, content can be produced in different ways using Joomla!. Most Joomla! sites are for showing content—some change frequently, while some do not. News in Joomla! is a rapidly changing content, and there are several extensions for assisting news production and its display.

In this chapter, we are going to learn about some of the most popular extensions for producing and displaying content in Joomla!. First, we learn about adding a blog to the Joomla! website. Then we move on to adding multiple sections, categories, and articles from one screen using Ajax. Then we move on to adding a content slider to the site's front page, making featured articles sticky on the front page and showing the hot newsflash.

Adding a blog to your Joomla! site

Registered users in Joomla! can submit articles, and these articles can be displayed in Blog Layout. However, separate blog functionality, such as tagging and commenting, may sometimes be required. To add blogging facility, there are many extensions developed for Joomla!. In this recipe, you will learn to add a blog to your Joomla! site so that registered users can post to that blog.

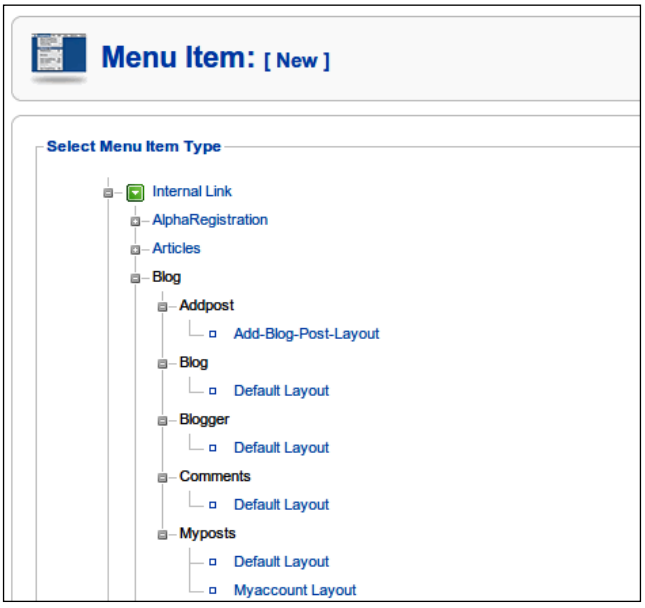
Getting ready...

There are at least three popular extensions for blogging in the Joomla! Extensions Directory. The most popular one is **SmartBlog**. We will be using this extension to add a blog to our Joomla! site. Download the extension from `http://dev.aarthikaindia.com/downloads/category/1-smart-blog.html`. The downloaded package contains three packages: one main component, one plugin for searching a blog component, and a module to display the posts. Unzip the main package and you get the three sub-packages. Install all three sub-packages from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

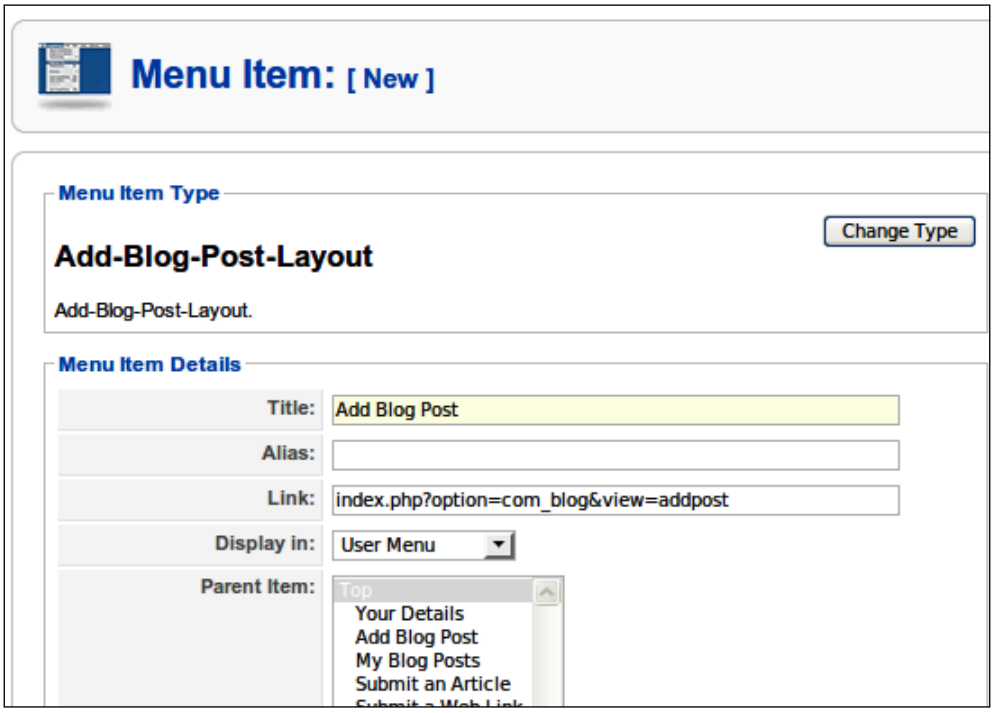
How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to add a blog to your Joomla! site:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Menus** | **User Menu**, and then click on the **New** button. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen.

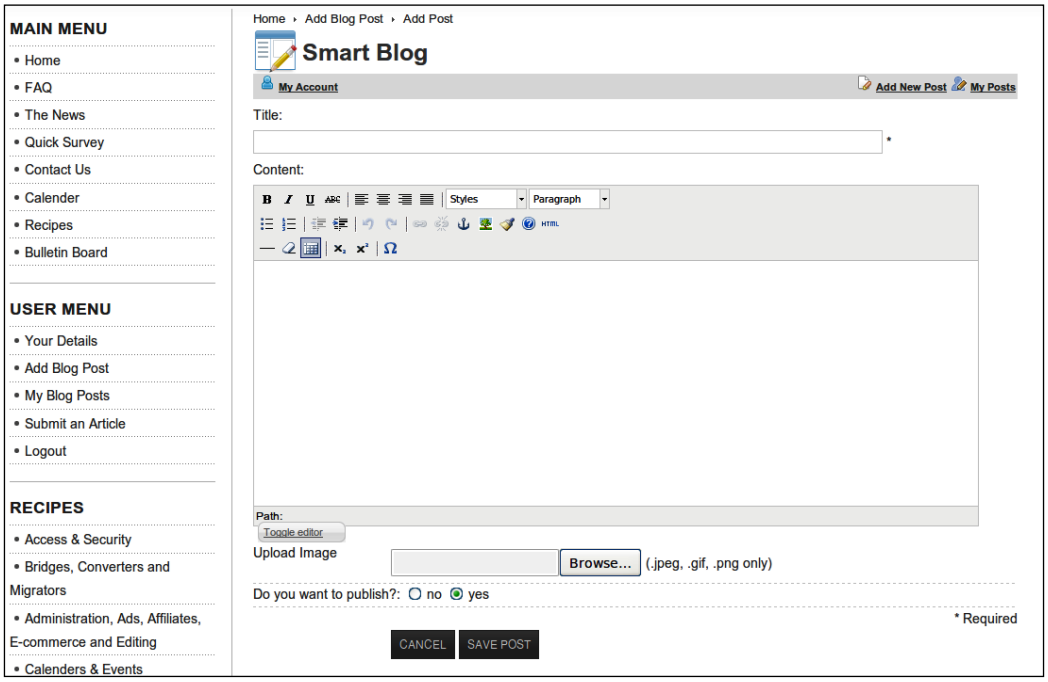


2. From the **Select Menu Item Type** section, click on the **Blog** | **Addpost** | **Add-Blog-Post-Layout** link. This will show the **Menu Item: [New]** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



3. In the **Menu Item Details** section, type the **Title** of the menu item, that is, **Add Blog Post**. In the **Parent Item** listbox, select **Top** and select **Yes** in the **Published** radio box.
4. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

5. Preview the site and log in to the frontend using a regular user's username and password, and you will see the **Add Blog Post** link in the **User Menu**. Click on the **Add Blog Post** link. It shows the **Smart Blog** screen with the post editor. It has **Title** and **Content** fields. At the bottom, you can upload the image for this post from the **Upload Image** field. Select **Yes** in the **Do you want to publish?** radio box.



6. Click on the **Save Post** button to save and publish the post. The post will look like the following screenshot:

Blog Post saved successfully.

Home › Add Blog Post › View Post

Smart Blog

Add New Post | My Posts | My Account

Access and Security in Joomla!



Joomla! Has many extensions for contolling access to Joomla site and ensuring the site's security. By default, Joomla! Has a reasonable security framework where users can register, login and based on group membership can perform certain tasks. The forms for registering and password retrieving have been designed to be safe However, extra layer of security can be added to these. For example, captcha images can be added to user registration and other forms to verify that a human is registering to your Joomla! Site, not an automated bot or script.

Another sensitive part of a Joomla! Site is its administration area. Users can point their browser to http://domain.com /administrator and gets the login form for administration are. Guessing (or cracking password) for administration area can give control of you site to intruders. Therefore, there is strong need for protecting your administration area.
Although Joomla! Has some kind of Access Control system in place, there are much room for improvement. Several third party extensions have tried to implement Access Control List (ACL) in Joomla!, and noixACL is one of them freely available and popular. We have shown a recipe in this chapter for implementing ACL through noixACL.

Joomla! Has no in-built mechanism for auditing its security. However, third party extensions, such as Joomla! Tools Suite (JTS), can be used for auditing security for your Joomla! Site.
As a webmaster of a Joomla!-based website, you also need to backup your site time to time, and in worst case, need to restore the site from the backup to a new server. Third party extensions like JoomlaPack can help you in doing such backups and restoration.

By: Borhan Uddin On Saturday, 16 January 2010 Comments(0) Views(1) edit Delete

Comments(0)

Write comment

Title:

*

Comment:

Styles | Paragraph

Path: p

Toggle editor

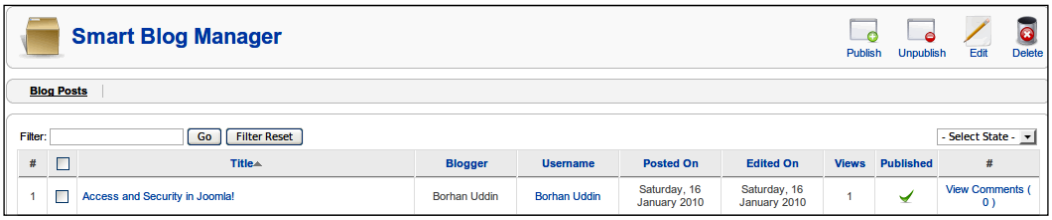
BACK ADD COMMENT

* Required

7. For viewing the post written by you, click on the **My Posts** link at the top of the editor. The list looks like the following screenshot:



8. Now log in to the administration panel and select **Components** | **Blog**. The **Smart Blog Manager** lists the available blog posts. As an administrator, you can **Publish**, **Unpublish**, **Edit**, or **Delete** any post from this screen.

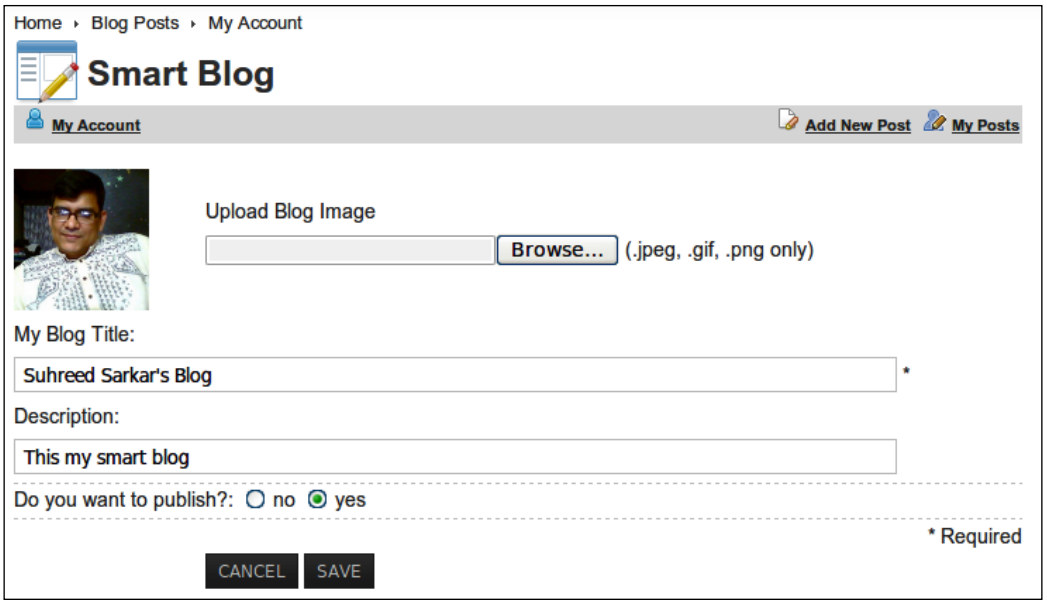


There's more...

You can add the following types of menu item links to the blog component:

- **Addpost—Add Blog Post Layout**
- **Blog—Default Layout**
- **Blogger—Default Layout**
- **Comments—Default Layout**
- **Myposts—Default Layout**
- **Myposts—Myaccount Layout**

From the **Myaccount Layout** link, you can provide your blog's title, description, and a logo image.



Adding multiple sections, categories, and articles from a single screen

Joomla!'s **Article manager** provides us with an easy way to add articles to the Joomla! website. Similarly, you can add sections and categories from the **Section Manager** and **Category Manager,** respectively. The only limitation is that you have to add a section, category, or article one at a time. For some sites, especially during initial development, you may need to add multiple sections, categories, and articles at once from a single screen. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add multiple sections, categories, and articles from a single screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

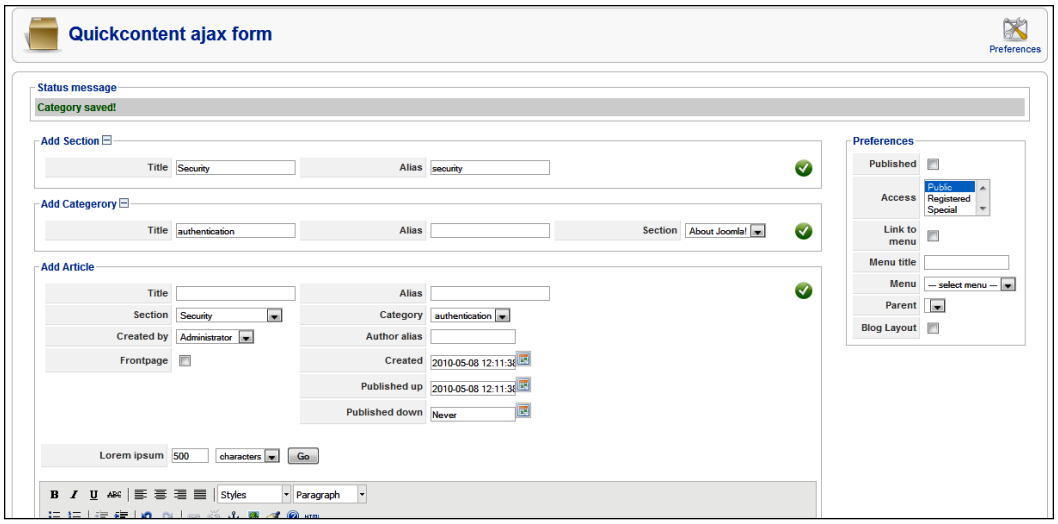
Getting ready...

The **QuickContent** extension helps you to add multiple sections, categories, and articles at the same time. Download this extension from `http://www.einszuzwei.de/quickcontent/downloads/category/1-components.html?download=2%3Aquickcontent` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

Once the extension is installed, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Quickcontent**. This shows the **Quickcontent ajax form** for adding sections, categories, and articles.



2. For adding a section, type the section **Title** and **Alias** and click on the green tick icon. This adds the section. You can add as many sections as you need from the same screen.
3. For adding categories, in the **Category** section type the **Title** and **Alias**, and select a section from the **Section** drop-down list. Note that the sections you added a few minutes ago are available here. Click on the green tick icon to add the category. You can add as many categories as you need from this screen.
4. For adding an article, go to the **Add Article** section. Type the **Title** and **Alias**, then select a **Section** and **Category** for the article. Set other options—such as the publish date, front page display, and so on. Type the text of the article in the text area and click on the green tick icon to save the article. The article is saved. The **Status Message** section will display the status of your article.

There's more...

Besides adding sections, categories, and articles, you can also add dummy articles. At the initial stage of development, you may need to generate some dummy articles. For adding dummy text to the article, carry out the following steps:

1. Click on **Components** | **Quickcontent**. This shows the **Quickcontent ajax form**. Go to the **Add Article** section on this page and provide the article's title, section, category, and other details.



2. For filling the article with dummy text, in the **Lorem ipsum** textbox, type a number, for example, **150**, then select either **characters** or **words**, and then click on the **Go** button. This fills the article with that number of characters or words.
3. Finally, click on the green tick icon to save your dummy article.

Adding a content slider to your front page

Content sliders are useful for attracting site visitors by highlighting some articles. You may select articles in a category to be displayed in the content slider. This draws attention of the visitors to these articles. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to display a content slider on your site's front page.

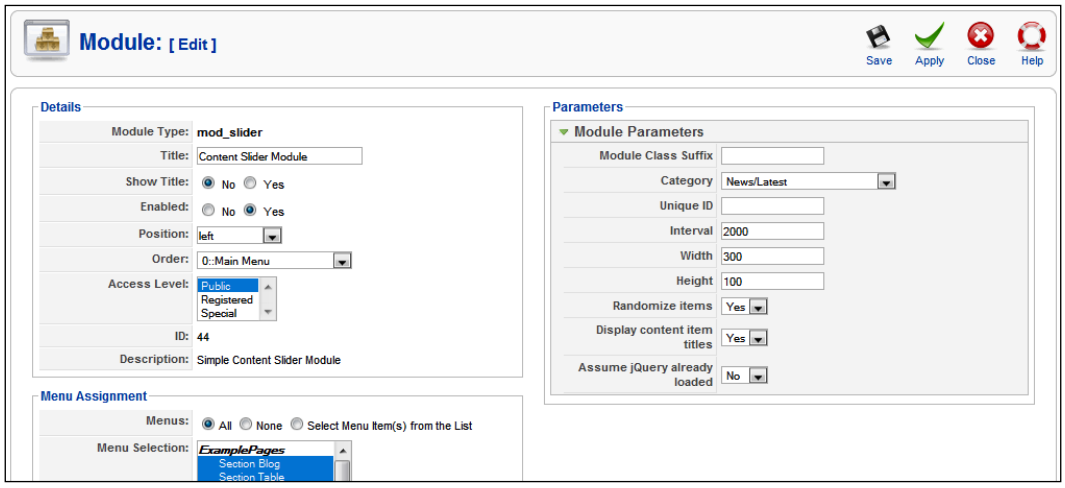
Getting ready...

You can display a content slider on your site's front page by simply adding and configuring a module. The **Content Slider Module** is a popular module for displaying articles as a slider. Download this module from `http://www.dynatec.at/joomla-extensions-modules-plugins-components/content-slider-module-for-joomla-1-5` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

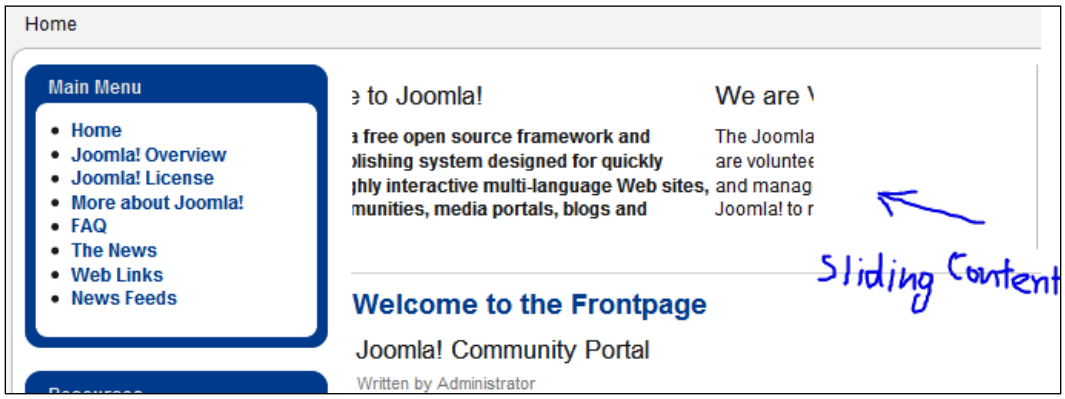
How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen listing all the installed modules. From the list, click on **Content Slider Module**. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the module.



2. In the **Module: [Edit]** screen, select **No** in the **Show Title** field, and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. Set the **Access Level**. From the **Module Parameters** section, select a category from the **Category** drop-down list. As an alternative, you can specify article IDs in the **Unique ID** field. Accept the default for other fields and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar to save the settings.



3. Preview the site's frontend and you should see the module where content articles are displayed as slides.

Making your featured articles sticky on the front page

By default, when you add a new article to the Joomla! website, new articles appear first on the front page. However, there are some articles that need to be made sticky on the front page, so they can be displayed for some time. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to make an article sticky on the front page.

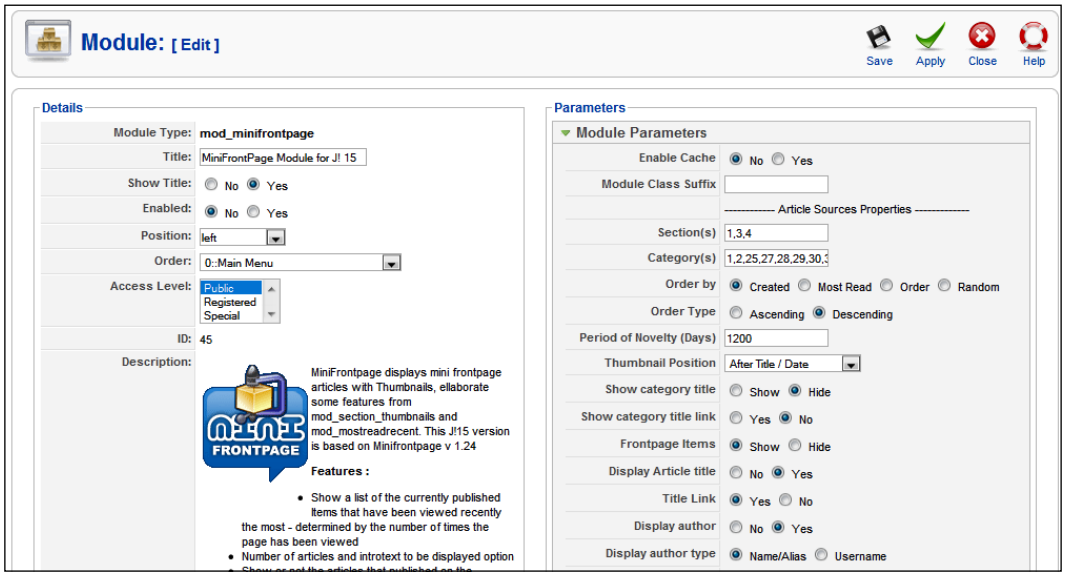
Getting ready...

MiniFrontPage is a popular extension that allows you to make an article sticky on the front page. Download this extension from `http://www.templateplazza.com/view-details/minifrontpage-module/90-minifrontpage-for-joomla-1.5.html` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the extension, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules. From the list, click on the **MiniFrontPage Module for J! 15** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen:



2. In the **Module: [Edit]** screen, select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field, then select a module position, for example **user1**, to display the module. From the **Module Parameters** section, type the number of sections in the **Section(s)** field and the IDs of the categories in the **Category(s)** field. Then select **Created** in the **Order by** field. Accept the defaults for the other fields and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Preview the site's frontend and you will see the module in the designated module position.



4. Based on the settings of the module, and the contents available in the selected sections and categories, the module will look similar to the preceding screen shown. You can customize the display of this module by changing the settings in the **Module Parameters** section in the **Module: [Edit]** screen.

Showing hot newsflash on the frontend

For some sites, you need to make some articles stand out more than others. These articles may be called hot newsflash or hot articles. Showing these hot articles on the front page draws special attention to these articles. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to show a hot newsflash on the front page.

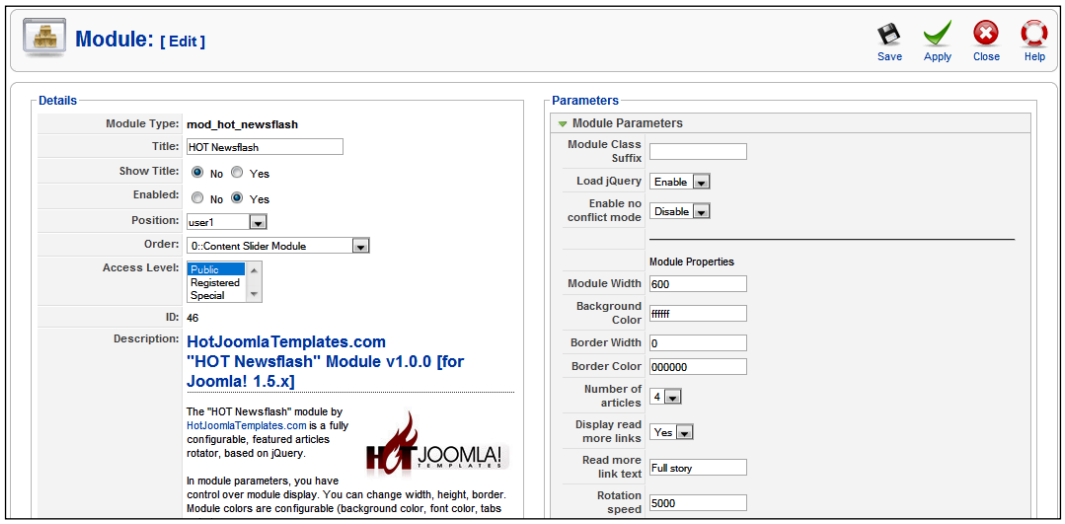
Getting ready...

The **Hot newsflash** module is one of the popular extensions that allow you to show the hot newsflash on the front page. Download this module from `http://www.hotjoomlatemplates.com/free-downloads/doc_download/6-hot-newsflash` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

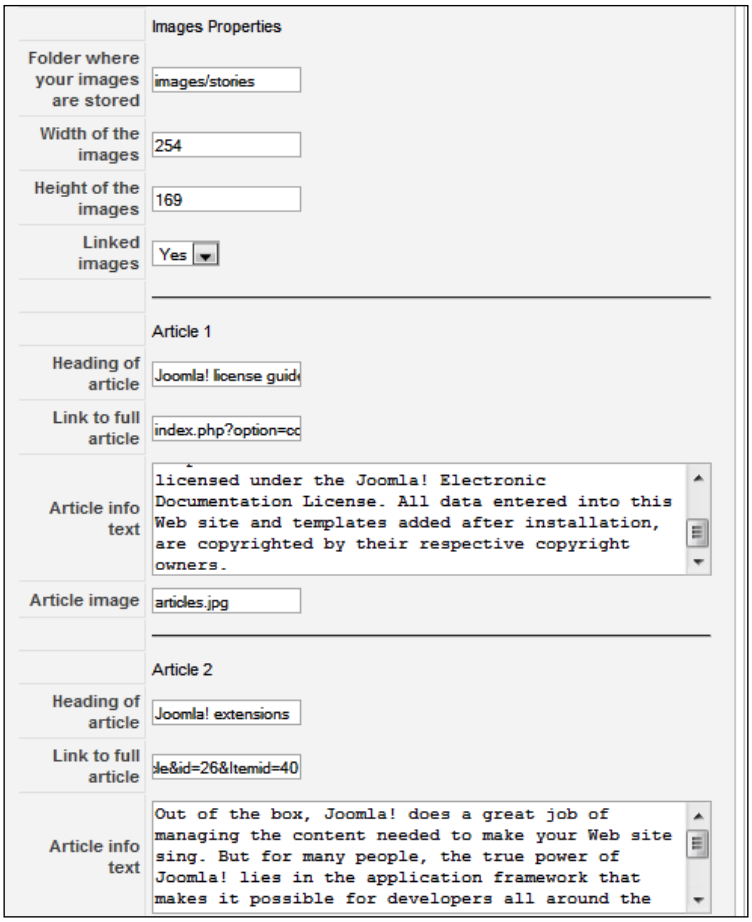
How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

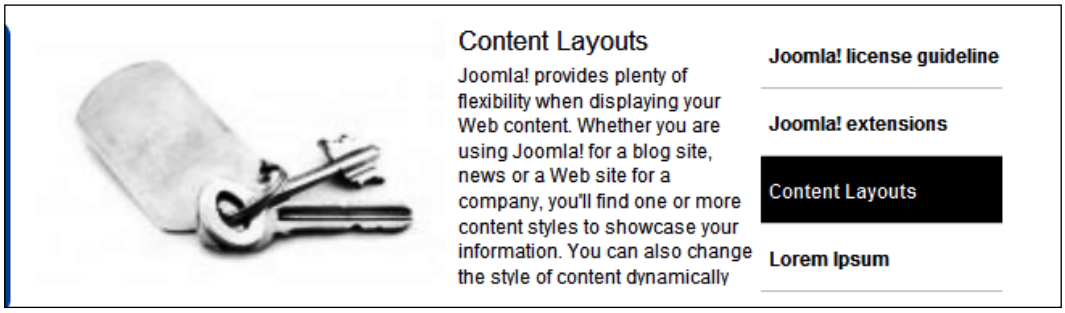
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all the installed modules. From the list, click on the **HOT Newsflash** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field, and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. Module-specific settings are in the **Module Parameters** section. Go to the **Image Properties** section. Accept the defaults for fields in the **Image Properties** section, then look into the **Article 1** section. First type a title for the article in the **Heading of article** field, then type URL in the **Link to full article** field. In the **Article Info text** box, type a brief summary of the article. Then type the name of the image, for example **article.jpg**, in the **Article Image** field.



3. Fill the **Article 2** and **Article 3** sections in a similar way, and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
4. Preview the site's frontend and you will see the module with the configured articles. The module looks like the following screenshot.



Note that you can see article lists to the right as tabs, and an image to the left with the descriptions in the middle. The text changes one after another without refreshing the whole page. Clicking on the image takes you to the full article. You can add up to five articles in this module.

Adding an article slideshow on the Joomla! frontend

Articles can also be displayed as slideshows on a Joomla! site's frontend. Like other featured articles, you can select a category of articles and display the article headings and intro text in this slideshow. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to use an article slideshow in the Joomla! frontend.

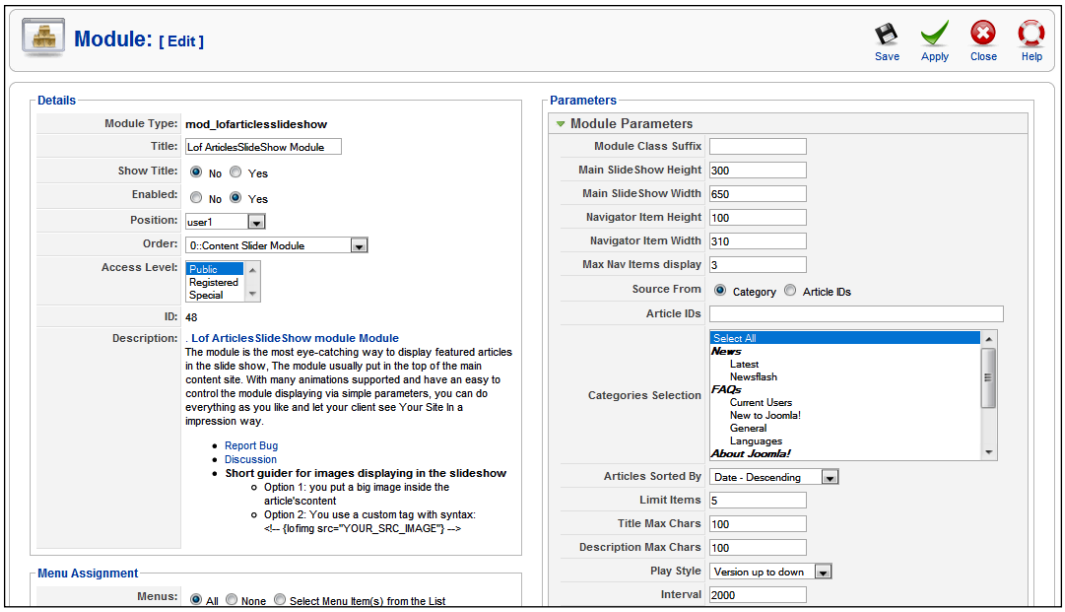
Getting ready...

Lof ArticleSlideShows Module is a popular extension for showing article slideshows on a Joomla! frontend. Download this from `http://landofcoder.com/download.html?task=summary&cid=8&catid=2` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

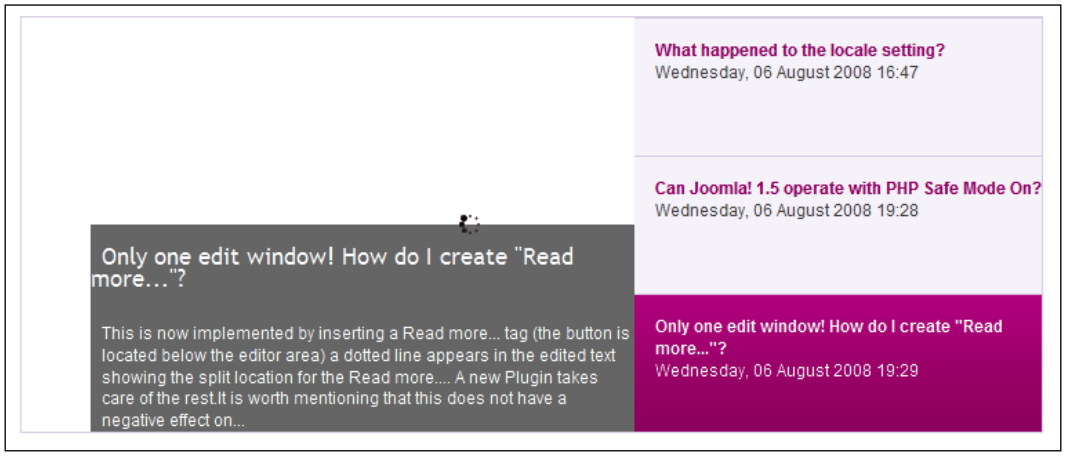
How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all the installed modules. From the list, click on **Lof ArticlesSlideShow Module**, and you should see the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field, and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. From the **Module Parameters** section in the **Source from** radio list, select **Category**. Then click on the categories in the **Categories Selection** listbox. Accept the defaults for the other fields and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Preview the site's frontend, and you will see the module at the specified position. The module will look like the following screenshot:



As you can see, the articles will rotate automatically one after the other, and clicking on one of them will take you to the respective full article. The number of articles to include in this slideshow, and the number of characters to be shown in the article heading and intro text, can be defined from the **Module Parameters** section in the **Module: [Edit]** screen.

2
Using External Content

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding a Google Map to an article
- Displaying RSS content in Joomla!
- Reading RSS feeds through Ajax
- Displaying SlideShare documents
- Embedding Google documents
- Embedding PDF documents in articles
- Adding a map directory

Introduction

Many web services are available online and you may need to use such services to provide you with content for your site. For example, you may want to display a map in your article. This can be done using **Google Map**. Similarly, you may like to share a presentation from **GoogleDocs** or **SlideShare**. You can do this by adding an extension to Joomla!. RSS feeds from other sites can also add value to your site.

In this chapter, we are going to show you how to add Google Map into your articles using one of the popular extensions. Then you will learn how to display RSS feeds effectively. Later, we will discuss embedding documents from GoogleDocs or SlideShare into Joomla! articles. We will also learn how to embed any PDF document into an article.

Adding a Google Map to an article

Google Maps are becoming an essential part of many websites. You may write an article and need to embed a Google Map inside it. This helps readers find the place you are talking about. In this recipe, you will learn how to add a Google Map to an article.

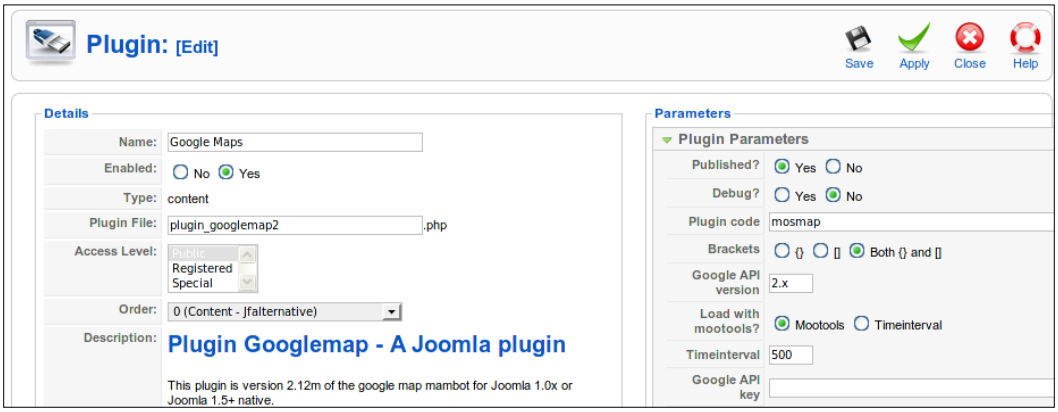
Getting ready...

The Google Maps plugin allows you to insert a Google Map in an article. Download this plugin from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/mambot_google1/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the plugin, carry out the following steps:

1. Click on **Extensions** | **Plugin Manager**. This shows the lists of installed plugins. From the list, click on the **Google Maps** plugin and that will show the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Also check that **Yes** is selected in the **Published** field in the **Plugin Parameters** section.
3. Visit `http://code.google.com/apis/maps/signup.html` and sign up for the Google Map API. Copy the API key and paste it in the **Google API Key** field in the **Plugin Parameters** section. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

4. Now you can add the Google Map to the content of the article by following the syntax for it. The default Google Map plugin syntax is as follows:

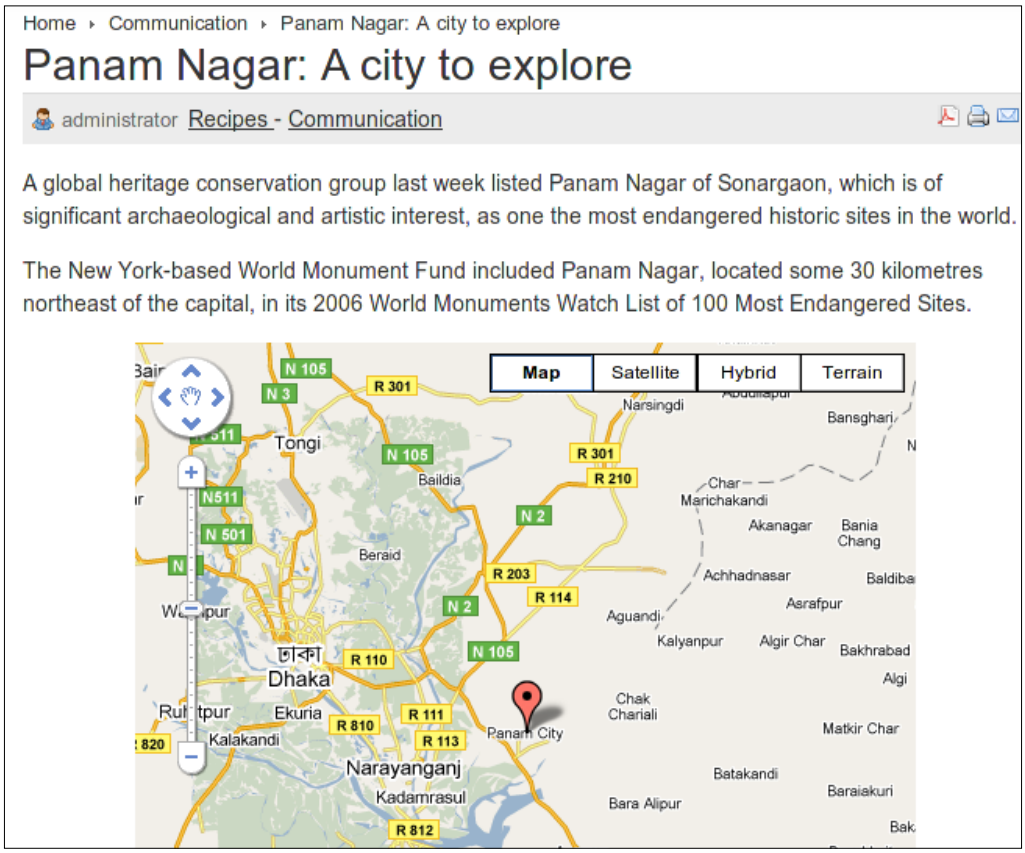
```
{mosmap width='500'|height='400'|lat='52.052312'|lon='4.447141'|
zoom='3'|zoomType='Large'|zoomNew='0'|mapType='Satellite'|showMapt
ype='1'|overview='0'|text='sv DWO'| tooltip='DWO'|marker='1'|align
='center'}
```

   As you see, the tag starts with `mosmap`, followed by the attributes `width`, `height`, `lat` (latitude),`lon` (longitude), and so on. You need to provide at least the `lat` and `lon` to display the map. You can get the latitude and longitude of a place by visiting that place on a Google Map at `http://maps.google.com`. Other attributes are optional, and if it is not present, the default values will be used.

5. In **Article Manager**, write an article and insert the following code for a Google Map:

```
{mosmap width='500'|height='500'|lat=23.656337|lon=90.605621}
```

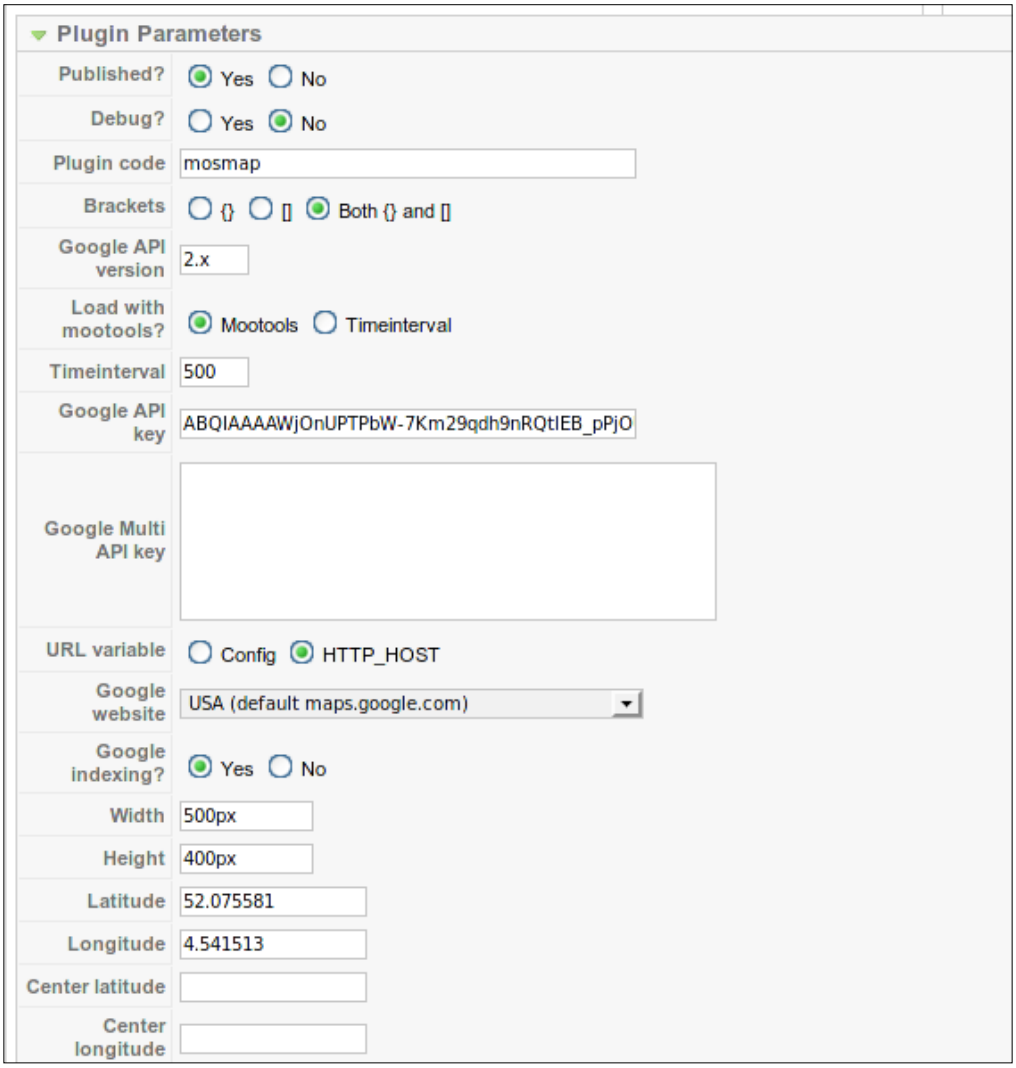
6. Save the article and preview the site's frontend to view the article. It will show the map inside the article, as shown in the following screenshot:



As seen in the preceding screenshot, default controls are displayed. You can customize these by passing the appropriate attribute to the `{mosmap}` code.

There's more...

The Google Map plugin provides a simple way to display Google Maps inside articles. It gives you opportunities to customize the display through the use of attributes. However, you can customize this plugin to suit your needs. The Google Map plugin can be customized from the **Plugin Parameters** section in the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



One of the interesting features of the Google Maps plugin is that you can change the plugin code. Instead of using `mosmap`, you may like to use `joomap`. Similarly, instead of using { } brackets, you may like to use `[]` brackets. In that case, in the **Plugin code** field, type the code you want to use, and in **Brackets** field select the brackets you like.

Besides this, you can also specify the default **Width**, **Height**, **Latitude**, **Longitude**, **Center latitude**, **Center longitude**, and so on. You can choose to display driving directions, ads, videos, YouTube items, and so on with the Google Maps.

See also...

The Google Maps plugin is a simple way to add quick map into an article. If you want to build a directory that shows maps, you can use a different extension. For details, see the recipe *Adding a map directory* later in this chapter.

Displaying RSS content in Joomla!

RSS provides a means of showing news titles from other sites. In Joomla!, you can display news titles from different RSS feeds. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to display RSS feeds on your Joomla! site.

Getting ready...

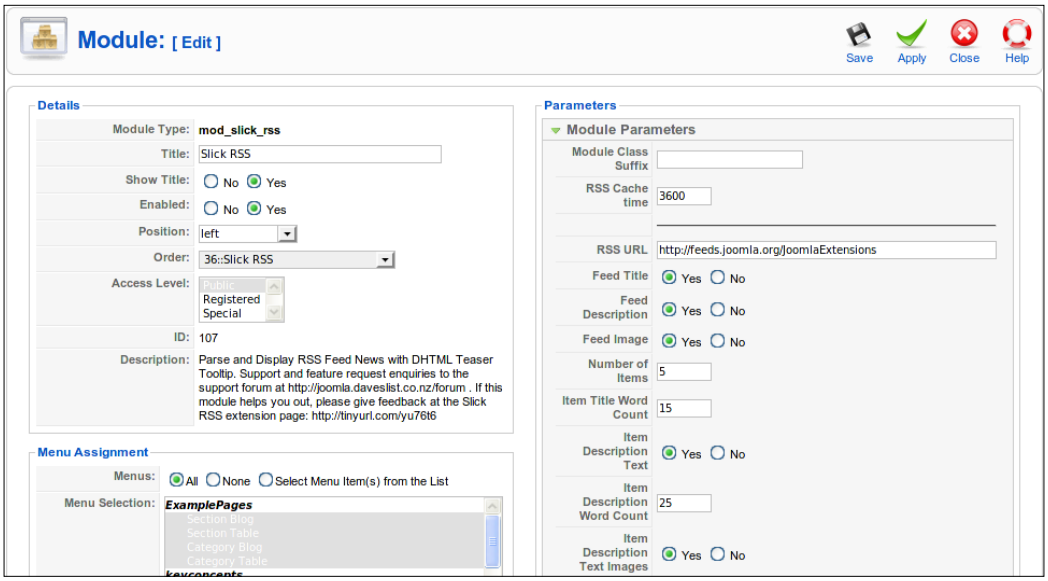
There are many extensions for Joomla! to display RSS feeds. However, the most popular one is the Slick RSS module. Download this module from `http://joomla.daveslist.co.nz/index.php?option=com_docman&task=doc_details&gid=7` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps, to display RSS feeds:

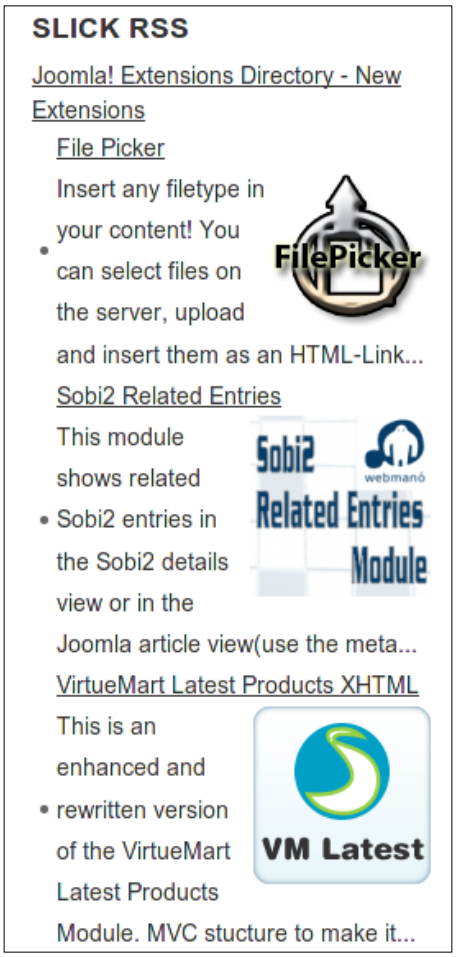
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules.

   From the list, click on the **Slick RSS** module, and this shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the Slick RSS module.



2. Type a title to the module in the **Title** field. Select **Yes** in the **Show Title** field to display the title, and then select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Select a position for the module in the **Position** drop-down list.
3. Under the **Module Parameters** section in the **RSS URL** field, type the URL of the feed you want to display. Then select **Yes** in the **Feed Title**, **Feed Description**, and **Feed Image** fields. In the **Number of Items** field, type the number of items you want to display.
4. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

5. Preview the site's frontend and you will find the module published with the specified number of feed items, as shown in the following screenshot:



As you can see, news headings for the latest extensions are displayed from **Joomla! Extensions Directory**, as we have chosen to do so.



You can display items from one RSS URL only. However, you can make new modules of the type **mod_slick_rss** and assign new RSS URLs to those modules.

Reading RSS feeds through Ajax

Ajax allows you to display a list of RSS feeds without refreshing the whole page. In this recipe, you will learn how to show RSS feeds through Ajax.

Getting ready...

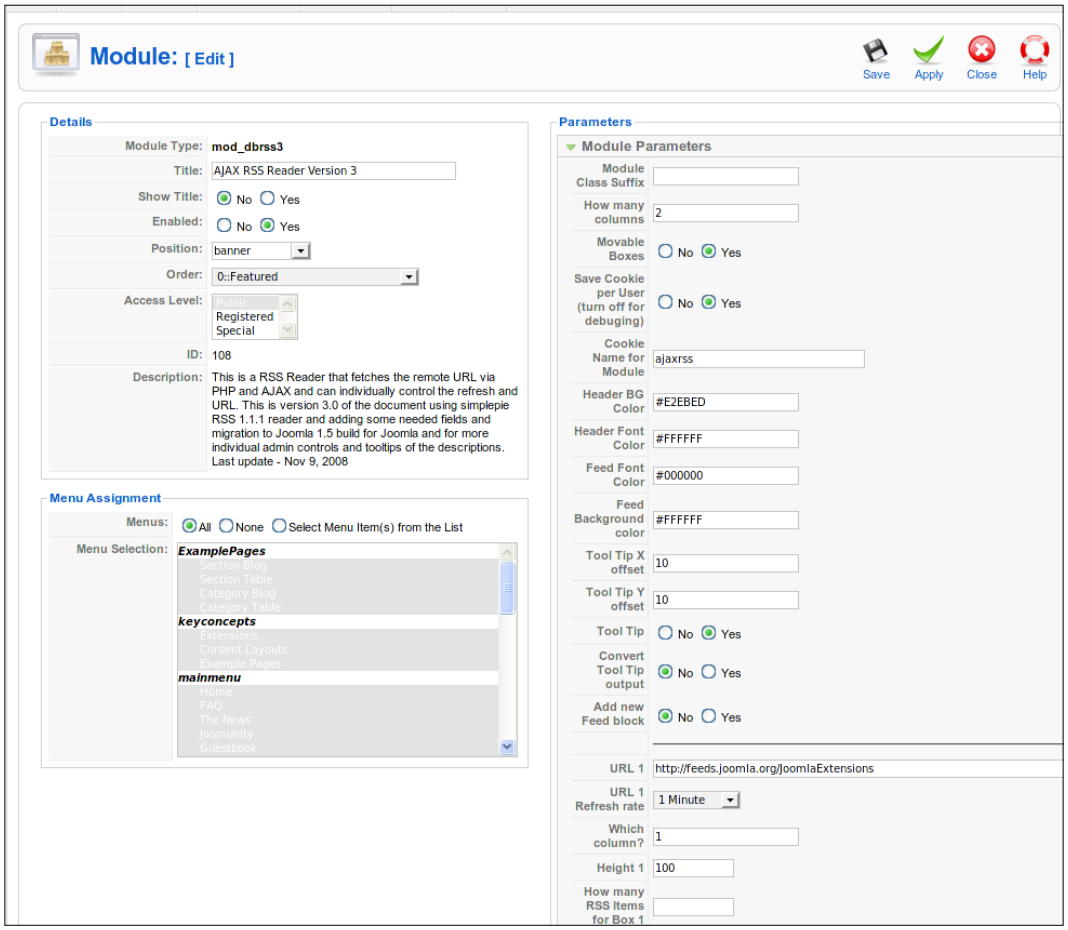
The Ajax RSS Reader is a popular module that allows you to display RSS feeds through Ajax. Download this module from `http://www.phpaugusta.com/index.php?option=com_docman&task=doc_download&gid=1&Itemid=32` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps, as shown, to show RSS feeds:

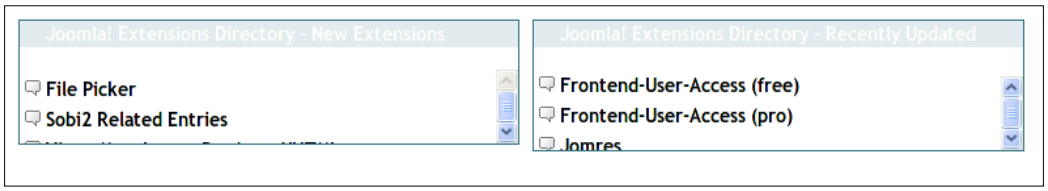
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules.

   From the list, click on the **AJAX RSS Reader Version 3** module name in the **Module Manager** screen. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the **AJAX RSS Reader** module.

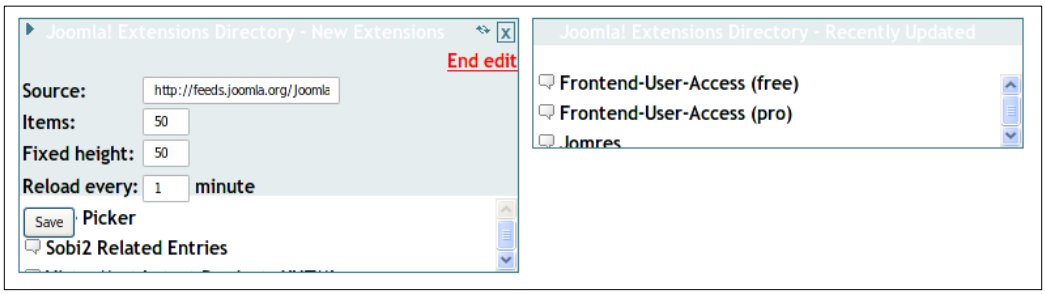


2. Type a title for the module in the **Title** field. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then select a position to display the module, for example, **banner**.
3. In the **Module Parameters** section, type **2** in the **How many columns** field. Select **No** in the **Add new Feed block** field. In the **URL 1** field, type the first RSS URL that you want to show. Choose the refresh rate in the **URL 1 Refresh rate** drop-down list. In the **Which column?** field, specify the column, for example 1, on which you want to display this feed. Specify the height of the block in the **Height 1** field. Similarly, add the RSS URL and other settings in **URL 2** and the subsequent fields.

4. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar and preview the site's frontend; you should see the module in the specified position with titles from the RSS feeds.



5. Note that you can drag the boxes to place it elsewhere. Take the mouse pointer over the feed title, and you will get an **Edit** button. Click on the **Edit** button, and you should see the following screen for editing the feed settings.



6. Change the feed settings and click on the **Save** button or **End edit**. You can also click on the **Refresh** icon at the upper right-hand corner to refresh the feed items.

Displaying SlideShare presentations in Joomla!

The SlideShare service allows you to upload and share your presentations with others. It will be good to display your favorite SlideShare presentation in a content article in Joomla!. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to display a presentation from SlideShare.

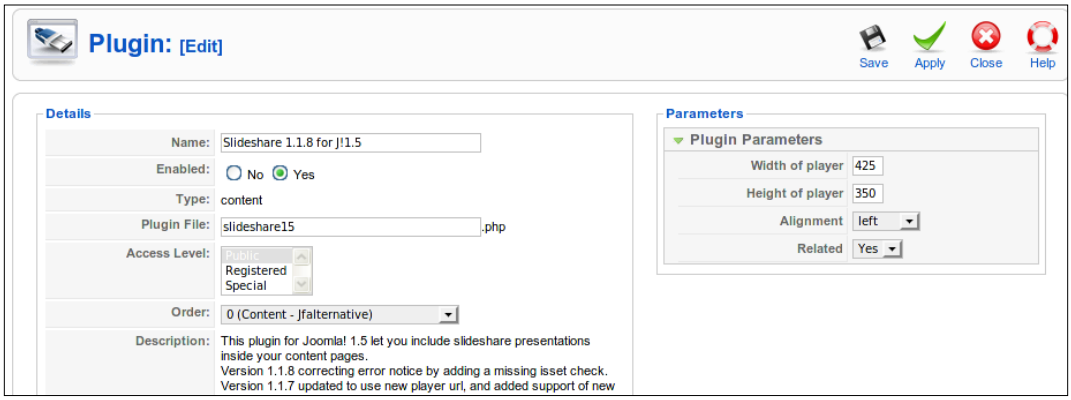
Getting ready...

The SlideShare plugin allows you to embed presentations from `http://www.slideshare.net/` into your Joomla! content. Download this plugin from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/download/frsrelease/6463/42002/plugin_slideshare15_1.1.8.zip` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

Once the plugin is installed, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list of plugins, click on **Slideshare 1.1.8 for J!1.5**, and this shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. In the **Plugin Parameters** section, you can specify width, height, and alignment of the player. Select **Yes** in the **Related** field to show a list of the related presentations. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Visit `http://www.slideshare.net` and choose the slide you want to display in your article. At the bottom of the slide click on WordPress, that shows the WordPress plugin code, for example, `[slideshare id=3472865&doc=anatomyofajoomlawebsite-100318185354-phpapp01]`. Copy this code.
4. Click on **Content** | **Article Manager**, and click on **New** to add a new article. Write the article and insert the copied WordPress plugin code inside the `{slideshare}` and `{/slideshare}` tags. The code at the end will look like `{slideshare}[slideshare id=3472865&doc=anatomyofajoomlawebsite-100318185354-phpapp01]{/slideshare}`.

5. When you have finished writing the article, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.



6. Preview the site's frontend and view the article. It displays the slide you have embedded.
7. Through the SlideShare player, the slide can be viewed from start to end. At the end, it will display a list of some other relevant slides.

Embedding Google documents in Joomla! content

Google documents are an easy way to share information on the web. You can create text documents, presentations, and worksheets in Google documents and share those with others. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to embed a Google document into Joomla! content.

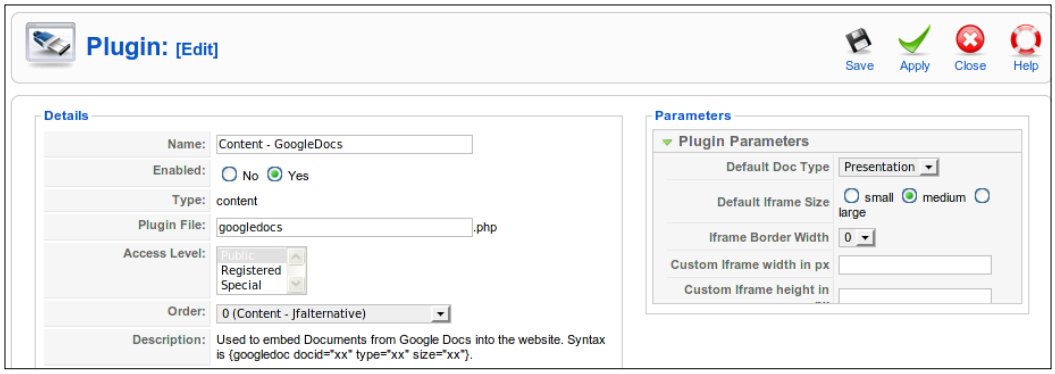
Getting ready...

The GoogleDocs Plugin allows you to embed Google documents into Joomla! articles. Download this plugin from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/googledocs/frs/`. The location contains two plugin files—one for the contents and another for the editor button. Download both and install them from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

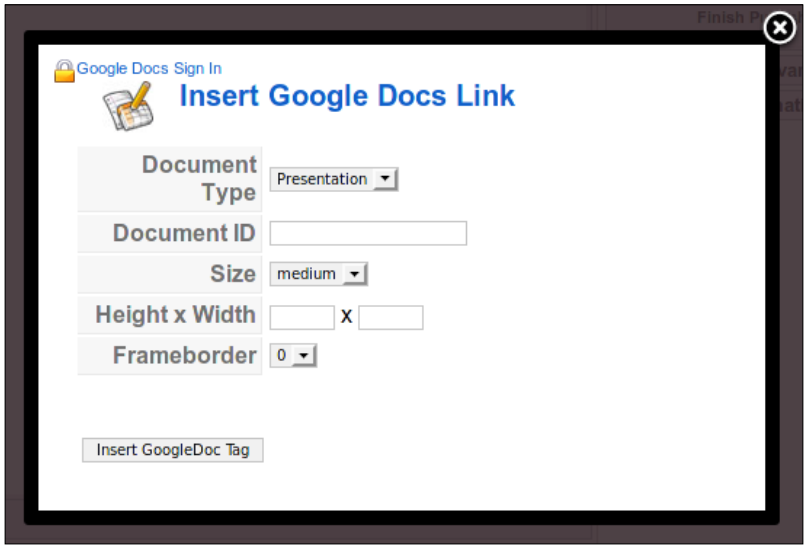
After installing the plugins, follow the steps as shown:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, displaying a list of the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **Content – GoogleDocs** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.

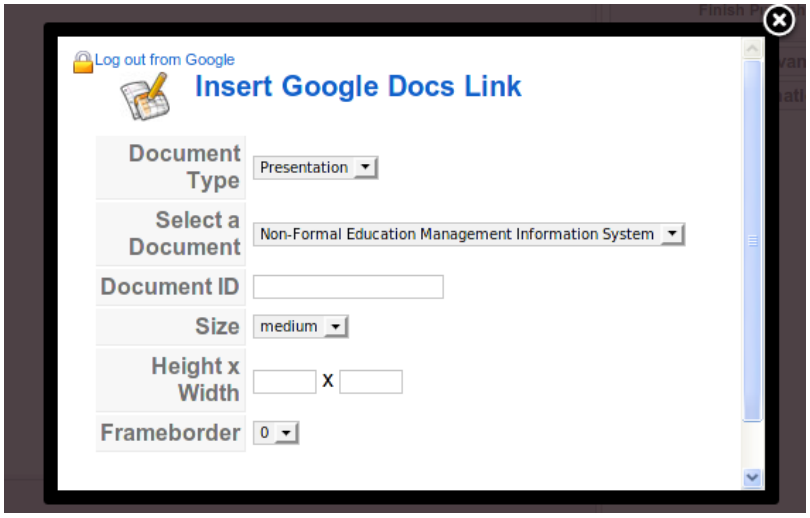


2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. In the **Plugin Parameters** section, select the default document type (**Presentation**, **Spreadsheet**, or **Document**), default Iframe size, Iframe border width, custom width, and height. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. From the **Plugin Manager** screen, click on the **Button-GoogleDocs** plugin and select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

4. Click on **Content** | **Article Manager** | **New**. This shows the article editor screen. Provide a title, select a section, and category for the article, and type the article text. At the bottom of the HTML Editor, you will see the **GoogleDocs** button. Click this button to get the following screenshot.



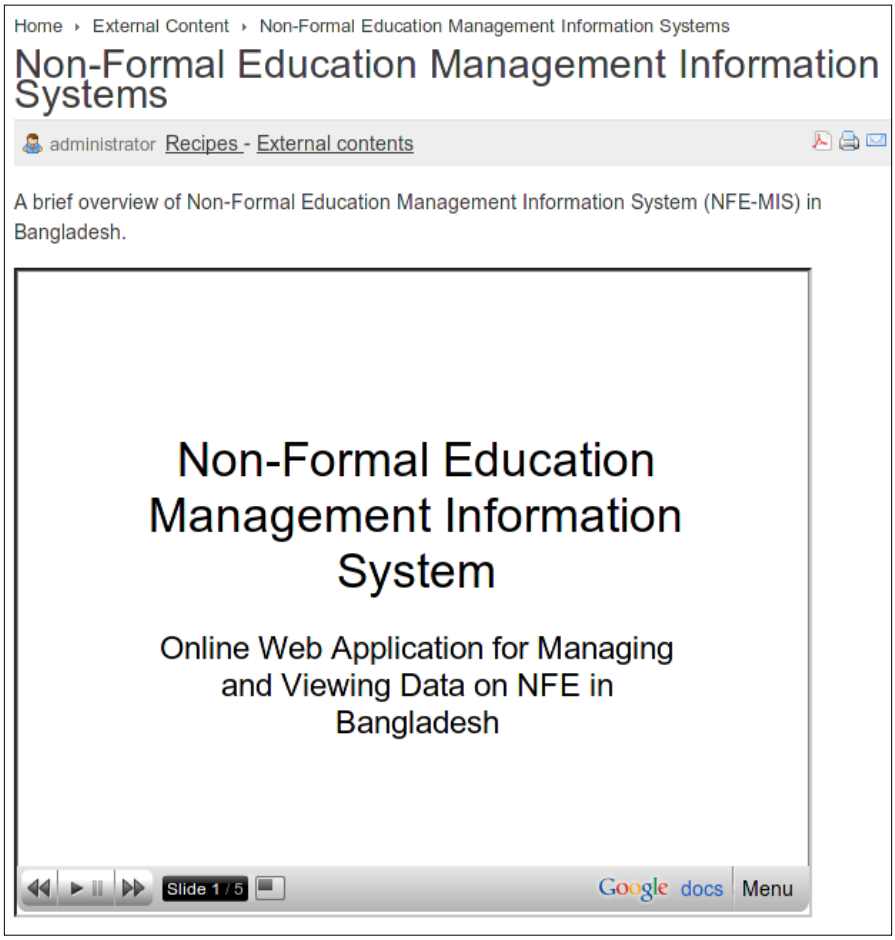
5. Click on the **Google Docs Sign In** link. This shows the Google authentication screen. Log in to Google and click on the **Grant Access** button to allow this plugin to use the credentials to log in to your Google account. Once logged in, you will see the **Select a Document** drop-down list just above the **Document ID** field.



6. From the **Document Type** drop-down list, select a type and then select the document from the **Select a Document** list. Click on the **Insert GoogleDoc Tag** button. This inserts a tag like the following:

```
{GoogleDoc docid="0AWuAU5rkRwVKZGtqYnZjel8xNTVjNjlyOXdjeA"
type="presentation" size="m" frameborder="2"}
```

7. Save and publish the article. Then preview the site's frontend and you will see the Google document embedded, as shown in the following screenshot.



As you can see, the preceding screenshot shows a presentation. You can add a text document or spreadsheet too.

Embedding PDF documents in articles

Have you seen Scribd documents? You may like to display PDF documents inside Joomla! content. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to display PDF documents inside Joomla! content items.

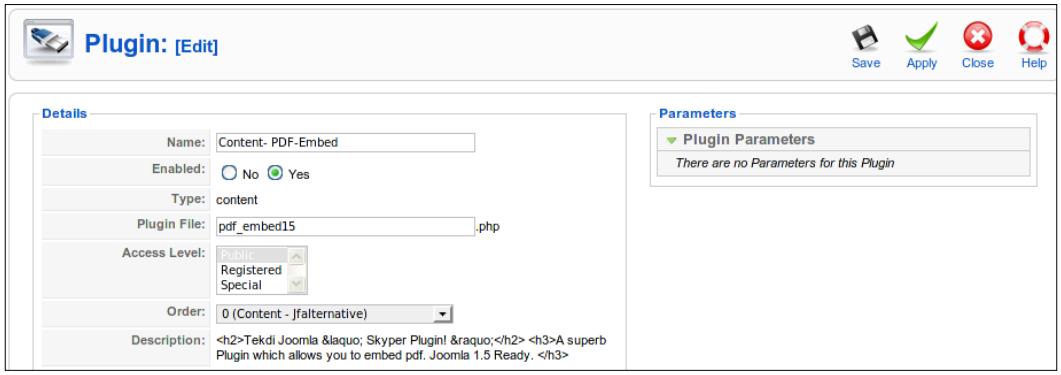
Getting ready...

A plugin named Embed PDF in Content allows you to display a PDF document inside content items. Download this plugin from `http://tekdi.net/Download-document/4-Embed-PDF-in-content-for-Joomla-1.5.html` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen. You need to register at the site for downloading the file.

How to do it...

Once the plugin is installed, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click **Extensions** | **Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **Content-PDF-Embed** plugin, and this shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.

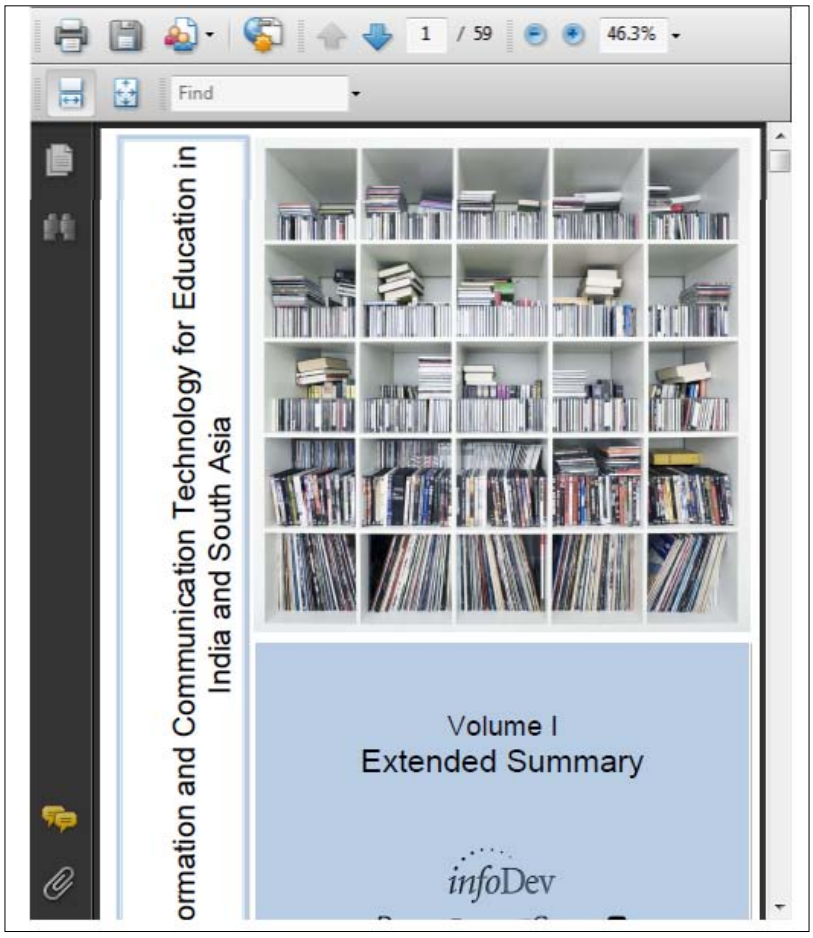


2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Now click on **Content** | **Article Manager**, and then click on **New** to add a new article. Write the article and insert the following code where you want to display the PDF document:

   ```
   {pdf=http://www.infodev.org/en/Document.889.pdf|500|600}
   ```

   That is inside { } bracket, type `pdf=` and then the full URL of the PDF document. At the end, you can specify the width and height of the display screen.
4. Publish the article.

5. Preview the site's frontend and click on the article you have just published. This shows the PDF document embedded, as shown in the following screenshot:



For displaying the PDF document, the web browser must be configured to handle PDF documents.

Adding a map directory

A directory of with maps will be interesting for some sites. For example, you may like to add a directory of all educational institutions in your city and display their location on a Google Map. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add a map directory to your Joomla! website.

Getting ready...

The PhocaMap component allows you to build map directories using Google Map. Download this component from `http://www.phoca.cz/download/category/37-phoca-maps-component` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

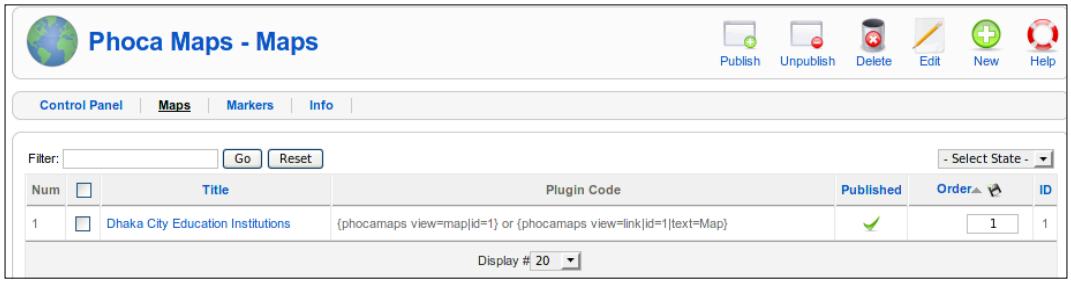
How to do it...

After installing the component, follow these steps:

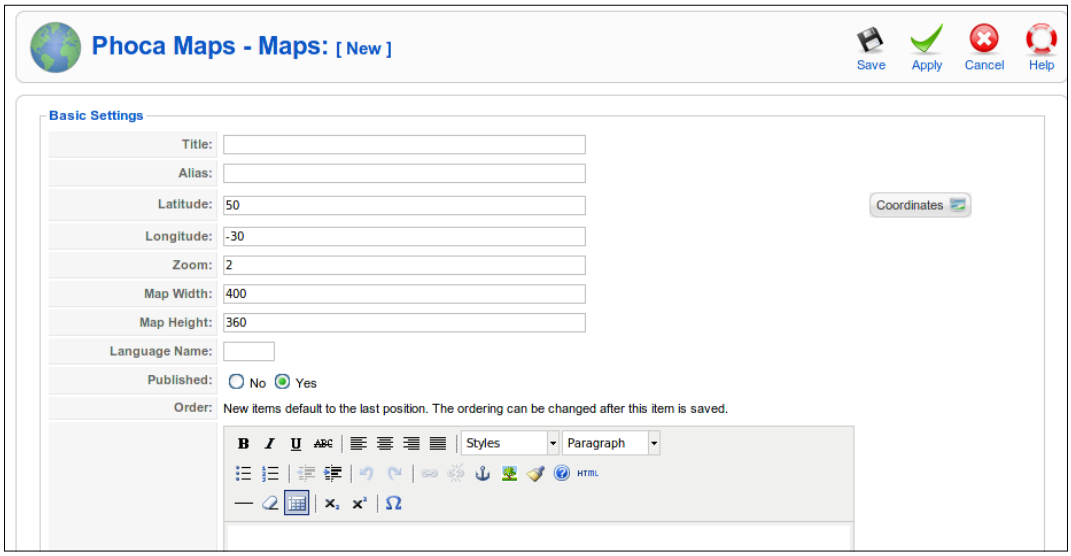
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Phoca Maps**. This shows the **Phoca Maps - Control Panel**.



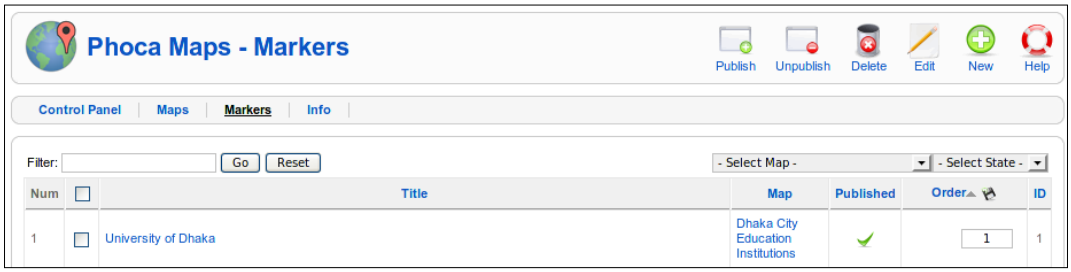
2. Click on the **Maps** icon. This shows the **Phoca Maps - Maps** screen, listing the available maps.



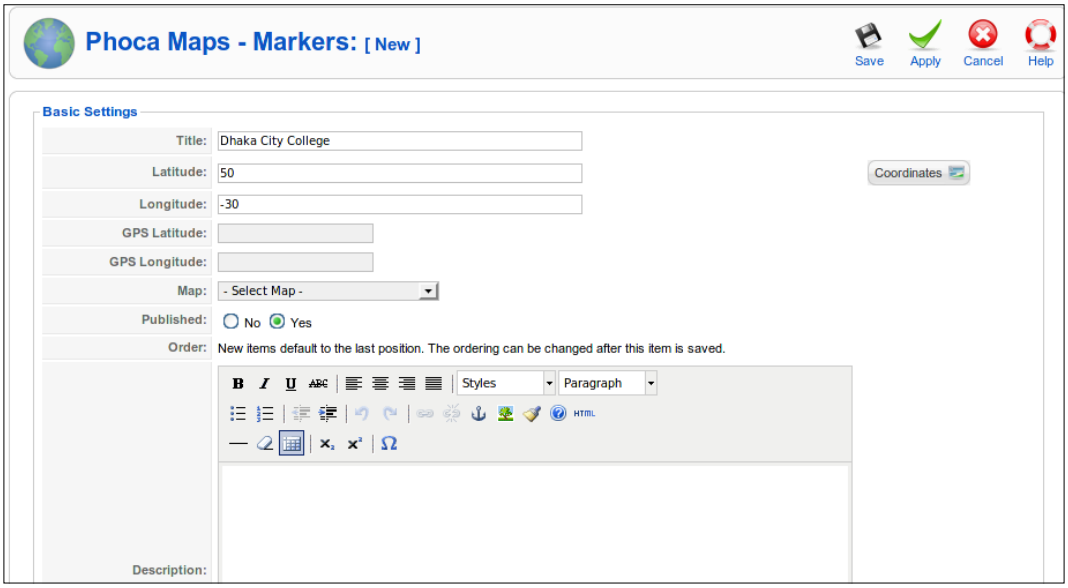
3. Click on the **New** icon in the toolbar. This shows the **Phoca Maps – Maps: [New]** screen.



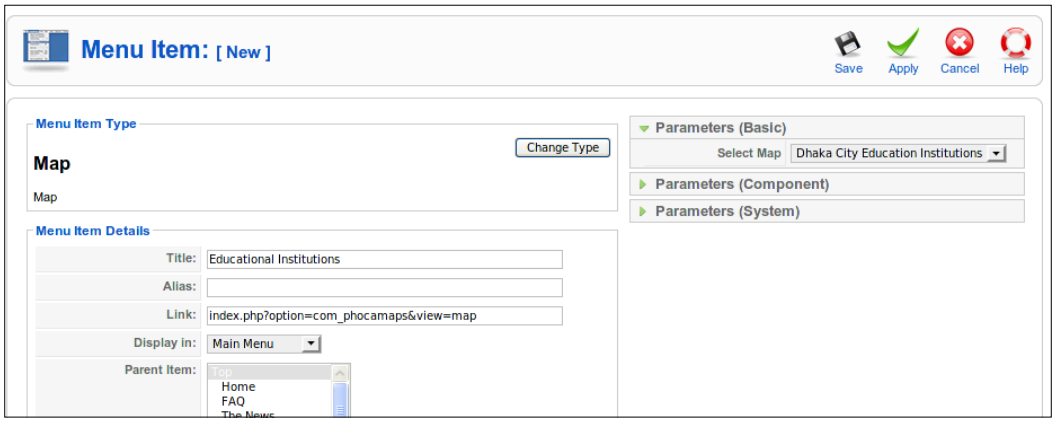
4. Type a **Title** for the map. Specify **Latitude** and **Longitude**, this will be the centre point for the map. You can click on the **Coordinates** button to select a place and that will set the **Latitude** and **Longitude** for that place. Specify **Zoom**, **Map Width**, and **Map Height**. Then select **Yes** in the **Published** field. Type a description of the map in the **Description** box.
5. From the **Design Settings** section, select a shading that will be used for the map. Then specify other options, such as **Map Type**, **Map Type Control**, **Map Type Control Position**, and so on. Select **Yes** in the **Display Get Route Form** drop-down list. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
6. Click on **Markers**, and this shows the **Phoca Maps – Markers** screen, listing the available markers.



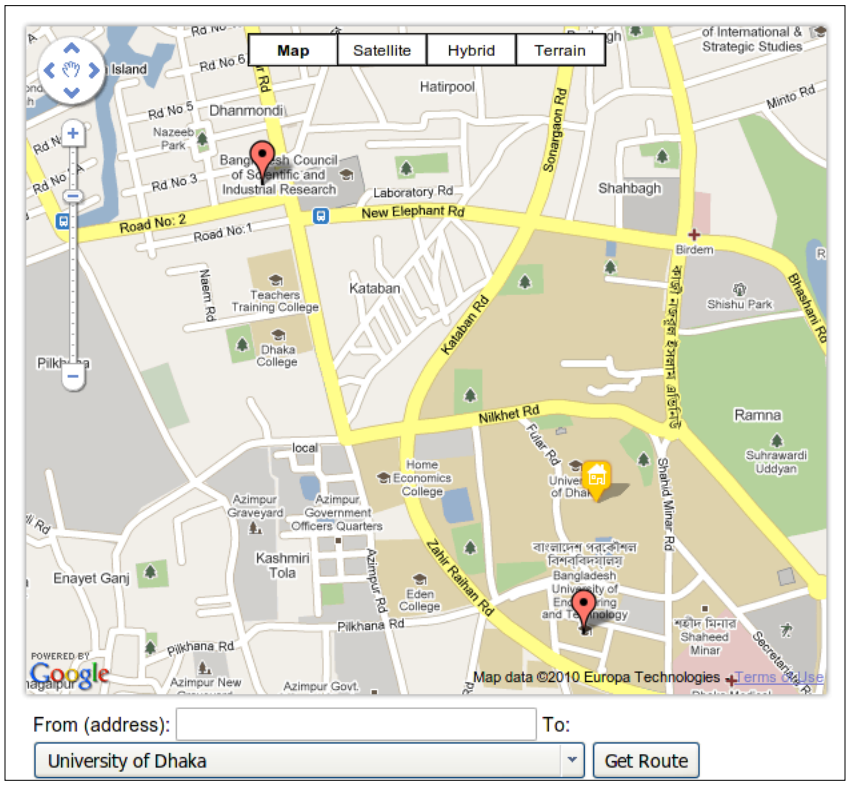
7. Click on the **New** icon in the toolbar. This shows **Phoca Maps – Markers: [New]** screen.



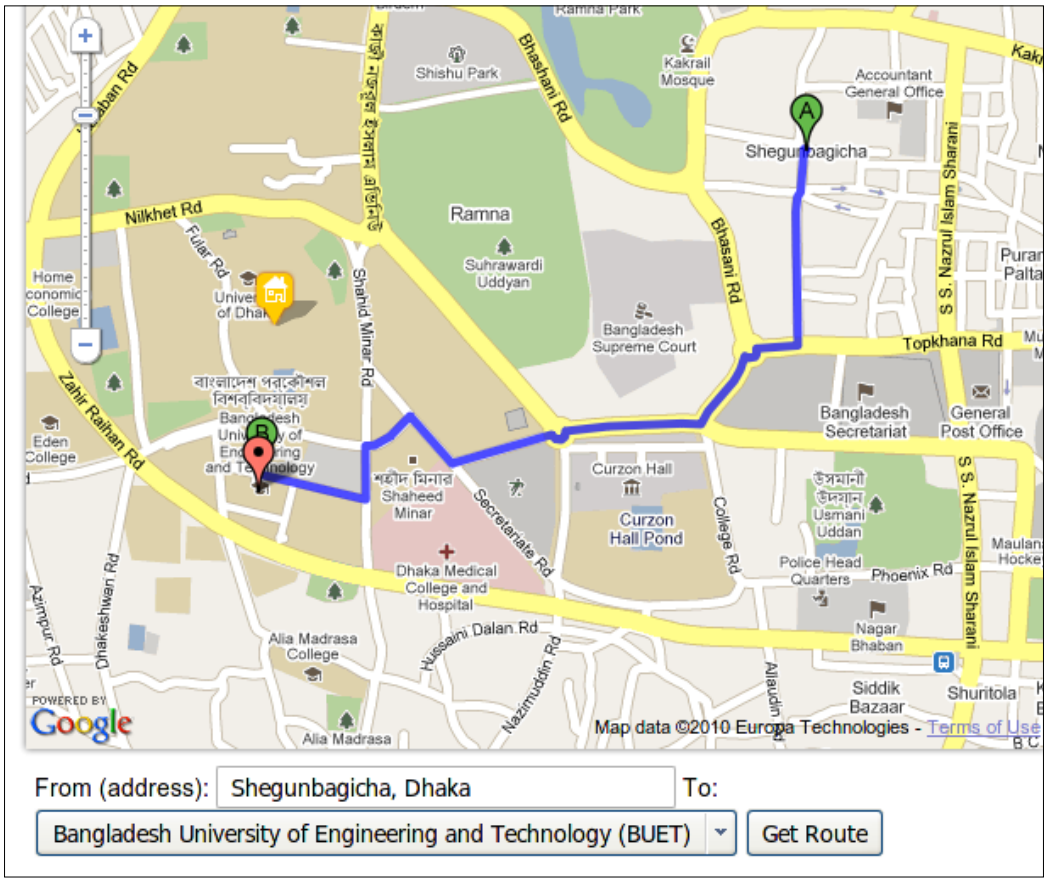
8. Type a **Title** for the marker. Add the **Latitude** and **Longitude**, or click on the **Coordinates** button, select the location, and click on the **Set** button. This transfers coordinates to the **Latitude** and **Longitude** fields. From the **Map** drop-down list, select a map, for example, "Dhaka City Education Institutions". Select **Yes** in the **Published** field, and type a description of the marker in the **Description** field. In the **Design Settings** section, select an icon for this marker. When done, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar. Follow this step to create as many markers as you need.
9. Click on **Menus** | **Main Menu**. This shows the **Menu Item Manager: [mainmenu]** screen. Click on the **New** button. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. Click on **PhocaMaps** | **Maps**, and you should see the following screenshot.



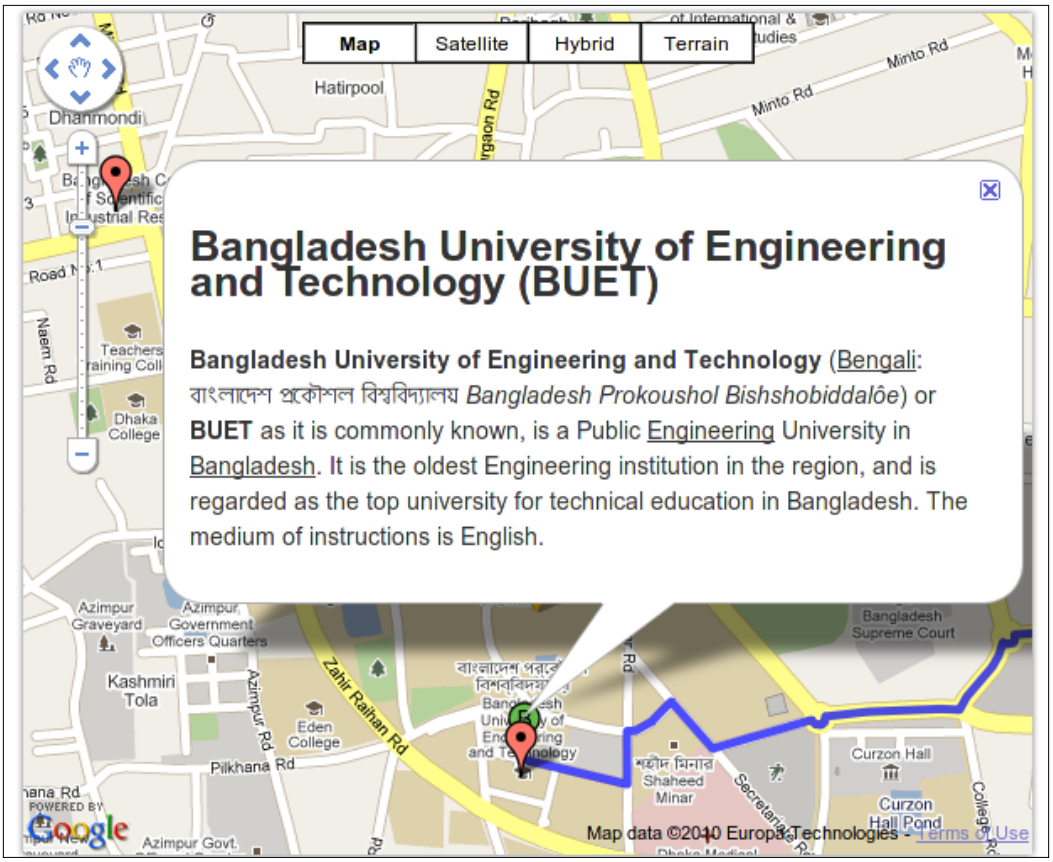
10. Type a **Title** for the menu item, select **Yes** in **Published** field, and select a map, for example, **Dhaka City Education Institutions** in the **Select Map** drop-down list under the **Parameters (Basic)** section. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
11. Preview the site's frontend and click on the menu item that you had created in the earlier step. This shows the map, as shown in the following screenshot.



12. As you see, you can type a location and select a destination, then click on the **Get Route** button to get the route to that destination.



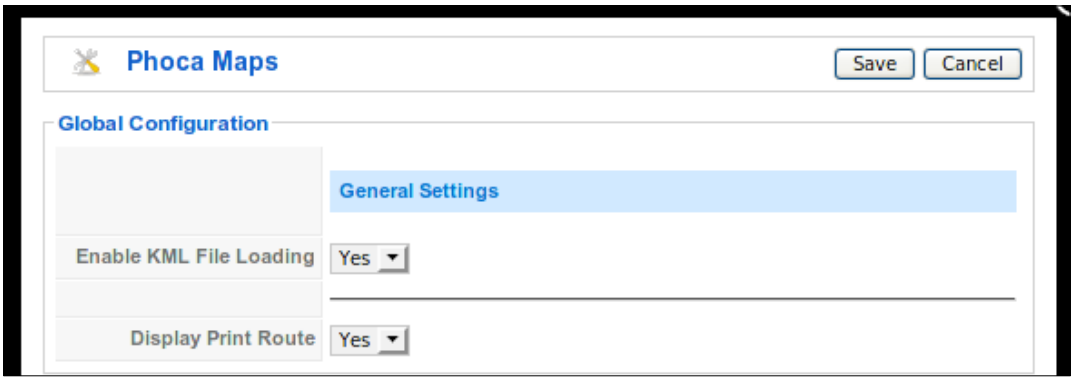
13. Clicking on the marker icons shows the info-tip for that institution.



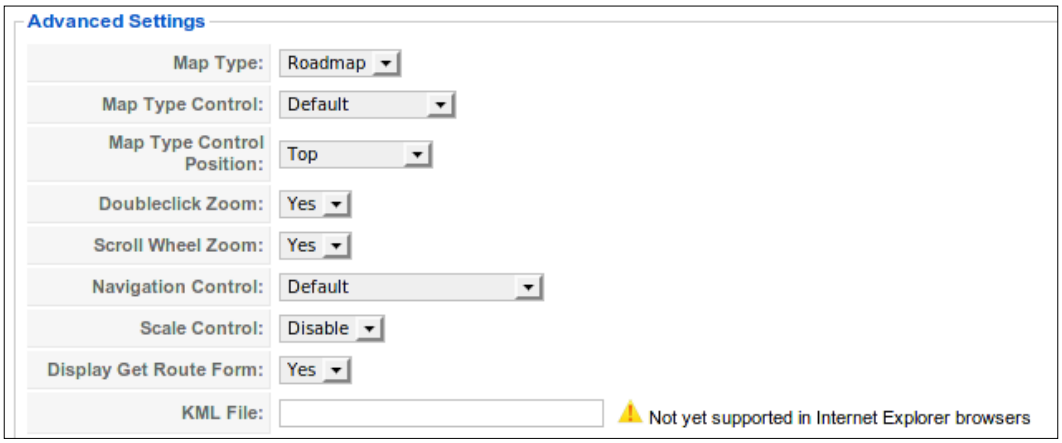
You can create as many markers as you need, all markers will be displayed on your map.

There's more...

Instead of adding markers one at a time, you can add multiple markers at once by using a `KML` file. In order to enable a `KML` file, click on the **Parameters** button on the **Phoca Maps – Control Panel** screen. This shows the **Global Configuration** screen.



Select **Yes** in the **Enable KML File Loading** drop-down list, and click on the **Save** button. Then click on **Maps** and choose a particular map on the list. This shows the **Phoca Maps – Maps: [Edit]** screen. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section on this screen.



In **KML File** field, type the path of the `KML` file from where the markers will be displayed. The `KML` file needs to be in a web-accessible location.

3
Sharing Content

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding social bookmarking to a Joomla! site
- Adding a "FOLLOW ME ON" badge
- Sending tweets automatically once articles are published
- Auto-compiling and e-mailing selected articles to subscribers
- Sending newsletters to subscribers
- Building newsletters with Joomla! articles

Introduction

There is a large amount of content on the web, and you may share your favorite content with others by sharing a bookmark on an online-bookmarking site, to a social network like Facebook, to a micro-blogging site such as Twitter, and so on. Content sharing is common for many of today's websites. Joomla! has many extensions that allow bookmarking and enable you to share your thoughts about any webpage or site among social networking and bookmarking sites.

At the very first step, you can add a social bookmarking (for example, adding a bookmark to Delicious) feature to a Joomla! site by using an extension named Sexy Bookmark. You can then show a badge on your site linking to your social profiles. The auto-tweet extension also allows you to send tweets automatically upon publishing an article, adding an event, adding a download, and so on.

Newsletters can keep your visitors updated about your site. You can build and send newsletters manually or automatically. Vemod News Mailer automatically compiles new articles from your site and sends the compilation to subscribed users. On the other hand, **ccNewsletter** (a popular extension) allows you to write your own newsletter and send it to the subscriber. In the middle of these two types of newsletters—automatic and hand crafted—you have Acajoom or Letterman, that allows you to write your own message as well as insert Joomla! articles and attachments to newsletters. This chapter focuses on such top extensions used for content sharing in Joomla!

Adding social bookmarking to a Joomla! site

Almost every site now has buttons to share with social networks, and Joomla!-based sites cannot be an exception. You can add a button for social networks so that visitors can share the content with social networks such as Facebook, Twitter, Delicious, and so on. In this recipe, we are going to show how you can add buttons to sharing a site's content to social networks.

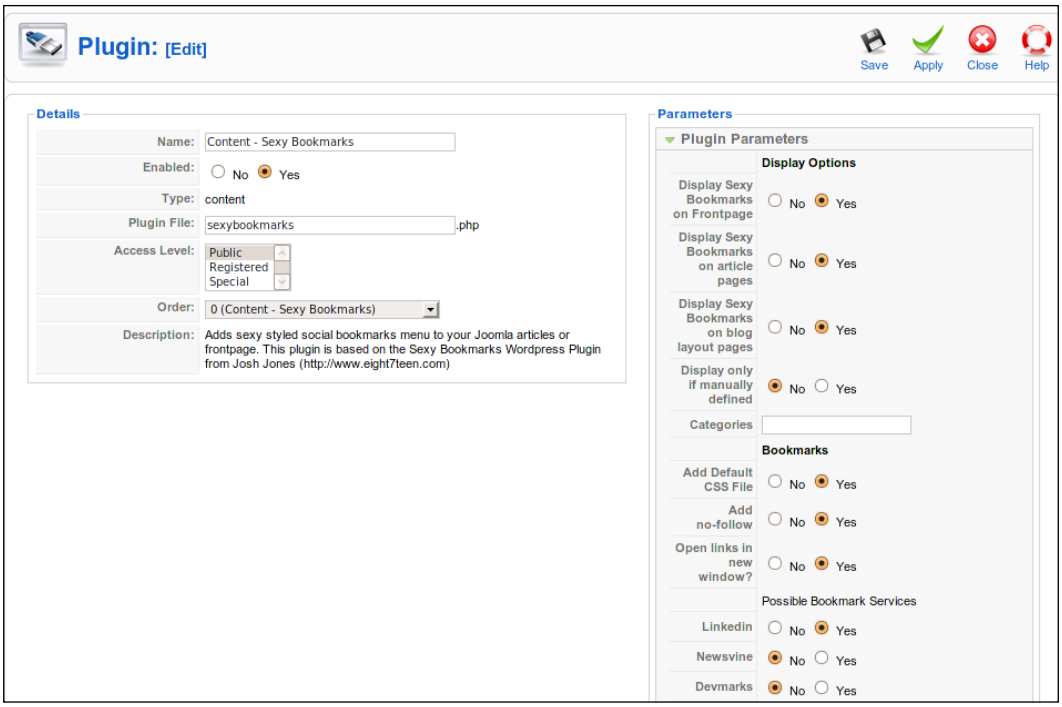
Getting ready

Sexy Bookmark is a plugin for Joomla! 1.5 that adds a button to articles to bookmark that article to popular social networks. Download the plugin from `http://www.ast-blog.de/joomla-sexy-bookmarks/`. Once you have downloaded the zipped installation package, install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in Joomla!

How to do it...

After installing the plugin, follow the steps as shown:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. It shows the **Plugin Manager** screen which lists all installed plugins.
2. Click on the **Content – Sexy Bookmarks** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.
3. From the **Details** section, check **Yes** in **Enabled** radio box. Then go to the **Plugin Parameters** section.



4. Select **Yes** for first three fields. Then select **Yes** for the social network services you want to enable. Accept the default values for the other fields.
5. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
6. Preview the site's frontend and click one of the articles to see the details.



At the bottom of the article, you see the buttons for bookmarking. Clicking one of these buttons will add the article's URL to that service.

Adding a "FOLLOW ME ON" badge

You may have multiple social network profiles including Facebook, LinkedIn, Twitter, Tumblr, and so on. Showing the icons of these profiles on your site will be a good choice if you want to advertise your social profiles. You can do this simply by adding a third-party extension. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add a "FOLLOW ME ON" badge to your Joomla! site.

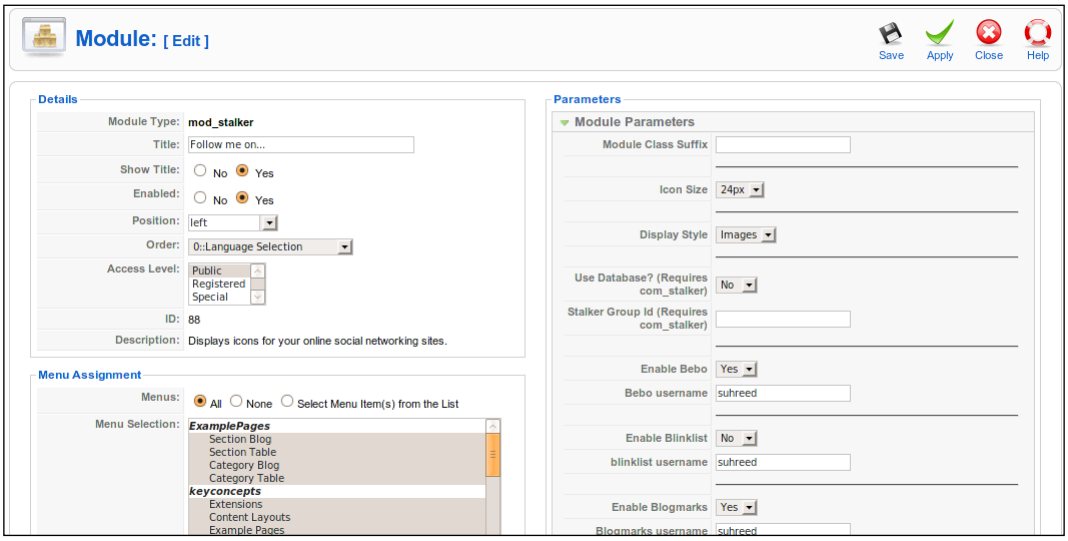
Getting ready...

Stalker is a popular extension for adding links to social network profiles. Download the Stalker installation package from `http://www.nicktexidor.com/joomla-modules/download`. Extract the package after downloading. You will see three zipped packages inside the downloaded package: a component, a module, and a plugin. From the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen, install the module package (that starts with `mod_stalker`).

How to do it...

Once you have installed the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen listing all installed modules.
2. Click on the **Stalker** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the Stalker module.



3. Select **Yes** in **Enabled** radio box. From the **Parameters** section, configure the following:

   Icon Size: Select the size of the icon to be displayed.

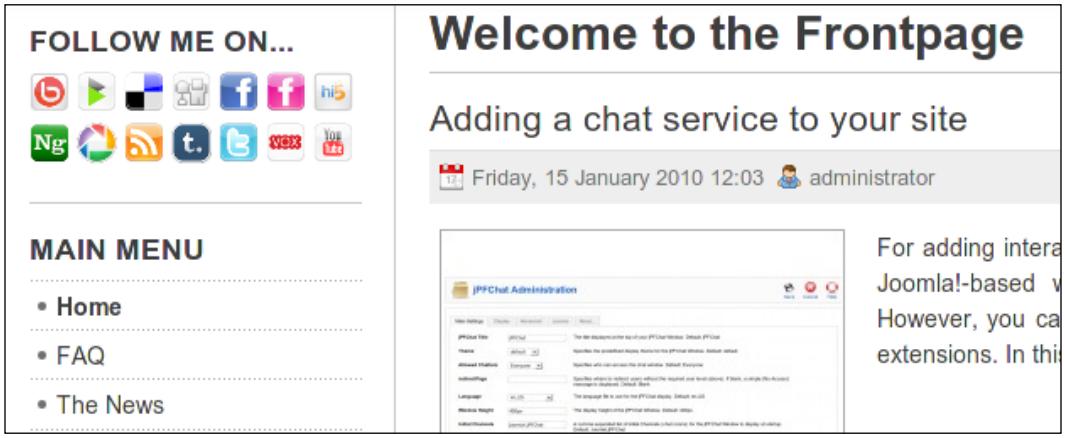
   Display Style: Select a style from the drop-down list. The social networks can be displayed as icons, list, or text. The default option is **Icons**.

   Use Database? (requires com_stalker): This should be set as **No** if you want to use only the module. If you have added `com_stalker` component and configured the services, then select **Yes** to use those services.

   Stalker Group Id (Requires com_stalker): When using `com_stalker` component, you can select a group to use. Use this only for a module, otherwise keep this field blank.

   Enable services: There are field pairs with enable service and username. For example, **Enable Twitter** and **Twitter username** fields allow you to enable the Twitter service. Select **Yes** in the **Enable Twitter** field and then type your username for Twitter in the next field. Enable all services that you want, and provide your username for those services.

4. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. Then preview the site's frontend. You will see the module showing the icons of the profiles you have enabled.



Now you can see the icons for the social networks that you had enabled in the module parameters section. Click one of the icons and that will show your profile on that network.

Sending tweets automatically upon publishing articles

Twitter is so popular that nowadays you can't be social without using Twitter! You may want to tweet for each article you publish on your Joomla!-based website. Third-party extensions can allow you to tweet from Joomla!. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to send tweets automatically upon publishing articles in Joomla!.

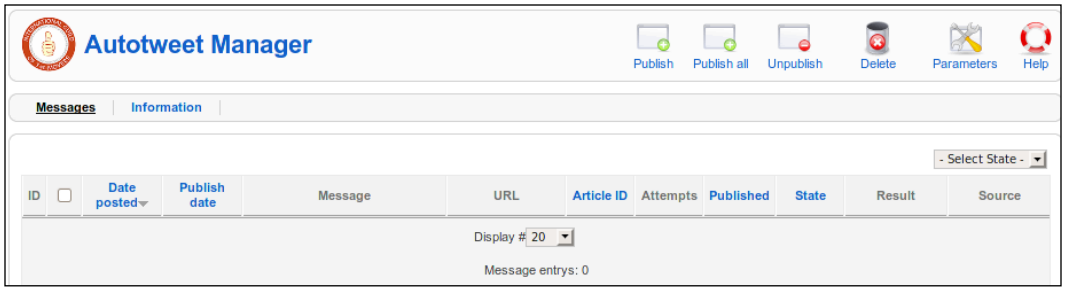
Getting ready...

The AutoTweet NG extension for Joomla! allows us to send tweets automatically. Download the latest version of the AutoTweet NG component and the AutoTweet Content Plugin from `http://www.1st-movers.com/downloads/joomla-and-community-builder-extensions/autotweet/`. You will need to register at the site first and download the files after logging in. After downloading the package, unzip it and you will find two files, namely, `com_autotweet.zip` and `plg_autotweetauto.zip`. You should also download the `plg_autotweetngcontent.zip` file. Install these files from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

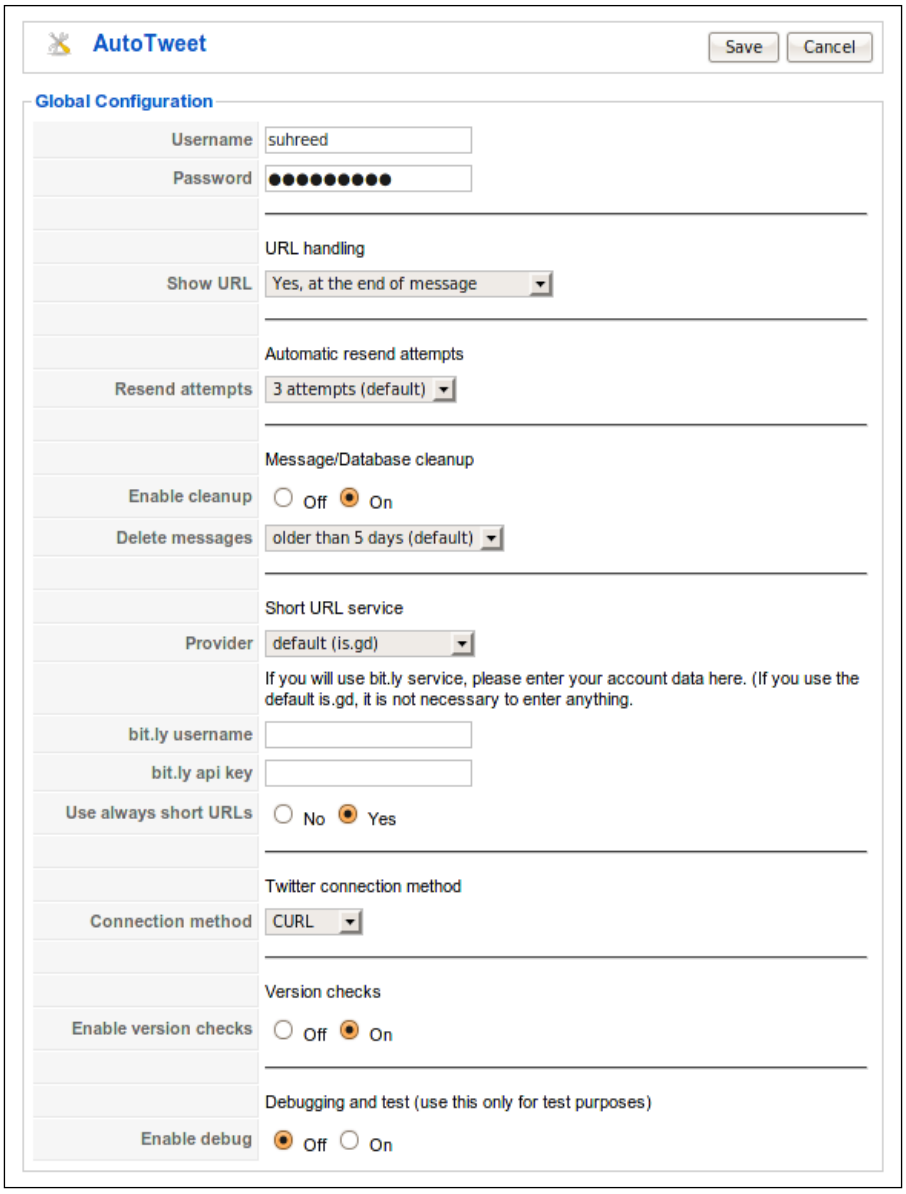
How to do it...

After installing the component and plugin, follow the steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | AutoTweet | Messages**, which shows the **Autotweet Manager** screen.

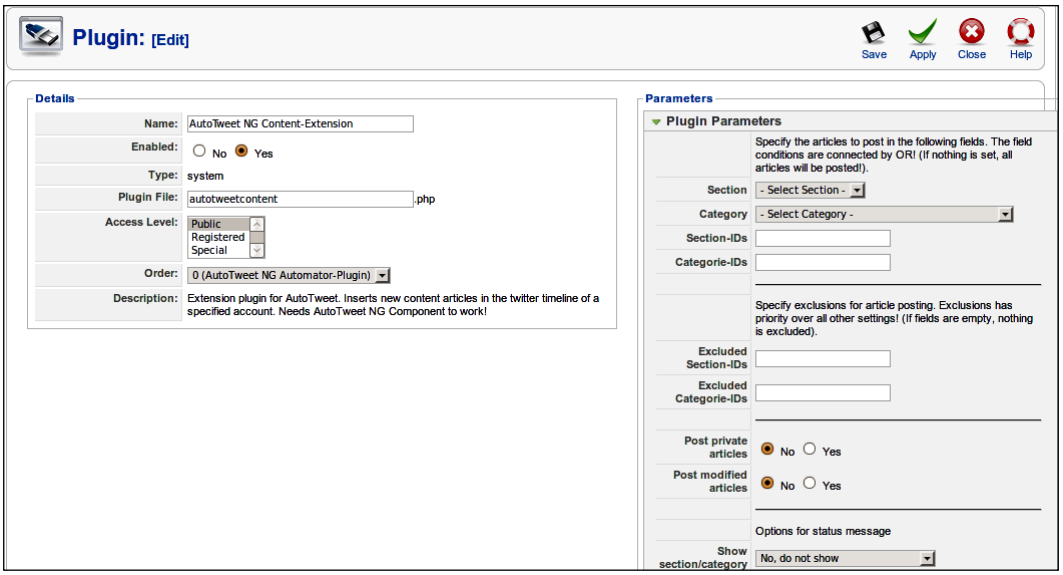


2. Click on the **Parameters** button on the toolbar. This leads to the AutoTweet parameter configuration screen.

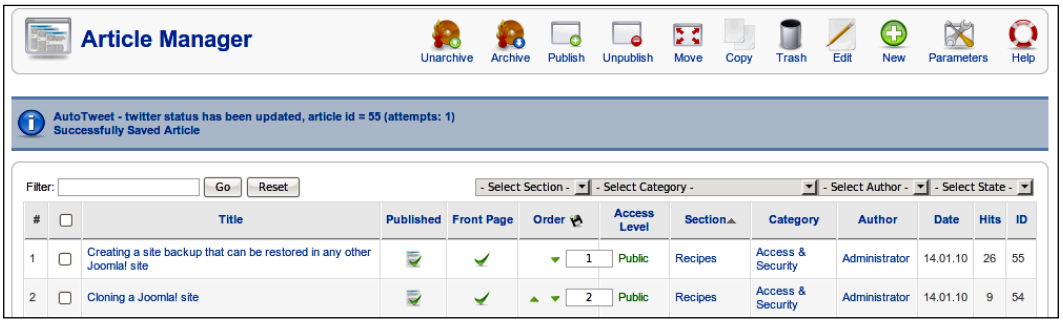


3. Type your username and password for your Twitter account in this screen. Accept the default values for the other fields, and click on the **Save** button.

4. Now click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen listing the installed plugins. In this screen, click on the **AutoTweet NG Content-Extension** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen for the plugin.



5. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** radio box. In the **Parameters** section, accept the default values. Click on the **Save** button.
6. Now create a new article from **Content | Article Manager**. Save the post with a published status. In a few seconds you will find that the link to the article has been posted to Twitter. You will be notified via a message on the successful update of your Twitter status.



There's more...

AutoTweet NG starts working with minimum configuration. That doesn't mean that you cannot configure it to meet your requirements. It has many configuration options through which you can use it as you want. The following sections highlight the configurations for the AutoTweet component and plugin.

Configuring the AutoTweet NG component

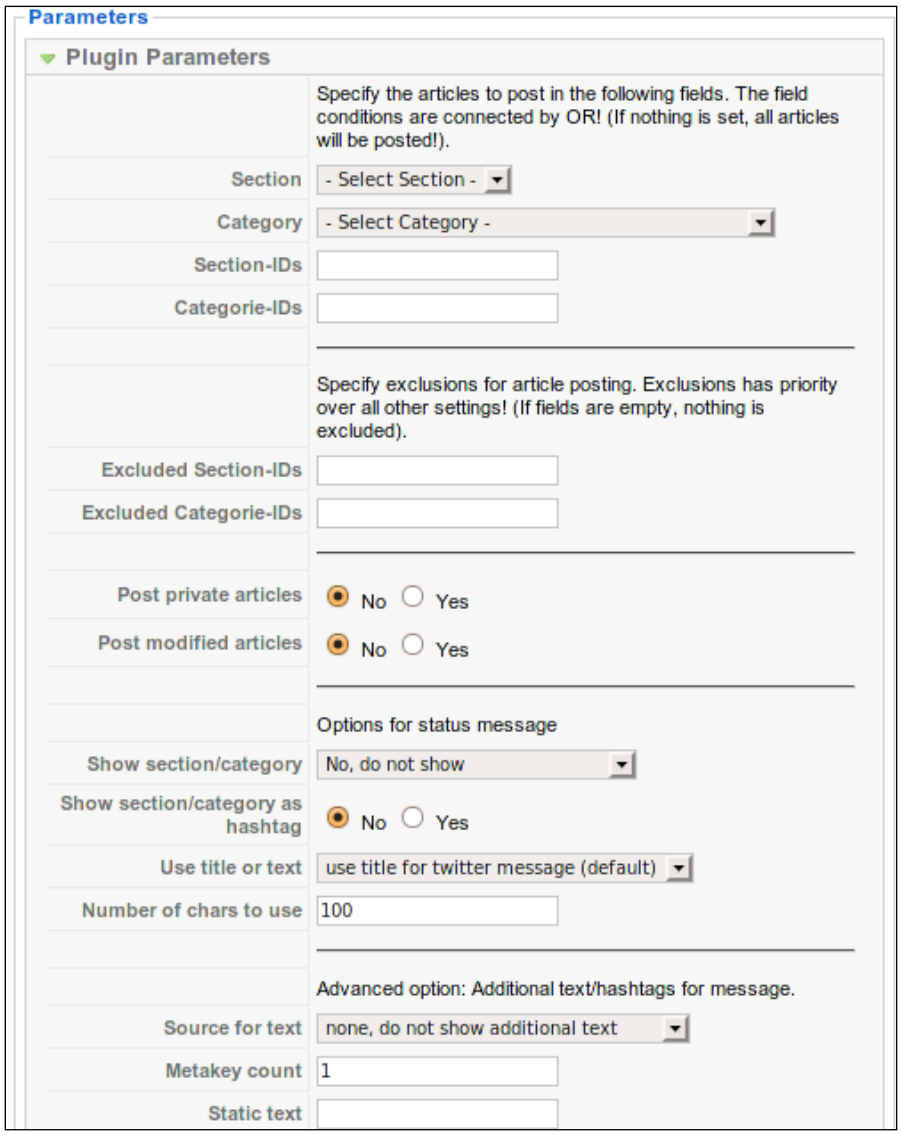
To configure the **AutoTweet NG component**, click on **Components | AutoTweet**. This will show you the AutoTweet control panel. Click on the **Parameters** button on this screen, and you get the following options to configure:

- **Username**: Type your Twitter username in this field
- **Password**: Type your Twitter account password.
- **Show URL**: Select how to show the URL of the article in your tweets. You can select **No, do not show**, **Yes, at the beginning of the message**, or **Yes, at the end of the message**.
- **Resend attempts**: AutoTweet automatically tries to send tweets for failed ones. Select the number of attempts for sending a tweet. By default, **3 attempts (default)** is selected.
- **Enable cleanup**: Messages shared into Twitter are stored in Joomla!. To enable cleanup of these messages, select **On** in this field.
- **Delete messages**: You can deletie old messages. The default value, **older than 5 days (default)**, is selected. This can be set to 10, 15, or 20 days.
- **Provider**: Select a short URL service provider from the list. You can select **bit.ly** or **is.gd**. The default is **is.gd**. If you select **bit.ly**, you need an account on the **bit.ly** site and will need to provide the credentials in next two fields.
- **bit.ly username**: Type your **bit.ly** username in this field. Your username is required when you select **bit.ly** as the short URL service provider.
- **bit.ly api key**: In order to use the **bit.ly** service, you need to type the API key in this field
- **Use always short URLs**: Always select **Yes** to use short URLs, irrespective of the number of characters in the message. If you select **No**, the short URL will be used when the tweet length exceeds the allowed number of characters.
- **Connection method**: Select how Joomla! will connect to Twitter. You can use sockets (`fsockopen`), if that fails select CURL.
- **Enable version checks**: Select **On** to enable version check at the `1st-movers.com` site
- **Enable debug**: You can enable debugging for the AutoTweet NG component by selecting **On** in this field

As you can see, you can customize many features from the parameters of **AutoTweet NG component**.

Configuring the AutoTweet content plugin

The **AutoTweet content plugin** is used to automatically send tweets upon publishing an article. To configure this plugin, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager** which shows the **Plugin Manager** screen. Then click on **AutoTweet NG Content-Extension** (this shows a **Plugin: [Edit]** screen for this plugin).



From the **Plugin Parameters** section, you can select the section and category for which tweets will be sent. Alternatively, you can type a comma-separated list of sections and categories in the **Section-IDs** and **Categorie-IDs** field. You can also specify which sections and categories will be excluded.

You are also able to publish private and updated articles. The message may also contain a section and category name, as normal text or hash tag.

Adding automatic tweeting for other content types

Automatic tweeting can be enabled for other components, too. To do so, you will need to download extensions for other components from the `http://www.1st-movers.com/downloads/joomla-and-community-builder-extensions/autotweet/` page. Currently, extensions are available for the following components:

- EventList
- K2
- Kunena
- Phoca Download
- QuickFAQ
- Remository
- Simple Calendar
- SOBI2

Download the appropriate extension for your component, install and configure it. Tweets will be published with the new content from those components. For example, if you install and configure the extension for Phoca Download, adding a new download to the file repository will send a tweet with the download link.

Auto-compiling and e-mailing selected articles to subscribers

If the content of your site changes frequently, you may wish to add a mechanism so that subscribers get notified about new content. In this recipe, we are going to show you how you can add that feature to Joomla! and send automatic updates to subscribers.

Getting ready...

The Vemod News Mailer extension allows you to send automatic updates from Joomla!. Download this free extension (component and module file) from `http://vemod.unimatrix.net/index.php/component/option,com_phocadownload/Itemid,83/id,1/view,category/`. Once downloaded, install both the component and the module from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

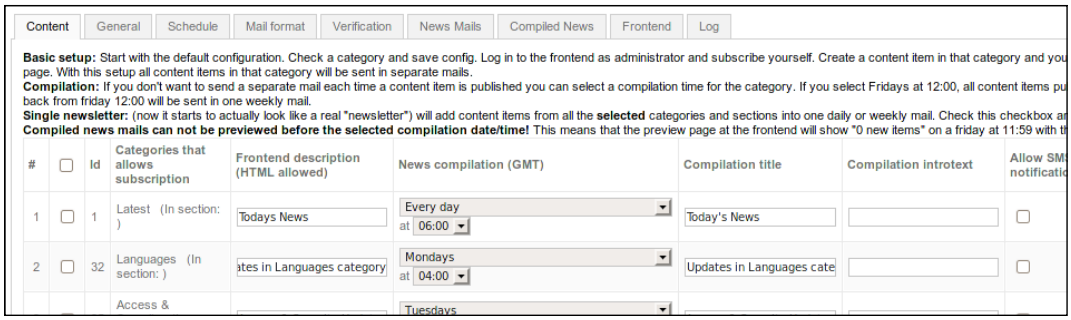
How to do it...

After installation of the component and module, follow the next steps to create automatic updates:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Vemod News Mailer**. This shows the **Vemod News Mailer Manager** screen.

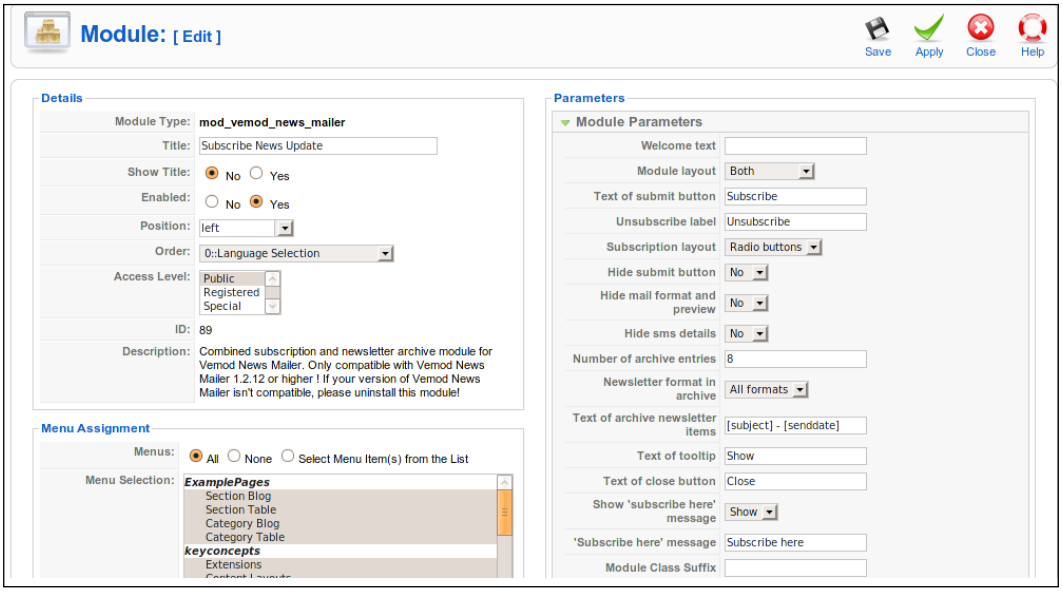


2. Click the **Configuration** icon on this screen. This shows the Configuration screen for Vemod News Mailer. The screen shows nine tabs. The **Content** tab shows the existing **Categories** and **Sections**.

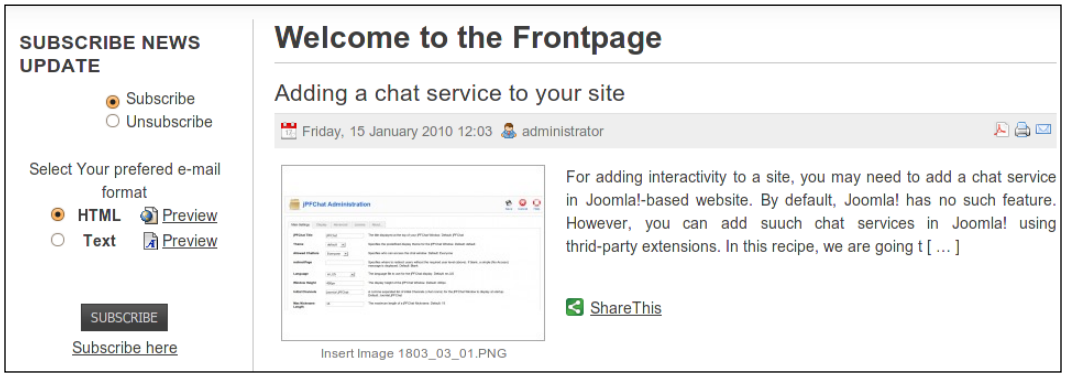


Select the categories and sections that need to be compiled. In the **News compilation (GMT)** column, select on which day and what time the articles will be compiled. Type the compilation name and intro text. If you want to send a notification by SMS, check the **Allow SMS notification** checkbox. At the bottom of this screen you will see the list of sections. You can select a section and compile a whole section as a single newsletter.

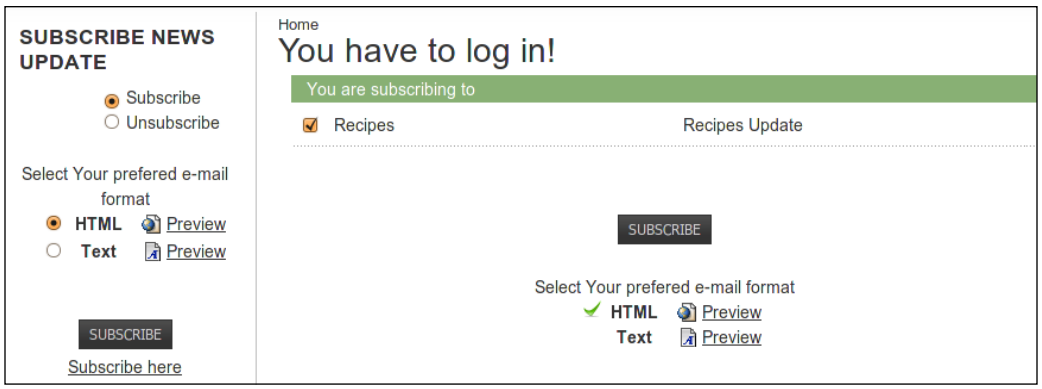
3. Click on the **Save** button to save your settings.
4. Click on **Extensions | Module Manager**, and then click on the **Vemod News Mailer Modules** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the module.



5. Type **Subscribe News Update** as the module's title and select **Yes** in the **Enabled** radio box. Select a module position and the menus where the module will be displayed. From the **Parameters** section, you can set other options for the module. Accept the default settings and click on the **Save** button.
6. Now preview the site's frontend. You will see the module for subscribing to the news update. Visitors can provide their e-mail addresses and subscribe to updates.



Click on the **Subscribe here** link in this module, you will see the options to select the newsletter you want to subscribe to.



Once you are subscribed, the compiled newsletters will be sent to the subscribed users at the time set earlier for compilation.

There's more...

Many things can be configured for Vemod News Mailer. The following are a few things you can configure:

- You can enable a subscription for guest users, enable the automatic addtion of registered users as subscribers, and so on from the **General** tab
- You can schedule news scans in the **Schedule** tab. Either select the **Use scheduled news scan** or **Enable crontab links**. You can also set the scan interval at the bottom in the **Trigger interval** field.

Sending newsletters to subscribers

Newsletters are common to many sites. They allow you to send articles and news about your site. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add and manage a newsletter for your site.



If you want to send messages and handcrafted articles in the newsletter, follow this recipe using ccNewsletter. If you need to build a newsletter using the articles published on your website, follow the next recipe, Building newsletters with Joomla! articles, that uses the Acajoom extension.

Getting ready...

There are many popular newsletter extensions for Joomla!. The most popular one is ccNewsletter. Download the ccNewsletter extension from the `http://www.chillcreations.com/en/extensions/downloads/categories/3.html` page. Once downloaded, extract the zipped package first. Then you will get the `com_ccnewsletter.zip` and `mod_ccnewsletter.zip` files. Install both files from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

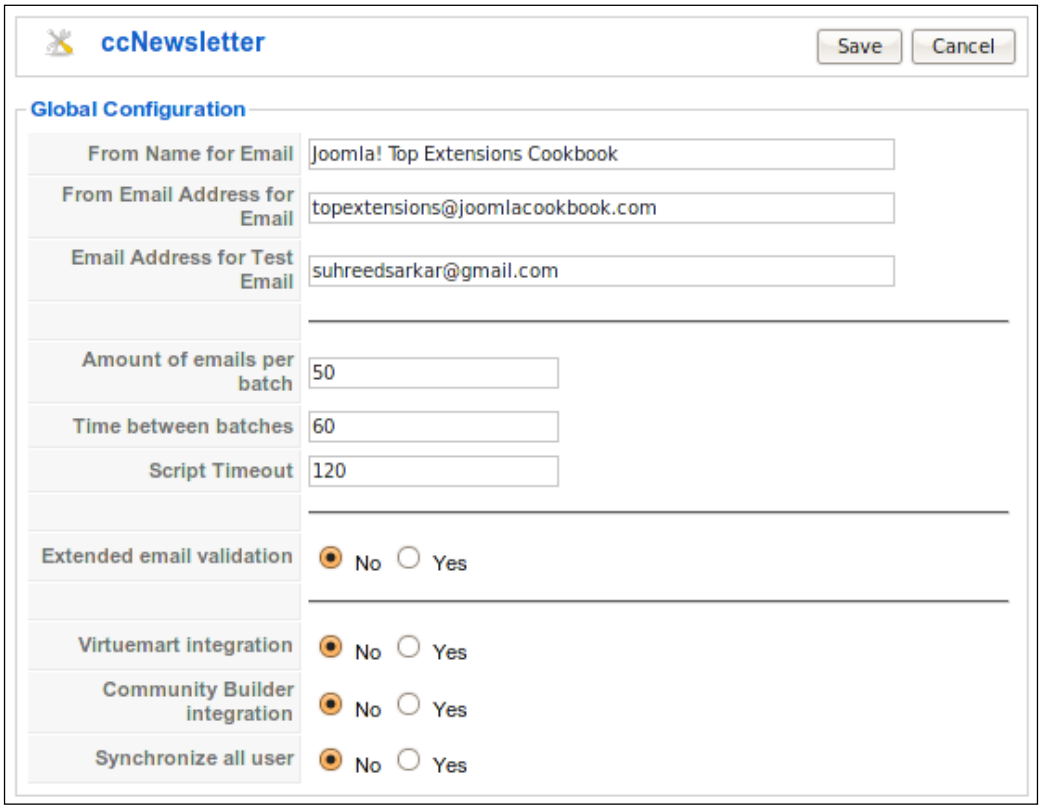
How to do it...

Once you have installed the component and module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | ccNewsletter | Newsletters**. This will show the **ccNewsletter - Newsletters** screen.

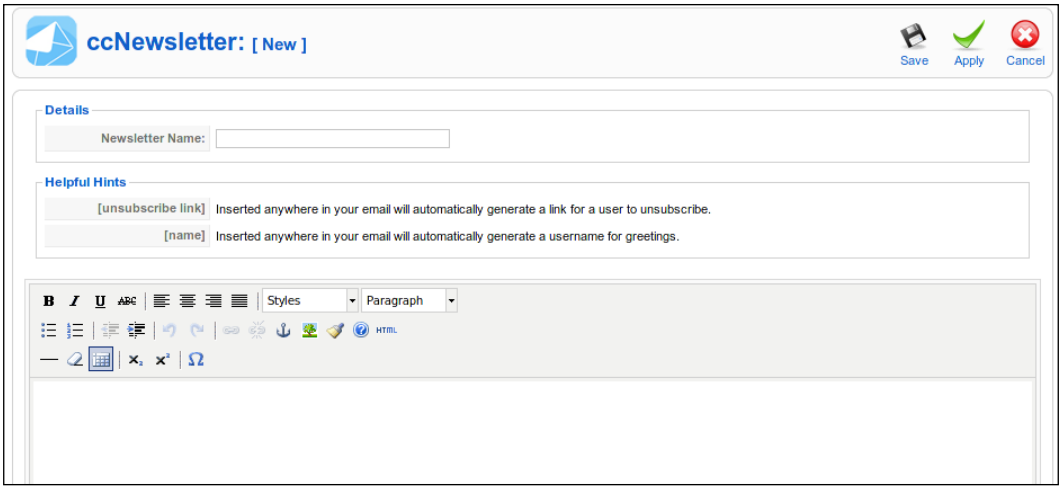


2. Click on the **Parameters** button which shows the **Parameters** for the **ccNewsletter** component.



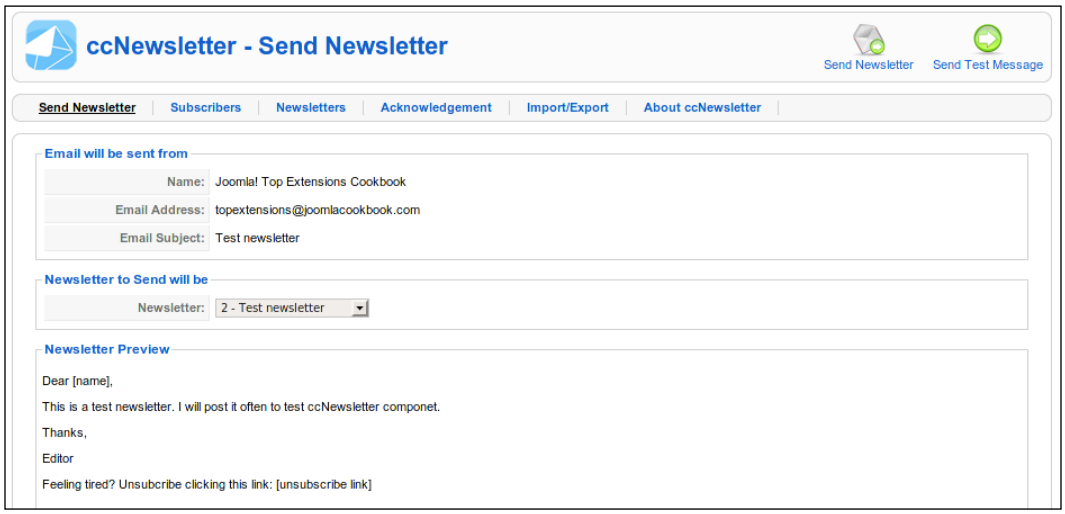
Fill the name for **From Email Address for Email** and **Email Address for Test Email**. Also specify the number of e-mails to be sent per batch, and the interval between batches. You can integrate this with the Virtuemart and Community Builder extensions. To register users as newsletter subscribers with Joomla!, check **Yes** in **Synchronize all user** radio box.

3. Click on the **Save** button to save the configurations.
4. To create a new newsletter, click on the **New** button on the **ccNewsletter – Newsletters** screen. This shows the **ccNewsletter: [New]** screen to edit a newsletter.



First type the name of the newsletter. Then type the newsletter message. You can insert images and use HTML from the WYSIWYG HTML editor. You can address each user with the `[name]` variable. When the mail is sent, each user will see their own name in place of the `[user]` variable. Finally, add an unsubscribe link by inserting the `[unsubscribe link]` variable. When finished writing the newsletter, click the **Save** button to save it.

5. Now click on the **Send Newsletter** link. This shows the **ccNewsletter – Send Newsletter** screen.



6. Select the newsletter you want to send. This shows a preview of the newsletter. To send it to the subscribed users, click on the **Send Newsletter** button.

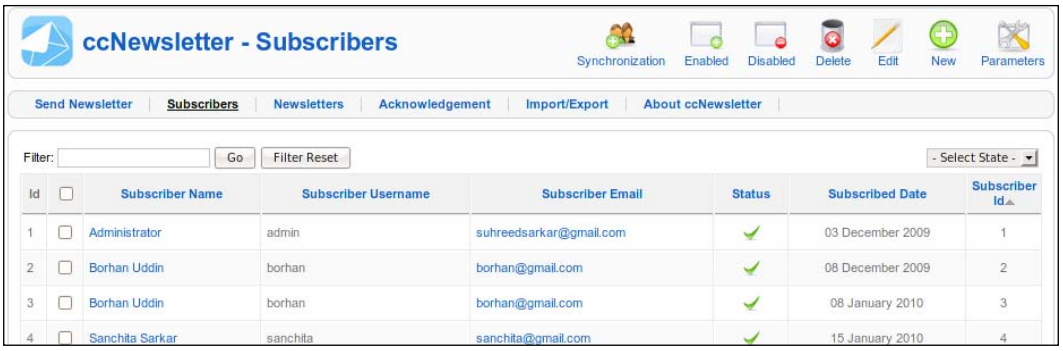
You will see a warning message about sending a large number of mails on shared web hosting. Read the warning, and to send the newsletter, click **Yes** link. You will see the **Newsletter Sent Successfully** message along with the list of subscribers to whom it has been sent.

There's more...

Besides sending simple newsletters, you can also manage subscribers and import or export newsletters to and from ccNewsletter. The following sections show you how to do it.

Managing newsletter subscriptions

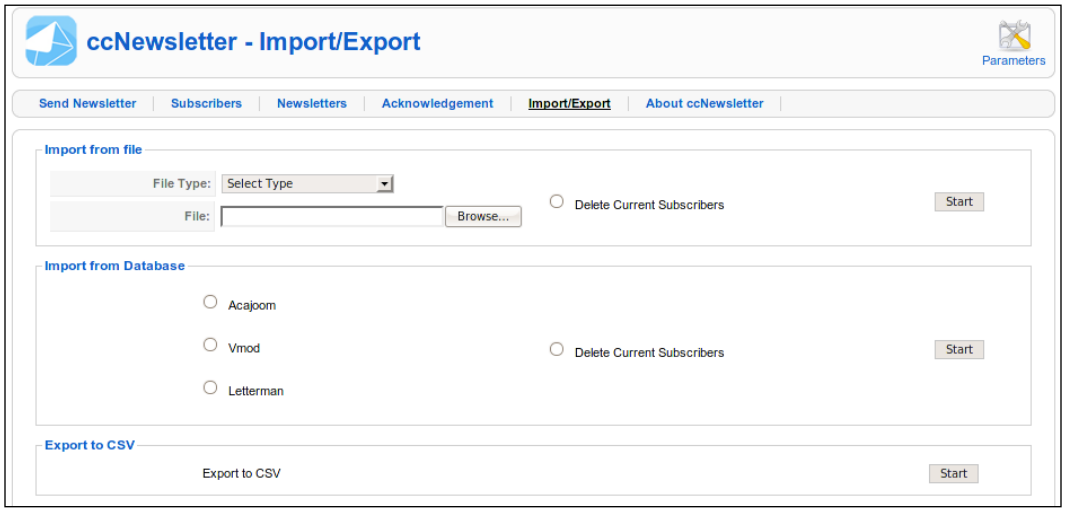
Visitors to the site can subscribe to the newsletters through the ccNewsletter module. Publish this module to the site's frontend. You can manage the subscribers from the **Component | ccNewsletter | Subscribers** screen.



To get Joomla! users as subscribers, click on the **Synchronization** button in the toolbar. That will show Joomla! users on this screen. You can also create a new user by clicking on the **New** button in the toolbar.

Importing/exporting newsletters

To import/export newsletters, click on **Components | ccNewsletter | Import/Export**, and you will see the **ccNewsletter – Import/Export** screen.



Newsletters can be imported from a text file, `CSV` file, or from other newsletter components, such as Acajoom, Vemod, and Letterman. Select the appropriate options, file, and then click on the **Start** button. You will get a message on completion of an import or export.

Building newsletters with Joomla! articles

Newsletters often contain articles from the site. You can build newsletters based on Joomla! articles. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to include articles in newsletters.

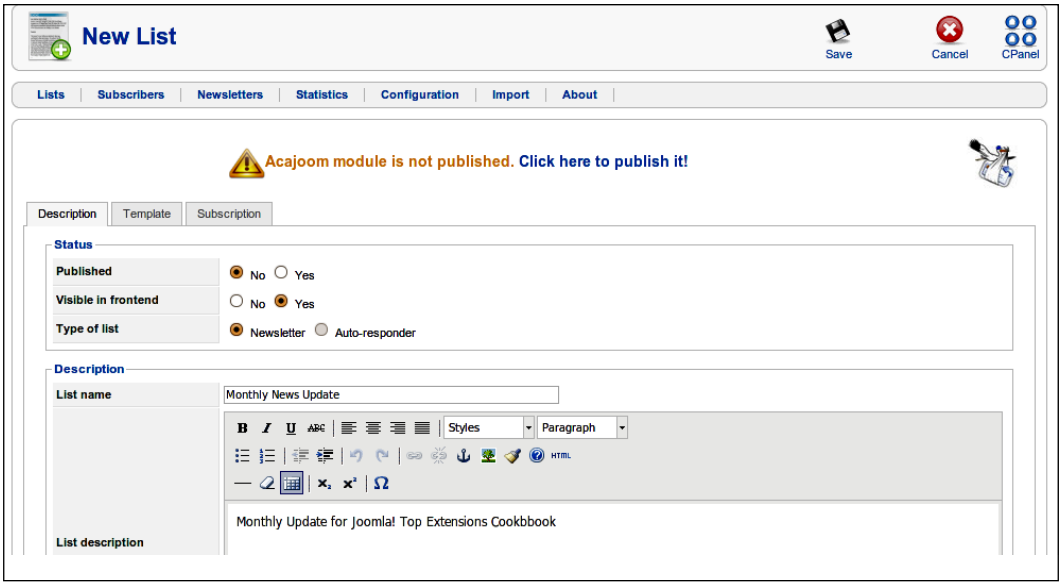
Getting ready...

Both Acajoom News and Letterman components support the inclusion of articles in newsletters. In this recipe, we will use Acajoom News. Download the Acajoom News installation package from `http://www.ijoobi.com/Product-presentation/acajoom/Enter-your-email-in-the-box-ABOVE-and-the-download-will-start-immediately.html`. Install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

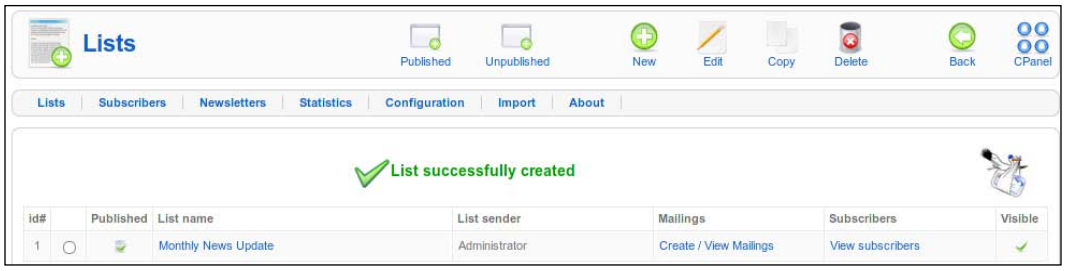
How to do it...

Once the extension is installed, carry out the following steps to build a newsletter:

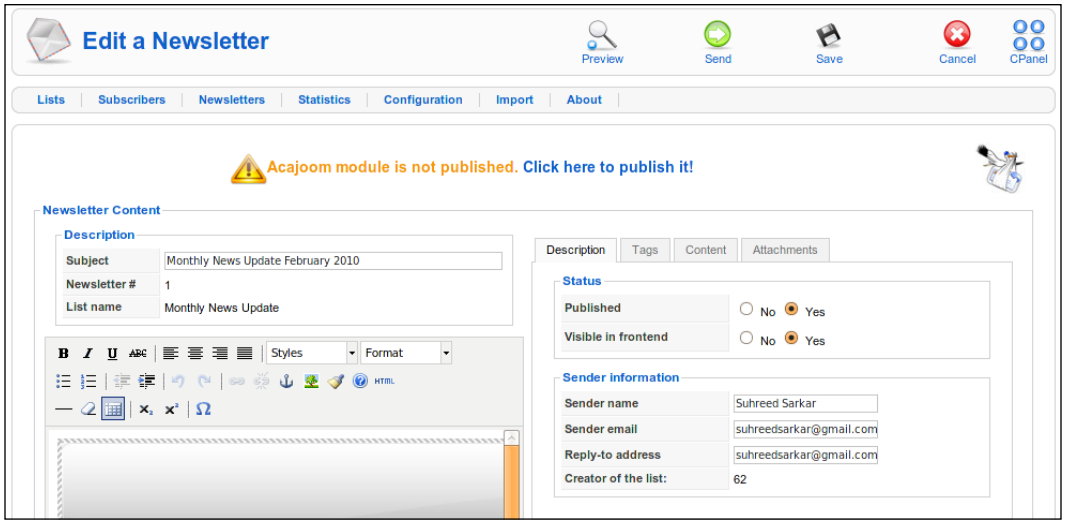
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Acajoom | Lists**. This shows the **Lists** screen. Click the **New** icon on the toolbar, and you will get the **New List** screen.



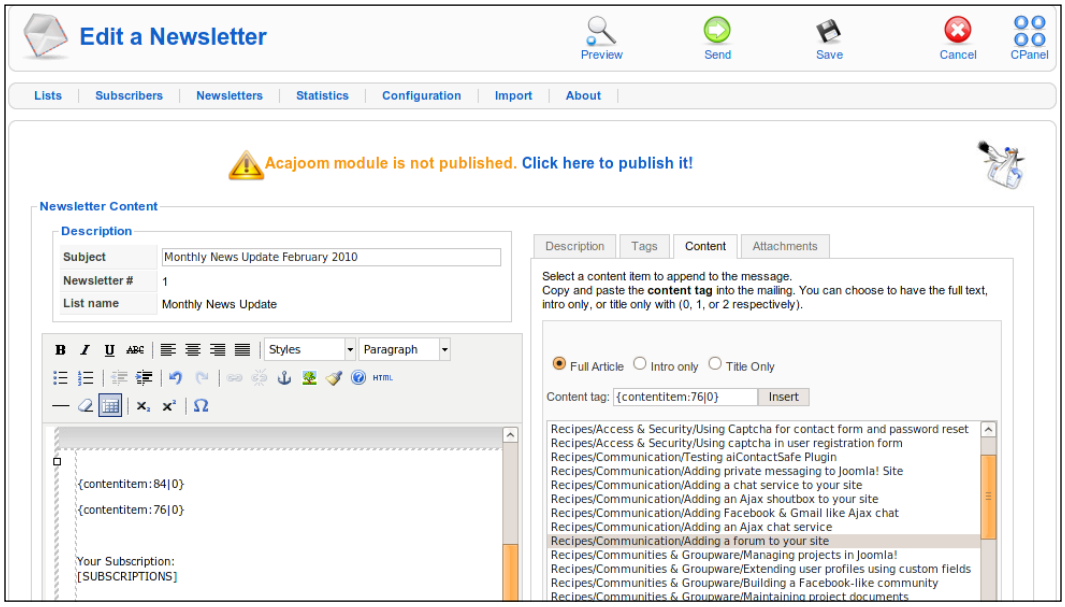
2. Provide a name and description for the list. Select **Yes** in the **Published** and **Visible in frontend** radio boxes. From the **Template** tab, define the template for the newsletter. You can add a newsletter header, footer, and main body contents in this template. Click on the **Save** icon when done. You will see the **Lists** screen listing the new list.



3. Now click on the **Newsletters** link. This shows the **Newsletters** screen. From the **Select a list** drop-down list, select the newsletter you want to send. Then click on the **New** button in the toolbar. This shows the **Edit a Newsletter** screen.



4. Type a subject line. Then select **Yes** in both the **Published** and **Visible in frontend** fields. Then click on the **Content** tab to the right. This shows a list of the published articles.



5. Select the article you want to insert into newsletter. An insertion code will be displayed in the **Content tag** field. Click on the **Insert** button to insert that code. You can choose to insert **Full article**, **Intro only**, or **Title only**. Insert all the articles you want to include.
6. Click on the **Send** button on the toolbar to send the newsletter.
7. You will see the progress of sending the newsletter, and finally a success message.

There's more...

Acajoom News has many other configuration options that facilitate sending newsletters. From the **Subscribers** section, you can manage subscribers for the newsletters. Acajoom also allows the import of subscribers and newsletters from the Letterman component. You can import newsletters from the **Import** section. The main configuration of the component is done in the **Configuration** section.

4

Managing Events and Calendars

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding an event calendar to your Joomla! site
- Showing your Google calendar on your Joomla! site
- Adding a booking system for events

Introduction

There will be many events happening in your organization. Whether you are a business, charity, or a not-for-profit organization, you will have events as part of your operation. For example, if you are a university, you have several seminars a year and may want to publish information about them on your website.

For Joomla!, there are many popular extensions to show events and calendars. In this chapter, we will discuss two popular extensions: JEvents and GCalendar. JEvents allows you to add events and show them through a calendar. GCalendar allows you to display the Google Calendar on your Joomla! site.

Besides showing events and a calendar, sometimes you need to add a booking system. For example, you are arranging a seminar or training and would like to publish the event information so that visitors can register to the event. In that case, a booking or reservation system can be added. In this chapter, we will discuss how to add a booking system for events.

Adding an event calendar to your Joomla! site

Event calendars are essential for many websites. For example, your company website may contain one event calendar to display the events. Showing event information through a calendar helps visitors to view your schedule easier. A good calendar application also helps you to schedule your work. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add an event calendar to your Joomla! site.

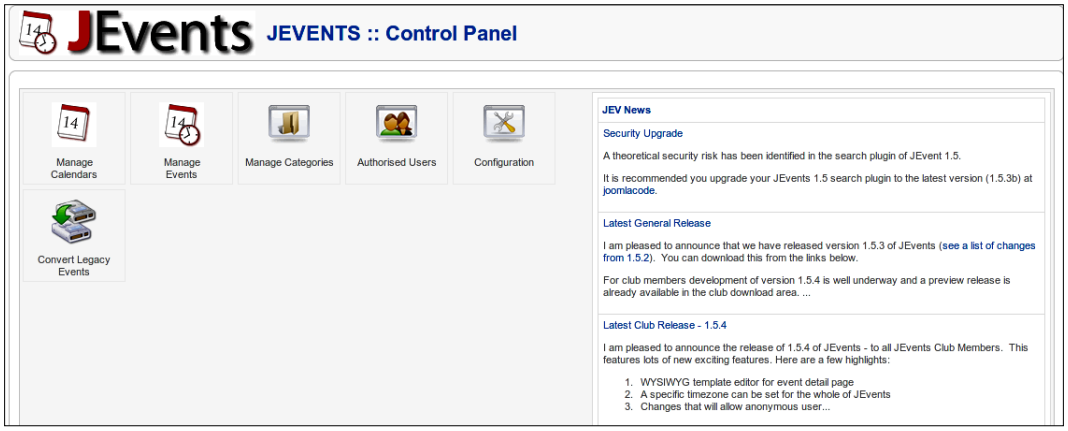
Getting ready...

There are many extensions to add event calendars to Joomla!. However, JEvents is the most feature-rich and popular extension. Download this extension from `http://www.jevents.net/jevents-download` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

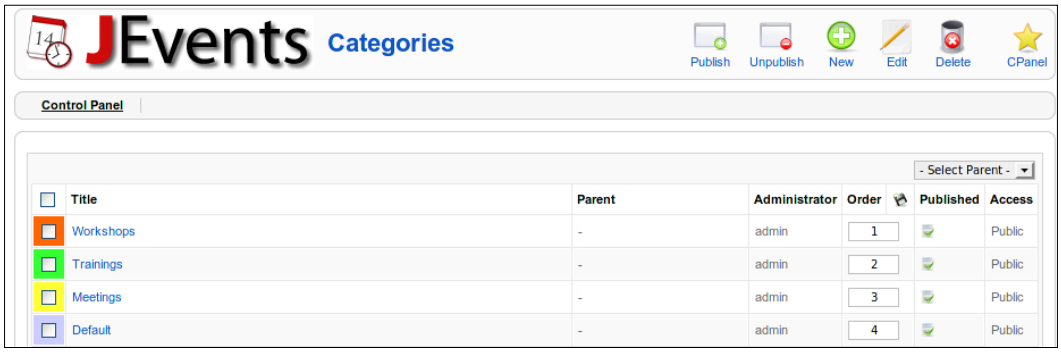
How to do it...

After installing JEvents, follow these steps to add the calendar:

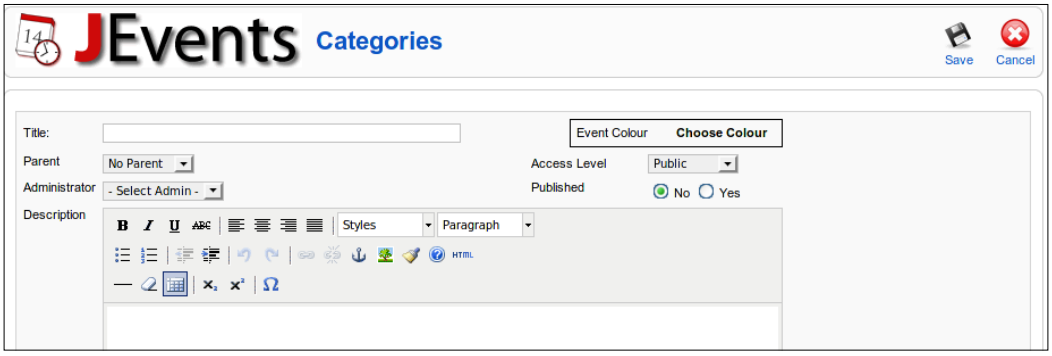
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, select **Components** | **JEvents**. This will show you the **JEvents:: Control Panel** screen.



2. Click on the **Manage Categories** icon in the **Control Panel** screen. This will show you the **Categories** screen, listing all the available categories, if any.

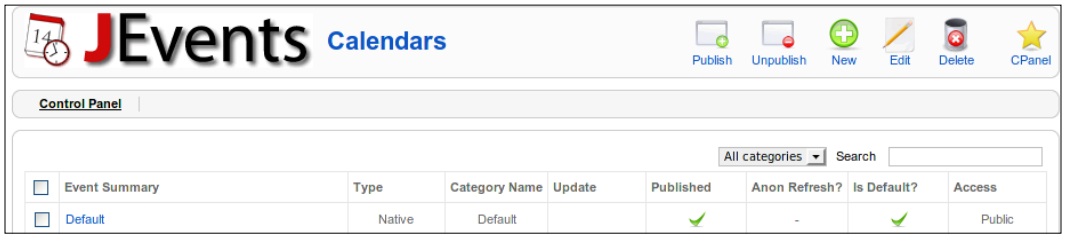


3. Click on the **New** button in the toolbar. It will show you a form similar to that in the following screenshot:

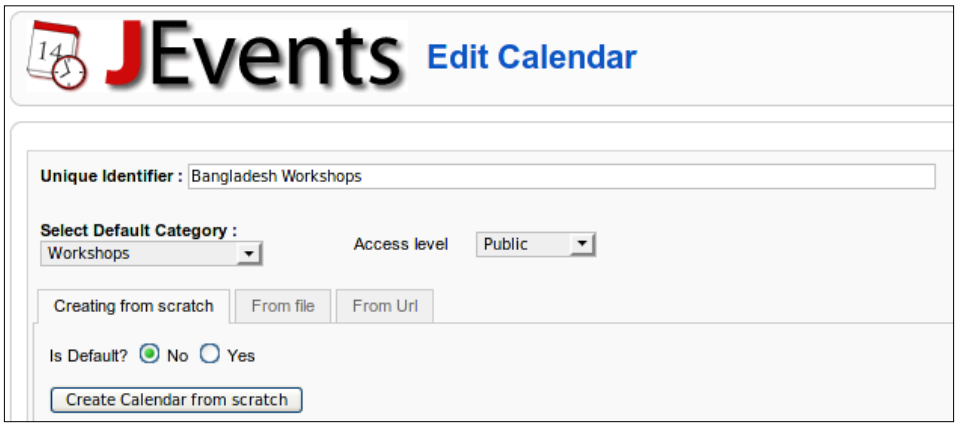


Enter a **Title**, select the parent category (if any), then select **Access Level** and **Administrator**, select **Yes** in **Published** field, and type a brief description of the category. From the **Event Colour** field, choose the color for the events in this category. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar. Repeat the step to create another category.

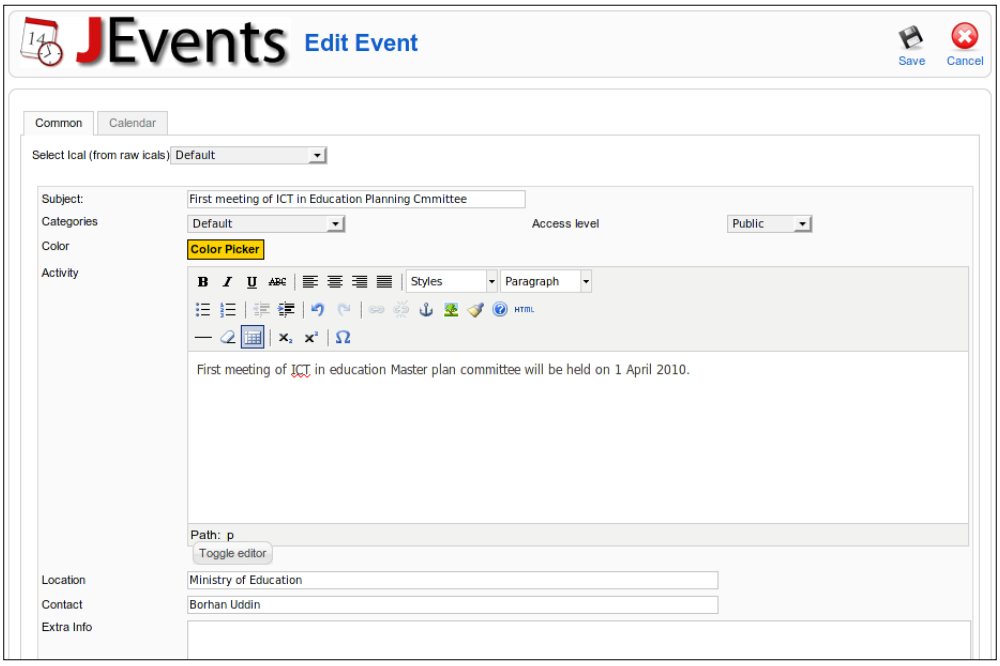
4. To go back to the **Control Panel** page, click on the **CPanel** icon on the **Categories** screen. Then click on the **Manage Calendars** icon in the **Control Panel** screen. That shows the **Calendars** screen.



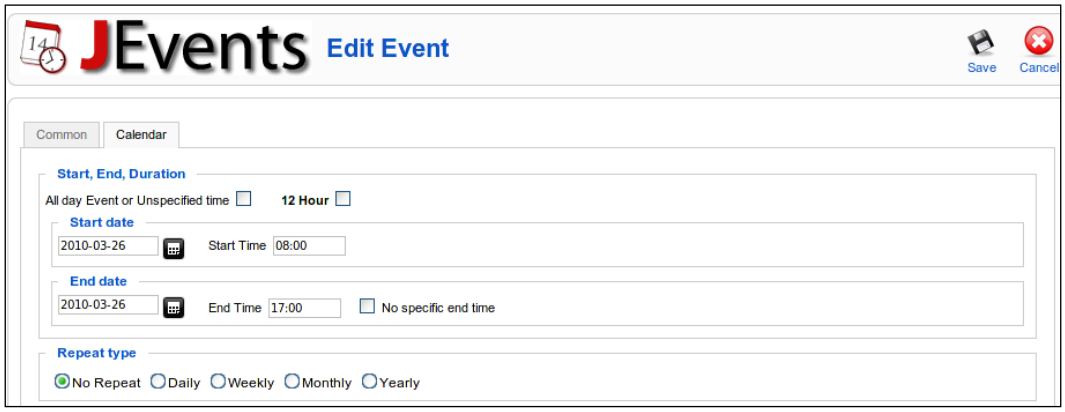
5. Click on the **New** button. This shows you a form similar to the one in the following screenshot:



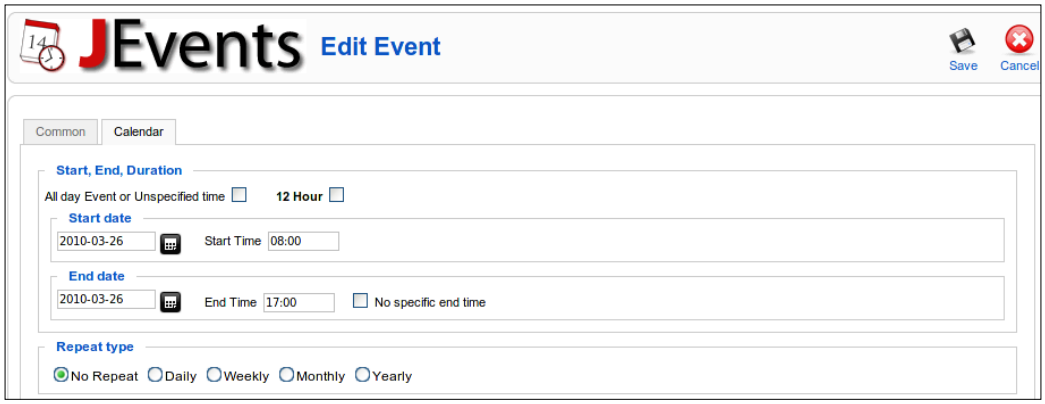
6. Type a **Unique Identifier** (name) for the calendar, select the default category and **Access Level**, select **No** for the **Is Default** field, and click on **Create Calendar from Scratch**. This creates a new calendar.
7. Go back to the **Control Panel** page, and click on the **Manage Events** icon. This will shows you the **Events** screen. Click on the **New** button in the toolbar, and you will get the **Edit Event** screen.



8. On the **Edit Event** screen, first select a calendar and then type the subject of the event. Then select a category, a color for the event, and the access level. In the **Activity** field briefly describe the activity, and then fill in the **Location**, **Contact**, and **Extra Info** fields. Then click on the **Calendar** tab.



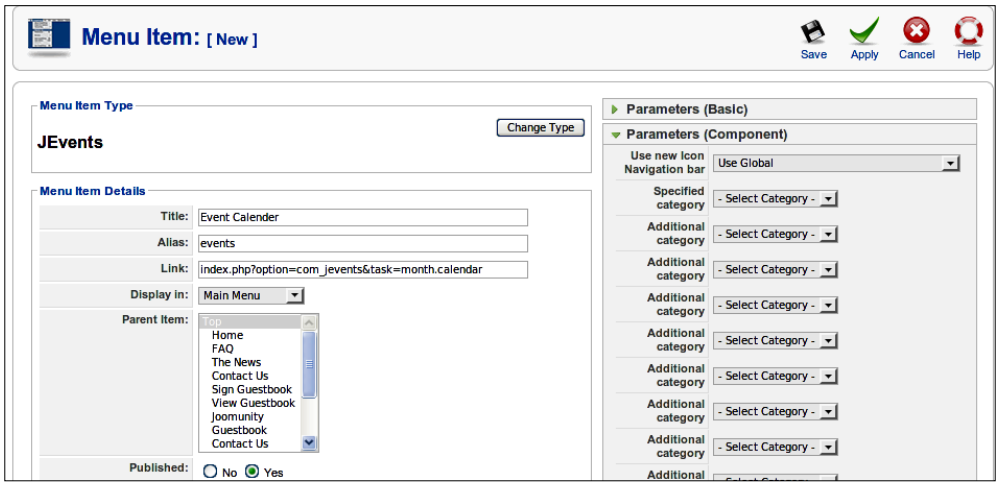
9. Using the **Calendar** tab, specify the **Start Date**, **Start Time**, **End date**, and **End time**. If you want to repeat the event, select a repetition type—**Daily**, **Weekly**, **Monthly**, or **Yearly**—from the **Repeat type** list. After doing so, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar. It will take you to the **Events** screen and will list the added event.



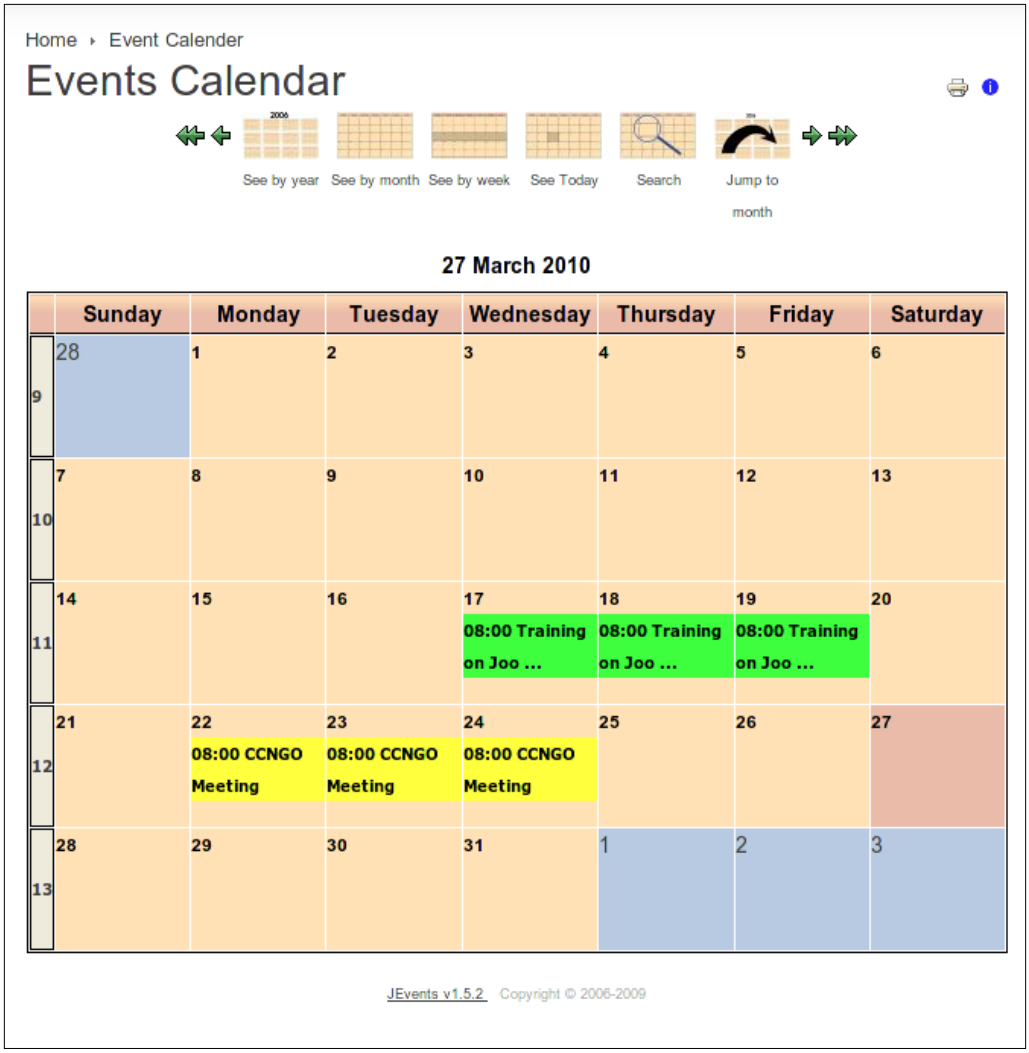
10. Now it's time to add menu items to your calendar. Select **Menus** | **Main Menu**, this will show you the **Menu Item Manager: [mainmenu]** screen. Click on the **New** icon in the toolbar, and it will show you the **Menu Item: [New]** screen.



11. On the **Menu Item: [New]** screen, select **Internal Link** | **Jevents** | **Monthly Calendar** and it will show you the **Menu Item: [New]** screen, as shown in the following screenshot.



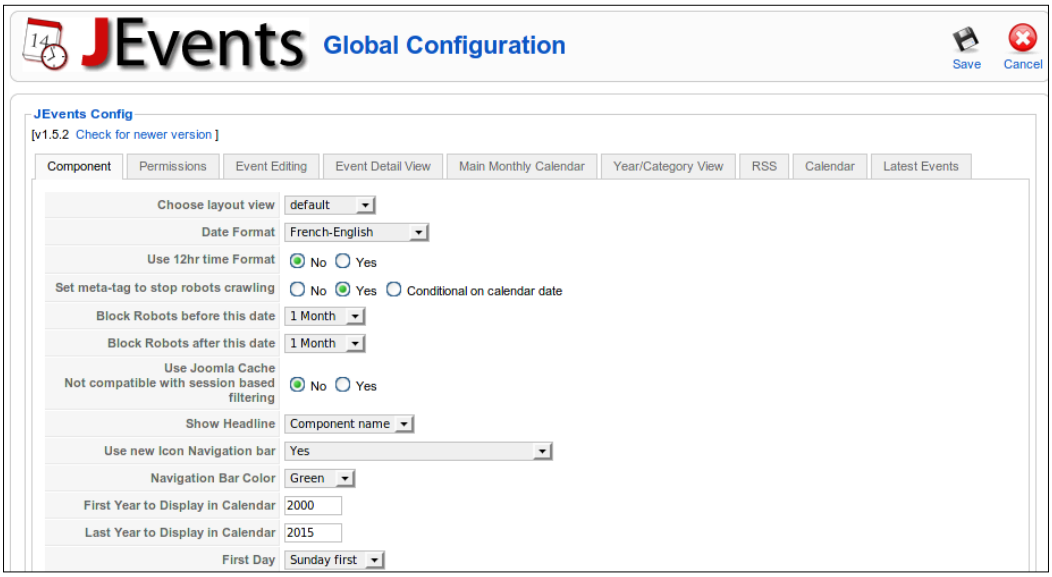
12. On the **Menu Item: [New]** screen, enter the **Title** of the menu item and an **Alias**. In the **Display in** drop-down list, select **Main Menu** and select **Top** in the **Parent Item** list. Select **Yes** in the **Published** field and click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
13. Now preview the site's frontend and you will see the menu item in the **Main Menu**. Click on the menu item you created, and it will show you the Events Calendar by month.



14. As you can see, the events added to the event calendar are displayed with different colors, reflecting categories. At the top of this screen you will see some icons, through which you can view the event list differently—by year, by month, by week, and so on.

There's more...

You can configure many of the display aspects of the JEvents calendar. This can be done by going to **Components** | **JEvents** and then clicking on the **Configuration** icon. The configuration screen looks like the following screenshot:



There are several tabs on the **Global Configuration** screen, through which you can configure the look and feel of the calendar, permissions, editing, and other views.

Showing your Google calendar on your Joomla! site

Google Calendar is gaining popularity. If you are a user of Google Calendar, you already know how flexible it is. In this recipe, you are going to know how to display your Google calendar on your Joomla! site.



To use a Google calendar with GCalendar, you must make the Google Calendar publicly available. To do so, select the **Make this calendar public** checkbox on the **Share this calendar** tab on the **Settings** screen.

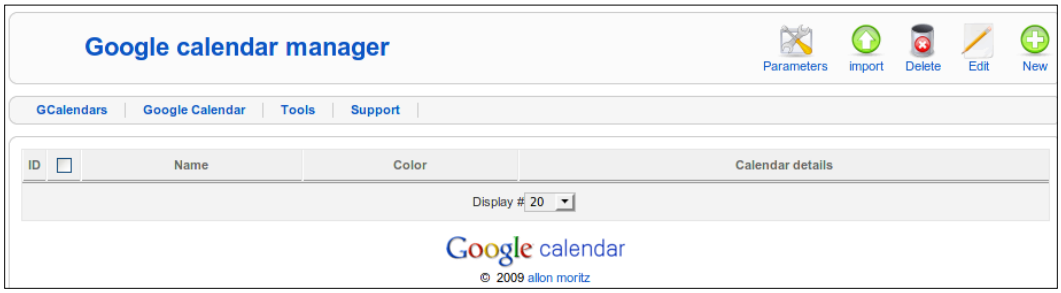
Getting ready...

The GCalendar extension allows you to display your Google calendar inside the Joomla! site. Visit `http://g4j.laoneo.net/content/extensions/download/cat_view/20-joomla-15x/21-gcalendar.html` and download the latest version of the GCalendar suite. Once downloaded, extract the ZIP package and you will get an installation file for one component, three modules, and two plugins. Install these from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

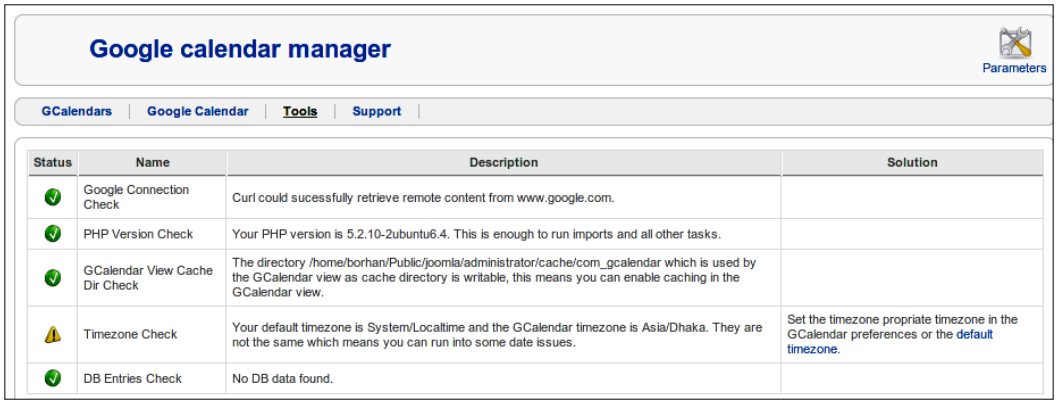
How to do it...

After installation, follow these steps:

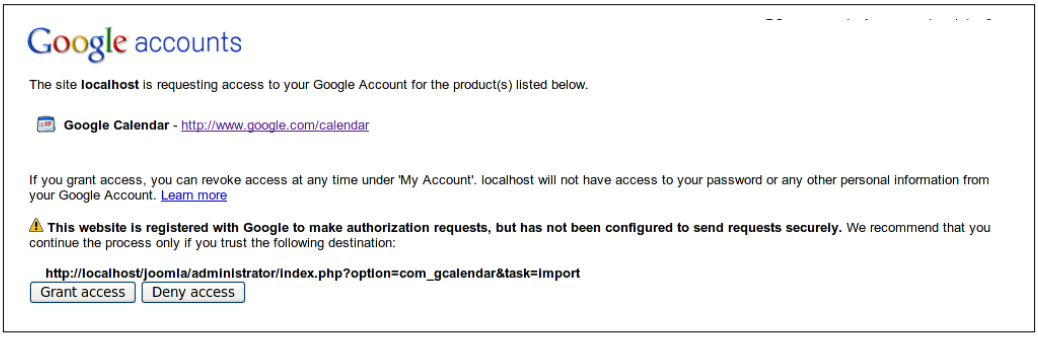
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, select **Components** | **GCalendar**. This shows you the **Google calendar manager** screen.



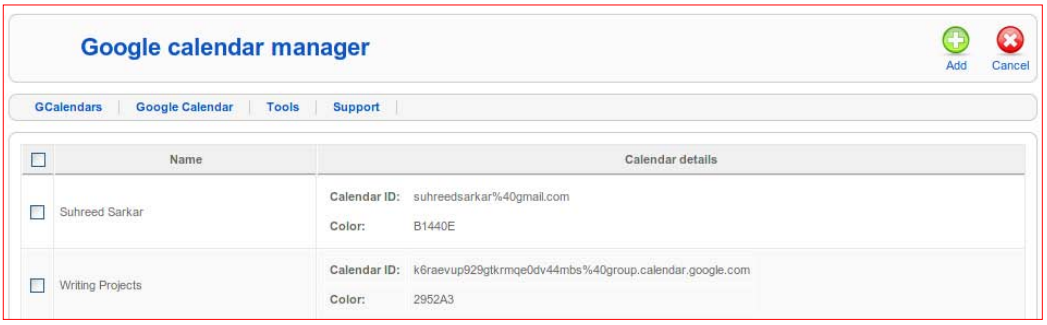
2. Click on the **Tools** link of the **Google calendar manager** screen, and then click on the **System check** link. This checks the system requirements and connectivity with Google and shows you the results.



3. Resolve any issue raised by a system check. Then click on the **GCalendars** link, followed by clicking on **Please login to connect to Google data**. You will see the Google authorization page.



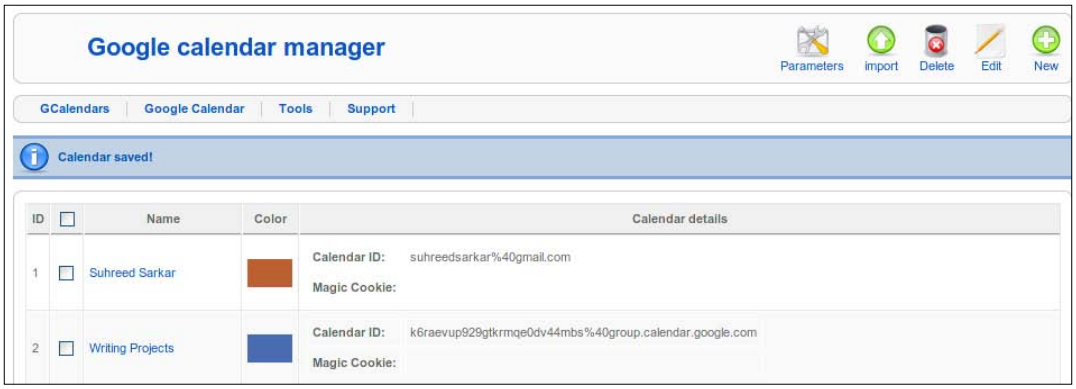
4. Click on the **Grant access** button on the **Google accounts** page. You will see the list of calendars under Google Calendar.



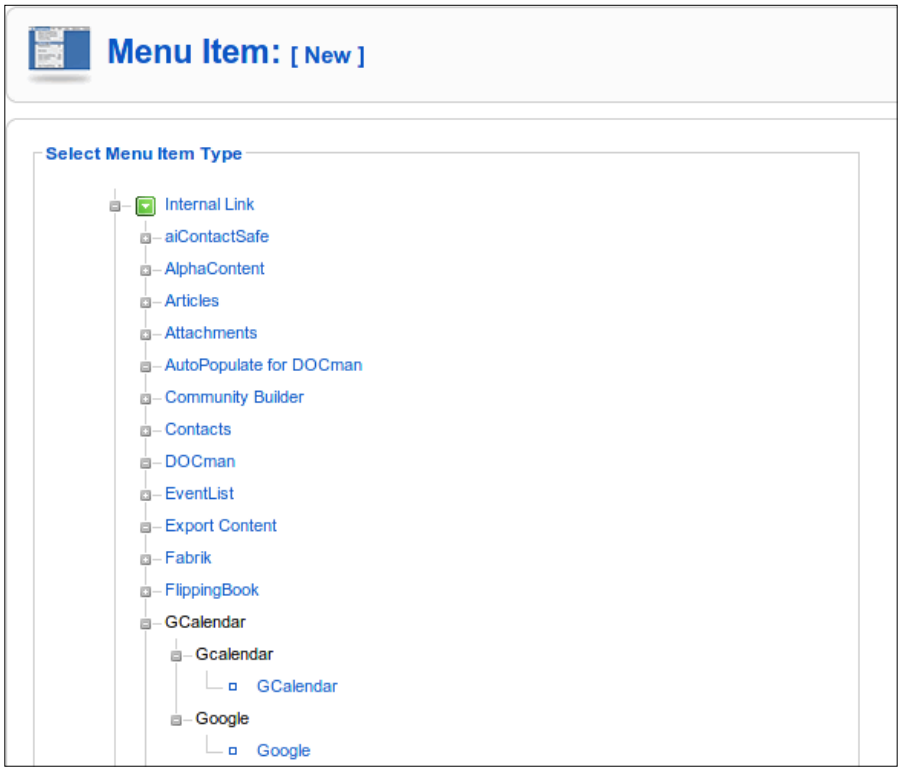


If you are not logged in to Google already, the Google Login page will be shown. Enter the username and password for your Google account (or create one if you don't have an account) and click on the **Sign In** button.

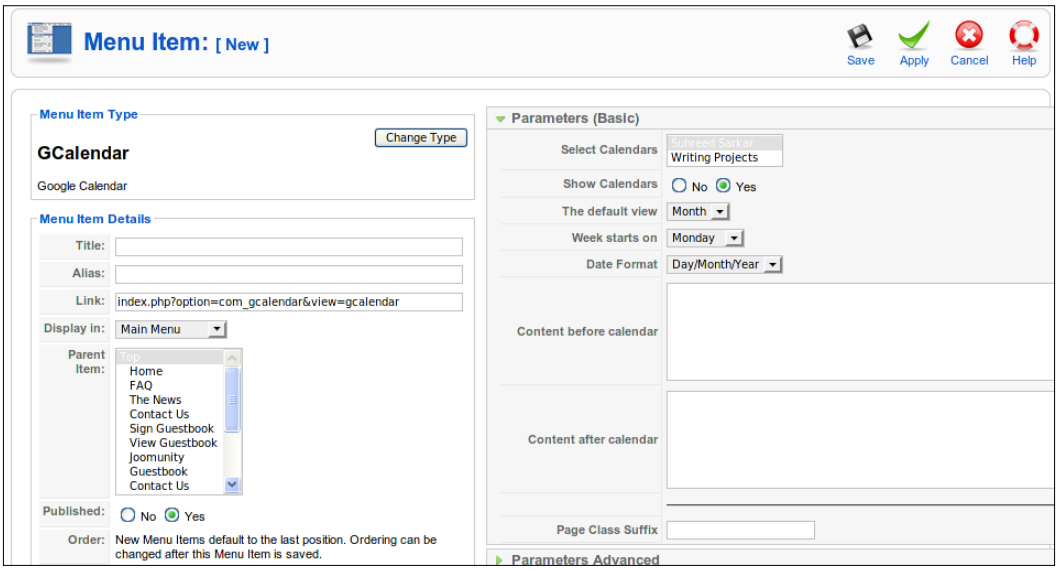
5. Select the calendars you want to use on your Joomla! site, and click on the **Add** button in the toolbar. The calendars are added and you will see them in the list.



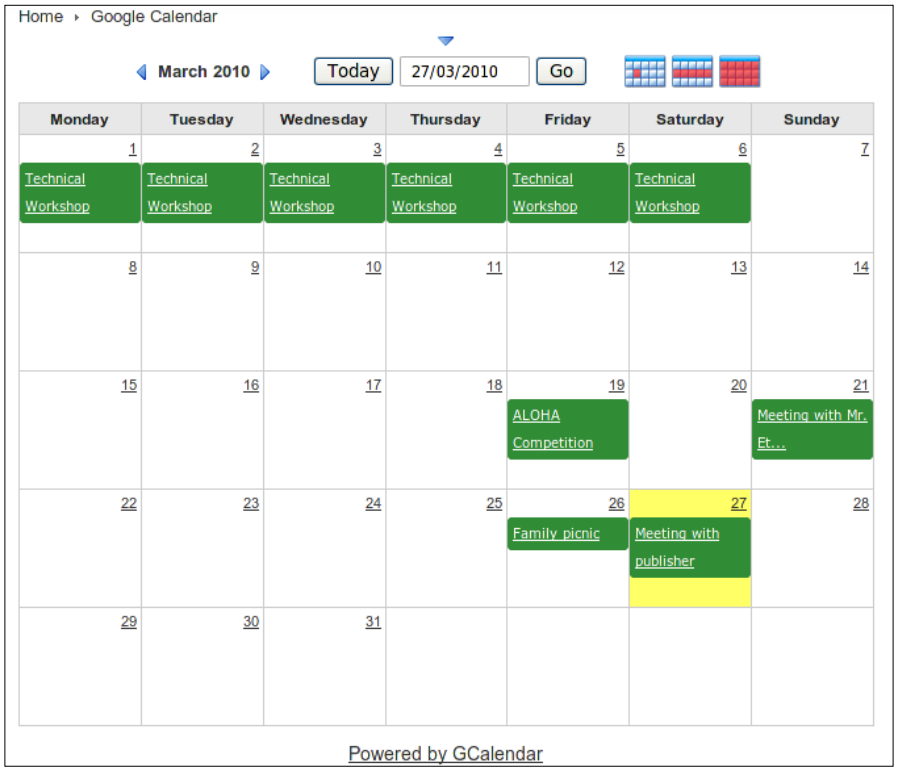
6. Now select **Menus** | **Main Menu**, and click on the **New** button on the **Menu Item Manager: [mainmenu]** screen. This will show you the **Menu Item: [New]** screen.



7. Select **Internal Link** | **GCalendar** | **GCalendar**. It will show the **Menu Item: [New]** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



8. Type a Title for the menu, and select **Yes** in the **Published** field. From the **Parameters (Basic)** section, select a calendar, select the default view, the day the week starts on, and then the date format. You can also add text to display before and after the calendar. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
9. Preview the site's frontend and click on the menu item. This shows the Google calendar.



10. As you see, you can change the view of the calendar by clicking on any of the view icons shown above the calendar. You can also go to a specific date or month.

Adding a booking system for events

Showing events will not always be enough, sometimes you need to provide a mechanism to register for those events. For example, you are organizing a training event and will be publishing the training information through your Joomla! site. You can allow the visitors to register for the training session. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to allow visitors to register for an event.

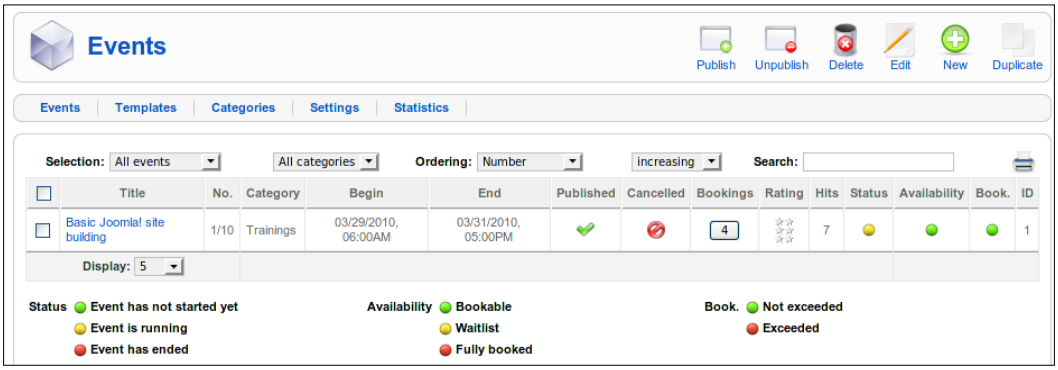
Getting ready...

The Seminar for Joomla! component allows visitors to register for events. Download this component from `http://seminar.vollmar.ws/downloads/com_Seminar_V1.3.0.zip`, and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

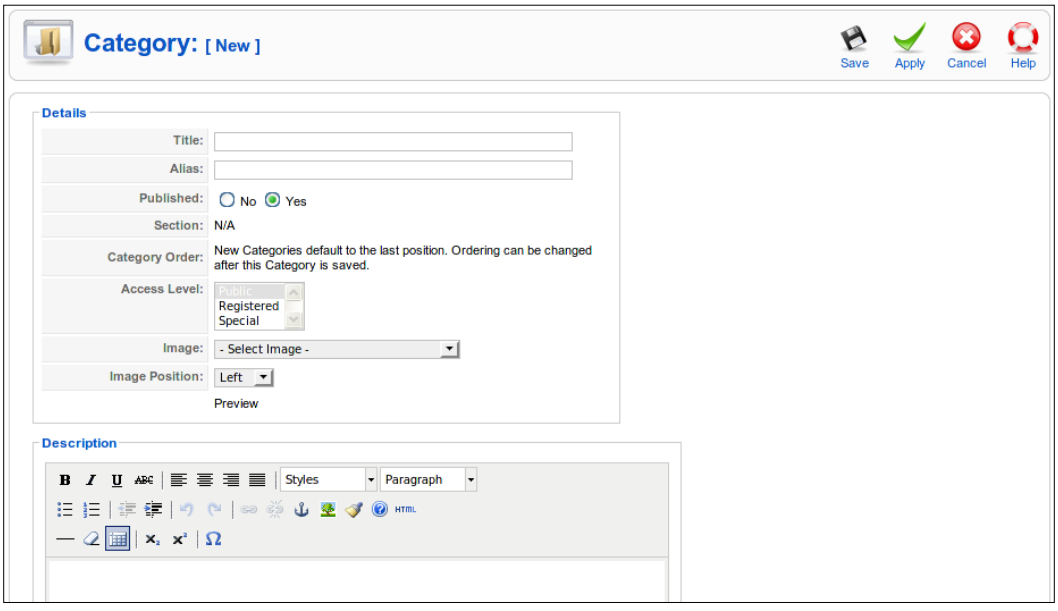
How to do it...

Once installed, follow these steps to allow registration for events:

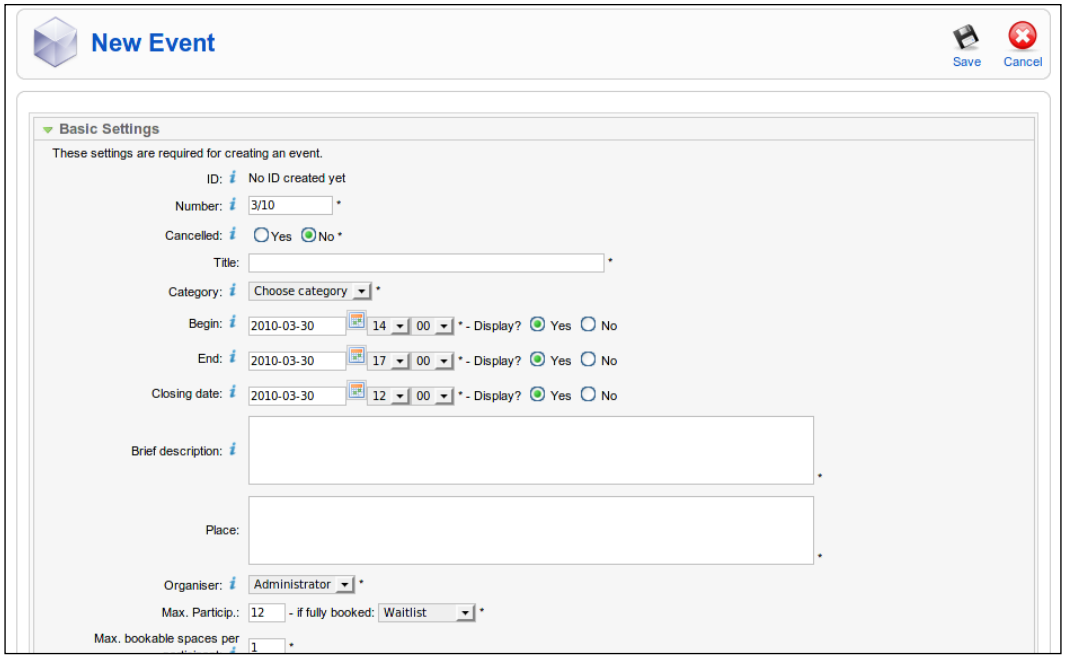
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, select **Components** | **Seminar**. It shows the **Events** screen, listing the available events.



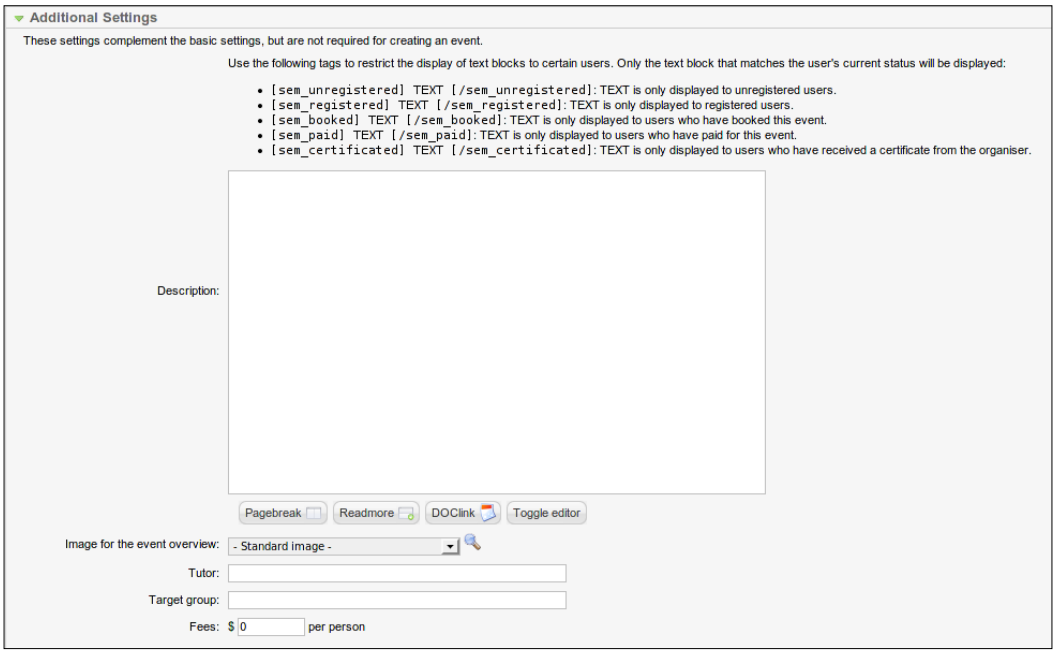
2. To create event categories, click on **Categories** and then click on **New**. This shows you the **Category: [New]** screen.



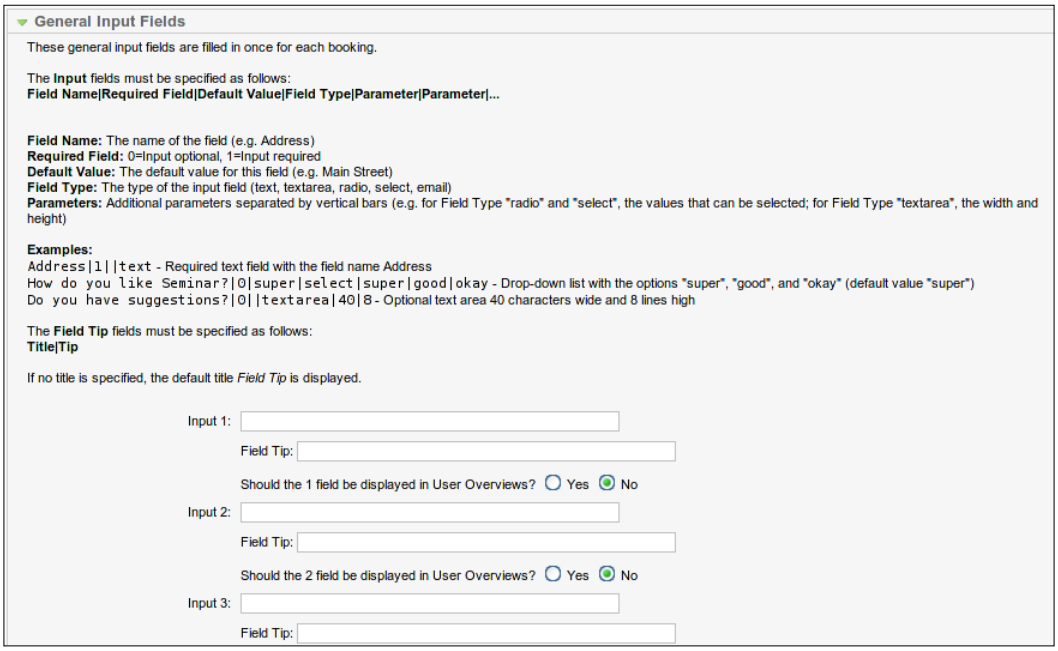
3. On the **Category: [New]** screen, type in the **Title** and **Alias**, and select **Yes** in the **Published** radio box. Then select the **Access Level**, **Image**, and **Image Position**. Enter a description for the category. Click on **Save** in the toolbar. Repeat this step to add as many categories as you need.
4. Click on **Events** and then click on **New**. It will show you the **New Event** screen.



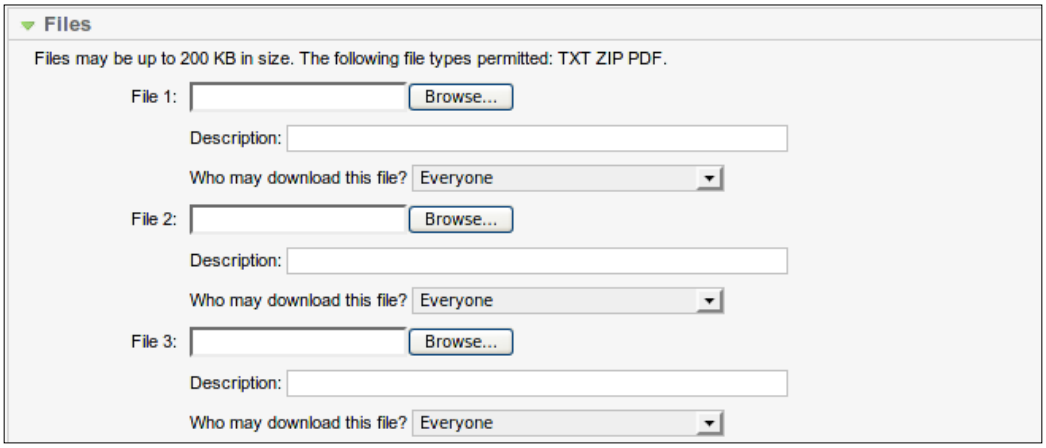
5. Type the **Title** of the event. Then select **Begin**, **End**, **Closing Date**, and the time of the event. Select **Yes** in the **Display** field if you want to show this information. Type a brief description of the event, and the place of the event. Select an organizer from the **Organiser** drop-down list. Then type the maximum number of participants in the **Max. Particip.** field. Also, select what to do when the number of participants exceeds this number. When this is done, click on **Additional Settings**. This shows you the **Additional Settings** screen.



6. In the **Additional Settings** section, you can add an additional description. In the **Description** box, add descriptions to particular groups of visitors. The syntax to add messages for different groups is shown above the text box. Select an image for the event overview. Then type the tutor's name, target group, and the fees per person. Then click on **General Input Fields**. This will show the following screen:



7. In the **General Input Fields** section, you can include additional fields. To add additional fields, follow the syntax provided. When this is done, click on **Files**. This shows the following screen for file upload.

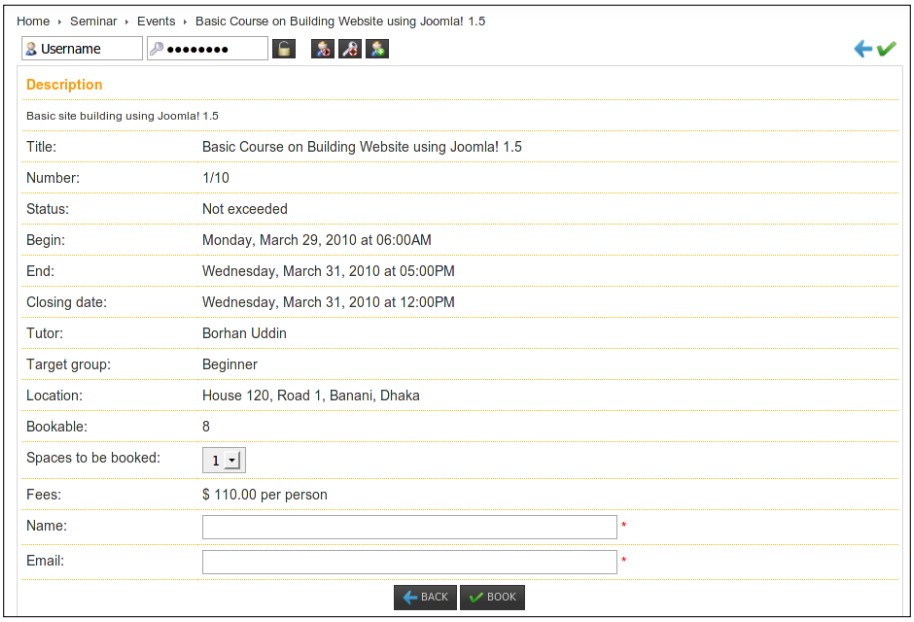


8. Click on the **Browse** button and select the file to upload. Type a description of the file and select the group that can view it. When this is done, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

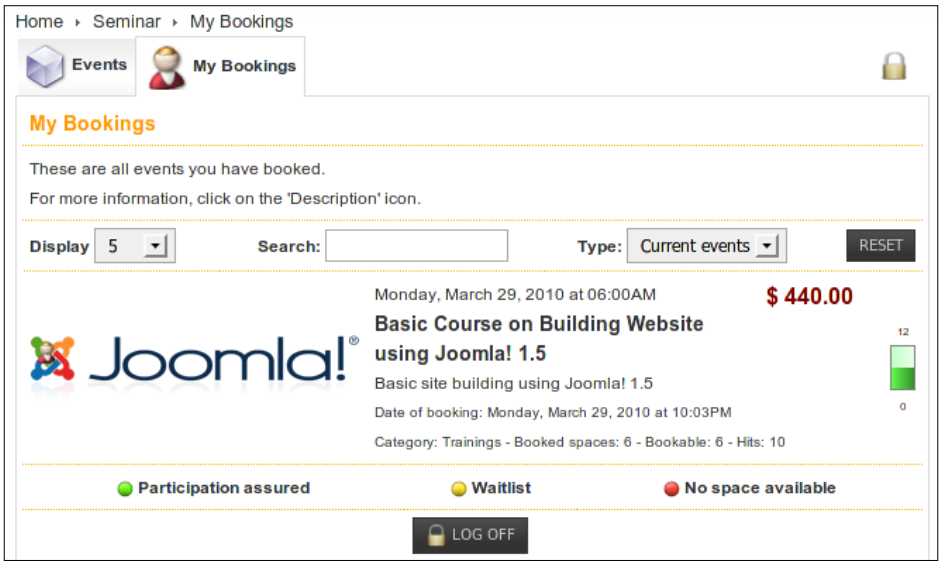
9. Select **Menus** | **Main Menu**, and then click on **New**. This will show you the **Menu Item: [New]** wizard. In the **Select Menu Item Type** section, select **Seminar** and provide a title for the menu item on the next screen. Then save the menu item.
10. Preview the site's frontend, as a user logged in to the frontend, and click on the menu item for the seminar. This will display the following screen showing your added event.



11. The overview of the event shows the overview image, event title, category, reservation information, and an indicator for the booking status. Click on the event title, it will show you the event details, as shown in the following screenshot:



12. Select the spaces to be booked. Then type your **Name** and **Email** address and click on the **Book** button. This books your space for the event. You can view your booking by clicking the **My Bookings** tab, as shown in the following screenshot.



Note that your participation status is indicated through a color-coded indicator.

There's more...

Most of the features of Seminar for the Joomla! component can be configured from the **Settings** screen.



For example, you can configure who can book events, what happens when booking exceeds the number of seats, who can rate the events from the frontend, which folder will store images of the events, the maximum file upload size, the file extensions allowed for uploads, and so on.

5
Using Contacts and Feedback

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding a guestbook to your site
- Adding comments to Joomla! content
- Extending the "contact us" form
- Adding an Ajax contact form with custom fields
- Building a database application without coding

Introduction

Site designers often provide a means to collect feedback from visitors by adding a simple "contact us" form or a guestbook. More sophisticated forms and applications can also be used for this purpose. By default, Joomla! has a contacts component that allows visitors to send messages to the site owners. Messages submitted through the contacts component are sent to specific contacts and e-mail addresses, and are not published on the site. However, depending on the type of site, the contact form may need to vary. Some of the popular third-party extensions allow us to add custom fields and custom "contact us" forms to Joomla!.

Besides the "contact us" form for a site, the site owner may collect feedback on articles by adding a commenting feature. By default, Joomla! doesn't allow commenting. Some third-party extensions have become popular to add the commenting feature to Joomla! articles.

Adding a full application based on separate database tables may also help when collecting the required feedback from visitors. A very popular component, the Fabrik—Joomla! Application Builder, can be used to build a custom database application without any PHP coding. This application helps the Joomla! website developers develop custom "contact us" forms, or guestbook forms, and add it to the Joomla! site.

Adding a guestbook to your site

Joomla! has a contact component, from which users can contact the site owner. Besides this, adding a guestbook could be a good idea, testimonials of site visitors can be displayed from the guestbook. In the early stages of website development, adding a guestbook was a hot topic. Still, in this age of CMS and social networking, you may like to add a guestbook to your Joomla!-based website. In this recipe, we are going to show how to add a guestbook.

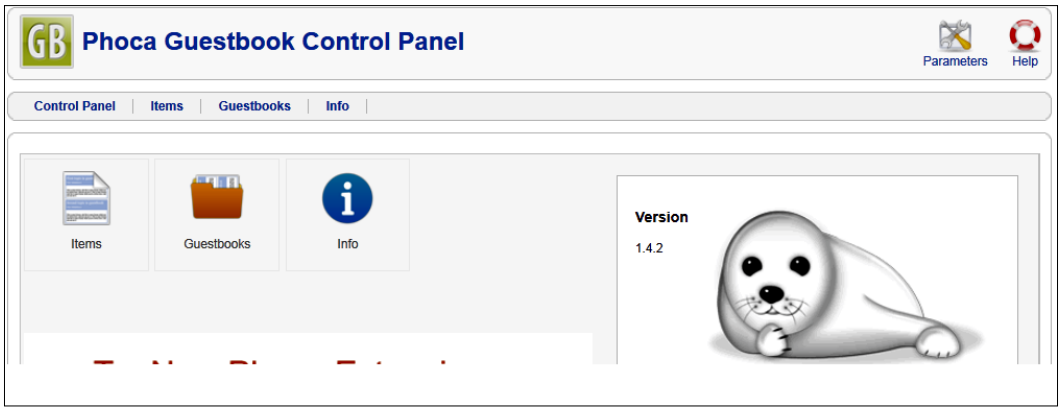
Getting ready

One popular extension for adding a guestbook is Phoca Guestbook. Download the installation package from `http://www.phoca.cz/download/category/5-phoca-guestbook-component` and install the component from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

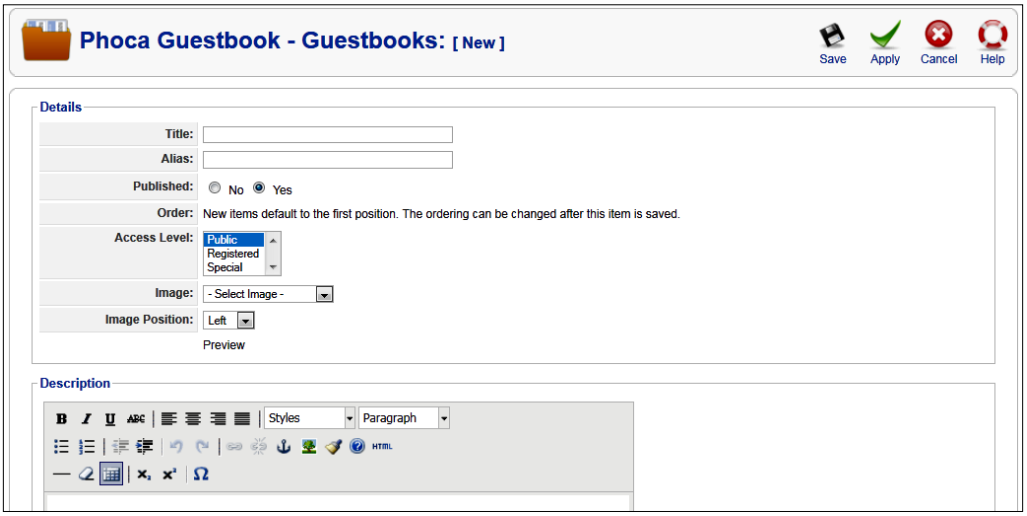
How to do it...

After installation, carry out the following steps to use the guestbook:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Phoca Guestbook | Control Panel**. This will show the **Phoca Guestbook Control Panel** screen.



2. Now click on **Guestbooks** and you will see the **Phoca Guestbooks - Guestbooks** screen. Click on the **New** icon for creating a new guestbook. This will show the **Phoca Guestbook – Guestbooks: [New]** screen.

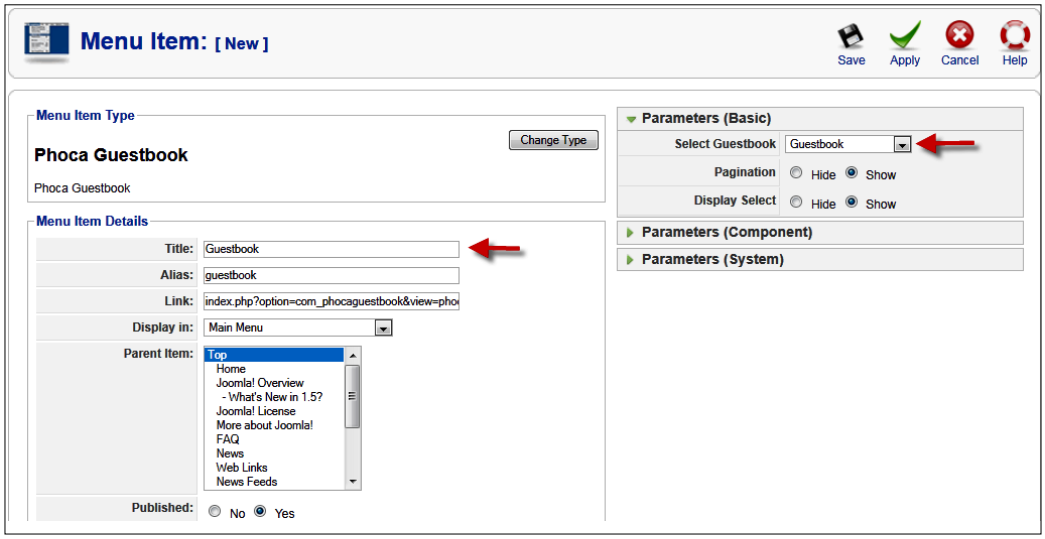


3. In the **Title** field, provide the title of the guestbook, and an alias in the **Alias** field. Select **Yes** in the **Published** field. Type a brief description of the guestbook in the **Description** field. When done, click the **Save** icon in the toolbar.

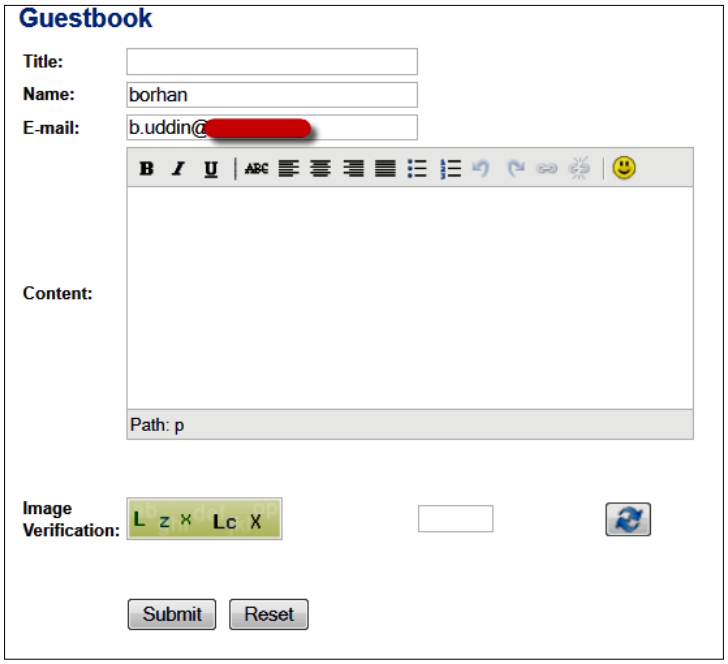
4. To create a menu item to point to the guestbook, click on **Menus | Main Menu** and click on the **New** button in the toolbar. This will show the **Menu Item: [New]** screen.



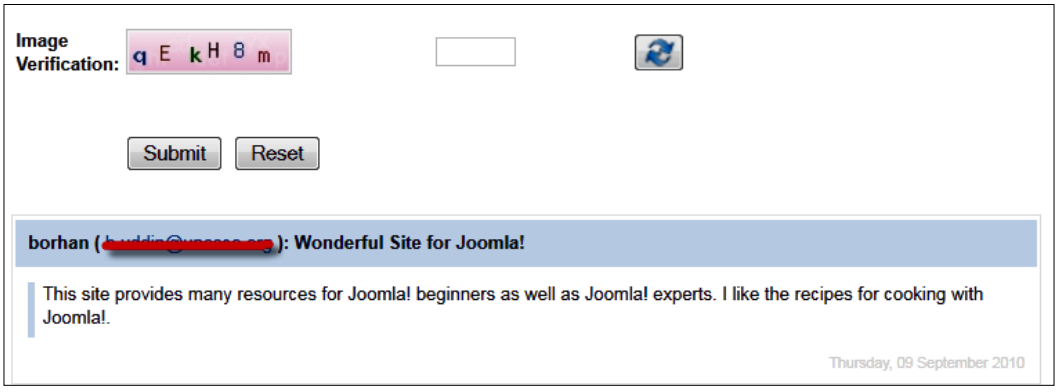
5. Under the **Select Menu Item Type** section, click on **Phoca Guestbook**. This shows the branches down to **Phoca Guestbook**. Click on the **Phoca Guestbook Guestbook** link. This will take you to the next step of the **Menu Item: [New]** screen.



6. Type a title and an alias for the menu item. Select **Yes** in the **Published** radio box. Then click on **Parameters (Basic)**. This shows the parameters to be configured. Select a guestbook name from the **Select Guestbook** drop-down list. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
7. Preview the site's frontend. The **Guestbook** (or whatever title you have given to the menu item) link is shown in the Main Menu. Log in to the frontend as a registered user and click on this link, you will see the guestbook entry form.



8. Fill in the form and retype the Captcha image verification strings. Then click on the **Submit** button. Your entry will be submitted and that will be listed below the guestbook form.



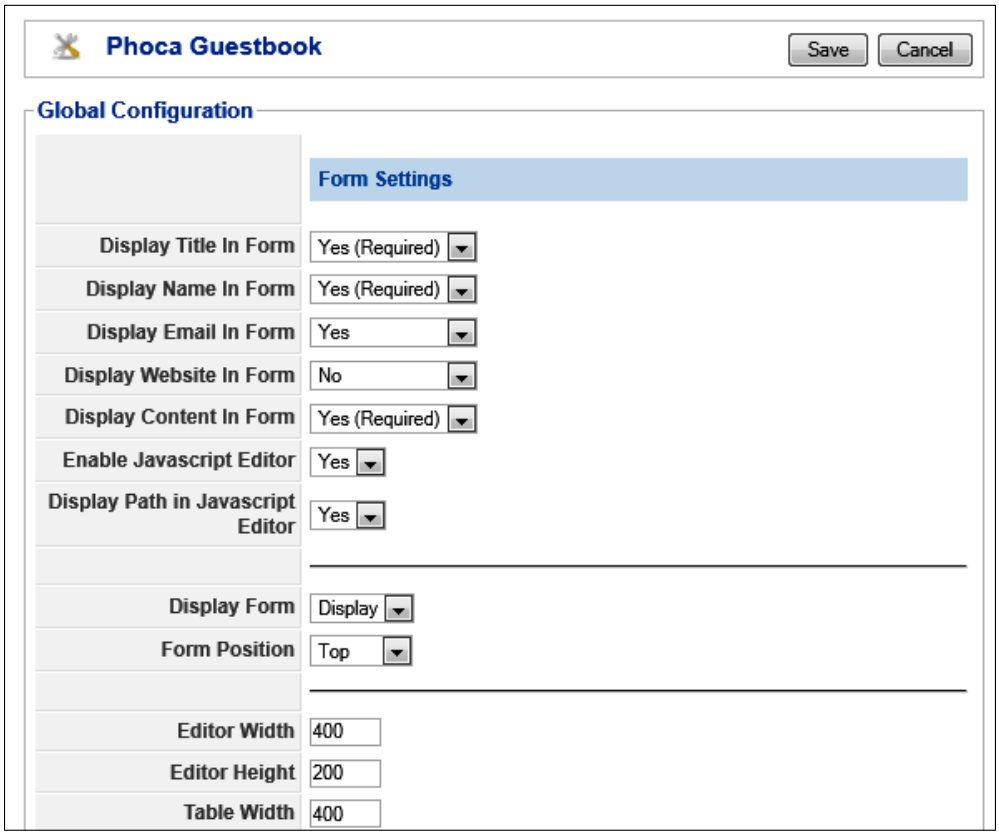
Note that the guestbook form, by default, adds a Captcha image which is used to verify that the entry is submitted by a human.

There's more...

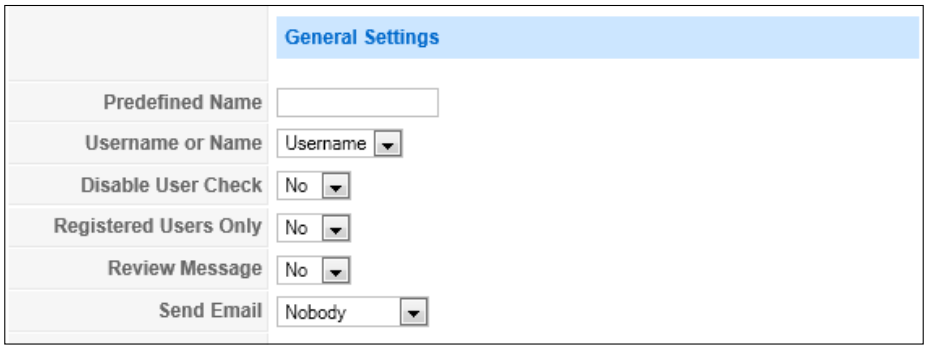
The Phoca Guestbook component starts working without any configuration. It works fine for most of sites, but you may need to change the configuration as per your requirements. You can do that from the **Phoca Guestbook Control Panel** by clicking on the **Parameters** icon. It also allows you to filter out offensive language in the comments, and review and publish the entries submitted through the guestbook.

Configuring the Phoca Guestbook

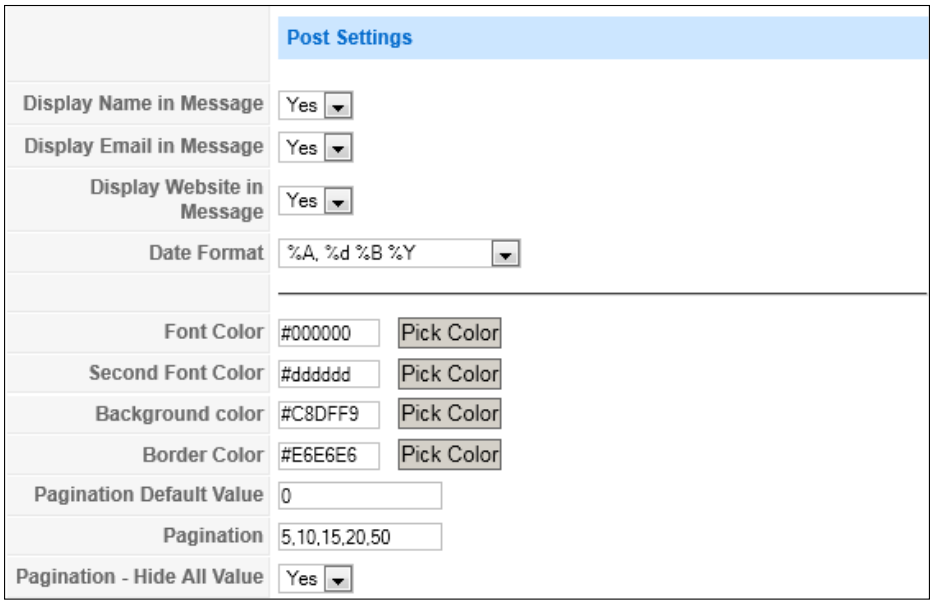
You can configure the global settings from the **Phoca Guestbook Control Panel** by clicking on the **Parameters** button in the toolbar. It will show you the parameters, as shown in the following screenshot:



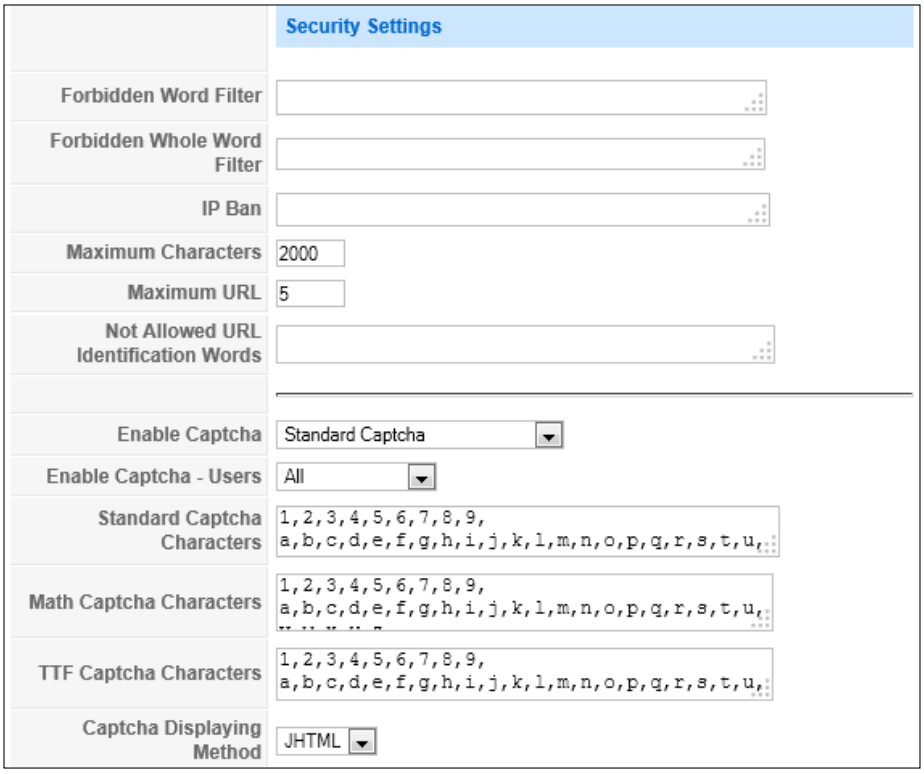
You can configure whether to show the title of the form, display the name, e-mail address, and website. You can also enable the JavaScript Editor on the form, designate the form's position, edit the width and height, and the table width. There are other sections where you can configure the general settings, post settings, and security settings.



From the **General Settings** section, you can set a predefined name for the commentator or choose to show the username or the full name. You can also enable or disable user checks, allow commenting for registered users only, allow message reviews, and also decide who can send e-mails.



From the **Post Settings** section, you can configure whether or not to show the name, e-mail address, and website address in the message. You can also configure the date format, font color, border settings, and pagination when displaying guestbook entries.



From the **Security Settings** section, you can specify forbidden words for filtering. You can also add IP addresses for banning. Captcha settings can be configured from here. From **Enable Captcha**, you can select a type of Captcha to be used. From **Enable Captcha – Users**, you can select a user group for whom the Captcha will be displayed. There are some other settings for Captcha, such as standard, Math and TTF Captcha characters, and display method.

Managing guestbook entries

You can see the list of submitted entries by clicking on **Components | Phoca Guestbook | Items**.



Select the entry and click on the **Publish**, **Unpublish**, **Delete**, or **Edit** button in the toolbar to perform the chosen task.

Adding comments to Joomla! content

You may have been tempted to enable commenting on a Joomla! site so that visitors can comment on articles published on your site. Generally, blogging platforms have such commenting systems built in. Now, you can have this type of commenting system in Joomla! by using third-party extensions. Among these extensions, the most popular one is !**JoomlaComment**. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add comments to a Joomla! site using !JoomlaComment.

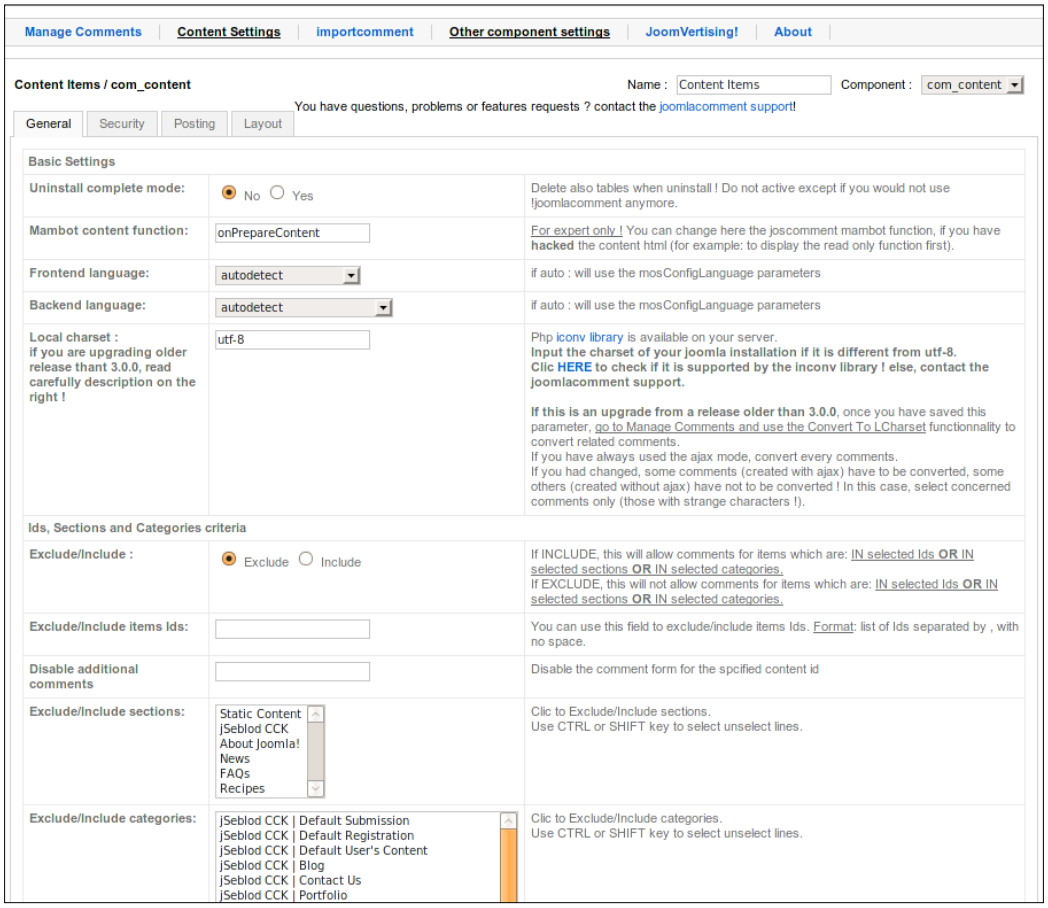
Getting ready...

The !JoomlaComment component for Joomla! adds the commenting functionality to Joomla! content. Download the latest version of the component from `http://compojoom.com/downloads/`. For this book, we are using JoomlaComment 4.0 Beta2, which runs on Joomla! 1.5 natively. Versions prior to 4.0 run on Joomla! 1.5, with legacy mode enabled. Download the package and unzip it. Then set up the installer package from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How it works...

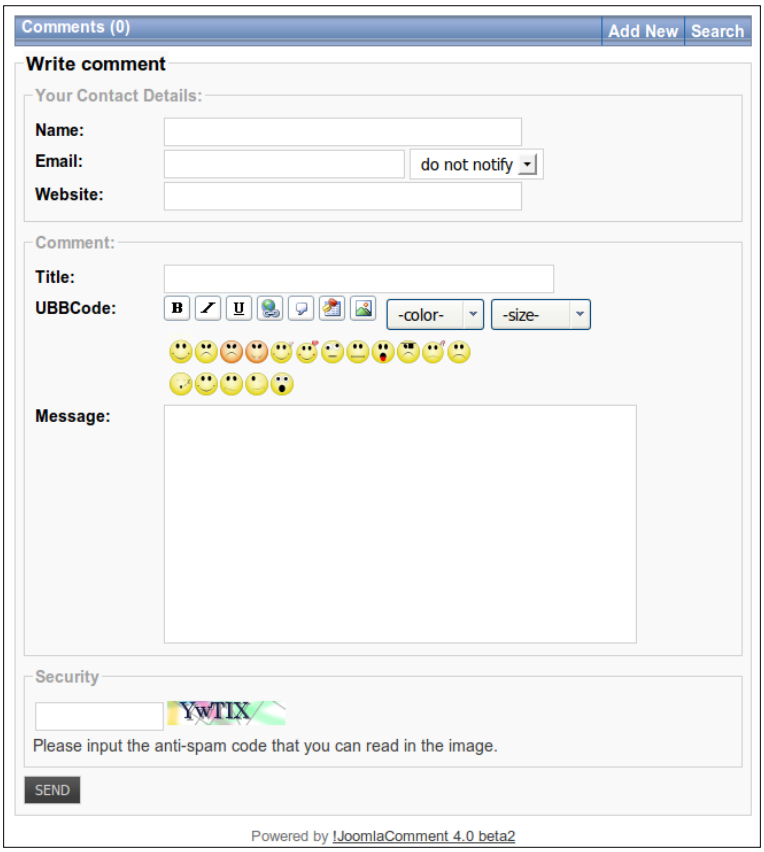
After installing the component, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | !JoomlaComment | Content Settings**. This will show the following screen:



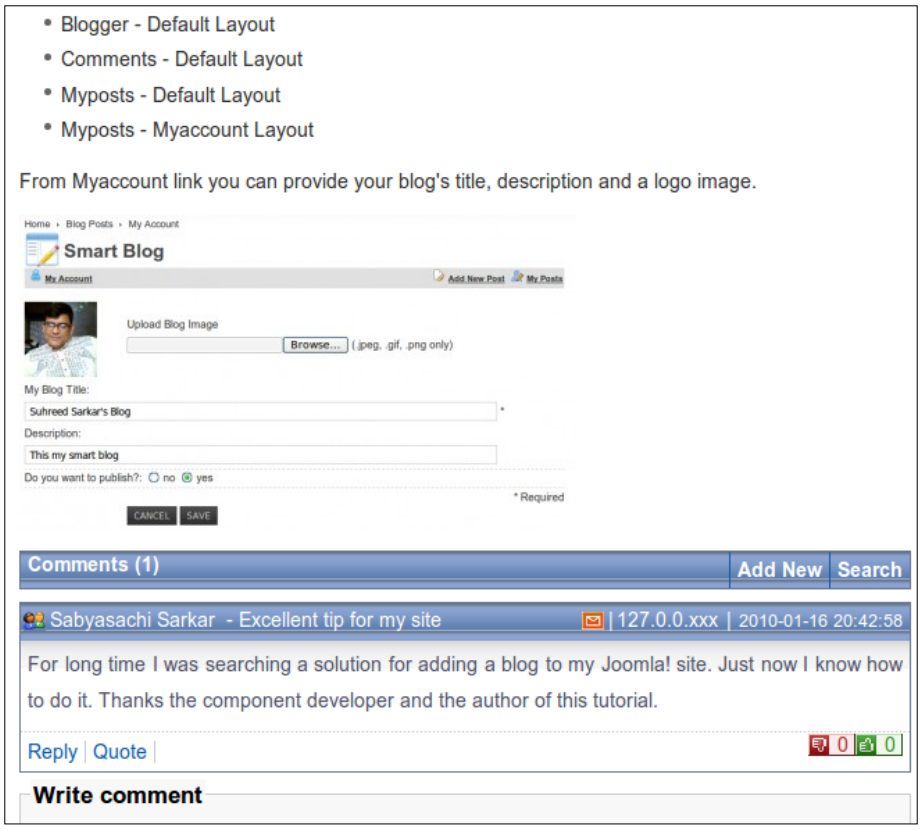
2. In the **Content Settings** screen, you will see the active **General** tab. Click on the other tabs to see the configuration settings. From the **Security** tab, you can allow only registered users to comment on the content. If you want to automatically publish the comments, select **Yes** in the **Autopublish** radio box on the **Security** tab. You can also set a moderator group in this tab.

3. Now go to the frontend and click on any article. At the bottom, you will see a box for adding comments to that article. The box looks like the following screenshot:

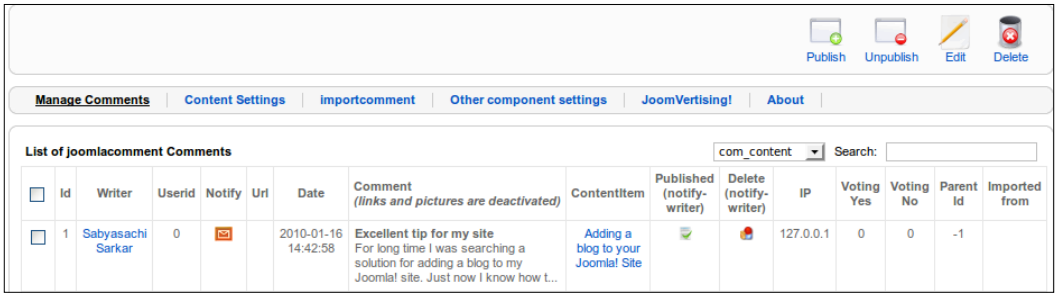


4. For commenting on the article, type your e-mail address, website URL, title of the comment, and the comment message. At the bottom you will see a Captcha image, the text shown in this image needs to be typed in the given textbox. Once written, click the **SEND** button.

5. Now you will see the comment at the bottom of the article, as shown in the following screenshot:



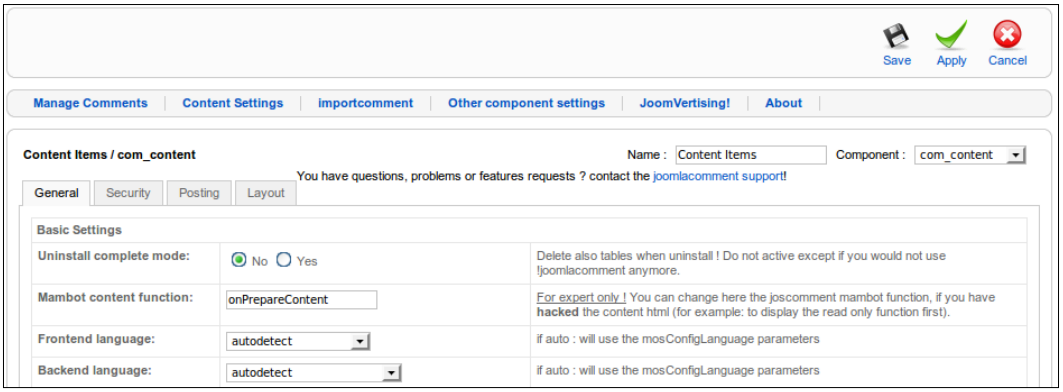
6. Now log in to the Joomla! administration panel, and click on **Components | !JoomlaComment | Manage Comments**. This will show a screen listing the submitted comments.



7. You can publish, unpublish, edit, or delete any comment shown in this list by selecting the comment and clicking the respective button on the toolbar.

There's more...

By default, !JoomlaComment only adds comments to Joomla! content items, that is the **com_content** component. However, you can add comments to other components too. For doing so, click on **Components | !JoomlaComment | Other component settings**, and then on the **New** button. This shows a screen similar to the following screenshot:



From the **Component** drop-down list in this screen, select the component for which you want to enable commenting. The available options in this drop-down list are: **com_content**, **com_docman**, **com_eventlist**, **com_mmsblog**, **com_puarcade**, and **com_seyret**. You can add commenting to any of these components.

Extending the "contact us" form

Joomla! has a built-in contacts component, through which users can contact the site owner and others. However, this default contact component (`com_contact`) may be inadequate for many sites as it doesn't show some additional fields. For example, you may want to show social identities, such as Twitter, Facebook, LinkedIn, and Skype on the contact page. In this recipe, you will learn how to use an extended contact us form with some more fields.

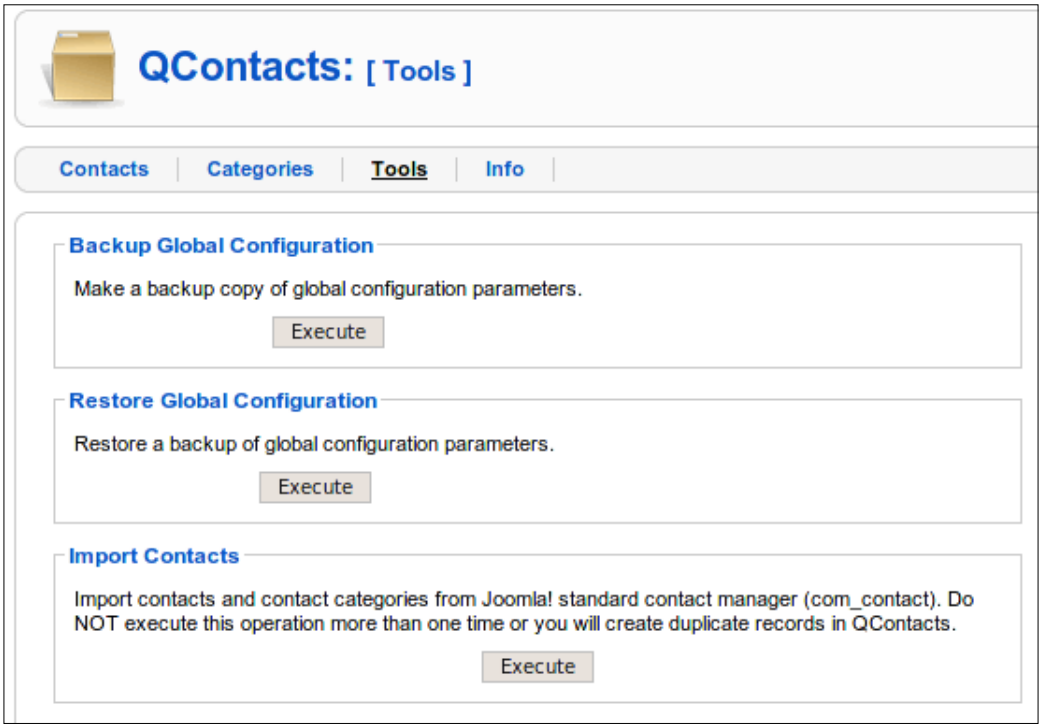
Getting ready...

QContacts is a popular extension that replaces the default contact component in Joomla!, allowing us to add more fields. Download this component from `http://www.latenight-coding.com/joomla-addons/qcontacts/download-qcontacts.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

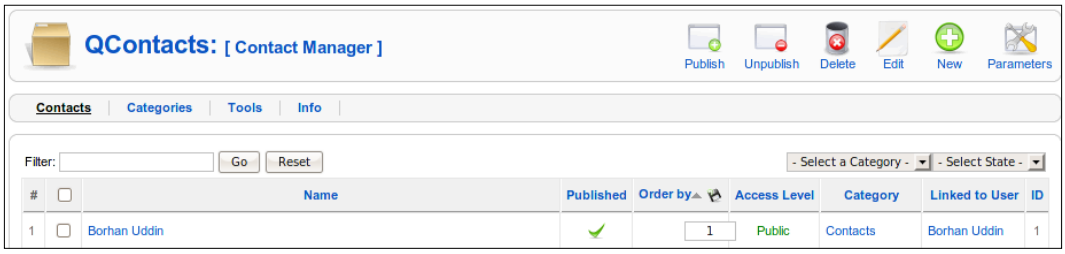
How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to extend the "contact us" form:

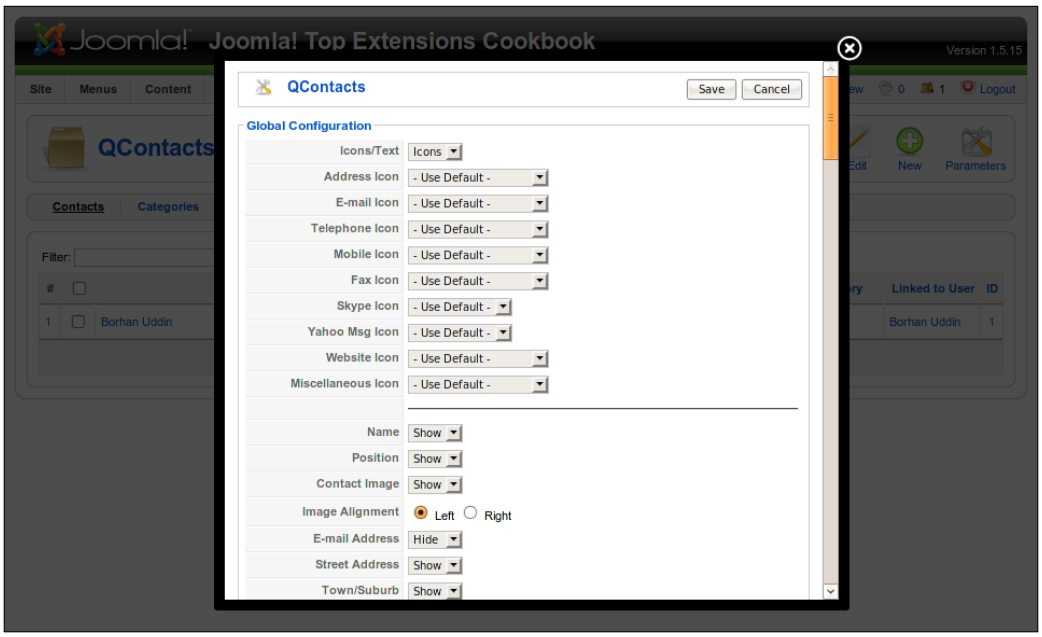
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Qcontacts | Tools**. This shows the **QContacts: [Tools]** screen.



2. In the **Import Contacts** section, click on the **Execute** button. This imports all existing contacts from the `com_contacts` to `com_qcontacts` component.
3. Click on the **Contacts** link in the **QContacts: [Tools]** screen. This will show all the imported contacts.

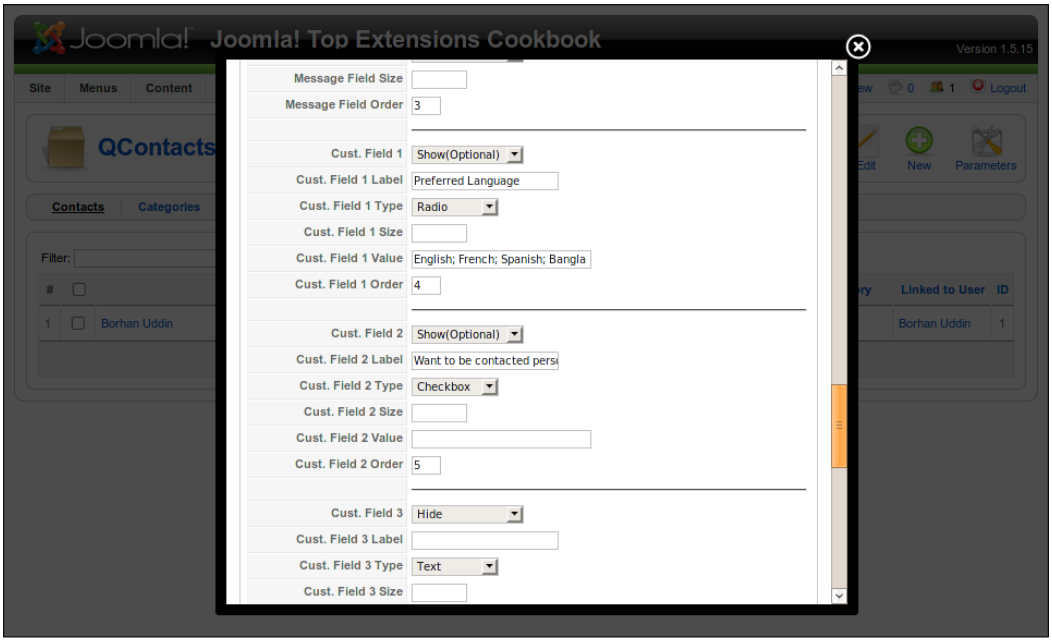


4. In the **QContacts: [Contact Manager]** screen, click on the **Parameters** icon on the toolbar. This will show the **Parameters** screen.

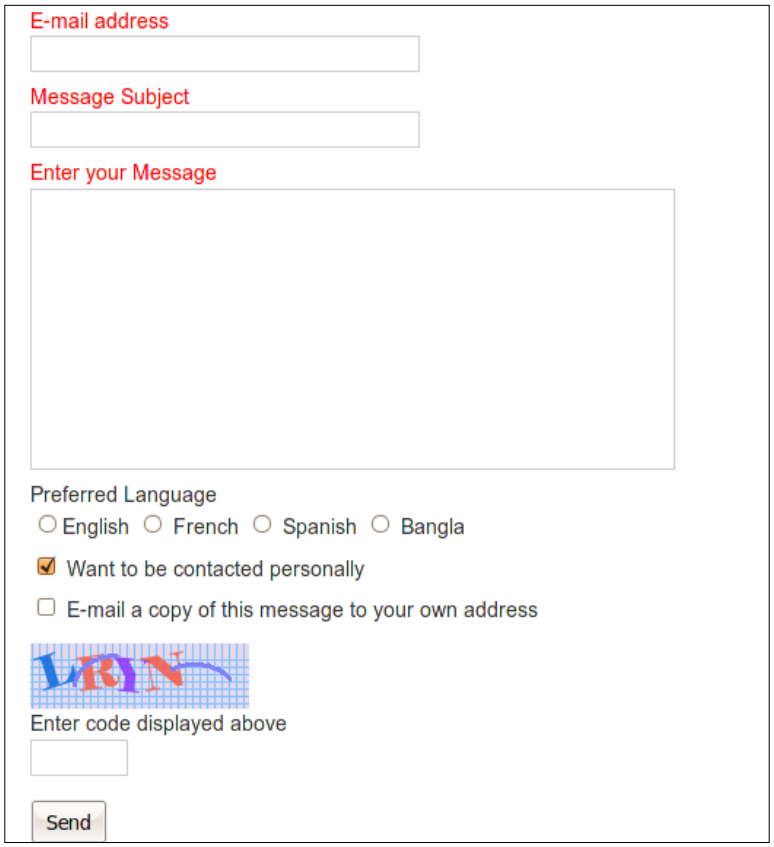


5. From the **Parameters** screen, you can select which fields to display and which ones not to display. In the **Skype Icon** and **Yahoo Msg Icon** drop-down list, select **Show (Link)**. Enable Captcha by selecting **Yes** in the **Show Captcha** field.

6. You can add up to six custom fields of any type—text, text area, radio, checkbox, or drop-down list. Configure **Cust. Field 1** and **Cust. Field 2**, and other fields under these, as shown in the following screenshot:



7. Click on the **Save** button to save the configuration changes.
8. Click on **Menus | Main Menu**. This will show the **Menu Item Manager: [mainmenu]** screen. Click on the **New** button. Then click on the **QContacts | Standard Contact Layout** link in the **Select Menu Item** type section. Next, type a title, for example **Contact Us**, and publish the menu item by selecting **Yes** in the **Published** field. Click on the **Save** button to save the menu item.
9. Preview the site's frontend and click on the **Contact Us** link on the **Main Menu**. This shows a form to communicate with the default contact of the site.



Now you will see the custom fields at the end of the form. For the first custom field, we wanted to show radio boxes, and for second custom field, just a checkbox. Both are now displayed the way we want them to appear. The form also shows a Captcha image at the end.

Adding an Ajax contact form with custom fields

A custom contact form that is submitted using Ajax may be useful for some users. As Ajax forms do not refresh when submitting content, you can replace the default contact form for Joomla! with a form made of many custom fields. In this recipe, we are going to show how an Ajax contact form with custom fields can be added to a Joomla!-based site.

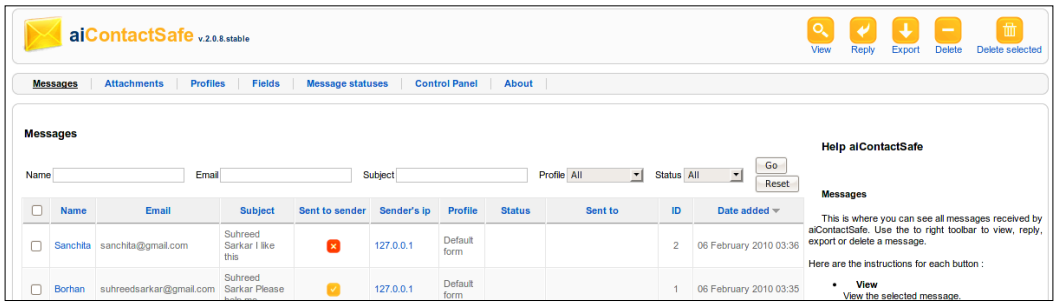
Getting ready...

aiContactSafe is a popular extension that can add a contact form with custom fields and allow the form to be submitted using Ajax. Download the extension from the `http://www.algisinfo.net/download/category/1-joomla-1.5.x.html?lang=en` page. Install the component file from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

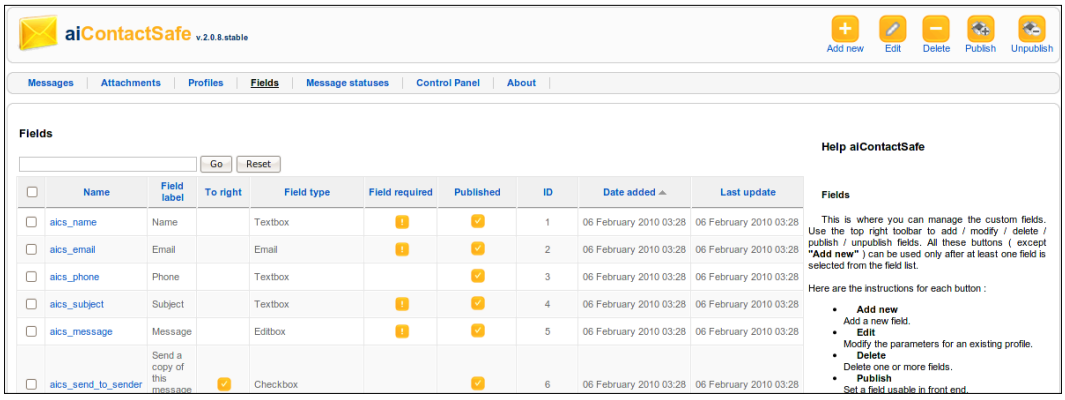
How to do it...

After installing the **aiContactSafe** component, carry out the following steps:

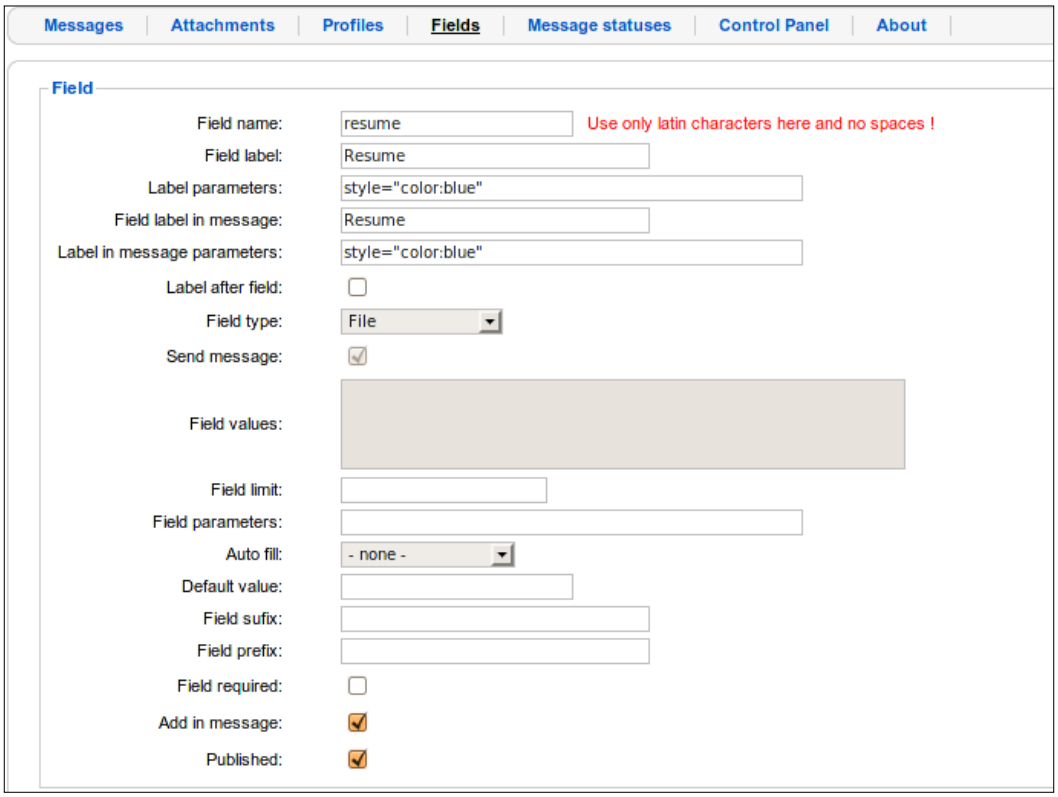
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | aiContactSafe**. This will show the **aiContactSafe** screen, listing the communications available through this component.



2. Click on the **Fields** link on the **aiContactSafe** screen. This lists the custom fields.

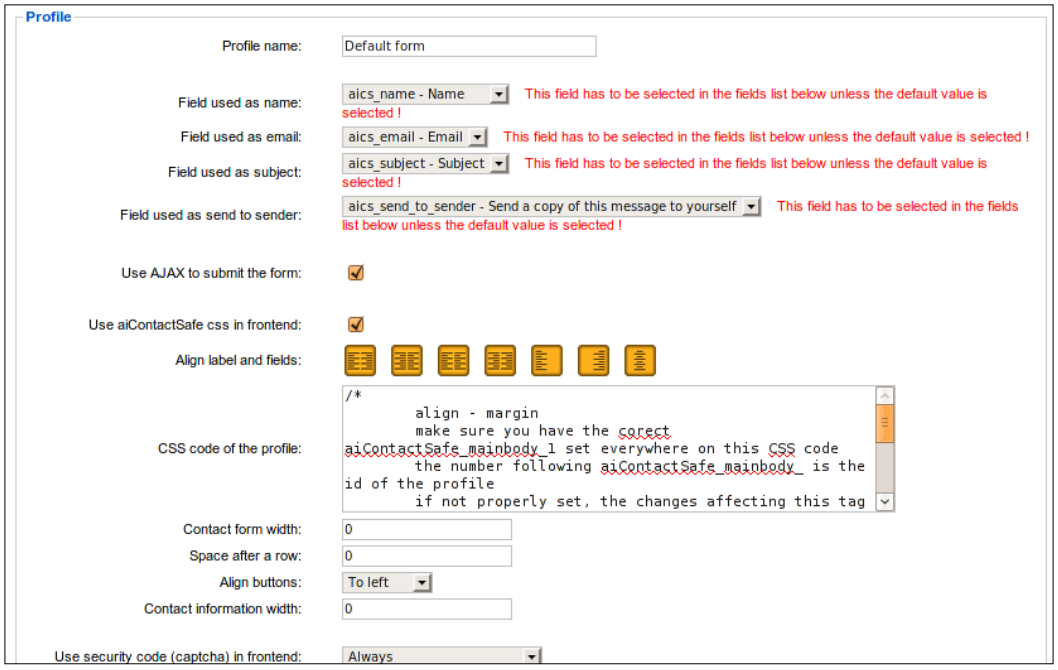


3. For adding a new custom field, click on the **Add new** button. This will show the field creation form.

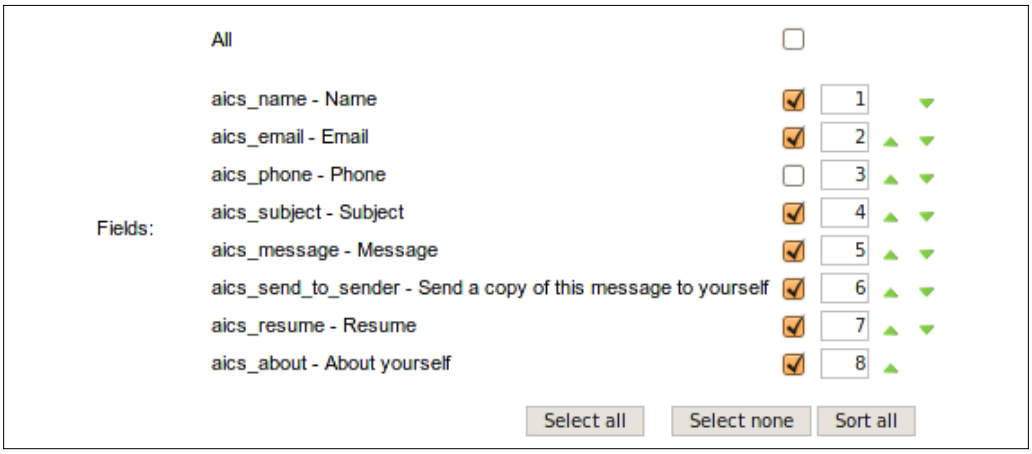


Type the name of the field and then the label. In the **Label parameters** field, you can type the style declaration for the label. In the **Field type** drop-down list, select the type of form field you want. For checkboxes or list boxes, type the values in the **Field values** box. You can autofill a drop-down list with Joomla! usernames or e-mail addresses. Check **Field required** to make a field mandatory. Finally, check **Published** and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

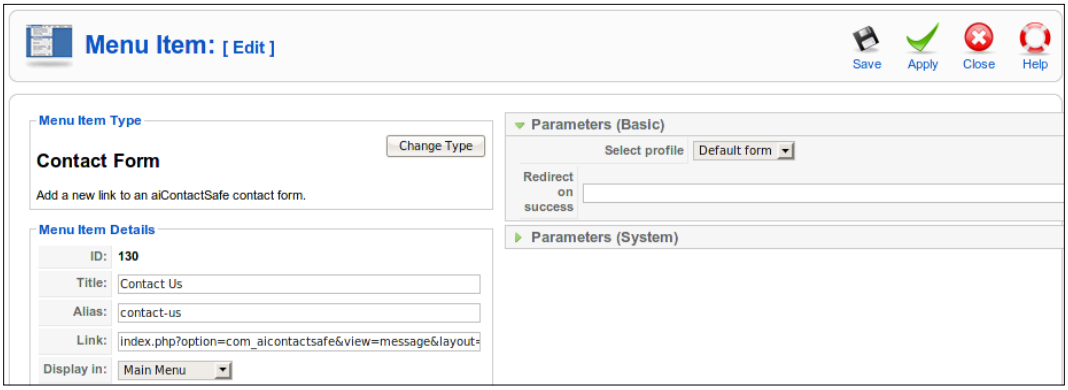
4. Create as many fields as you want, then click on the **Profiles** link. This will show the existing profiles. Profiles are a collection of fields that can be displayed as a form. Click on the **Default form** and this will show the profile edit form, as shown in the following screenshot:



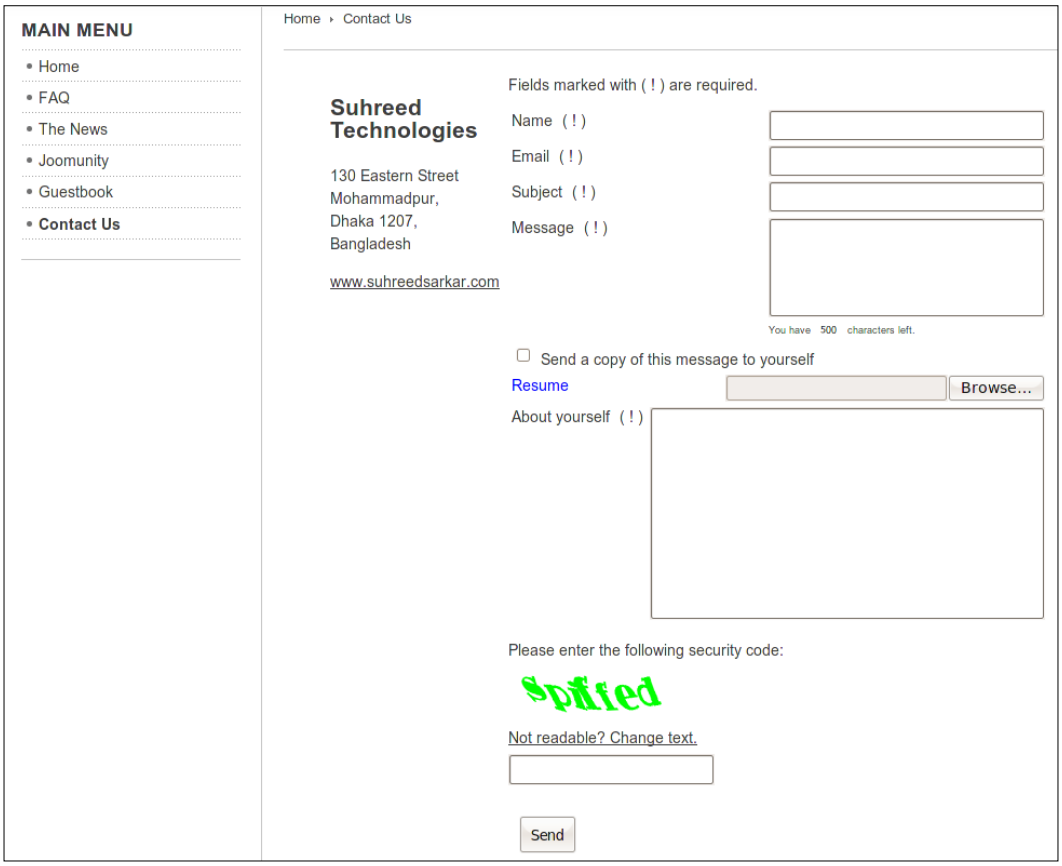
In the profile edit screen, select the fields to be used as the name, e-mail address, subject, and send to sender fields. Check the **Use AJAX to submit the form** checkbox to allow the form to be submitted without a page refresh. For using a Captcha image on the form, select **Always** or **Only for unregistered users** in the **Use security code (captcha) in frontend** drop-down list. In the **Contact information width** box, type your contact address. You can display this contact address to the left, right, top, bottom, or at any other position on the form. Select **Contact information on the left side** from the **Display format** drop-down list. You can also add some meta information. In the **Thank you message** field, type the message you want to show after a form is submitted. In the **Fields** section, you will see the available fields that can be used in this form.



5. Select the fields that you want to show and also arrange the order of the displayed fields. Finally, click the **Save** button in the template.
6. Click on **Menus | Main Menu** and create a menu item pointing to the aiContactSafe component. In the **Parameters (Basic)** section, select **Default form** from the **Select profile** drop-down list.



Preview the site's frontend. You will see the menu link in the **Main Menu**. Click this link and you will see the contact form, as shown in the following screenshot:

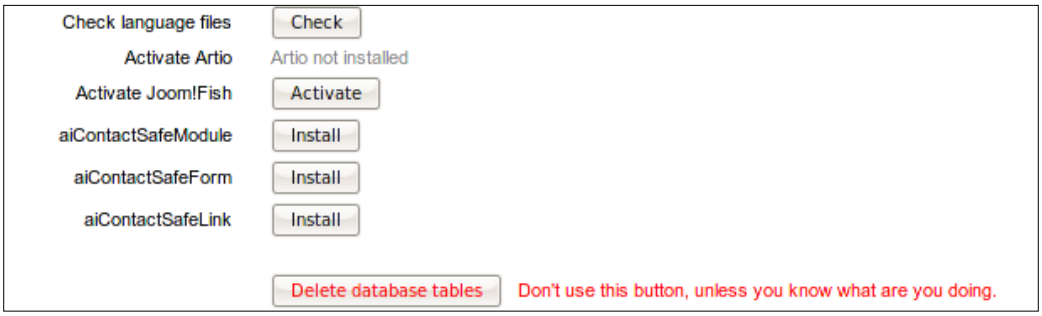


As you can see, the contact form shows the custom fields that you have made. In this case, the **Resume** file upload field and **About yourself** text box are shown in the form.

There's more...

The **aiContactSafe** component can show the contact form anywhere on the site through a module or a plugin. First, you need to install and publish that module and plugin. For installing the module and plugin, follow these steps:

1. Go to **Component | aiContactSafe | Control Panel**. In the lower part of the form, you will see the options for installing a module, as shown in the following screenshot:

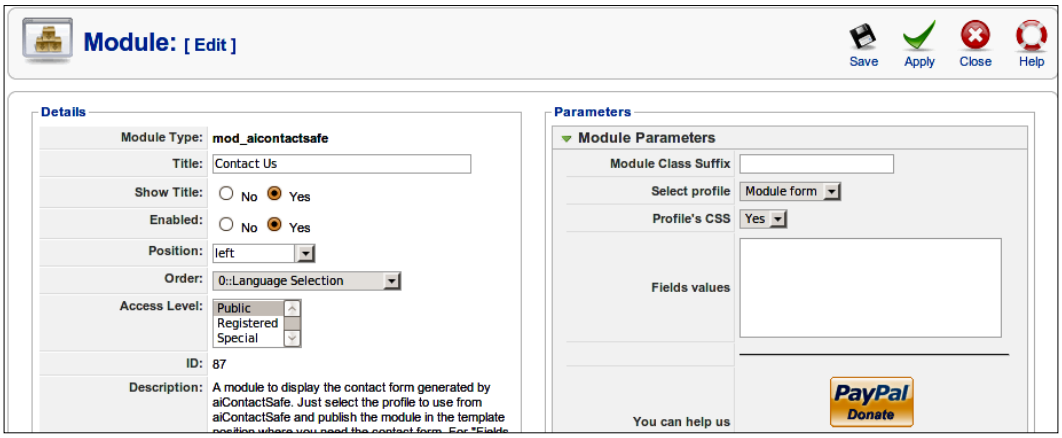


2. Click on the **Install** button beside **aiContactSafeModule** and **aiContactSafeForm**. This will install the module and the plugin.

Showing the contact form as a module

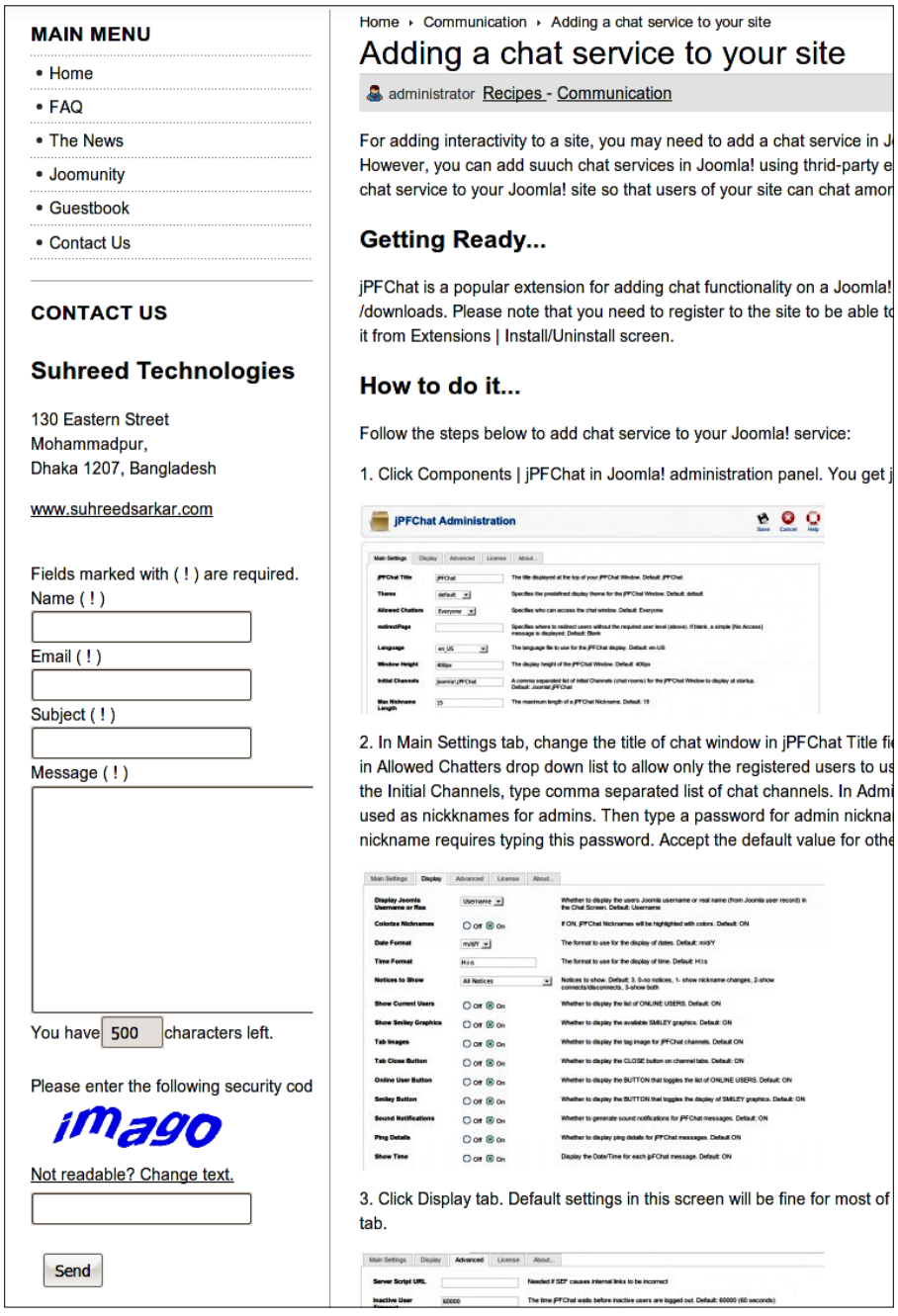
You can show a contact form at any module position by publishing the module. Carry out the following steps to publish the module:

1. Go to **Extensions | Module Manager**. In the **Module Manager** screen, click on the **aiContactSafe** module. This will show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Configure the module, as shown in the previous screenshot, and then click on the **Save** button.

Now preview the site's frontend and you will see that the module is similar to the following screenshot (to the left):



Placing the contact form anywhere within the content

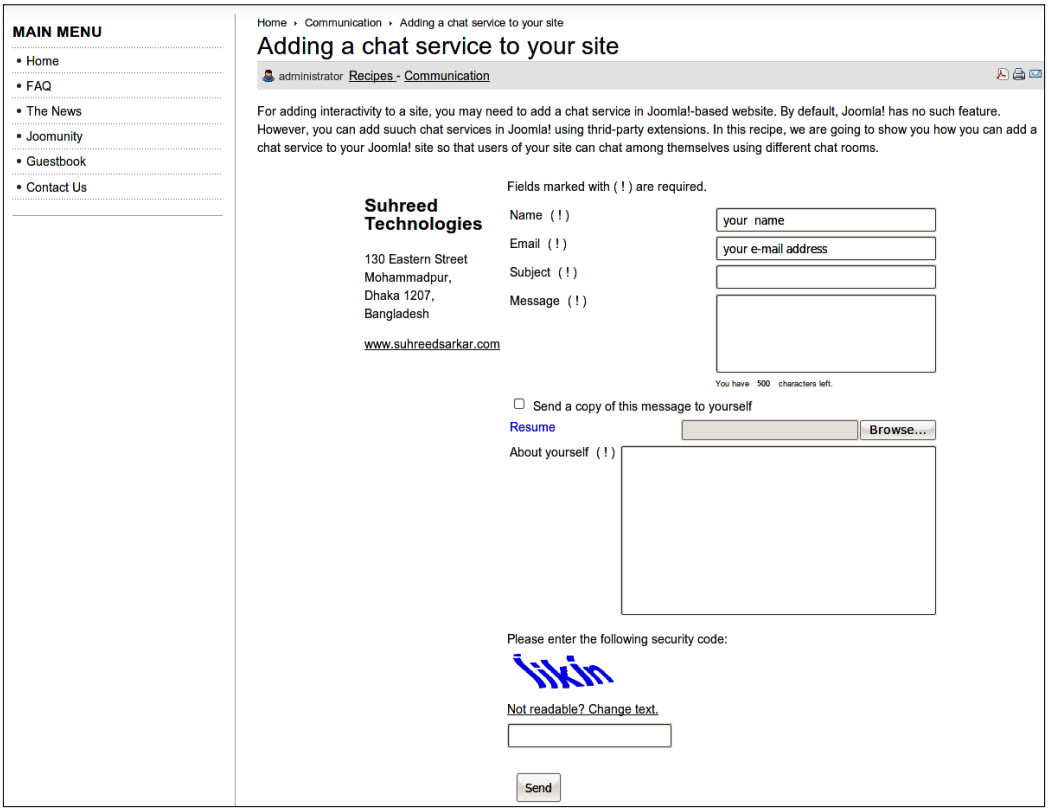
You can place a contact form anywhere in the content, including articles, through the use of the **aiContactSafe Form** plugin. Carry out the following steps to use this plugin:

1. Go to **Extensions | Plugin Manager** and ensure that the **aiContactSafe – Form** plugin is enabled.
2. In the article, use the following syntax:

```
{aicontactsafeform pf=1|use_css=1|aics_name=your name|aics_
email=your
 e-mail address}
```

Here `pf` is the ID of the profile, and `use_css` indicates whether to use aiContactSafe CSS in the frontend or not. Then, you can optionally specify the default value for the fields.

Preview the article in the site's frontend and you will see the contact form has replaced the above-mentioned code block.





You cannot show the same profile more than once on a screen, once by module, and once by plugin. If the same form profile is displayed by the module, the plugin will not display it on the same page.

Building a database application without coding

There is no doubt that Joomla! has many extensions to serve your application needs. However, sometimes you may want to add a simple database application to your site. For example, we want to keep a log of all events (workshops, meetings, and training) in a database. For this, we can simply design a database application that works with Joomla!. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to add a database application to Joomla! without coding PHP.

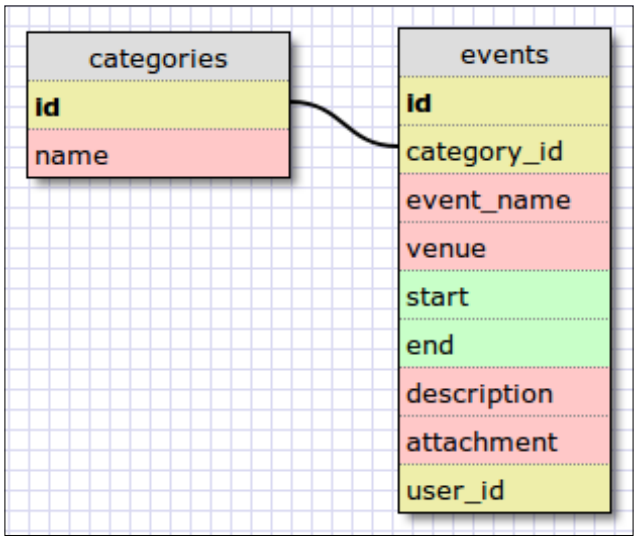
Getting ready...

The Fabrik component of Joomla! acts as an application builder. You can download the latest version of Fabrik from `http://fabrikar.com/`. Once downloaded, install the component from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

Also plan the application you want to develop. For example, we are developing an event calendar. This event calendar will contain the following information:

- Event category
- Event name
- Venue
- Start date and time
- End date and time
- Event description
- Attached document
- Created by

This is a very simple list of information that we need. Based on this, we will create two database tables: categories and events. The table structure is shown in the following figure.



The preceding table diagram shows that the `categories` table is linked to the `events` table by the foreign key `category_id`. Similarly, we have added the `user_id` field to the `events` table, so that we can link it to the `jos_users` table. Whenever a user creates an event, his or her user ID will be added to this field.

For creating the tables in the Joomla! database, connect to that database using phpMyAdmin, or some other interface, and run the following SQL command:

```
CREATE TABLE `categories` (
`id` INTEGER AUTO_INCREMENT DEFAULT NULL ,
`name` VARCHAR(200) DEFAULT NULL ,
PRIMARY KEY (`id`)
) COMMENT 'contains categories of events';

CREATE TABLE `events` (
`id` INTEGER AUTO_INCREMENT DEFAULT NULL ,
`category_id` INTEGER DEFAULT NULL ,
`event_name` MEDIUMTEXT DEFAULT NULL ,
`venue` VARCHAR(100) DEFAULT NULL ,
`start` DATETIME DEFAULT NULL ,
`end` DATETIME DEFAULT NULL ,
```

```
`description` MEDIUMTEXT DEFAULT NULL ,
`attachment` VARCHAR(250) DEFAULT NULL ,
`user_id` INTEGER DEFAULT NULL ,
PRIMARY KEY (`id`)
) COMMENT 'list of events';

ALTER TABLE `events` ADD FOREIGN KEY (category_id) REFERENCES
`categories` (`id`);
```

A successful execution of this code block will create two tables and add a foreign key to the `events` table, linking it to the `categories` table.

With the creation of these two tables, we are set to create our event calendar application.

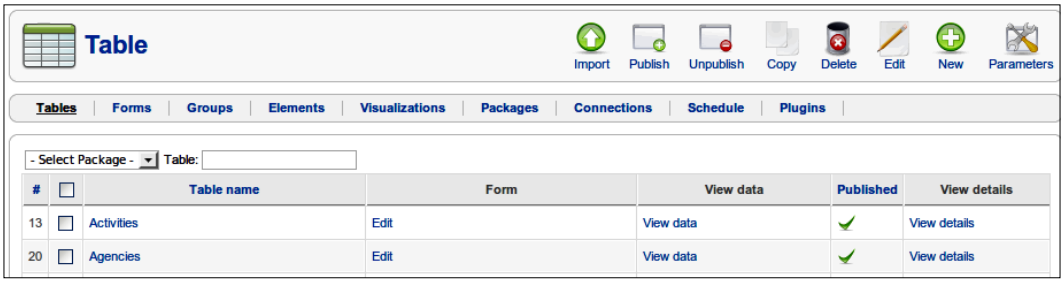
How to do it...

Carry out the following steps to develop the application:

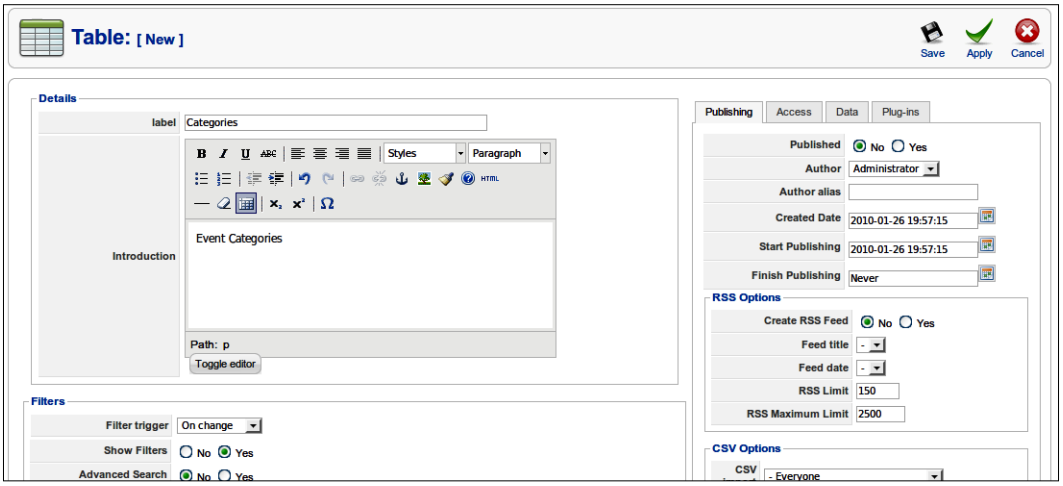
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Fabrik | Connections.** This will show the existing database connections. By default, a connection to the Joomla! database is created. Make sure that connection named site database is published.



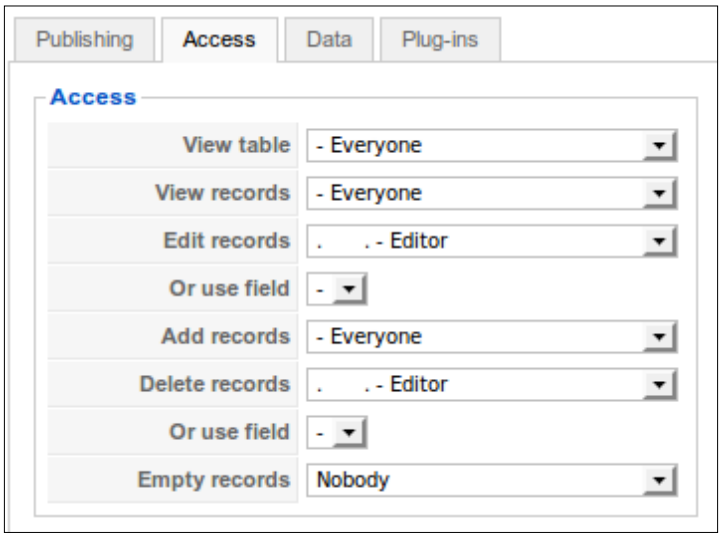
2. Click on the **Tables** link in this screen. This will show the existing tables created in Fabrik.



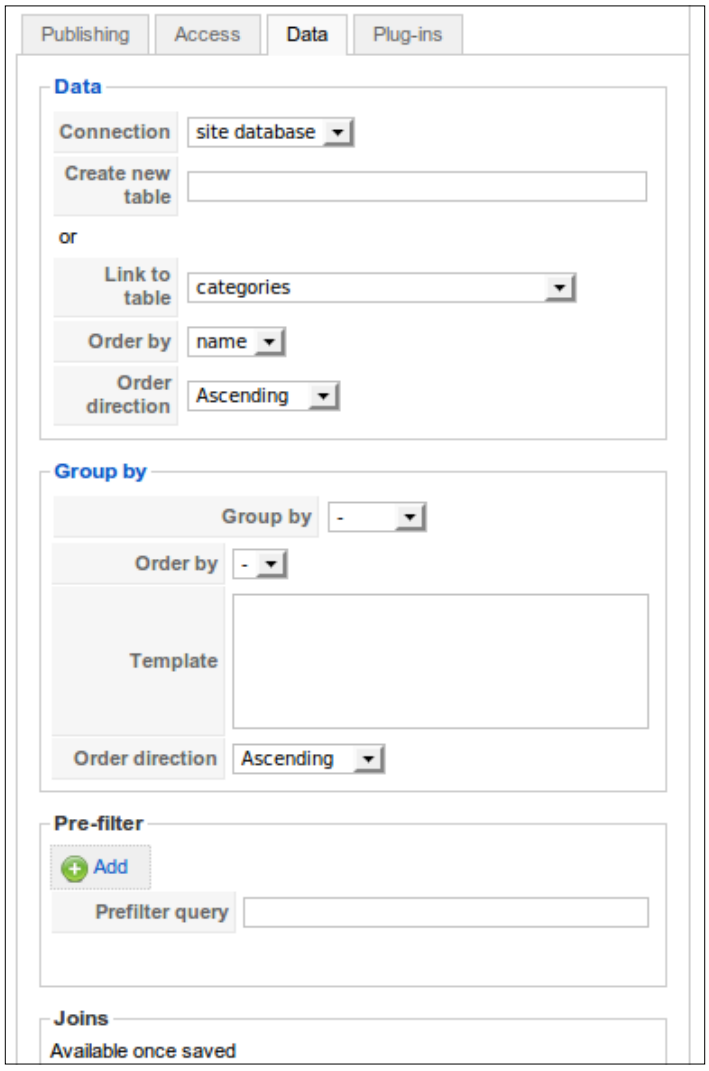
3. In the **Table** screen, click on the **New** button to add a new table. This will show the **Table: [New]** screen.



4. In the **Label** field type **Categories**. In the **Introduction** field type **Event Categories**. Then select **Yes** in **Published** radio box on the right-hand side. Accept the default values for the other fields. Then click on the **Access** tab, which will show the access rights.

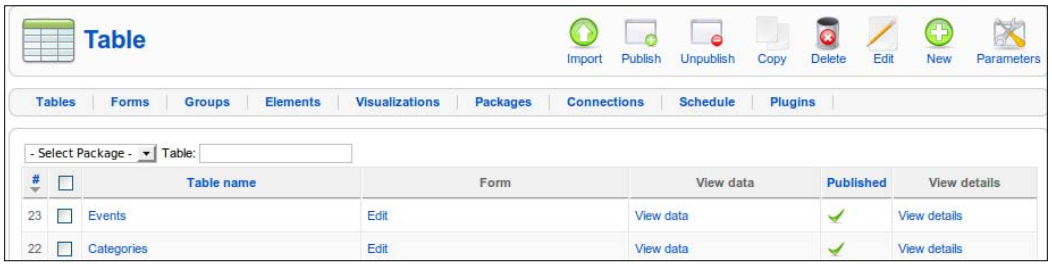


5. Accept the default values in the **Access** tab. Now click on the **Data** tab. From here, you have to configure which data table you want to use.



6. From the **Connection** drop-down list, select **site database**. Then click on the **Link to table** drop-down list and select the **categories** table. In the **Order by** drop-down list, select **name**. There are some other options in this tab, but they cannot be configured until you save the table. Now click on the **Save** button to save the table.

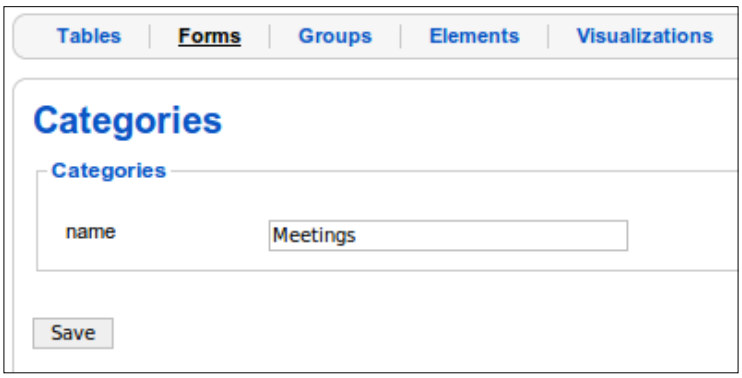
You will be back to the **Table** screen and will find the **Categories** table listed here. You still need to create the events table, so click on the **New** button again. This shows the same **Table: [New]** screen. In the **Label** field type **events**, and in the **Description** field type **List of events**. Then select **Yes** in **Published** radio box. From the **Data** tab, select the **site database** connection, and the **events** table in **Link to Table** drop-down list. Then click on the **Save** button to save the table. Now you can see both the categories and events table in the **Table** screen.



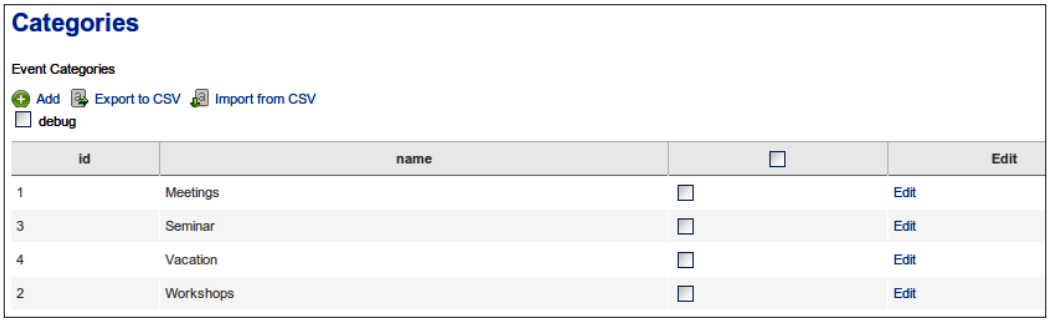
7. Now click on the **View data** link for the **Categories** table. It shows you the **Categories** table containing no records.



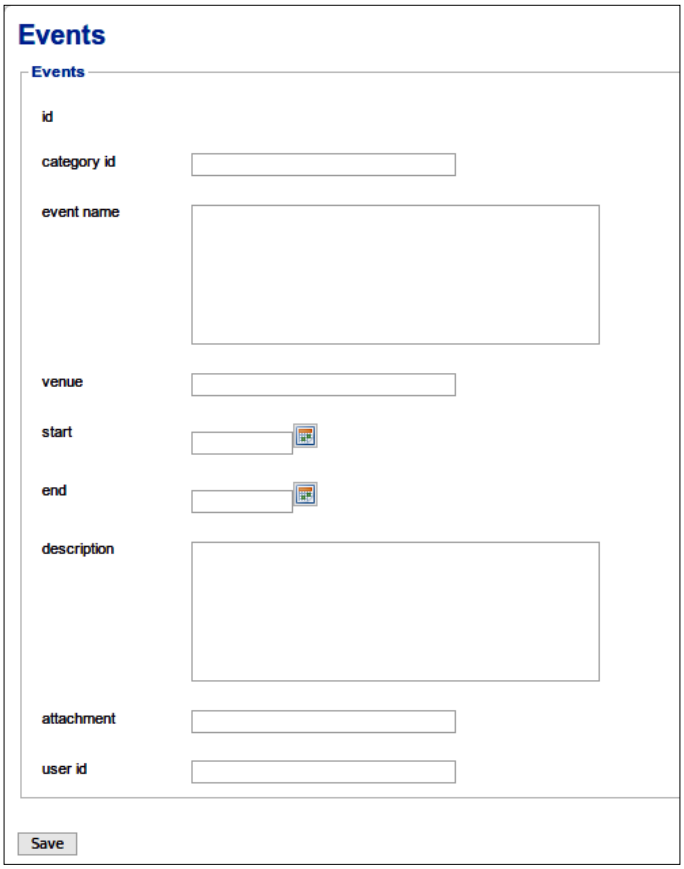
8. Click on the **Add** button to add a record to this table. This shows the form shown in the following screenshot:



9. Type a category name, for example, **Meetings**, in the **name** field and click on the **Save** button. Now you will see the **Categories** table screen listing the added categories.

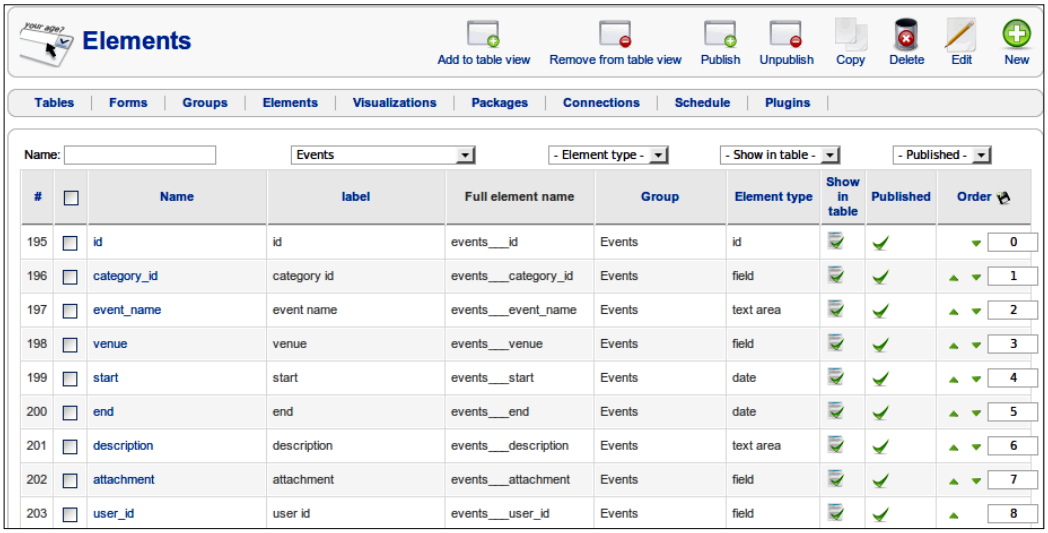


10. Click on the **Table** link and the **View Data** link for the **Events** table. This will show the **Events** table screen without any record. Click on the **Add** button on this screen to add an event. This will show a form like the one in the following screenshot:



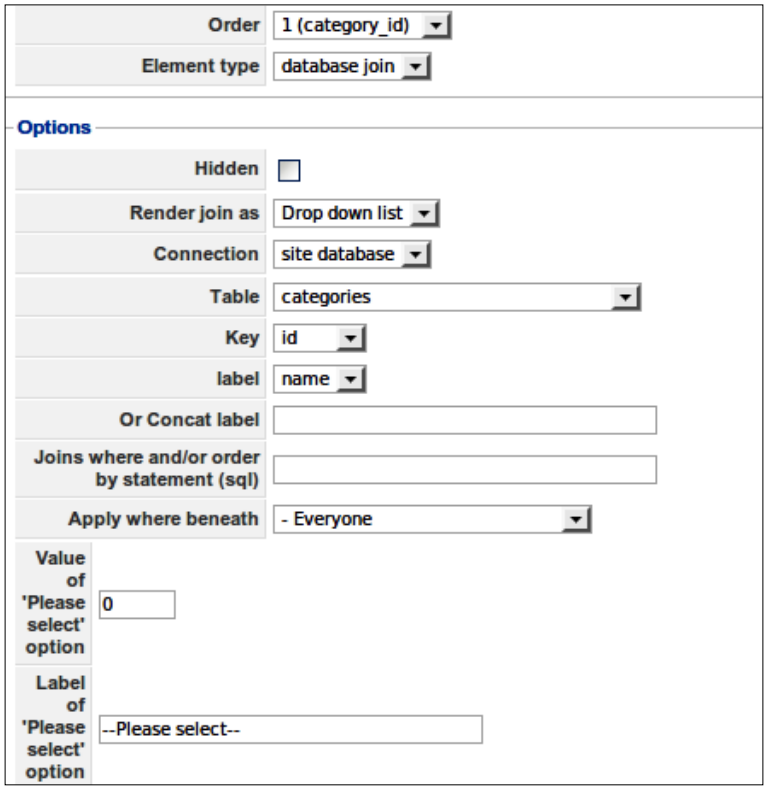
Note that the form shows the fields for the category ID, venue name, event name, start and end date, description, attachment, and user ID. Although it shows all the fields, we don't want to display the fields in this way. We want to display a list of categories in the `category_id` field, so that users can select a category from that list instead of typing it again and again. In the description field, we want to use HTML formatted text with a WYSIWYG editor. The start and end fields should have an entering date, as well as time. Through the attachment field, we may want to upload files. Finally, the `user_id` field should be filled in automatically, based on the logged in user's ID. We will make these changes using the following steps.

1. Click on the **Elements** link. This will show all the form elements. To filter out elements for the **Events** form, select **Events** in the **Group** drop-down list. This will show all the elements for the **Events** form.

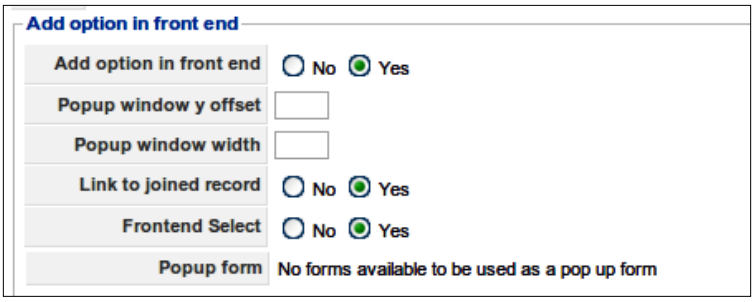


#	Name	label	Full element name	Group	Element type	Show in table	Published	Order
195	id	id	events___id	Events	id	✓	✓	0
196	category_id	category id	events___category_id	Events	field	✓	✓	1
197	event_name	event name	events___event_name	Events	text area	✓	✓	2
198	venue	venue	events___venue	Events	field	✓	✓	3
199	start	start	events___start	Events	date	✓	✓	4
200	end	end	events___end	Events	date	✓	✓	5
201	description	description	events___description	Events	text area	✓	✓	6
202	attachment	attachment	events___attachment	Events	field	✓	✓	7
203	user_id	user id	events___user_id	Events	field	✓	✓	8

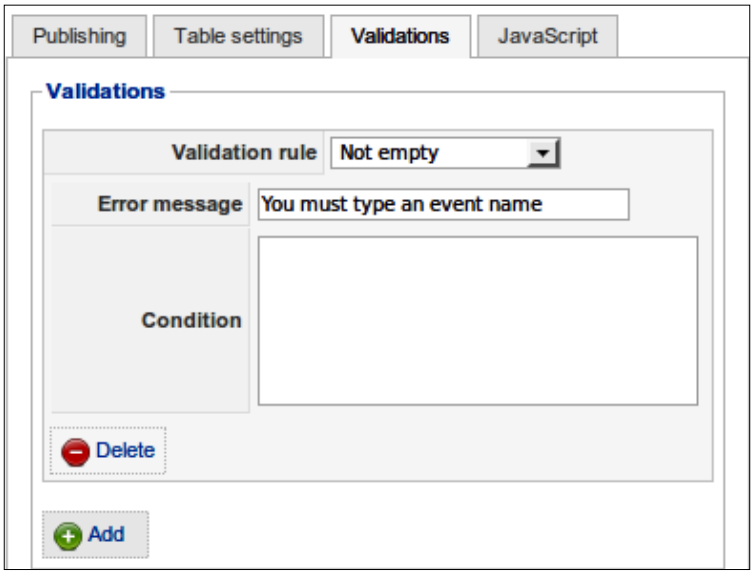
2. Click on the **category_id** field link. This opens the **Element: [Edit]** screen. In the **label** field, type **Category**. In the **Element type** drop-down list, select **database join**. Then configure the other fields, as shown in the following screenshot:



This configuration will show the list of categories from the `categories` table (selected in the **Table** drop-down list). We want to provide opportunities for users to add new categories to this drop-down list, while completing the form. To do so, go to the **Add option in frontend** section, in the **Element: [Edit]** screen. Select **Yes** for all fields in this section. This is shown in the following screenshot:

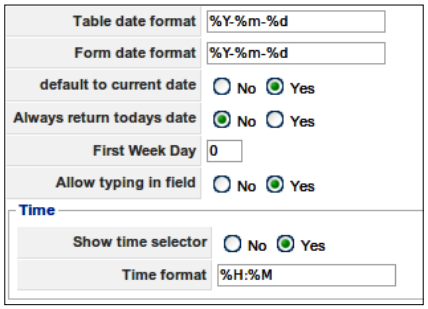


1. Click on the **Save** button. This shows the message **Do you wish to update the element's database field structure?**. Click on the **Save** button to update the database structure.
2. Click on the **event_name** field link. Then select **field** in the **Element Type** drop-down list. The name of event cannot be empty. Therefore, we want to add a validation rule for this field. Therefore, in the **Element: [Edit]** screen for the **event_name** field, click on the **Validations** tab, and then the **Add** button. Select **Not empty** in the **Validation rule** drop-down list. Type an error message in the **Error message** field.

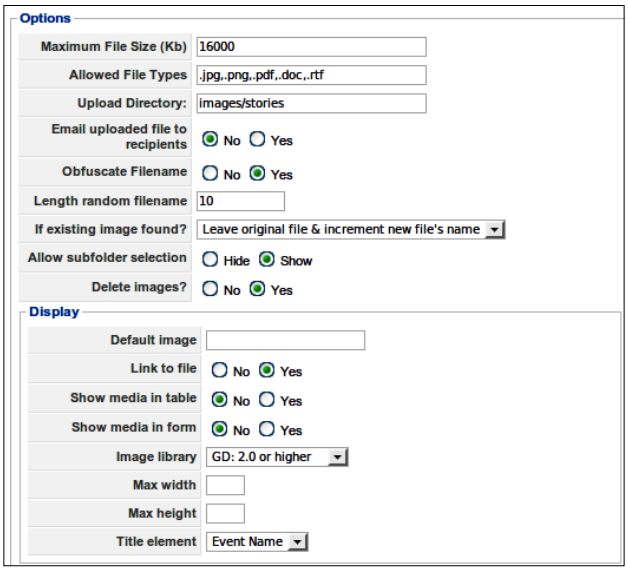


3. Click on the **Save** button to save the changes in the **event_name** field. Click on the **Save** button when asked to update the database structure.

4. From the **Elements** screen, click on the start field. In the **Element: [Edit]** screen for this field, make sure that the date is selected in the **Element Type** drop-down list. Then scroll down to the following options:

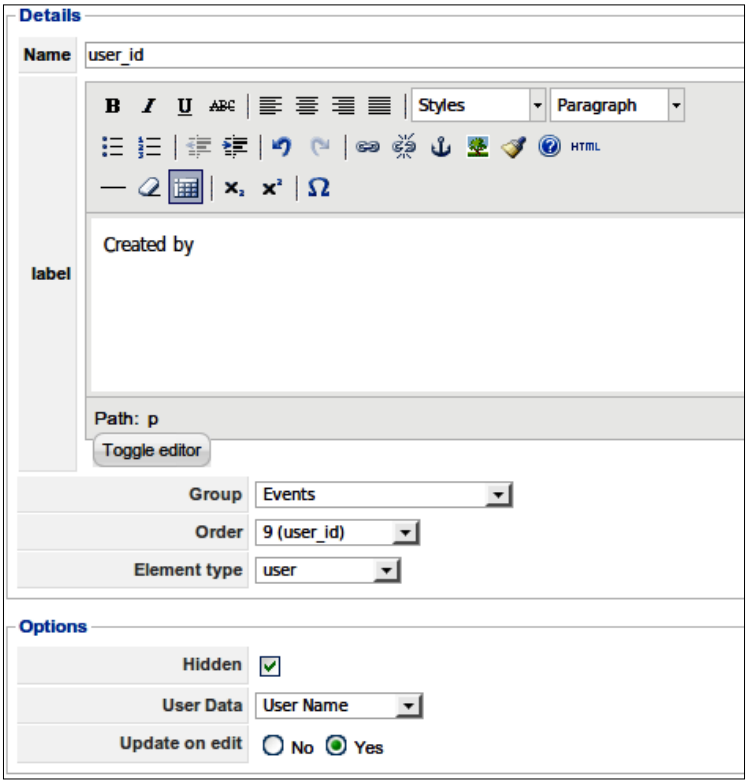


5. Select **Yes** in **default to current date**, **Allow typing in field**, and **Show time selector** radio boxes. Then click on the **Save** button to save the settings. Make the same changes for the **end** field.
6. Now click on the **description** field link in the **Elements** screen. This will open the **Element: [edit]** screen for the description of the element. Make sure the text area is selected in the **Element Type** drop-down list. Then check **Yes** in the **Use WYSIWYG Editor** radio box. Click on the **Save** button to save and update the database structure.
7. Now click on the **attachment** field link in the **Elements** screen. This shows the **Element: [Edit]** screen for the **attachment** field. Select **file upload** in the **Element type** drop-down list. You will then see the **Options** section, make the changes shown in the following screenshot:

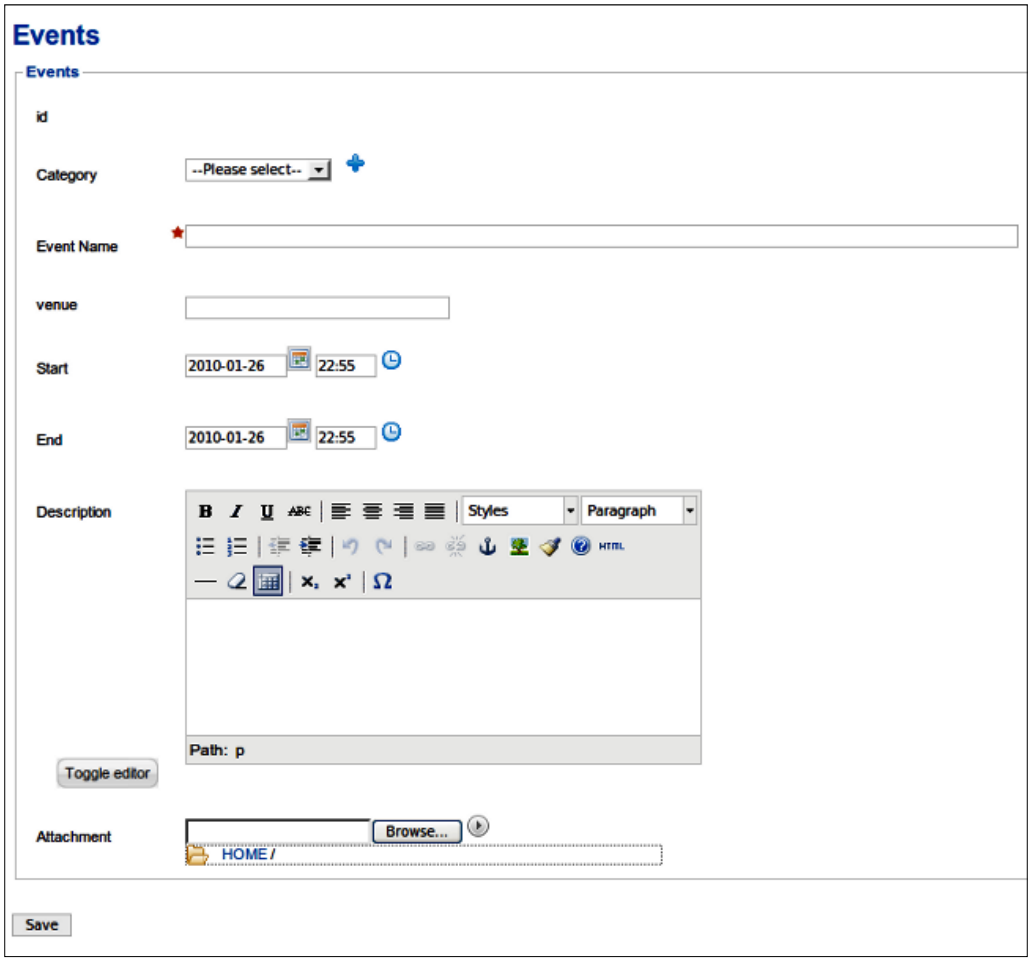


In this screen, we specify the maximum size of upload, allowed file extensions, upload directory, and so on. We have selected **Yes** in the **Obfuscate Filename** field so that the uploaded file receives a new name. Accept the default values for all other fields and save the settings by clicking on the **Save** button. Also update the database structure when prompted. This can be done by performing the following steps:

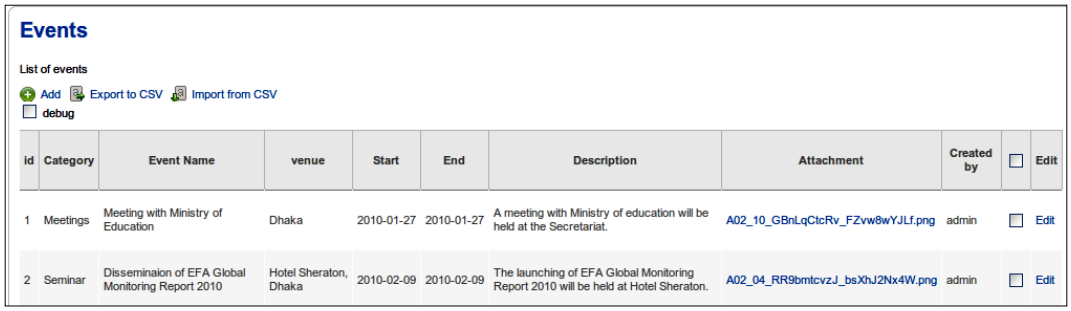
1. From the **Elements** screen, click on the **user_id** field link. This shows the **Element :[Edit]** screen. Type **Created by** in the **Label** field. Then select **user** in the **Element type** drop-down list. In the **Options** section, select **User Name** in the **User Data** drop-down list. Check **Yes** in the **Update on Edit** field. Also check the **Hidden** checkbox to hide this field on the add form. Then save the settings by clicking on the **Save** button.



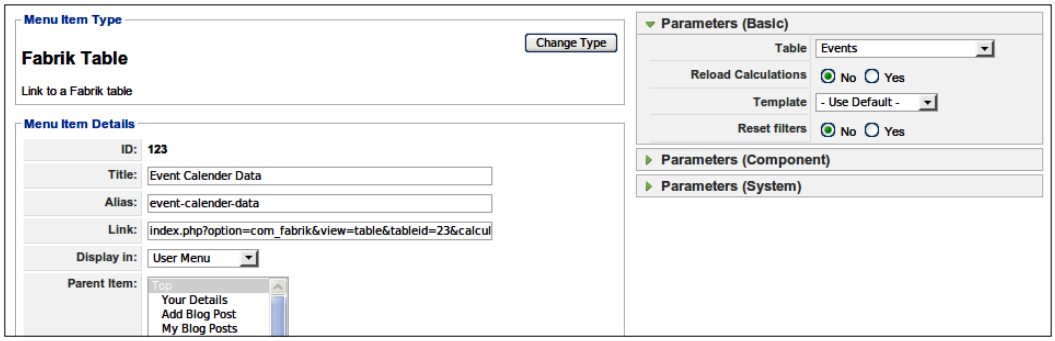
2. Now go to the **Tables** screen and click the **View Data** link for the **Events** table. This will show the **Events** table details without any data. Click on the **Add** button to add a new record. This will show the following form:



3. You will now see the form elements as you wanted. The **Category** drop-down list shows a list of categories in the categories table. Clicking on the plus icon to the right-hand side of this field will allow you to add a new category. The **Event Name** field is marked with a red star to indicate that it is a required field. The **Start** and **End** fields now include date and time selectors. The **Description** field shows the WYSIWYG Editor. In the **Attachment** field, you can now browse the file system and select a file to upload and attach to this event entry. Complete this form and click **Save** to save the data. You will see the **Events** table with the entries listed.

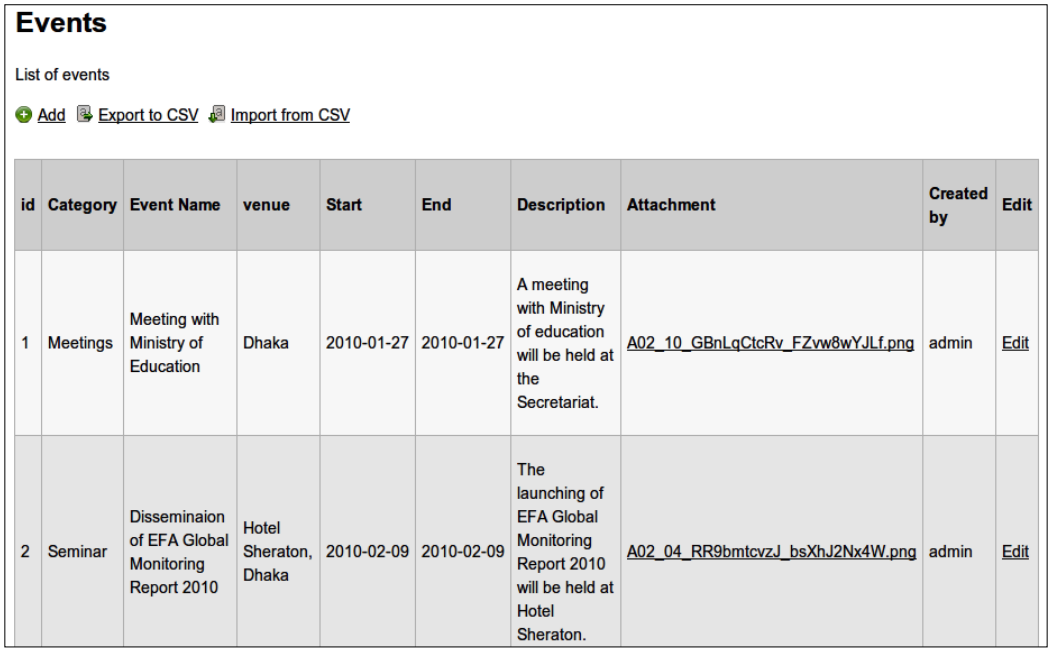


4. Now click on **Menus | User Menu**. This will show menu items in the User Menu. Click on the **New** button to add a new menu item. This will show the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. Click on **Fabrik | Table**. Then type a title for the menu item.



5. From the **Parameters (Basic)** section, select **Events** in the **Table** drop-down list. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

Now preview the site's frontend and log in as a frontend user. You will see the **Event Calendar Data** link in **User Menu**. Click this link and you will see the available data for the event calendar.



Events

List of events

Add Export to CSV Import from CSV

id	Category	Event Name	venue	Start	End	Description	Attachment	Created by	Edit
1	Meetings	Meeting with Ministry of Education	Dhaka	2010-01-27	2010-01-27	A meeting with Ministry of education will be held at the Secretariat.	A02_10_GBnLqCtcRv_FZvw8wYJLf.png	admin	Edit
2	Seminar	Disseminaion of EFA Global Monitoring Report 2010	Hotel Sheraton, Dhaka	2010-02-09	2010-02-09	The launching of EFA Global Monitoring Report 2010 will be held at Hotel Sheraton.	A02_04_RR9bmtcvzJ_bsXhJ2Nx4W.png	admin	Edit

You will see the list of events entered. For adding new events, click on the **Add** button at the top of this table. This will show the Event form, from which users can provide the event details.

There's more...

There are many other things that can be done using Fabrik. It can show three visualizations: chart, calendar, and Google Map. The calendar we have made can be further fine-tuned.

Fabrik can add many form elements including input, checkboxes, radio boxes, drop-down lists, a WYSIWYG text area, a date picker, file uploads, images, buttons, users, and links. A form can also be configured to send notification e-mails to specified users on submission of the form.

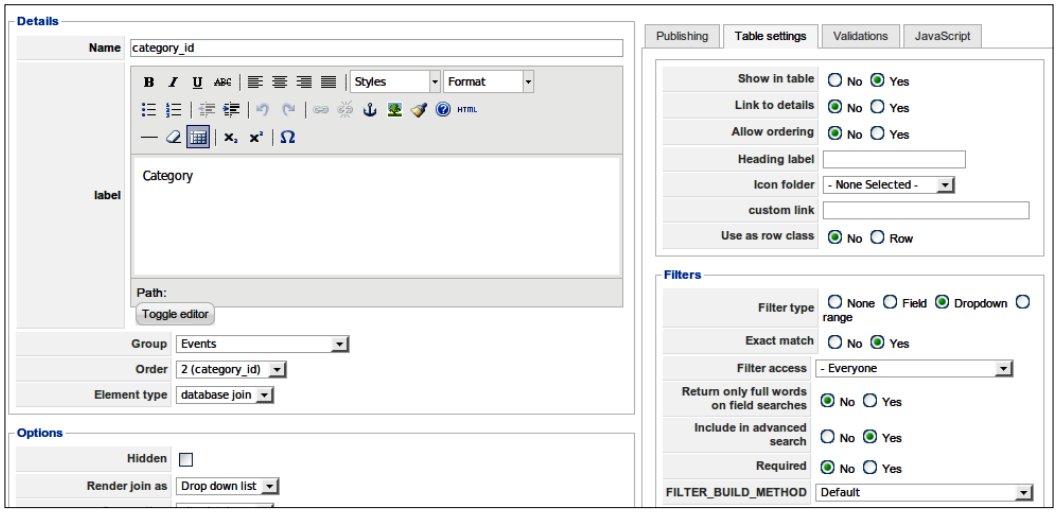
In this example application, we have created the tables first. However, you can start designing forms and Fabrik can create the underlying table fields for you.

The good thing is that data collected through the forms developed by Fabrik can be easily exported as a CSV file. You can also import data to Fabrik tables from a CSV file and create RSS feeds.

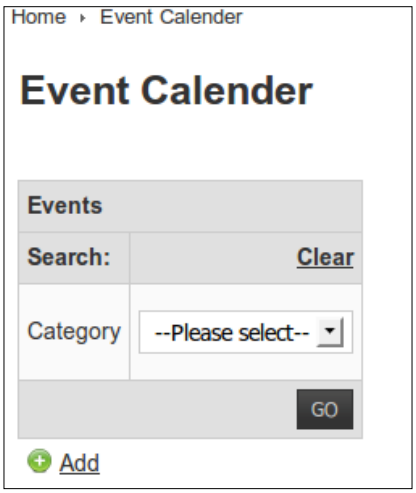
Adding a Filter

We can add filtering to our database application simply by changing some settings. For example, we want to add a drop-down list so that users can filter out events by category from the list. To do so, carry out the following steps:

1. From the **Elements** screen, double-click on the **category_id** element link. This shows the **Element: [Edit]** screen. Now click on the **Table Settings** tab. In the **Filters** section, select **Dropdown** in the **Filter type** field. Then click on the **Save** button to save the changes.



2. From the site's frontend, view the **Event Calender**. It now shows a drop-down list at the top of the calendar.



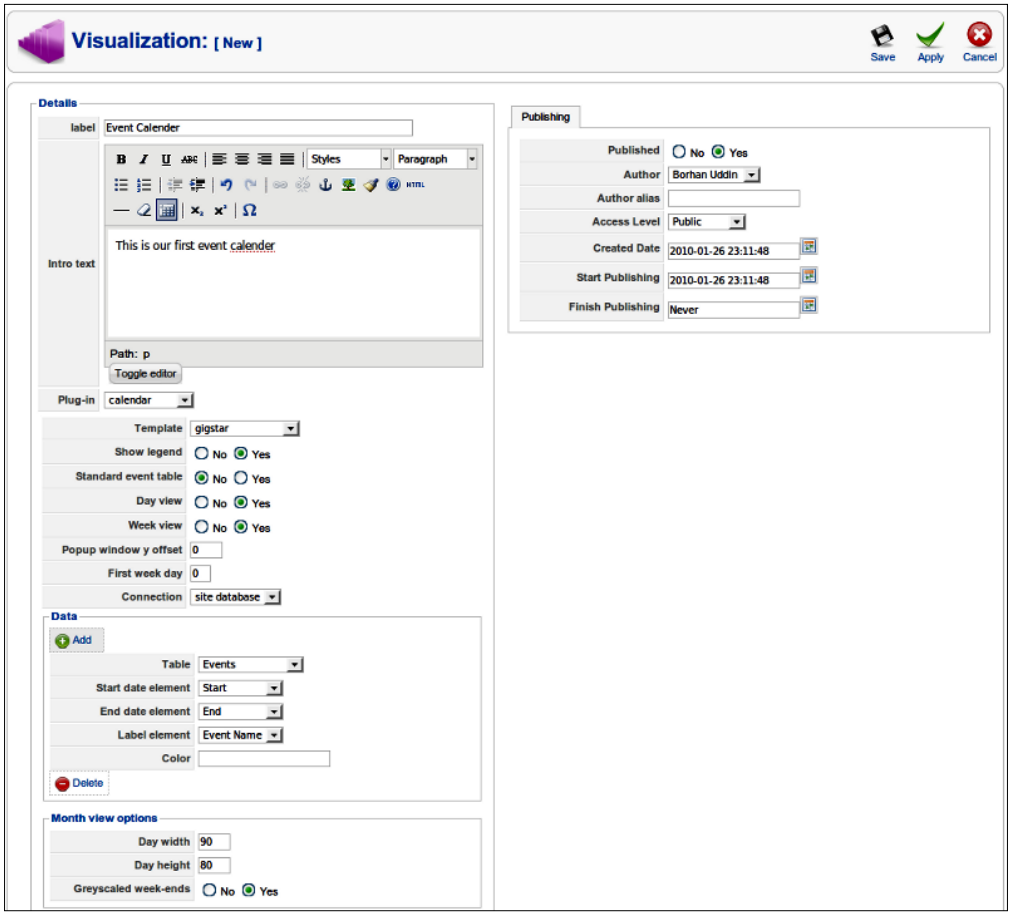
3. Select a category from the list and click the **Go** button. This will show events in that category only.

You can add many other filters and ordering to the table data. You can also apply pre-filters to a table, so that data is filtered prior to being presented to users. These pre-filters can be of different types. For example, you can define a pre-filter to show the items created by the logged-in user.

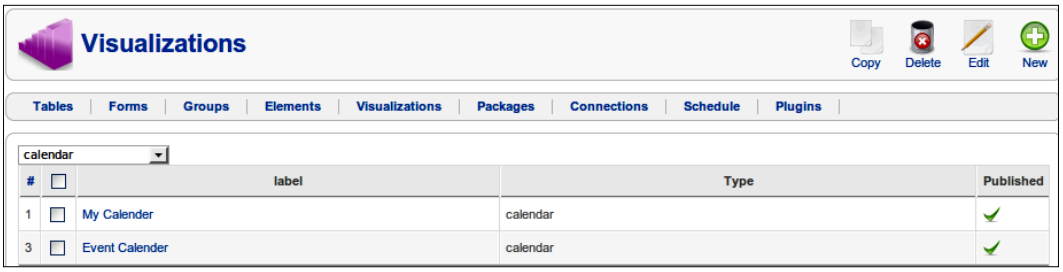
Adding a visualization

We can add a calendar visualization to this data. Carry out the following steps to add a calendar visualization:

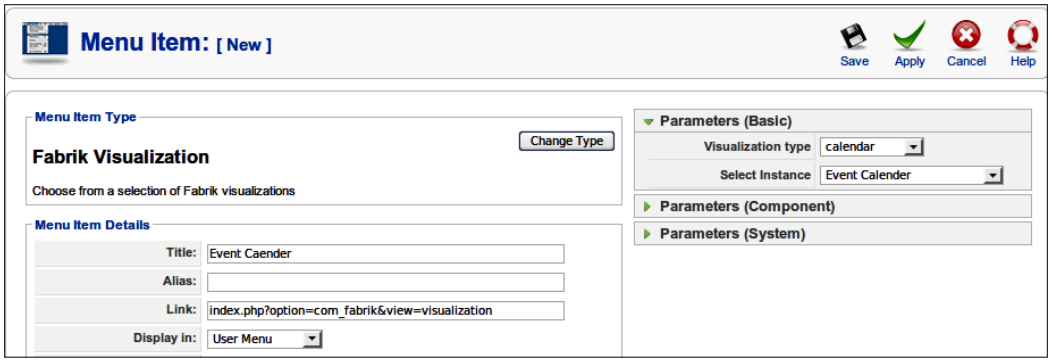
1. Go to the Joomla! administration panel and click on **Components | Fabrik | Visualizations**. This will show the **Visualizations** screen with a list of existing visualizations. Click on the **New** button on this screen. This shows the **Visualization: [New]** screen.



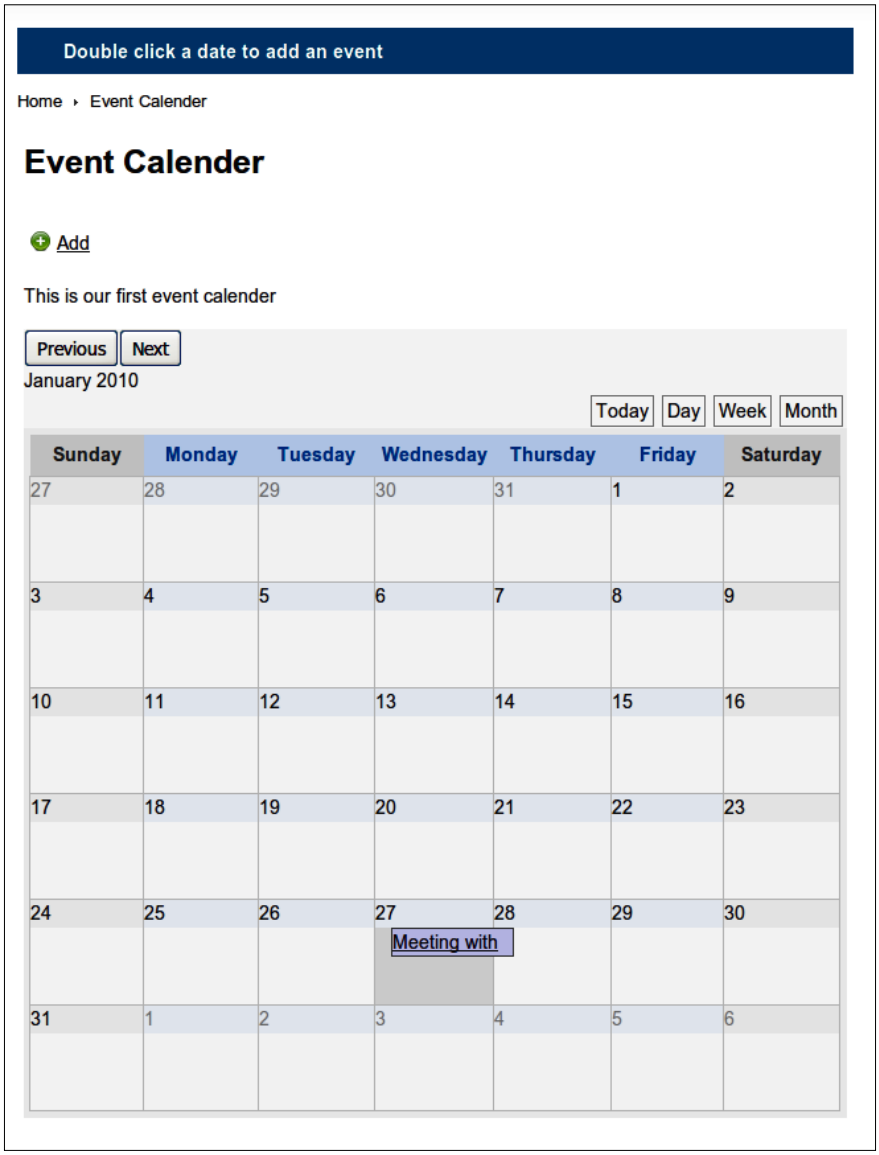
2. In the **Label** field, type a label for this visualization. A brief description of this visualization can be given in the **Intro text** field. Then select **calendar** from the **Plugin** drop-down list. Select a template from the **Template** drop-down list.
3. In the **Data** section, select the **Events** table in the **Table** drop-down list. Then select a start and end for the **Start date element** and **End date element** drop-down lists, respectively. In the **Label element** drop-down list, select **Event Name**.
4. In the **Month view options** section, select **Yes** in the **Greyscaled week-ends** field.
5. On the right side, select **Yes** in the **Published** radio box. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. Now you will see the visualization listed in the **Visualizations** screen.



6. Click on **Menus | User Menu**, and then the **Add** button. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. Click on the **Fabrik | Visualizations | Visualization** link. Provide a title for the menu item, for example, **Event Calendar**. From the **Parameters (Basic)** section, select **calendar** in the **Visualization type** drop-down list and **Event Calender** in the **Select Instance** drop-down list. Then click on the **Save** button to save the menu item.



Now preview the site. Log in to the site using a frontend user account. You will then see the **Event Calender** link in **User Menu**. Click that link, and you will see the calendar.



The calendar shows the events. It has three views: **Day**, **Week**, and **Month**. Change one view to another by clicking the links. You can add a new event to a particular date by double-clicking on that date, or by clicking on the **Add** button on the top of the calendar.

6
Enhancing Communication

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding a chat service to your Joomla! site
- Adding an Ajax Shoutbox to your site
- Adding a forum to your Joomla! site
- Adding private messaging to your Joomla! site

Introduction

There are many extensions for Joomla! for communication among the site users. You can add a chat service, private messaging system, or **Shoutbox** for instant communication, and forums can be used as a discussion channel among the users. The Joomla! Extensions Directory has many forum extensions, and among them, **Agora forum** is discussed in this chapter. Besides the forum, we will also show how to add a chat service, Ajax Shoutbox, and a private messaging system to Joomla!.

Adding a chat service to your Joomla! site

For adding interactivity to a site, you may want to add a chat service to the Joomla!-based website. By default, Joomla! has no such feature. However, you can add such chat services in Joomla! using third-party extensions. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add a chat service to your Joomla! site, so that users of your site can chat among themselves using chat rooms.

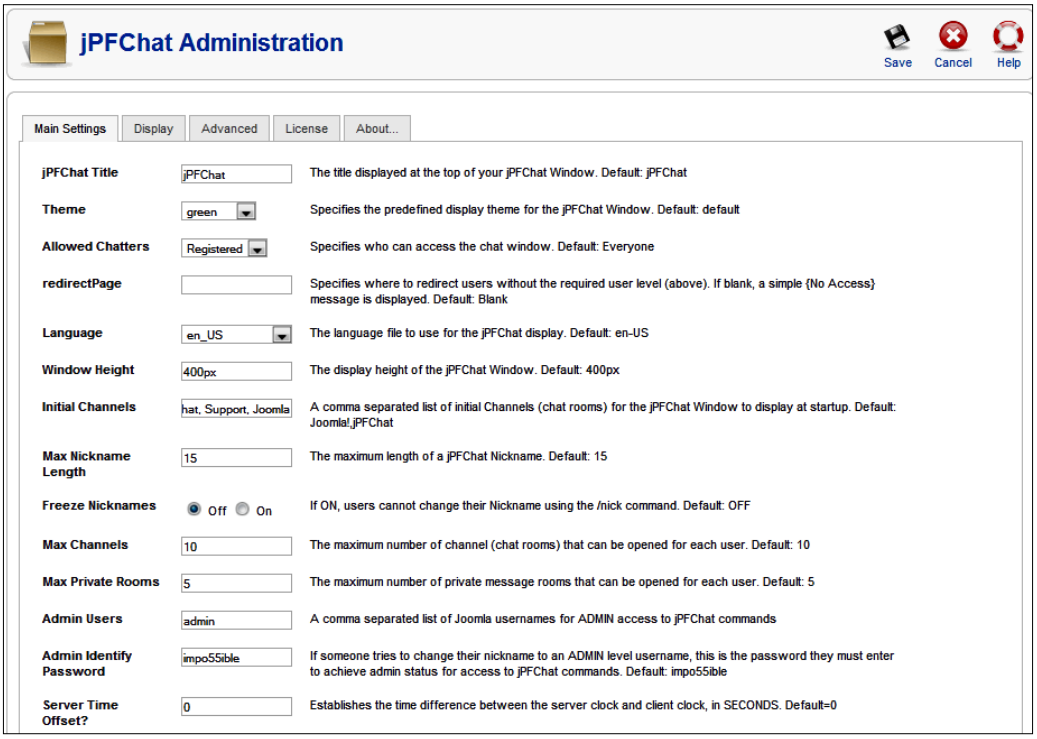
Getting ready...

jPFChat is a popular extension for adding chat functionality to a Joomla! website. Download jPFChat from `http://www.jpfchat.com/index.php/downloads`. Please note that you need to register to the site to be able to download the jPFChat package. Once downloaded, install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

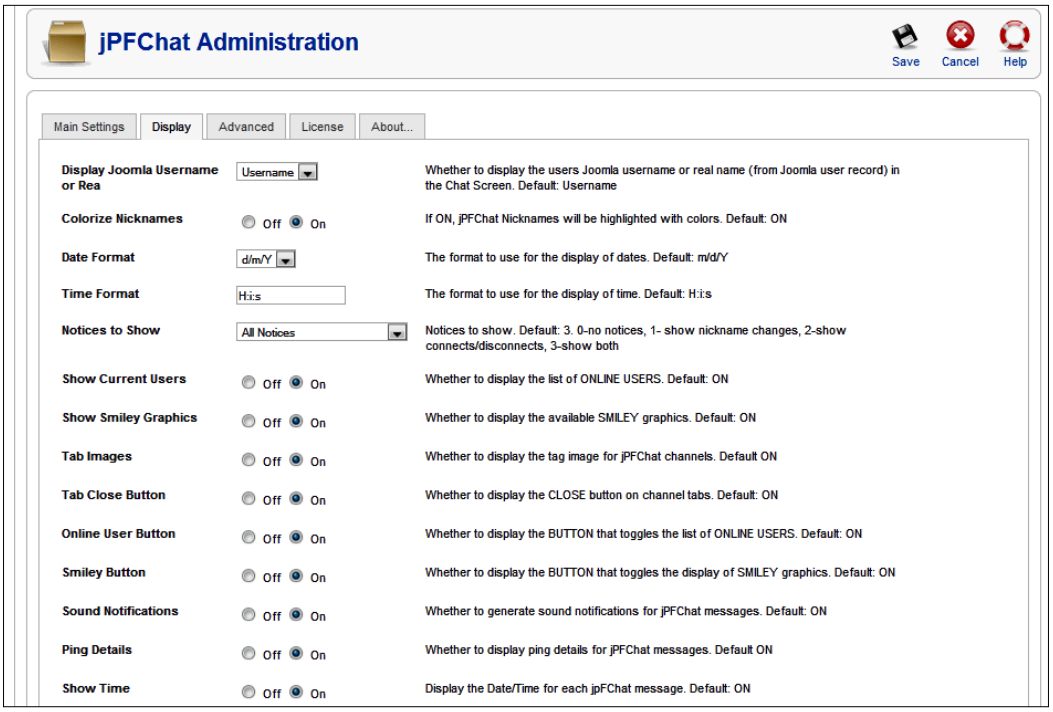
After installation, carry out the following steps, to add the chat service to your Joomla! service:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **jPFChat**. This shows the **jPFChat Administration** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:

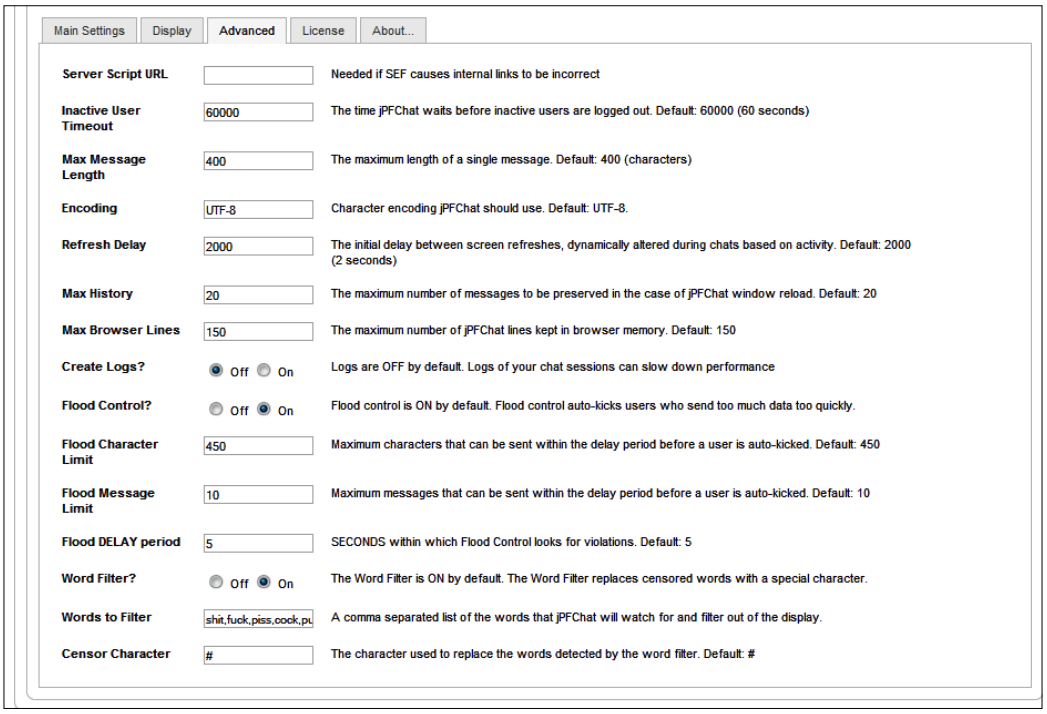


2. In the **Main Settings** tab, perform the following changes:
   - Change the title of the chat window in the **JPFChat Title** field.
   - Select a theme from the **Theme** drop-down list or keep it as **default**.
   - Select **Registered** in the **Allowed Chatters** drop-down list to allow only the registered users to use this chat service.

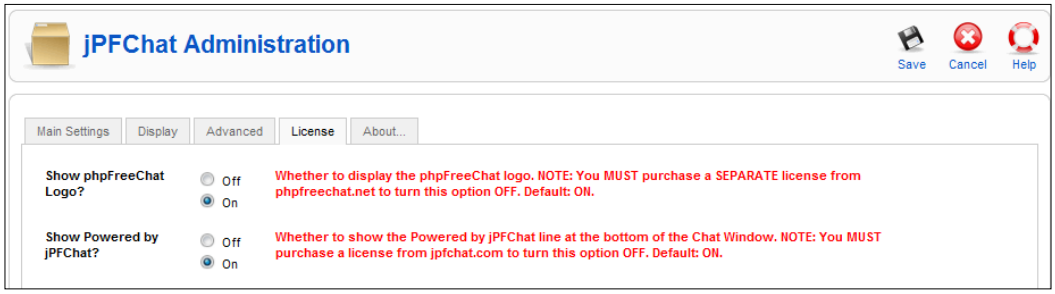
- Select the language for chatting from the **Language** field.
- In the **Initial Channels** field, type a comma-separated list of chat channels.
- In the **Admin Users** field, type a comma-separated list of admin users that will be used as nicknames for admins.
- In the **Admin Identify Password** field, type a password for admin nicknames so that anybody trying to change his/her nickname to an admin nickname is required to type this password.
- Accept the default value for the other fields.
- Click on the **Display** tab.



3. In the **Display** tab, the default settings will be fine for most of the sites. Select **d/m/Y** in the **Date Format** drop-down list. Now click on the **Advanced** tab.

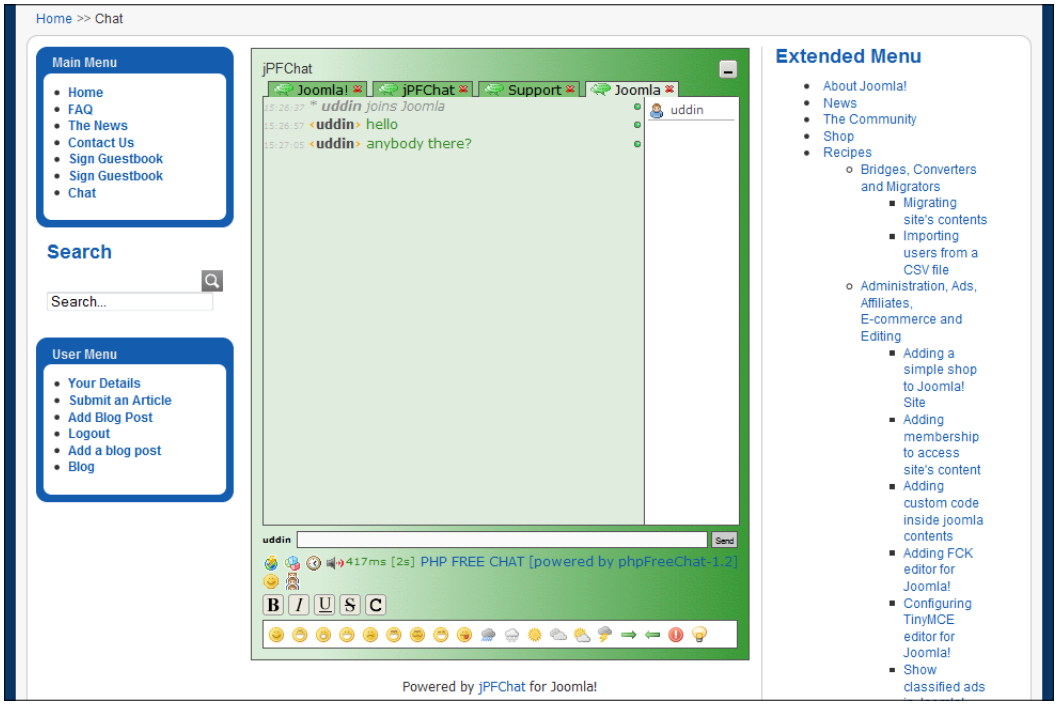


4. From the **Advanced** tab, you can configure inactive user timeout, encoding, refresh delay, and other censoring options. Click on **On** in the **Word Filter?** field. Then type the words to censor in the **Word to Filter** field. In the **Censor Character** field, type the character that will replace a word in the filter list. Now click on the **License** tab.



5. In the **License** tab, keep the default values. Note that you need to buy a license to remove the **phpFreeChat logo** and powered by tag. Click on the **About...** tab to find out more about the version and the developers of this component.

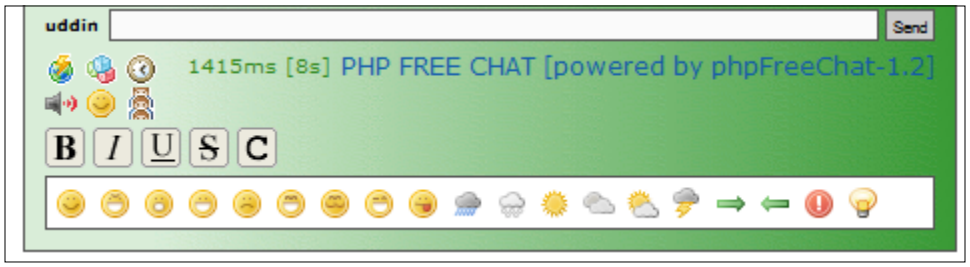
6. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar to save your configurations for this component.
7. Now click on **Menus** | **User Menu**, and then click on the **New** button to create a new menu item. In the **Menu Item: [New]** screen, click on the **jPFChat** link. Type the title of the menu item, for example "Chat", in the **Title** field. Then select **Registered** in the **Access Level** list and **Yes** in the **Published** radio button. Then click on the **Save** button to save the menu item.
8. Preview the site. In the site's frontend, log in using a registered username and password. After logging in, under **User Menu**, you will see the menu item **Chat**. Click on this link and you should see the chat screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



9. You can type text in the text box provided at the bottom. The list of active users will be shown at the right side of this chat box. You can also insert smileys in your text, as well as make the text bold, italic, underlined, and so on.

There's more...

The little toolbox at the bottom of the chat box gives you options to perform different tasks.



By clicking on the icons in this toolbar, you can do the following things:

- Disconnect from the chat room
- Hide the nickname colors
- Hide dates and hours
- Disable sound notifications
- Hide the smiley box
- Hide the online users box

Using the formatting icons, you can make text bold, italic, underlined, colored and strike-through text. The smiley box gives you the option to add smiley icons as shown.

Adding an Ajax Shoutbox

Adding Shoutboxes is a simple way to share visitor feedback. You can place a Shoutbox on your site where visitors can type their comments and share with other visitors. Many community sites have this feature to facilitate the sharing of quick responses. You can also do it with your Joomla!-based sites. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add an Ajax Shoutbox to your Joomla! site.

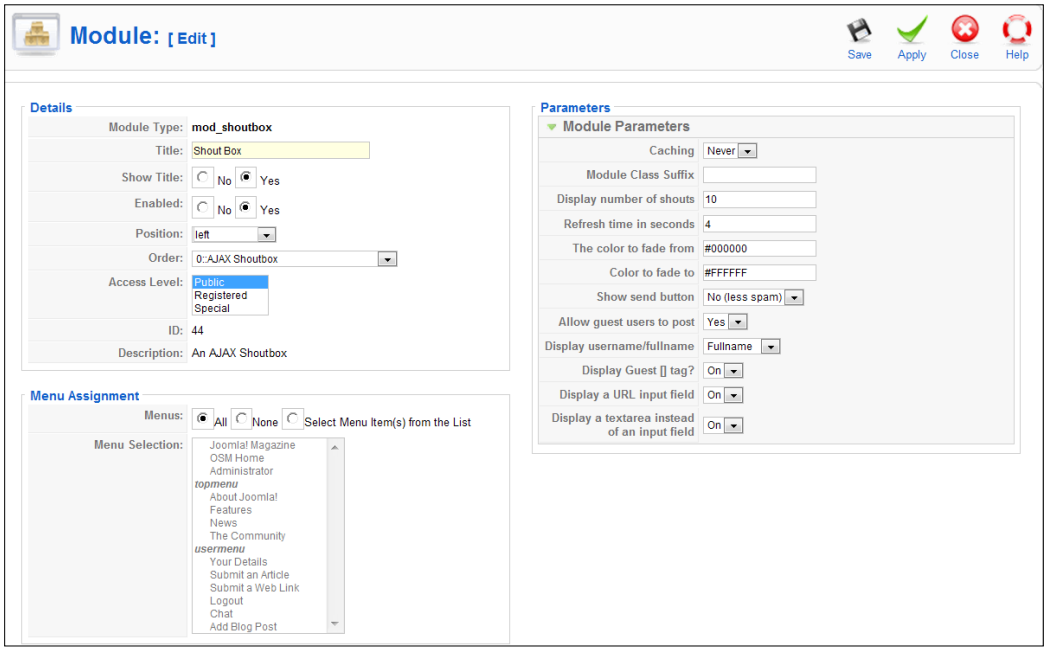
Getting ready...

There are few extensions that can add the Shoutbox feature to you Joomla! site. Among these, the most popular is Ajax Shoutbox. Download this module from `http://joomla.batjo.nl/downloads/free/146-modshoutboxfree1-2-1/download.html`. Note that you need to register to download the extension. Once downloaded, install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

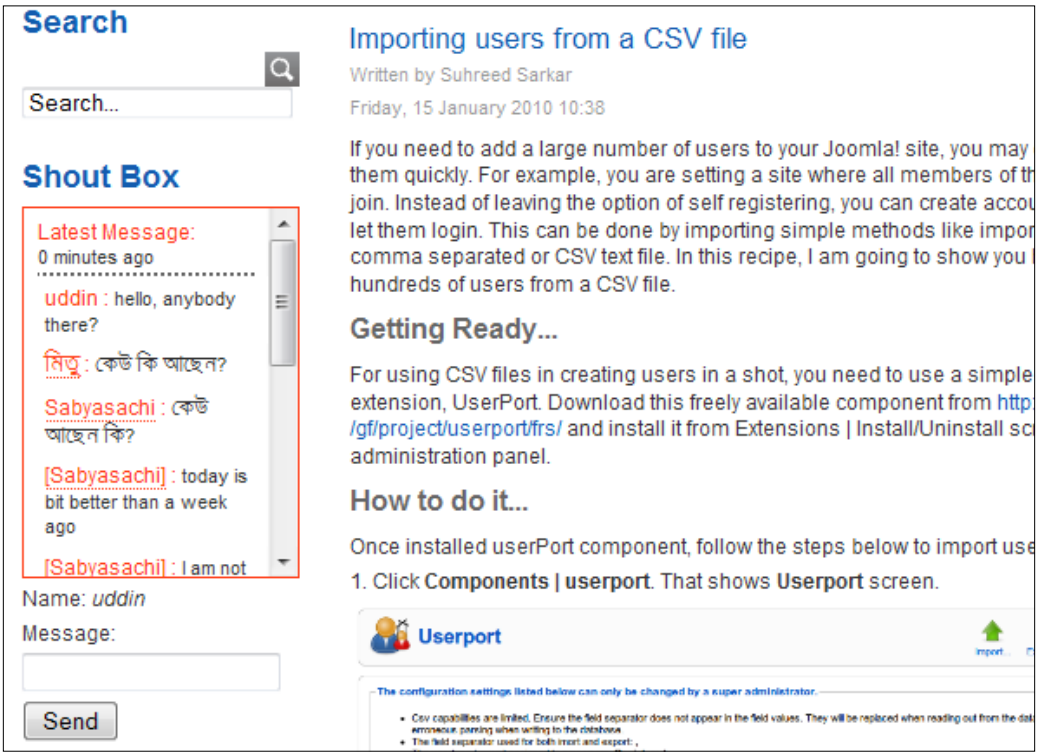
Once the module is installed, carry out the following steps to configure and publish the module:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all the installed modules. Click on the module named **Shout Box**. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the Shoutbox module.



2. From the **Details** section, select **Yes** in the **Enabled** radio box, type a title for the module in **Title** field, select a position to display the module, and select the user group, for example **Registered**, from the **Access Level** list.
3. In **Menu Assignment** section, keep the default selection **All** or select **Select Menu Item(s) from the list** and then choose the menus where the module will be visible.
4. In the **Parameters** section, keep the default values.
5. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar to save the configurations and publish the module.

6. Now preview the site and you will find the module at the position you selected, such as **left**. The module looks like the following screenshot:



7. In the **Name** field, the visitor types his/her name, then the website's URL in the **Url** field, and finally the text to share in the **Message** box. Once it's typed, if the *Enter* key is pressed or the **Send** button is clicked, the text entered in the **Message** box will be displayed in the box just below the module's title. The latest shout appears first in this box.

There's more...

You can customize the look and feel of this Shoutbox from the **Parameters** section in the **Module: [Edit]** screen. The following are the settings to customize the look and feel of the module:

- **Module Class Suffix**—You can assign a suffix for this module and add a CSS declaration in the CSS stylesheet to style the module
- **Display number of shouts**—Type how many shouts you want to display in the Shoutbox. The default is **10**. To save the space occupied by this module, you can decrease this number.

- **Refresh time in seconds**—Type in how many seconds the contents of the Shoutbox will be refreshed. The default is **4** seconds.
- **The color to fade from**—Type the hexadecimal color code from which the color fading will start.
- **Color to fade to**—Type the hexadecimal color code to which the color fading will end.
- **Allow guest users to post**—Select **Yes** to allow guest users to post in the Shoutbox, or select **No** to allow only the registered users to use the Shoutbox.
- **Display username/full name**—You can either display the **Fullname** of the user or the **Username** (login name). Select what you want to display.
- **Display Guest [] tag?**—Usually guest users are indicated with **[]**, select **Off** if you don't want to show these signs.
- **Display a URL input field**—Select **On** to display a text input field for typing the URL of a visitor's website. Select **Off** to hide this input field.
- **Display a text area instead of a input field**—By default, you see a text area for typing your shouts. Select **Off** in this field to display a single line text input field. This saves space on the screen.

Adding a forum to your Joomla! site

Forums are common to many sites. A traditional way of discussing things among the users is through the forums. Joomla! sites can also have forums. There are a few popular forum extensions for Joomla!, out of which the Agora forum is the most popular. You can add this extension to have a functional forum on your Joomla! site. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add a forum to your Joomla! site.

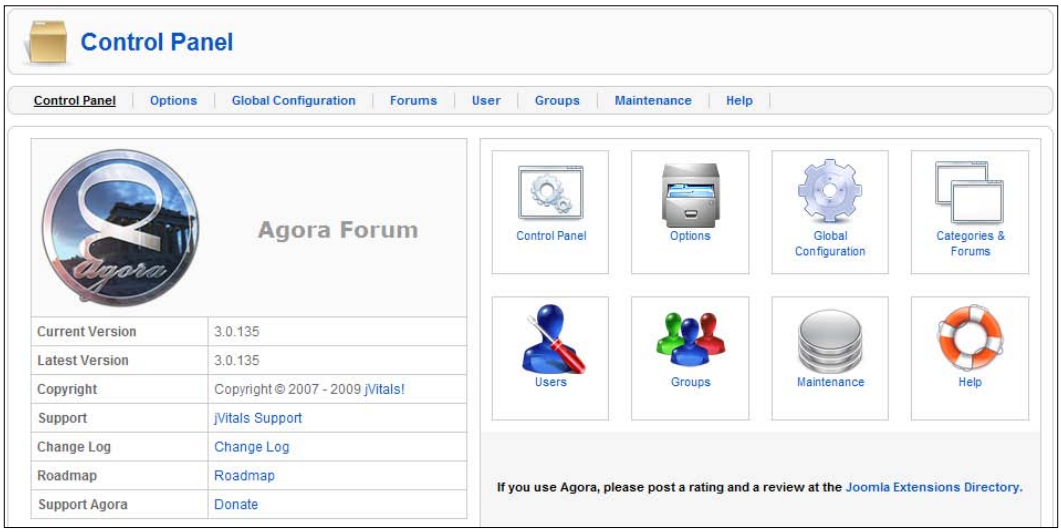
Getting ready...

Download the Agora Forum extension from `http://jvitals.com/downloads/category/1-components`. Once downloaded, install this component from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the Agora component, carry out the following steps:

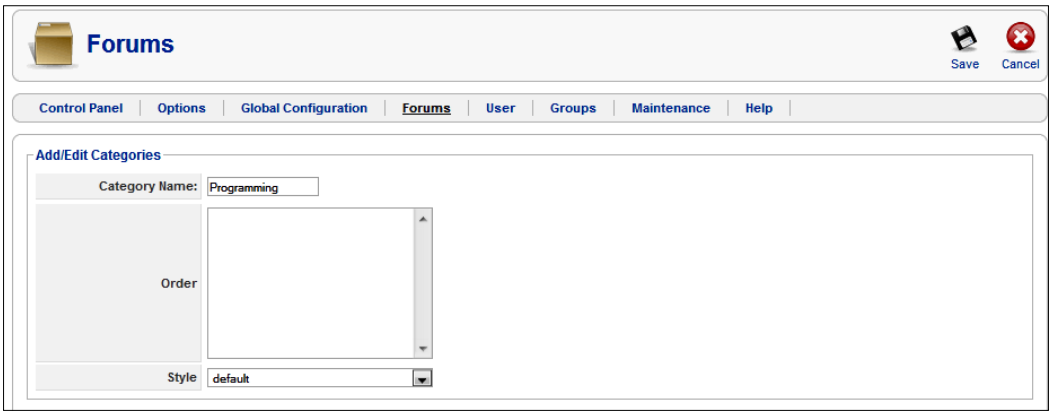
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Agora Forum** | **Control Panel**. This shows the **Agora Control Panel** with icons and links to other configuration options.



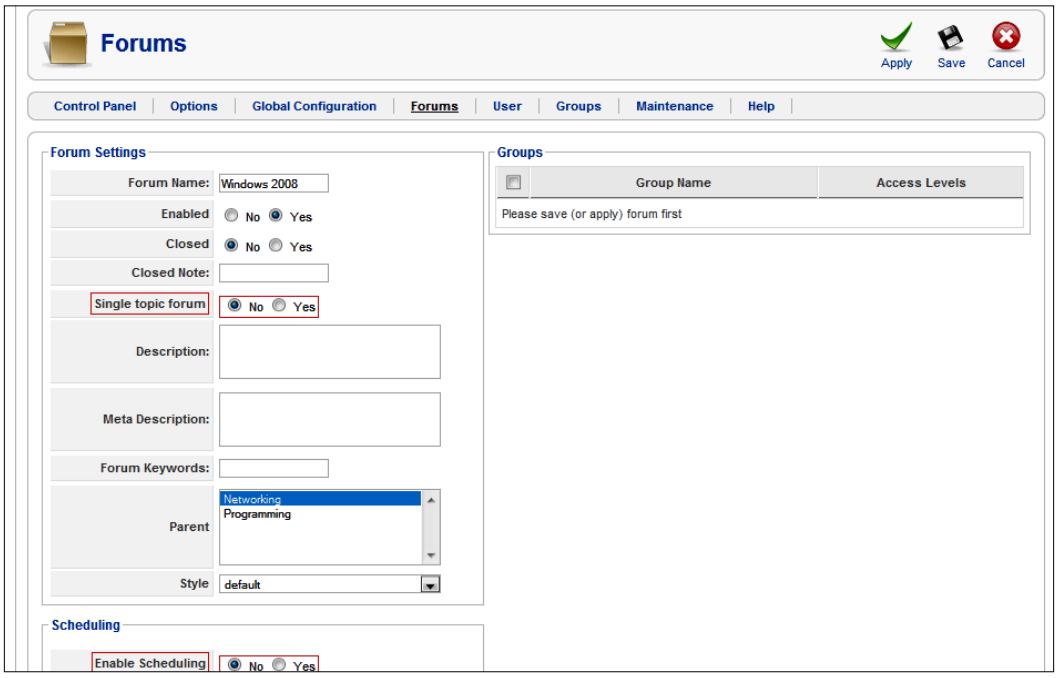
2. Click on the **Categories & Forums** icon or the **Forums** link. This shows the **Forums** screen listing existing forum categories and forums.



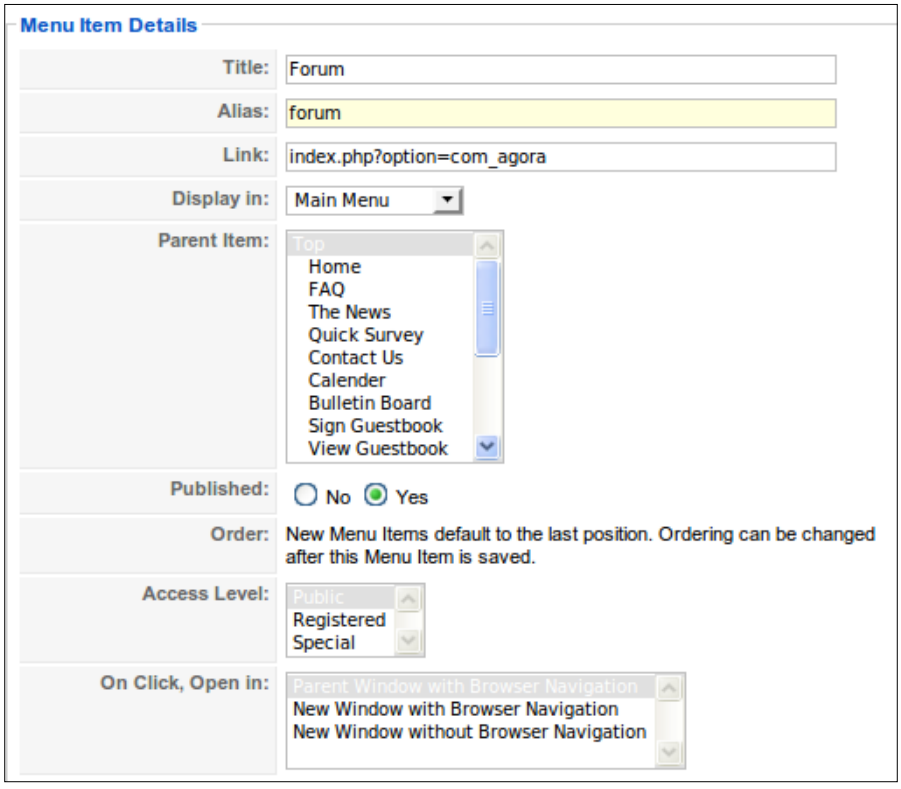
3. Click on the **Add Category** button. This will show the **Add/Edit Categories** form.



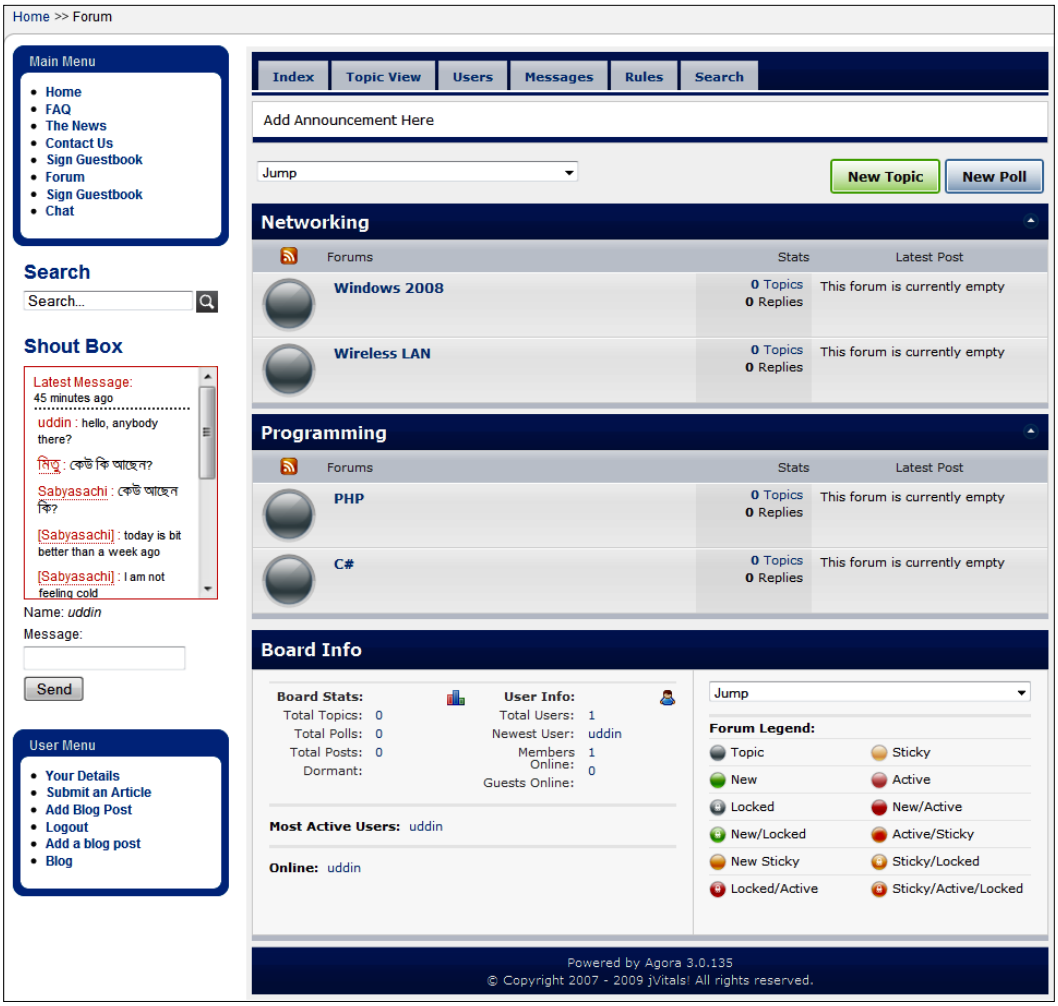
4. Type the name of the category in the **Category Name** field. If you have created categories earlier, those will be listed in the **Order** listbox. Select a category from this list to make the new category appear after that one. Click on the **Save** button to save the category. You will be back on the **Forums** screen and should see your newly created category listed.
5. Click on the **Add Forum** button on the **Forums** screen. This shows a form for creating the forum, as shown in the following screenshot:



6. In the **Forum Settings** section, type the forum's name in the **Forum Name** field. Then select **Yes** in the **Enabled** radio box. In the **Description** text area, type a brief description of the forum. In the **Meta Description** field, type some meta description that will be used for search engines. Then type **Forum Keywords** that will be useful for search engines. In the **Parent** listbox, you will see the categories listed. Select a category under which the forum will be displayed.
7. The **Groups** section will remain empty for the first time. Click on the **Save** button to save the forum.
8. To create a menu item, click on **Menus** | **Main Menu**. Then click on the **New** button to add a new menu item in the main menu. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. From the **Select Menu Item Type** section, select the **Agora Forum** link.
9. Complete the **Menu Item Details** section, as shown in the following screenshot.



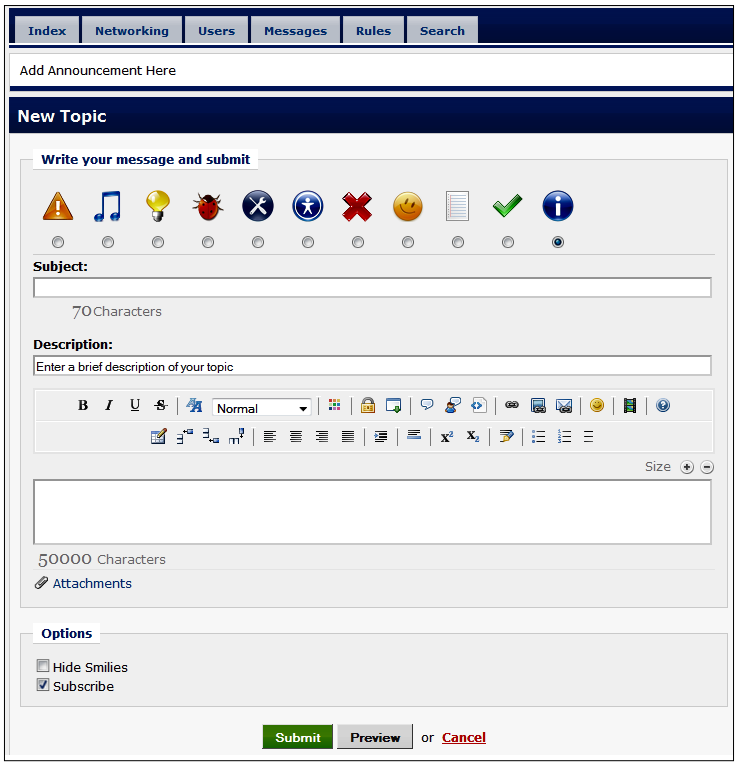
10. Click on the **Save** button to save the menu item.
11. Now preview the site. Log in as a frontend user. You will see a link to the **Forum** in the **Main Menu**. Click on this link and you will see the forum to the right.


Home >> Forum
Main Menu
Home
FAQ
The News
Contact Us
Sign Guestbook
Forum
Sign Guestbook
Chat
Search
Search...
Shout Box
Latest Message:
45 minutes ago
uddin : hello, anybody there?
নিতু : কেউ কি আছেন?
Sabyasachi : কেউ আছেন কি?
[Sabyasachi] : today is bit better than a week ago
[Sabyasachi] : I am not feeling cold
Name: uddin
Message:
Send
User Menu
Your Details
Submit an Article
Add Blog Post
Logout
Add a blog post
Blog
Index
Topic View
Users
Messages
Rules
Search
Add Announcement Here
Jump
New Topic
New Poll
Networking
Forums
Stats
Latest Post
Windows 2008
0 Topics
0 Replies
This forum is currently empty
Wireless LAN
0 Topics
0 Replies
This forum is currently empty
Programming
Forums
Stats
Latest Post
PHP
0 Topics
0 Replies
This forum is currently empty
C#
0 Topics
0 Replies
This forum is currently empty
Board Info
Board Stats:
Total Topics: 0
Total Polls: 0
Total Posts: 0
Dormant:
User Info:
Total Users: 1
Newest User: uddin
Members Online: 1
Guests Online: 0
Most Active Users: uddin
Online: uddin
Jump
Forum Legend:
Topic
Sticky
New
Active
Locked
New/Active
New/Locked
Active/Sticky
New Sticky
Sticky/Locked
Locked/Active
Sticky/Active/Locked
Powered by Agora 3.0.135
© Copyright 2007 - 2009 jVitals! All rights reserved.

12. You will see the forums listed in this screen. For seeing a list of posts in a forum, click on the forum name. This shows the active posts in that forum.



13. For posting a new topic, click on the **New Topic** button. This shows the following form for writing your post:



14. Type the **Subject**, **Description**, and the text for the post. You can use smiley codes in this text. When done, click on the **Submit** button to post the text. This post appears in the forum, as shown in the following screenshot:



15. Now other logged in users can view this post, quote it, and reply to it. As the author of this post, you can edit the post at anytime.

There's more...

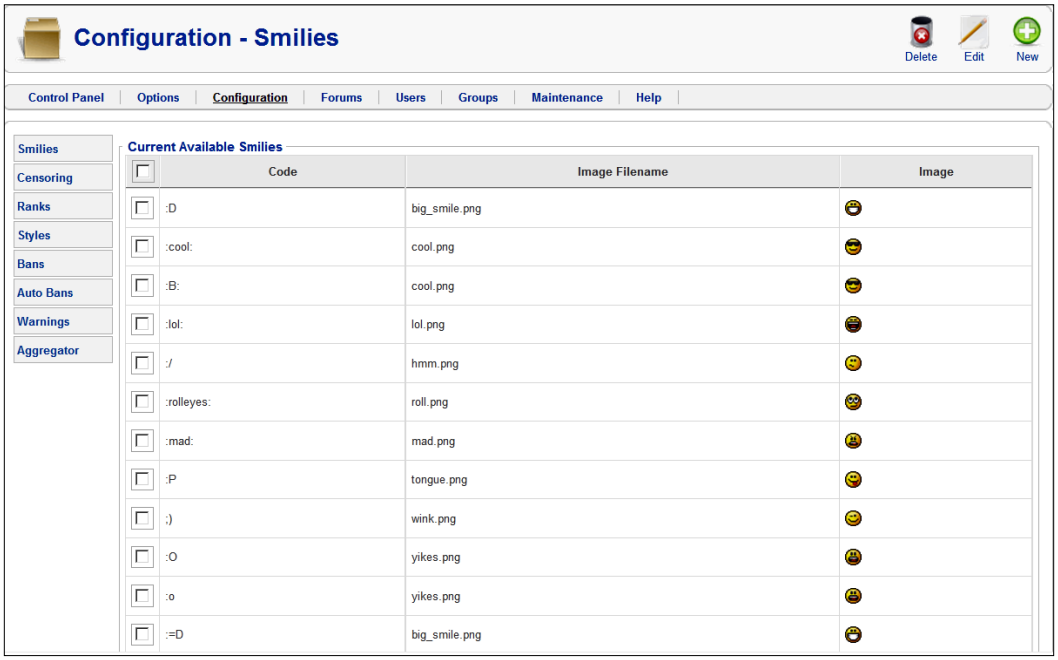
The Agora forum can be customized to your needs by setting the options in the **Control Panel**. There are two places from where you can configure the Agora forum: **Options** and **Configuration**.

You can set the global options for the forums from the **Components** | **Agora Forum** | **Options** screen. There are a few sections in this screen from where you can set a different set of options, as shown in the following table:

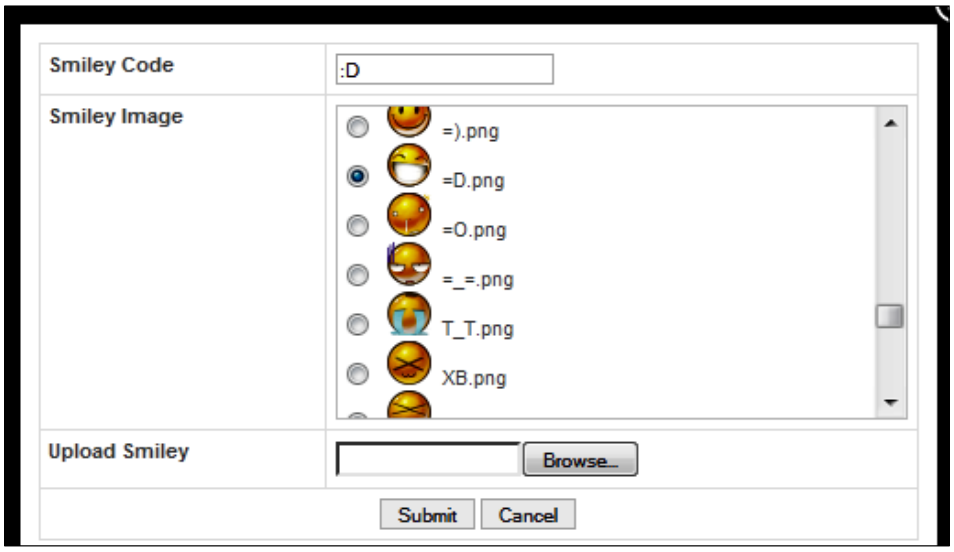
Section	Description
Essentials	This section sets some essential settings for forums, such as the **Date Format**, **Time Format**, **RSS Title**, visibility of the Agora forum menu, **Visit Timeout** value in seconds, **Merge Time** in seconds, and the **Default Style** for guest users.
Display	This section allows you to switch on or off what fields and visual elements will be displayed on the forum screen. You can select to show the **BBCode**, a **Quick post** form, a list of online users, **Smilies**, **User posts count**, the number of active users, and many more.
Settings	This section allows you to set some of the features for the forums. You can show **User Ranks**, **Guest User List**, **Search all forums**, enable private messaging, enable attachments, specify the type of files allowed for attachment, enable the creation of thumbnails, specify the size of thumbnails, enable cron function and interval, and some other features.
Profile	This section allows you to configure what information should be collected as part of users' profiles. You can enable a gallery for user profiles, enable PMS, **Attachment**, **Signature**, and so on.
User Map	This section allows you to configure geo-mapping of the forum visitors. You need to provide a **Google Maps API key** in this section, enable this feature, specify **Default zoom level**, and provide **Default longitude** and **latitude**.
Reports	In this section, you can configure how to report new posts. You can either select sending the reports by an internal messaging system, through e-mail to a list, or using both methods. If you want to send an e-mail to a list, you need to provide the list of e-mails in the **Mailing List** field.
Avatars	This section allows you to enable avatars for users. You can specify an avatar upload directory and the size of avatars.
Rules	From this section, you can enable rules and type the rules which must be agreed by the users before posting to the forums. The rules you type can contain formatted HTML, images, and links.
Announcement	From this section, you can enable announcements so that it is displayed at the top of a forum.
Integration	The Agora forum can connect to other communities and social extensions for Joomla!. From this section, you can configure the Agora forum to work with **UddeIM PMB**, **Community Builder**, **JomSocial**, or **Jommunity**.
Notifications	From this section, you can configure the messages that users will receive for private messaging or subscriptions. You need to enable notifications for these and then provide a template for the notification e-mail.

Adding smileys

Like many other forum software, the Agora forum also supports smileys. It also allows you to configure smileys to be used in your forum. For configuring smileys, go to Agora forum **Control Panel** and click on the **Configuration** link. Then you will see the **Configuration – Smilies** screen, listing all the available smileys.



For adding a new smiley, click on the **New** button. This shows a dialog for adding a new smiley.



Type the code, for example **;)**, in the **Smiley Code** field. Then select a smiley image from the list or click on the **Browse** button in the **Upload Smiley** field, upload a new smiley image, and then click on the **Submit** button. This adds the smiley you want.

Censoring

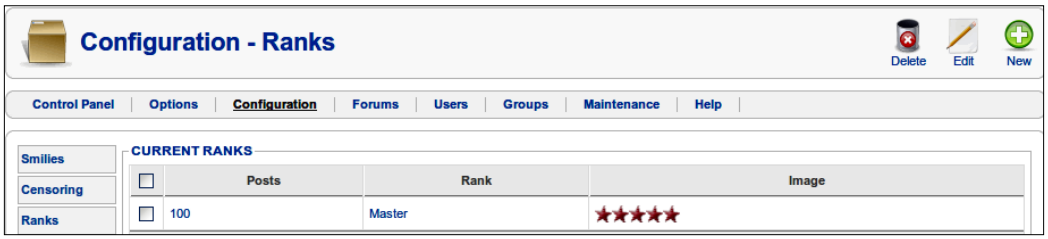
Censorship or blocking messages containing certain words is a common feature to many popular forum applications. The Agora forum also allows you to configure and use censorship in forum posts. For configuring censorship, click on **Configuration | Censoring** from the Agora **Control Panel**. This shows the **Configuration – Censoring** screen.



For adding a new censorword, click on the **New** button. Then type the word you want to censor and the characters by which you want to replace that word. You can add as many words as you want.

Ranks of the users

Agora has a ranking system based on the number of posts. You can define these rankings from the **Configuration – Ranks** screen.



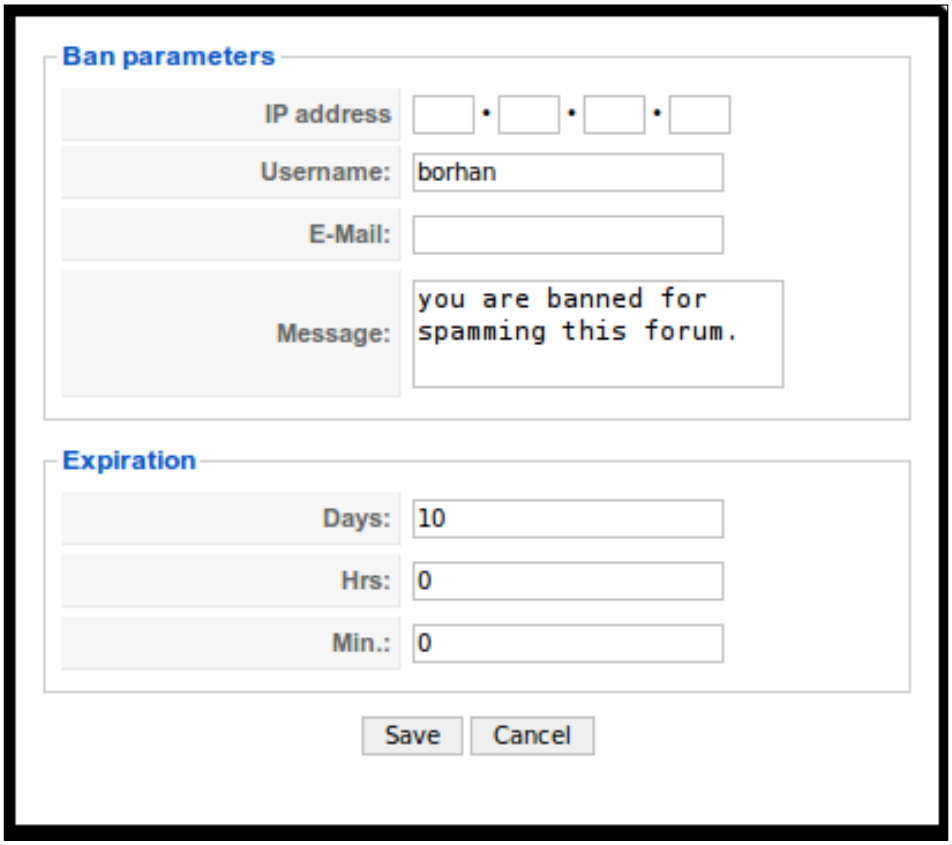
Click on the **New** button in this screen, then type the number of posts, the name of the rank, and select an image for that rank. You can also select to promote that user to a moderator or administrator, based on the number of posts.

Banning bad boys

Some users in your forum may not always comply with the rules of your forum. In that case, extreme action may be needed, such as banning the user, either forever or temporarily. You can see the list of banned users from the **Configuration – Bans** screen.



For banning a user, click on the **Ban Username** button in this screen. Type any of these: **IP address**, **Username**, or the **E-mail** address of the user you want to ban. Then type the message you want to send to the user. Using the **Expiration** section, you can specify the time after which the ban will expire.



You can also specify Autobans, based on accumulated points of warning. A user will gain points based on the number of warnings. When this point exceeds a threshold, the user will be automatically banned from the forum. For adding Autobans, click on the **New** button on the **Configuration – Auto Bans** screen. This shows the dialog for adding an Autoban.



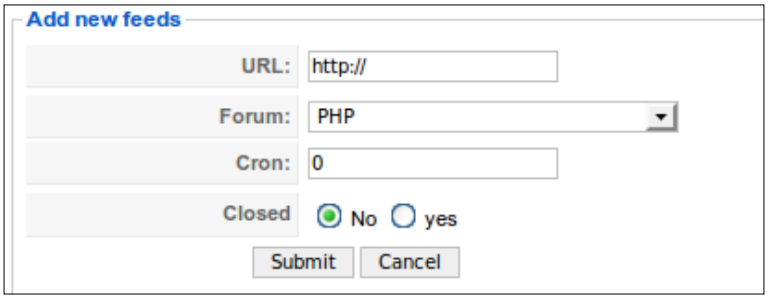
In the **Points** field, specify the warning points for which the user will be banned, then type a **Title** of the ban and **Default Message** to the banned user. You can specify the expiration duration for this ban in the **Expiration** section.

Warnings

You can give warnings to users from the **Configuration – Warnings** screen. Click on the **New** button to add a new warning. In the warning addition dialog, you can specify **Points** for that warning, the **Title**, **Default Message**, and **Expiration** duration. A user receiving such a warning will earn the points specified in this warning message. Autobans will work based on the points earned through these warnings.

Aggregating feeds

You can show RSS feeds from other sites into a forum. For adding such feeds, go to the **Configuration – Aggregator** screen and click on the **New** button. This shows the **Add new feeds** dialog.



Type the URL of the RSS feed in the **URL** field, and then select the **Forum** where the feeds will be published. In the **Cron** field, specify the seconds after which the cron job will run to update the feed. Then click on the **Submit** button to add the feed.

Adding a private messaging system

Private messaging systems are also common to many community sites. It facilitates communication among the members of the site. In Joomla!, you can add such private messaging systems by using the popular extension uddeIM. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add a private messaging system to Joomla!.

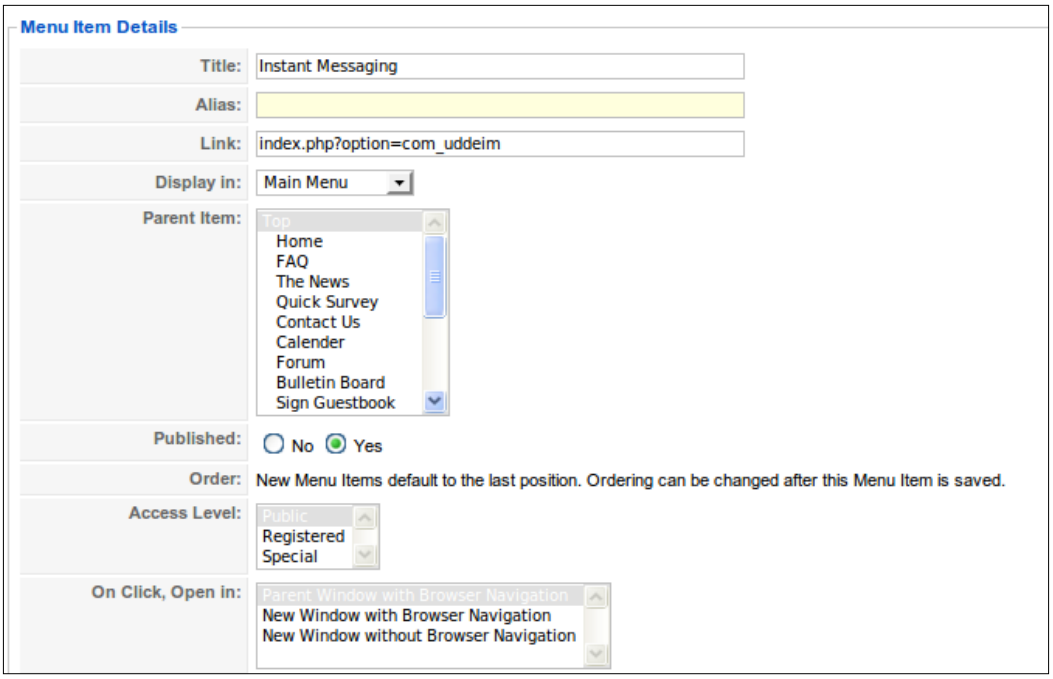
Getting ready...

uddeIM is the component for Joomla! that allows you to send private messages to other Joomla! users. This component runs both on Joomla! 1.0.x and Joomla! 1.5.x. Download the latest version of the uddeIM installation package from `http://www.slabihoud.de/software/id4001.htm`. After downloading the package, you may need to unzip it first, and install the component from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

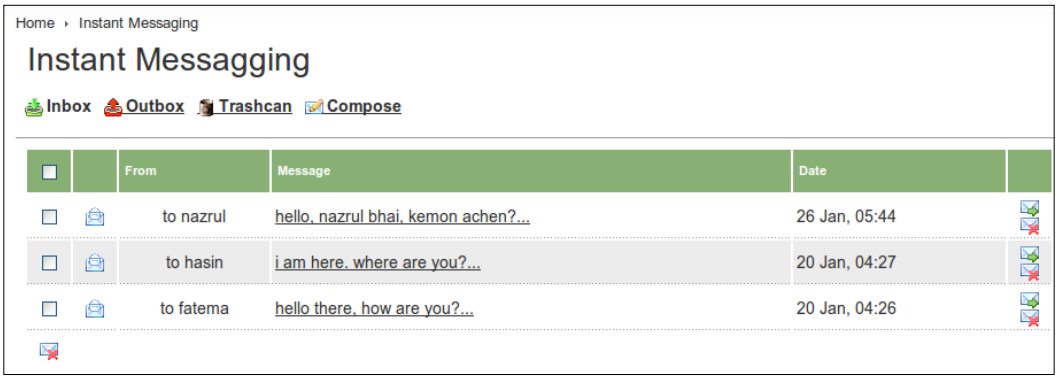
How to do it...

After installing the uddeIM component, follow the steps as shown to use it on your site:

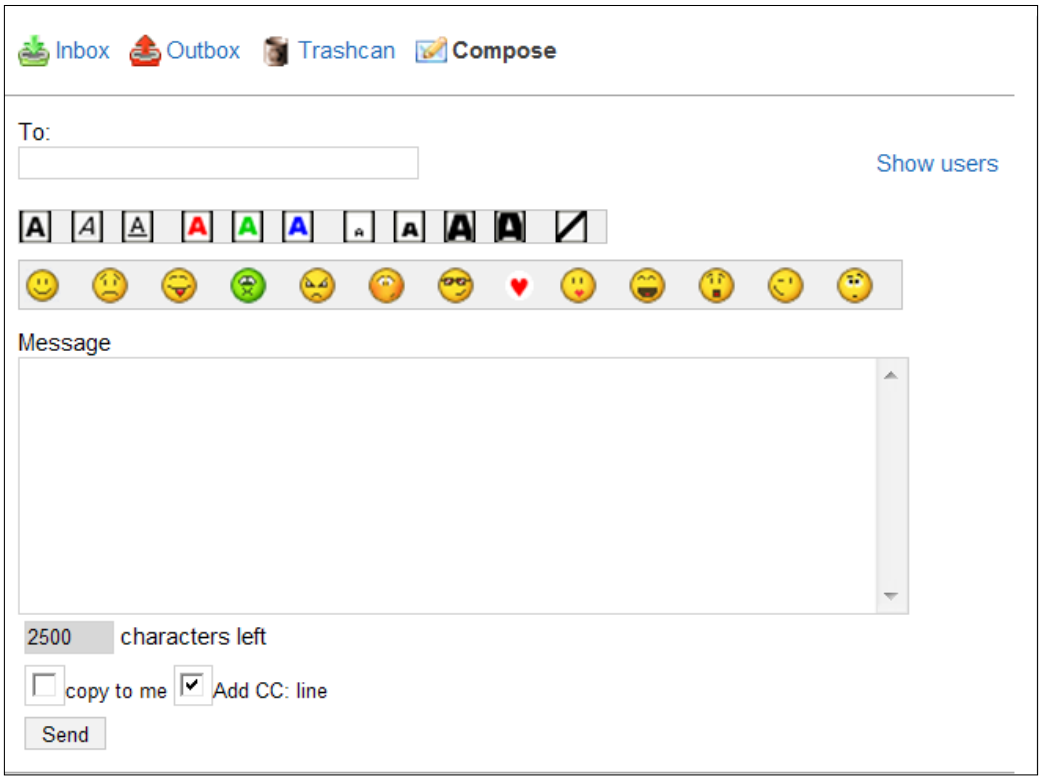
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Menus** | **Main Menu** and then click on the **New** button to add a new menu item to the main menu. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. Click on **uddeIM** in this screen and you will see a screen similar to the following screenshot:



2. In the **Menu Item Details** section, first type a title for this menu item in the **Title** field and then select **Yes** in the **Published** radio box. Accept the default values for all the other fields. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. This creates the menu item.
3. Preview the site's frontend. Now log in to Joomla! as a frontend user. You will see the **Instant Messaging** menu item, in the **Main Menu**. Click on this link. This shows the **Instant Messaging** screen.



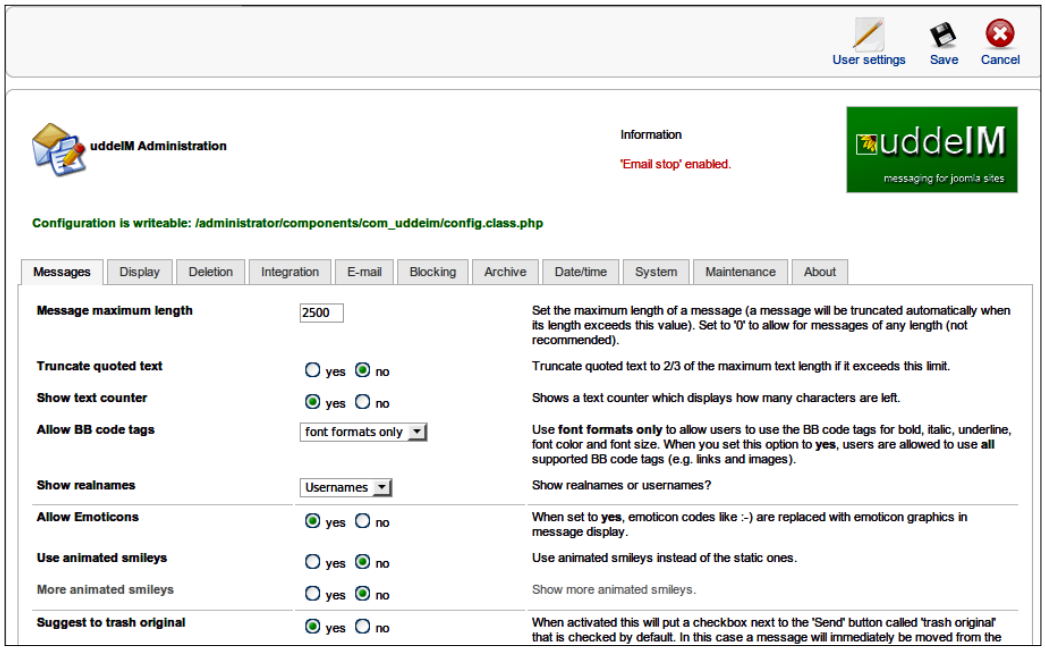
4. The **Instant Messaging** screen lists all the messages sent to you. For sending a message, click on the **Compose** link. This shows a message composition window.



5. In the **To** field, type the username of the recipient. Alternatively, you can click on the **Show users** link to the right. This shows the usernames in a drop-down list. Select a user from that list. Then, in the **Message** field, type the message you want to send. When done, click on the **Send** button. Enable the **copy to me** checkbox to receive a copy of that mail.
6. The recipient will see the message in their inbox when logged in to Joomla!.

There's more...

The uddeIM component works without any configuration. It doesn't mean that you cannot configure it to meet your custom requirements. In fact, there are so many configuration options that you may be fed up with the options. You can view the configuration options for the uddeIM component by clicking on **Components | uddeIM** from the Joomla! administration panel.



There are eleven tabs in the uddeIM configuration screen, and hundreds of fields to configure. You can configure almost every aspect of the component. Explore the tabs and fields, and you will find that the default values work fine for most of the sites.

7
Using Communities and Groupware

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Extending user profiles with custom fields
- Adding project management functionalities to Joomla!

Introduction

There are many popular extensions for Joomla! that can be used for community building and as groupware. Among these, the most popular community-building extension is **Community Builder**. In fact, Community Builder has many advanced features, many of the extensions are available to perform different tasks. Among the groupware, the most popular one is about project management. **Projecttfork** provides project management functionalities for Joomla!. In this chapter, we are going to learn how to use these popular extensions with Joomla!.

Extending user profiles with custom fields

Whenever a user is registered to a Joomla!-based site, an account with a simple profile is created. The default profile created by Joomla!'s user manager is not sufficient for many websites. For example, if you want to build a community site for college graduates, you would want each graduate to register and provide their information, such as the year they passed, and their current occupation. The default profile of Joomla! cannot collect this information. You need to add extra fields to the profile to collect extra information about the users of your site. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to add extra fields in the user profile using the Community Builder component.

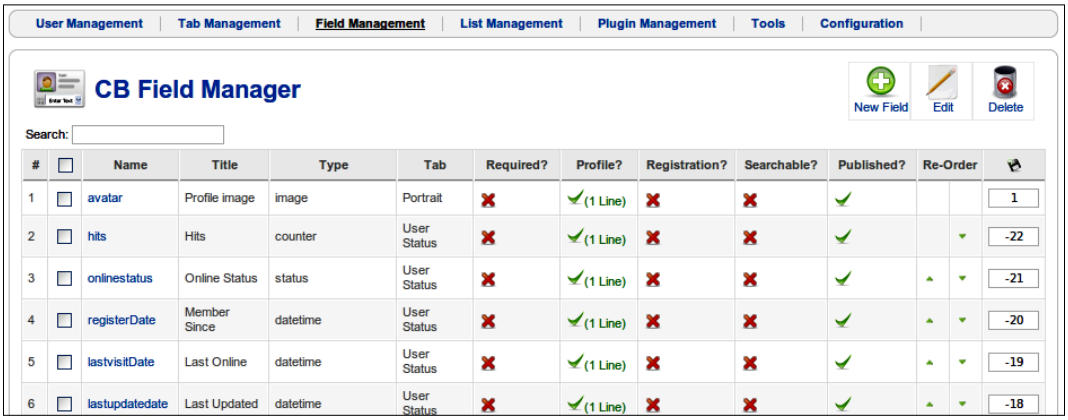
Getting ready...

Community Builder is a popular third party extension that allows you to create community sites based on Joomla!. It also allows you to create custom profiles for users. Download the Community Builder extension package from `http://www.joomlapolis.com/`. You need to register to this site for downloading the package. Once the `zip` file is downloaded, unzip the package first. The package contains several files. Install the `com_comprofiler.zip` and `mod_cb_login.zip` files from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

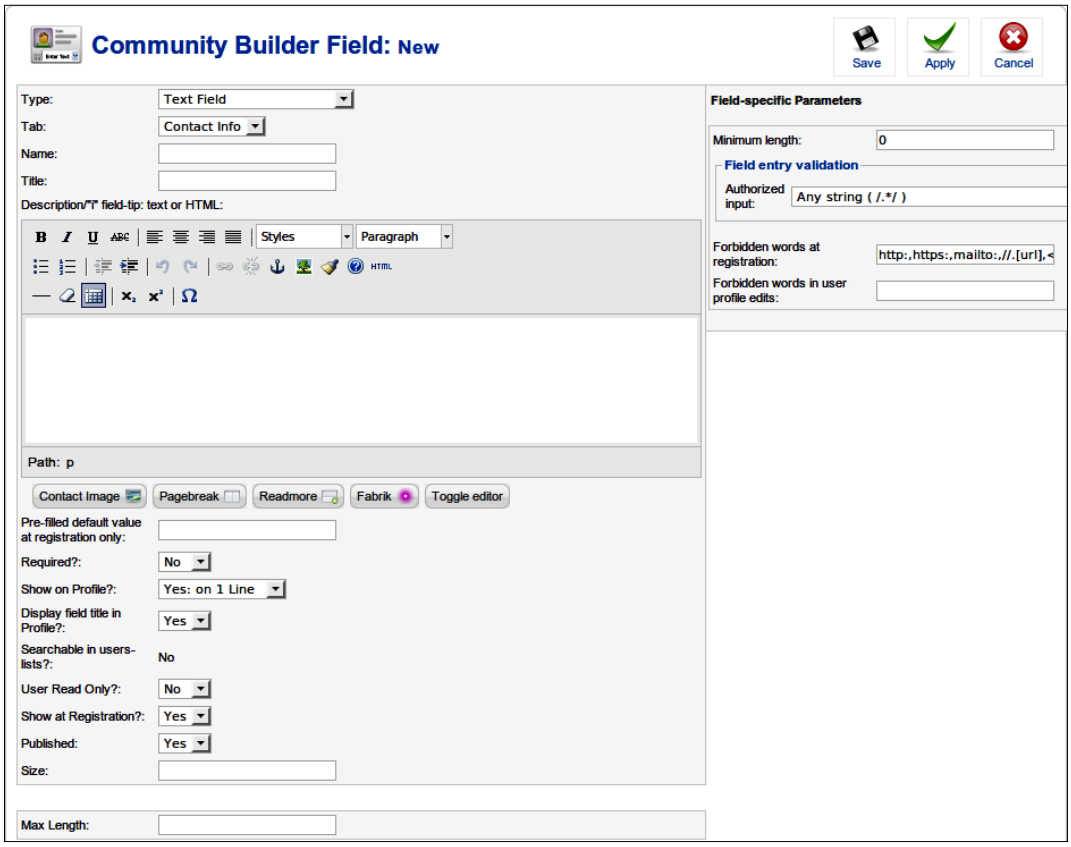
How to do it...

Once the Community Builder component is installed, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Community Builder** | **Field Management**. This shows the **CB Field Manager** screen:



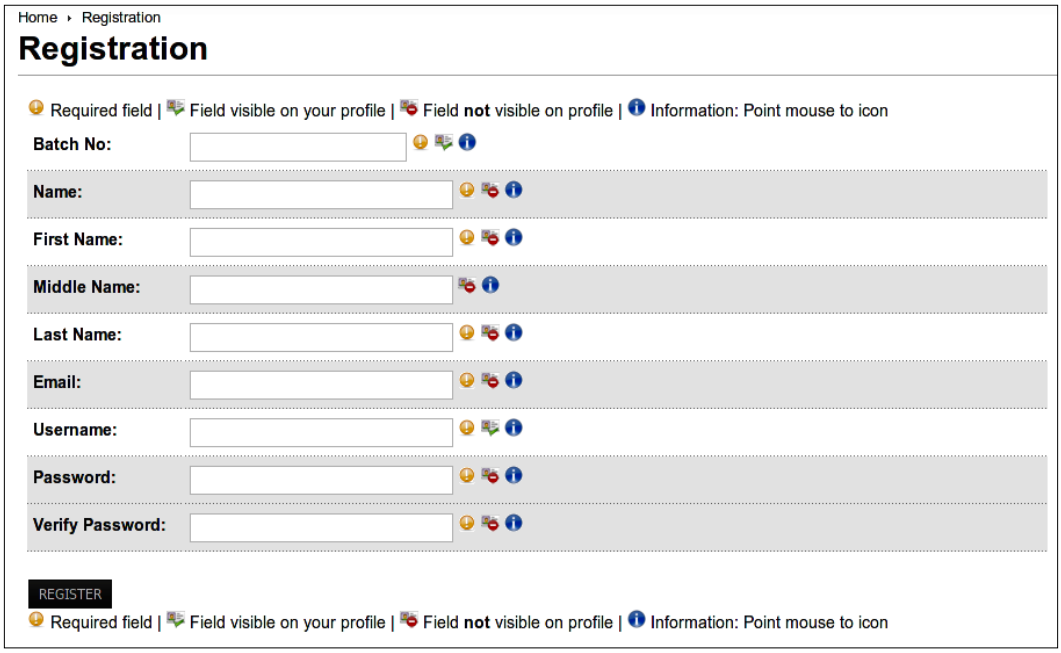
2. The **CB Field Manager** screen lists the predefined fields for the custom profile. If you don't find your desired field in this list, then you need to create a new field. Click on the **New Field** button to create a new field. This shows the **Community Builder Field: New** screen.



3. In the **Community Builder Field: New** screen, perform the following changes:
   - **Type**: Select the type of field you want. For example, if you want to add a field to include the year of graduation, select **Text Field** from the drop-down list
   - **Tab**: Select the tab where the field will be displayed
   - **Name**: Type a name, for example 'cb_batch', for the field
   - **Title**: Type the title, for example 'Batch No.', to be displayed for the field
   - **Description**: Type a description for the field that will be displayed as a tool-tip for the field

- **Pre-filled default value at registration only**: Type a default value for the field that will be displayed during registration.
- **Required?**: Select **Yes** in this list if you want to make this field a required field for the user.
- **Show on Profile?**: You can select **Yes: on 1 Line**, **Yes: on 2 Lines**, or **No**. Select **Yes** if you want to show this field in the users' profile.
- **User Read Only?**: If you select **Yes** in this field, users cannot change the value in this field.
- **Show at Registration?**: Select **Yes** to display the field during registration.
- **Published**: Select **Yes** to publish the field.
- **Size**: Type the size of the field. For example, the size for a field named 'batch' may be '10'.
- **Max Length**: Specify the maximum length of the field.
- **Minimum Length**: Specify the minimum length of the field. Type **0** if there is no minimum length.
- **Authorized input**: Select a choice from the drop-down list. If you want to allow all texts, select **Any String (`/.*/`)**. You can also choose to allow a single word, multiple words with spaces, custom PERL expressions, and so on.
- **Forbidden words at registration**: Type the list of words that cannot be typed in this field during registration. Accept the default values.
- **Forbidden words in user profile edits**: Type the list of words that cannot be typed in this field when editing the profile.

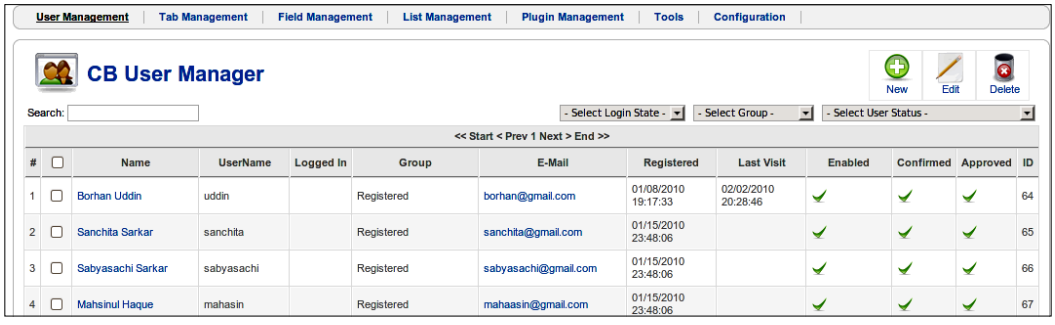
4. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. The field will be saved and you will see **CB Field Manager** screen.
5. Now click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules.
6. Click on the **Login Form** module (`mod_login`) and unpublish it. Then click on the **CB Login** module (`mod_cblogin`). This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field and accept the defaults for the other fields in this screen. Then click on the **Save** button.
7. Now preview the site's frontend. You will see the **CB Login** form. Click on the **Register** link. This shows the **Registration** form:



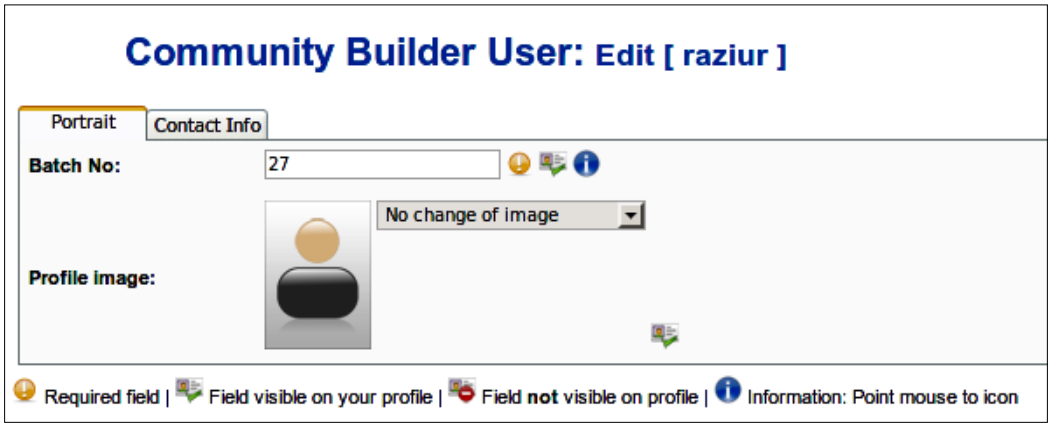
Note that the field we created, **Batch No.**, is now visible on the registration form. Users registering to the site will have to fill this field. Also, note the icons displayed beside each field. Each icon denotes the type of field, as shown in the legend at the top and bottom of the form.

There's more...

The **CB Login** module replaces the normal **Login Form**, which means users registered through the **CB Login** module are registered with Community Builder, not with Joomla!'s user manager. You can manage these users by selecting the **Components** | **Community Builder** | **User Management** menu. This will show the **CB User Manager** screen.



A new user created through the registration form will be visible in the **CB User Manager** list. Click on the username to see the user's profile.



Note that the field **Batch No.** is now displayed on the **Portrait** tab of the profile. You can create as many fields as you want and can show those on the registration form and profiles.

Besides adding custom profile fields, Community Builder can do a lot by adding other types of information. There are more than 150 extensions for Community Builder that help to add different functionalities. The extensions for Community Builder are available at `http://extensions.joomla.org/extensions/extension-specific/community-builder-extensions`. A discussion on the complete functionalities of Community Builder and its extensions are beyond the scope of this book.

Adding project management to Joomla!

Project management may be a much needed function for your Joomla!-based intranet. Many project management applications provide the opportunity for users to create and manage projects and the associated tasks. Such project management software allows users to track the progress of the project and also allow them to document activities. For example, you can manage a web design project and its tasks with the project team. You can split the project into tasks and assign tasks to project team members. You can also monitor the progress of the project by viewing tasks completed by the team members. In this recipe, we are going to show how to add project management functionalities to your Joomla!-based sites.

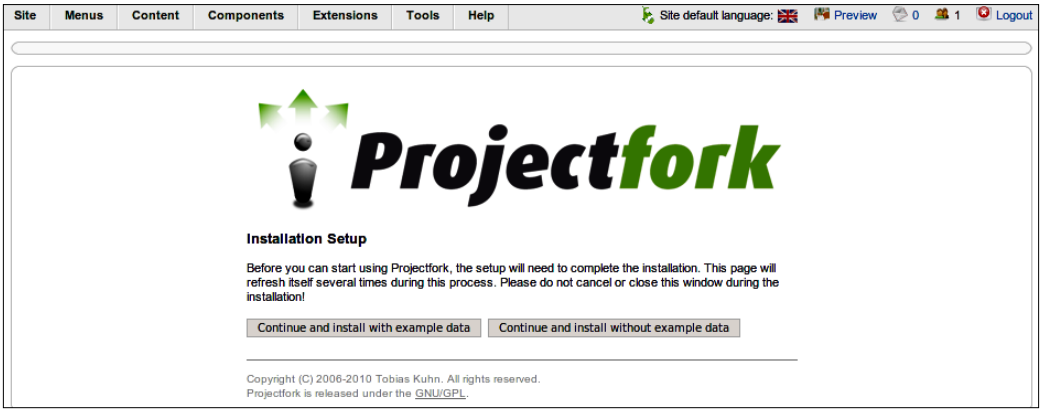
Getting ready...

Projectfork is the most popular Joomla! extension that adds project management functionalities to Joomla!. Download the installation package from `http://www.projectfork.net/projectfork/extensions/free/projectfork.php#download`. After downloading the package, install the component from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

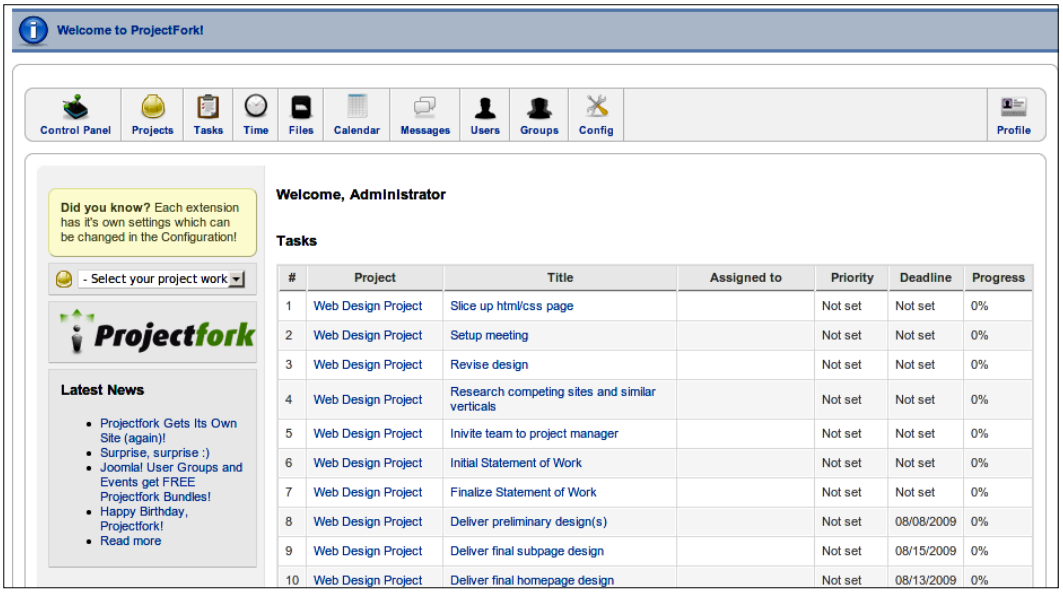
How to do it...

After installing the component, carry out the following steps:

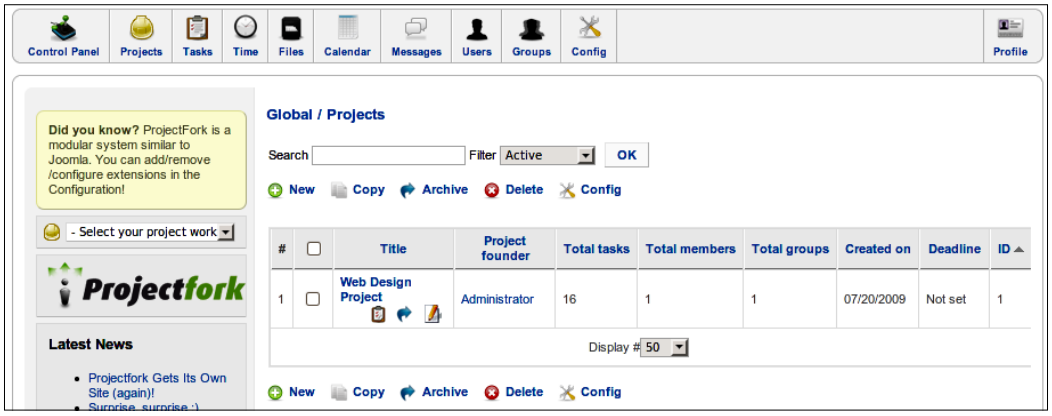
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Projectfork**. This shows the following screen:



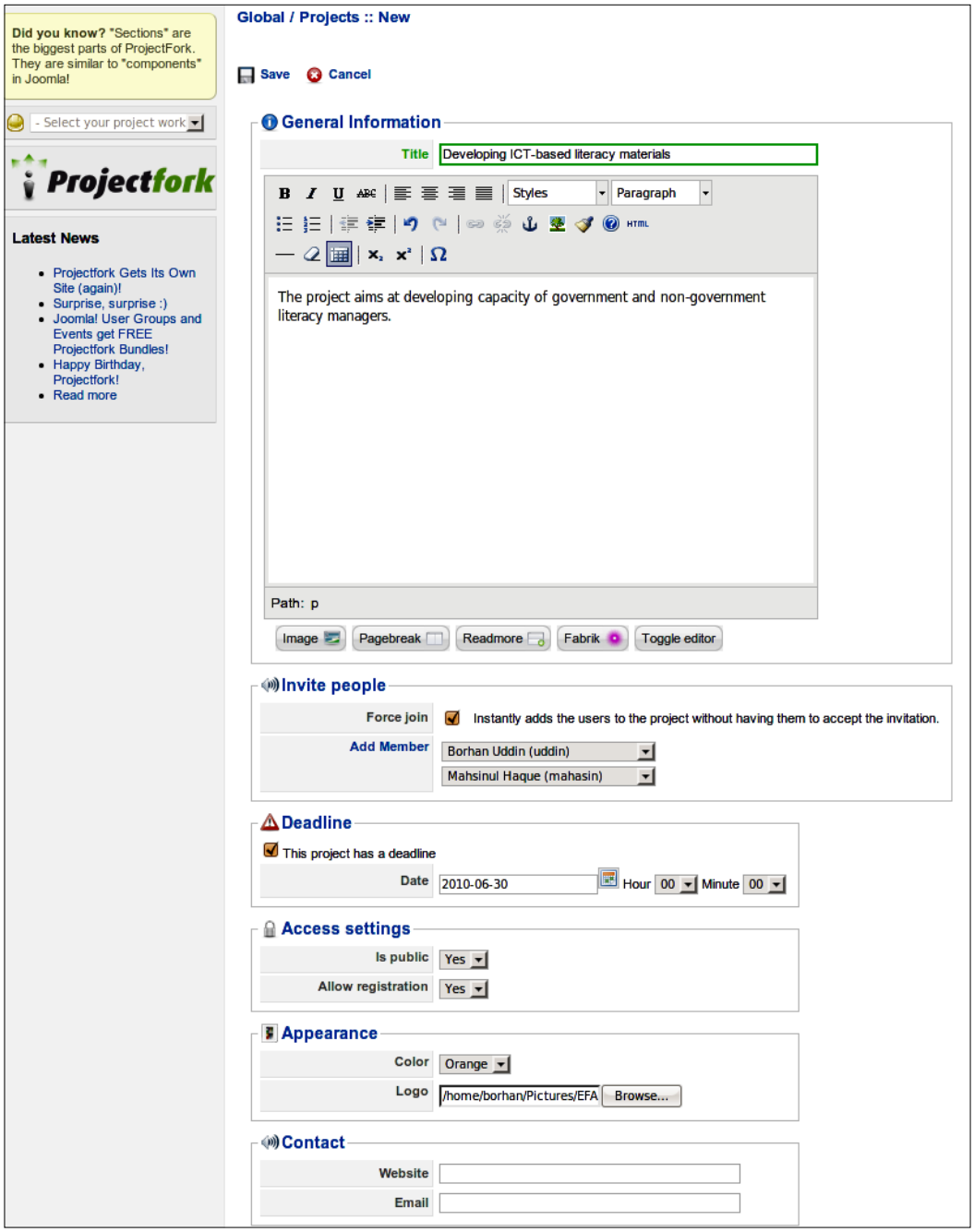
Click on the **Continue and install with example data** button to install the sample data. This shows the installation progress, and finally the Projectfork **Control Panel** listing the tasks in the sample project.



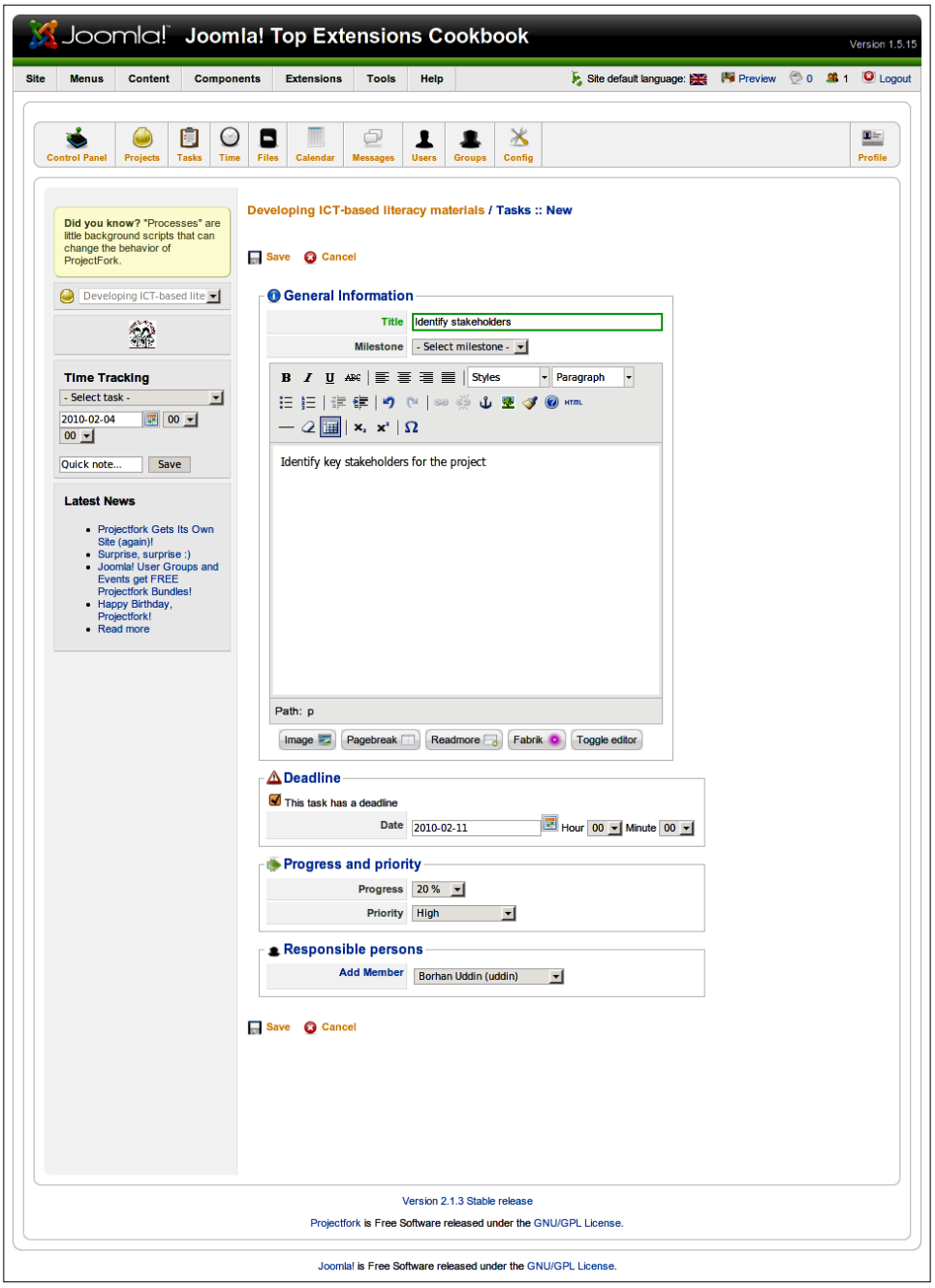
2. Click on the **Projects** button. This shows the list of existing projects.



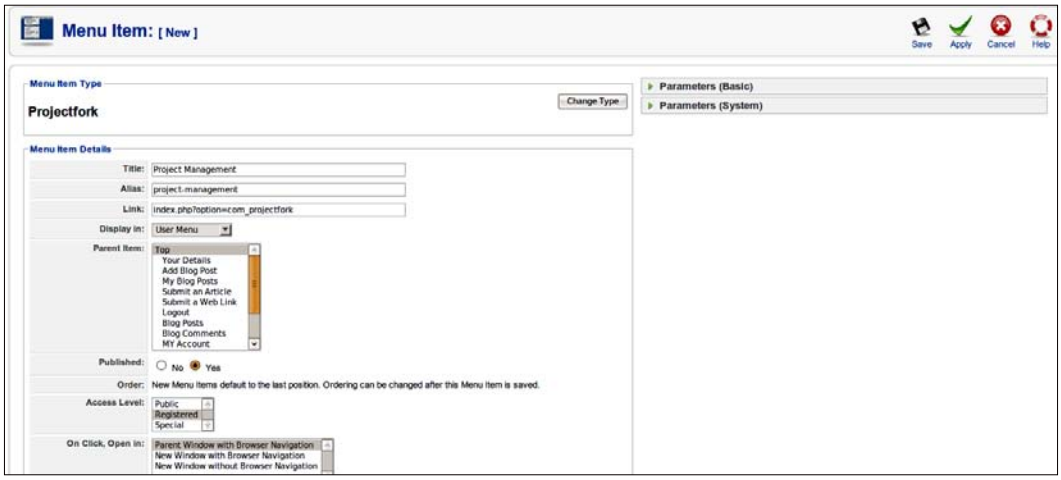
3. Click on the **New** button to create a new project. This shows the **Global / Projects: New** screen.


Did you know? "Sections" are the biggest parts of ProjectFork. They are similar to "components" in Joomla!
- Select your project work
Projectfork
Latest News
Projectfork Gets Its Own Site (again)!
Surprise, surprise :)
Joomla! User Groups and Events get FREE Projectfork Bundles!
Happy Birthday, Projectfork!
Read more
Global / Projects :: New
Save
Cancel
General Information
Title
Developing ICT-based literacy materials
Styles
Paragraph
The project aims at developing capacity of government and non-government literacy managers.
Path: p
Image
Pagebreak
Readmore
Fabrik
Toggle editor
Invite people
Force join
Instantly adds the users to the project without having them to accept the invitation.
Add Member
Borhan Uddin (uddin)
Mahsinul Haque (mahasin)
Deadline
This project has a deadline
Date
2010-06-30
Hour
00
Minute
00
Access settings
Is public
Yes
Allow registration
Yes
Appearance
Color
Orange
Logo
/home/borhan/Pictures/EFA
Browse...
Contact
Website
Email

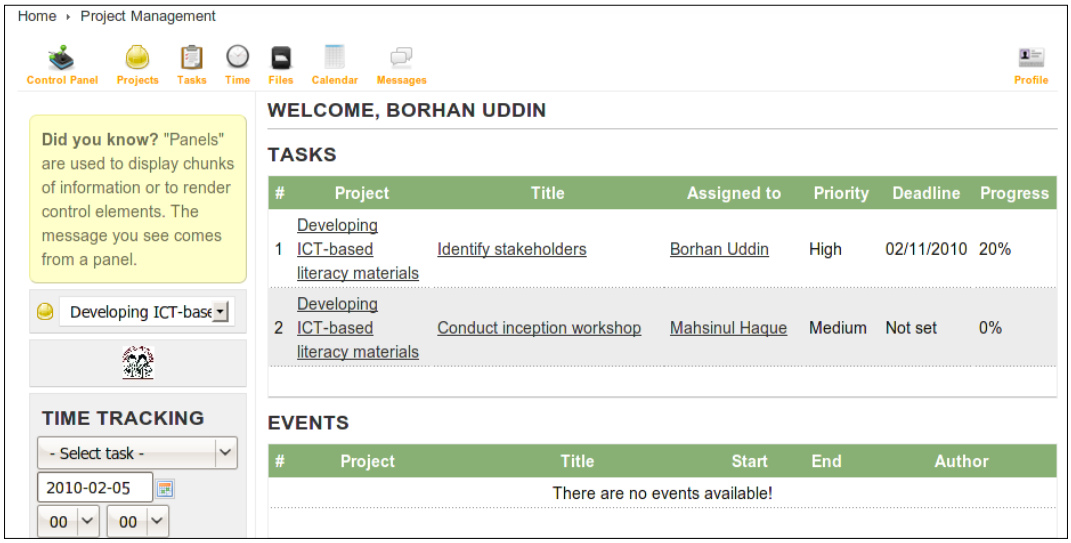
4. In the **Global / Projects: New** screen, type the title and description of the project. Then enable the **Force join** checkbox to instantly join invited users to this project. For adding members manually to the project, click on the **Add Member** link and select member from the drop-down list. Enable the **This project has a deadline** checkbox to indicate that the project will finish by a specific date. Select a date and time for the deadline. In the **Access settings** section, select **Yes** in both the **Is public** and **Allow registration** drop-down lists. In the **Appearance** section, select a **Color** and **Logo** for the project. Finally, type the project's URL and e-mail address.
5. Click on the **Save** button at the bottom to save the project. This shows the project listing page. Click on the new project's name, for example, 'Developing ICT materials'.
6. Click on the **Tasks** button in the toolbar. This shows the **Tasks** screen, listing the available tasks in the project. Click on the **New Task** button. This shows the **Tasks:: New** screen.


Joomla! Top Extensions Cookbook
Version 1.5.15
Site
Menus
Content
Components
Extensions
Tools
Help
Site default language:
Preview
Logout
Control Panel
Projects
Tasks
Time
Files
Calendar
Messages
Users
Groups
Config
Profile
Did you know? "Processes" are little background scripts that can change the behavior of ProjectFork.
Time Tracking
- Select task -
Quick note...
Save
Latest News
Projectfork Gets Its Own Site (again)!
Surprise, surprise :)
Joomla! User Groups and Events get FREE Projectfork Bundles!
Happy Birthday, Projectfork!
Read more
Developing ICT-based literacy materials / Tasks :: New
Save
Cancel
General Information
Title
Identify stakeholders
Milestone
- Select milestone -
Styles
Paragraph
Identify key stakeholders for the project
Path: p
Image
Pagebreak
Readmore
Fabrik
Toggle editor
Deadline
This task has a deadline
Date
2010-02-11
Hour
Minute
Progress and priority
Progress
20 %
Priority
High
Responsible persons
Add Member
Borhan Uddin (uddin)
Save
Cancel
Version 2.1.3 Stable release
Projectfork is Free Software released under the GNU/GPL License.
Joomla! is Free Software released under the GNU/GPL License.

7. Type the task's title and description. From the **Deadline** section, enable **This task has a deadline** and select a date and time. In the **Progress and Priority** section, select **Progress** as percentage and a **Priority** from the list. Then click on **Add Member** and add the person responsible for the task. Finally, click on the **Save** button to save the task. Create other tasks by following the same method and order them accordingly.
8. Now click on **Menus** | **User Menu**. This shows the **Menu Item Manager: [usermenu]** screen.
9. Click on the **New** icon for adding a new menu item. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen.
10. Click on the **Projectfork** link. This brings you to the next step of the **Menu Item: [New]** screen.

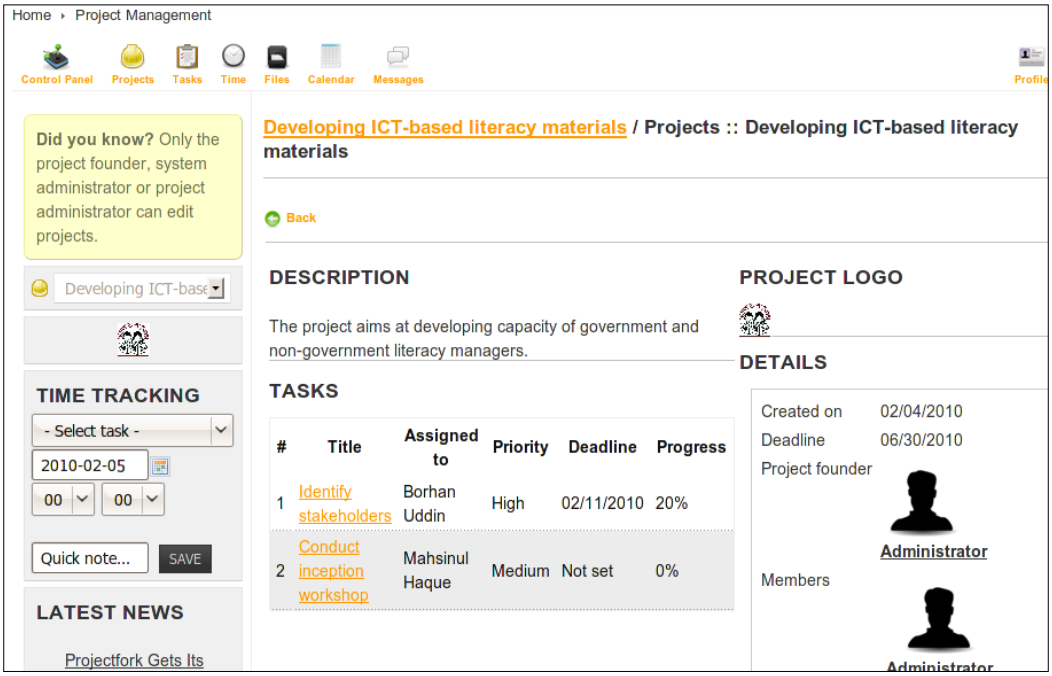


11. Type the menu **Title** and **Alias**, then select **Yes** in the **Published** radio box. In the **Access Level** listbox, select **Registered**, then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
12. Preview the site's frontend, and log in as a registered user. You should then see the **User Menu** and your newly created menu link in that menu. Click on that link and you will see the **Projectfork** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:

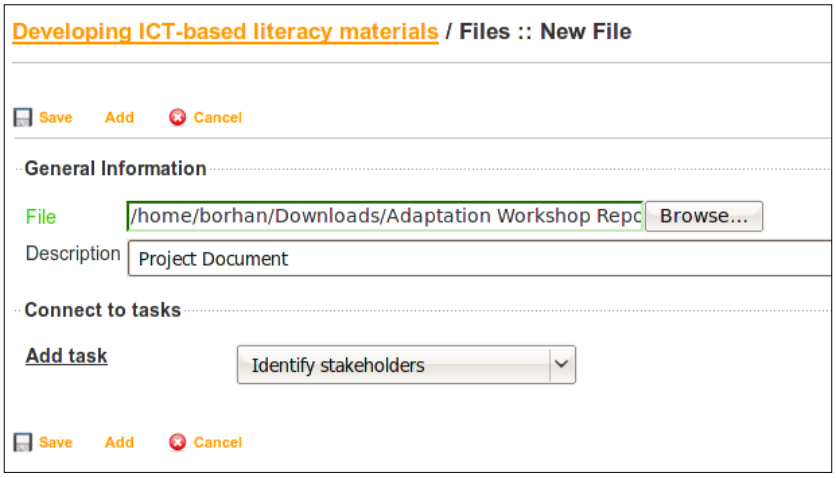


The screen lists the available projects and tasks under the project(s).

13. Click on the project name, and you should see the details about the project including avatars of the project members.

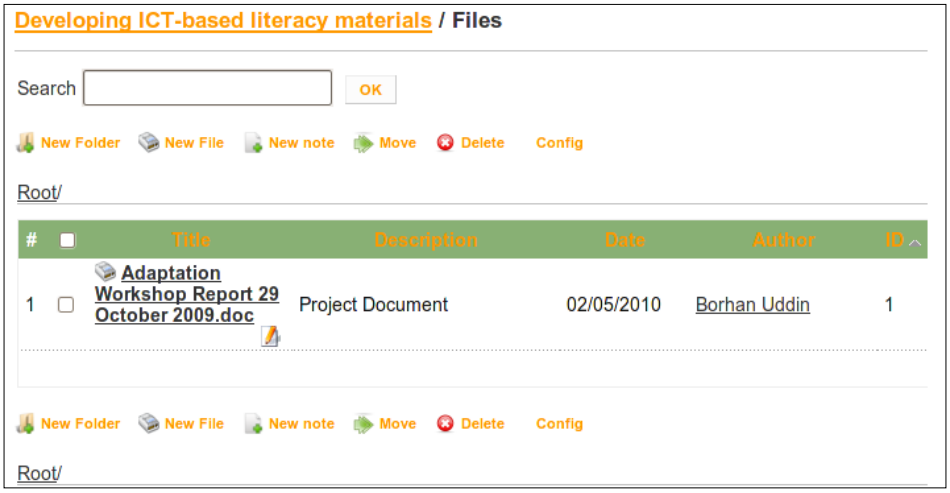


14. Click on the **Tasks** icon on top of this screen and you will see the list of tasks associated with the project. For creating a new task, click on the **New** icon.
15. For viewing the documents associated with the project, click on the **Files** icon. For adding a new file, click on the **New File** icon. This shows the **Files:: New File** screen:

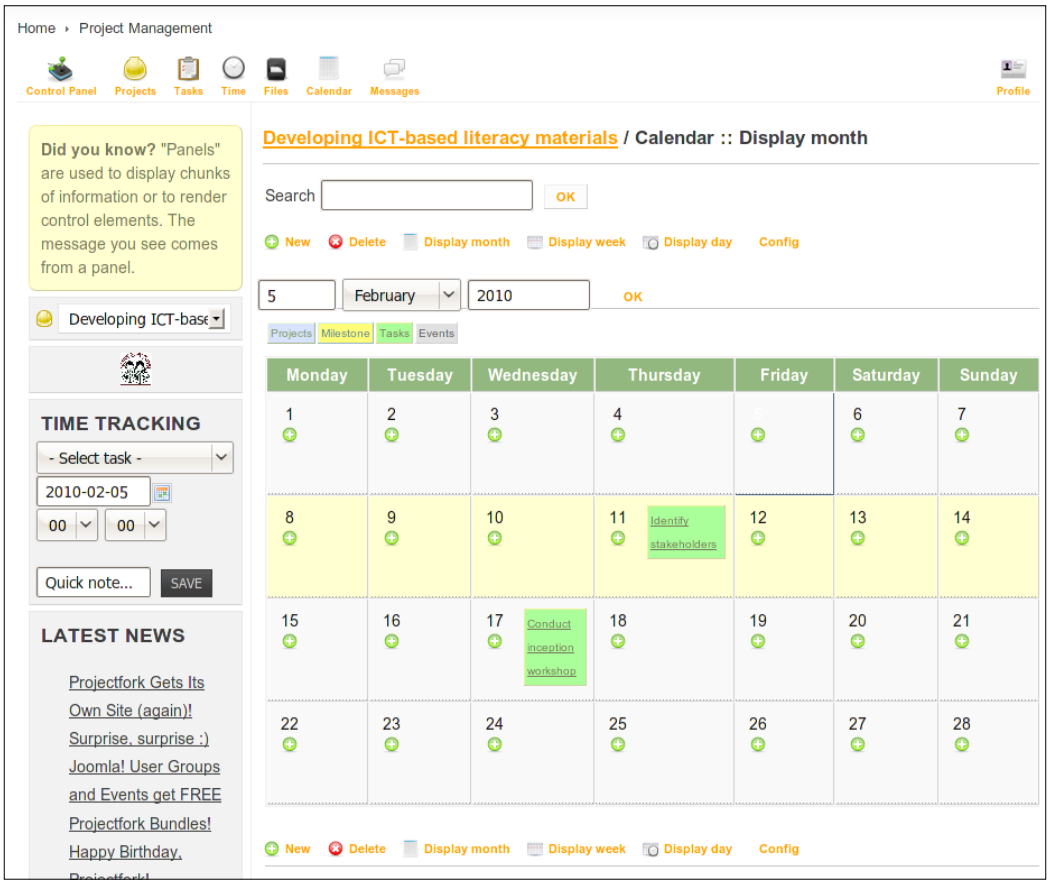


Select a **File** and type a brief **Description** of the file. You can link this file to a task by clicking **Add task** and selecting a task from the list. When done, click on the **Save** button.

16. You will be back to the **Files** screen and should see the files associated with the project and its tasks.

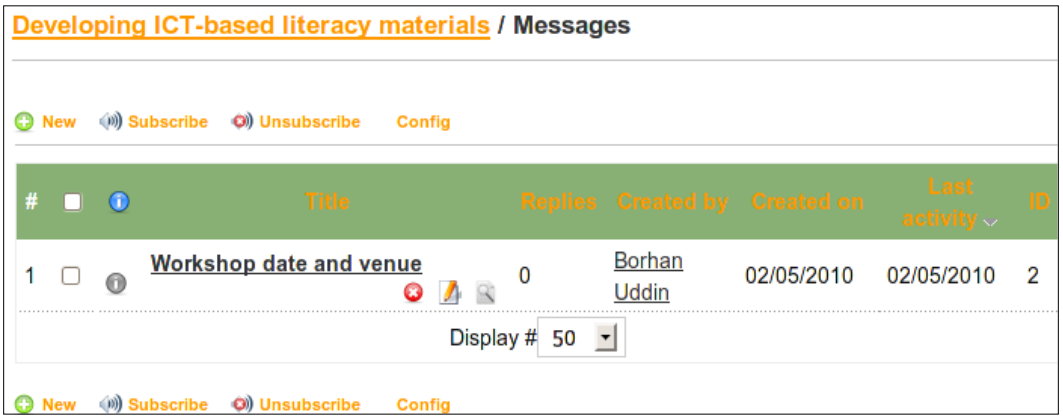


17. Now click on the **Calendar** icon in the toolbar. This shows your tasks for the project in the calendar.



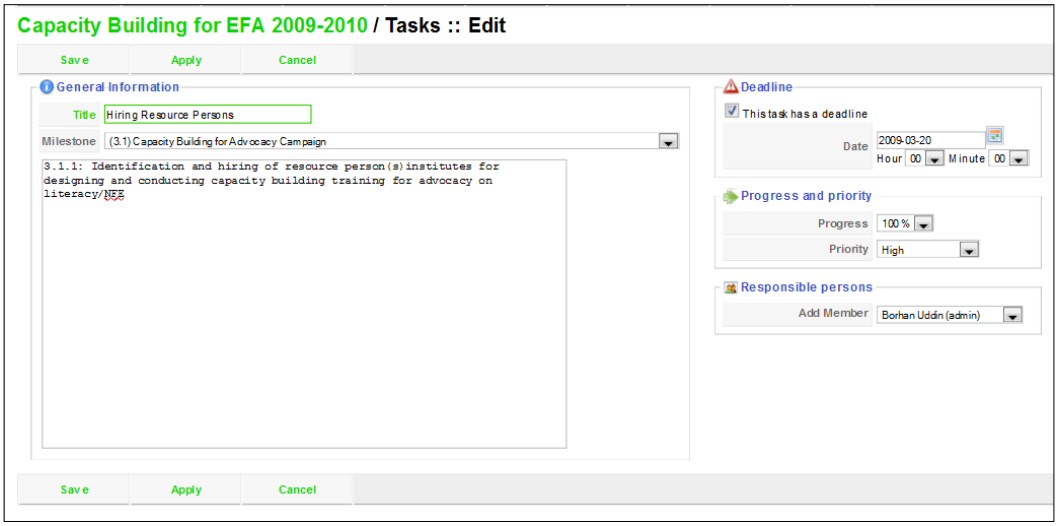
The calendar can be viewed in a monthly, weekly, or daily format. The calendar also shows color-coded tasks, events, or projects

18. Click on the **Messages** icon to see the message board for the project.



19. You can add a new message to the message board by clicking on the **New** button, and you can subscribe to a topic by clicking on the **Subscribe** button.

20. When a task is finished, the respective user can log in to Joomla! and edit the task he/she has finished from the **Tasks::Edit** screen:



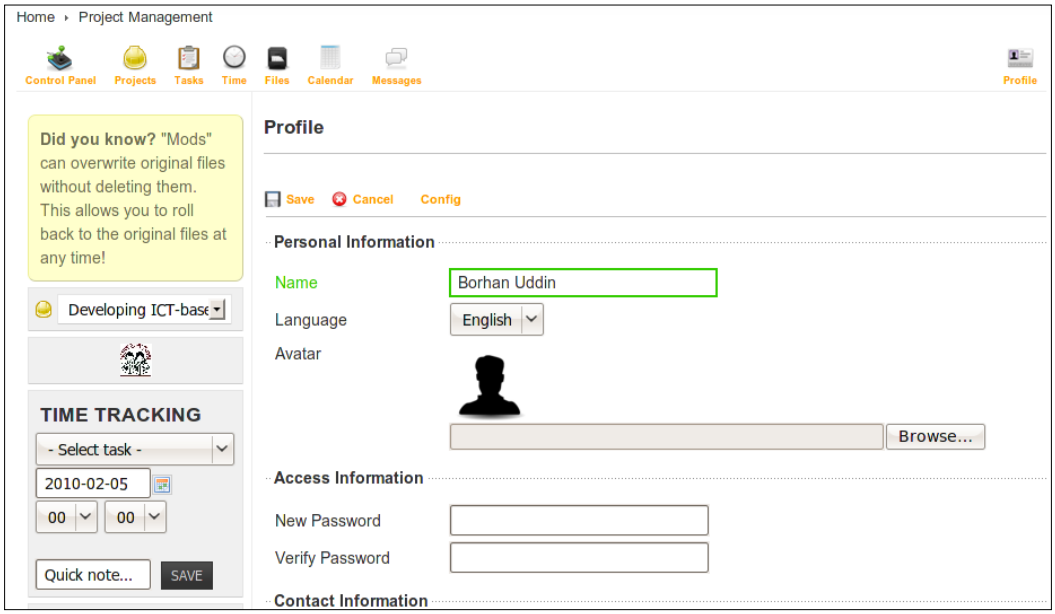
21. From the edit screen, he/she can update the percentage of the task completed by selecting a percent from the **Progress** drop-down list in the **Progress and priority** section.

There's more...

Projectfork has many advanced features that can be configured to meet your needs. Most of the configurations are done from the Joomla! backend. You can set the access rights, sections, and panels to be displayed, groups for project management functions, themes, languages for Projectfork, and so on.

Managing Profiles

Users logging in to the Projectfork frontend can configure their own profile. For configuring the profile, click on the **Profile** icon in the right-hand corner when logged in to Projectfork. This shows the **Profile** screen.



You can upload a picture to be used as an avatar, change the password, update the contact information, the time zone, and provide links to social networking sites such as Twitter, Facebook, YouTube, and so on.

Global Configurations

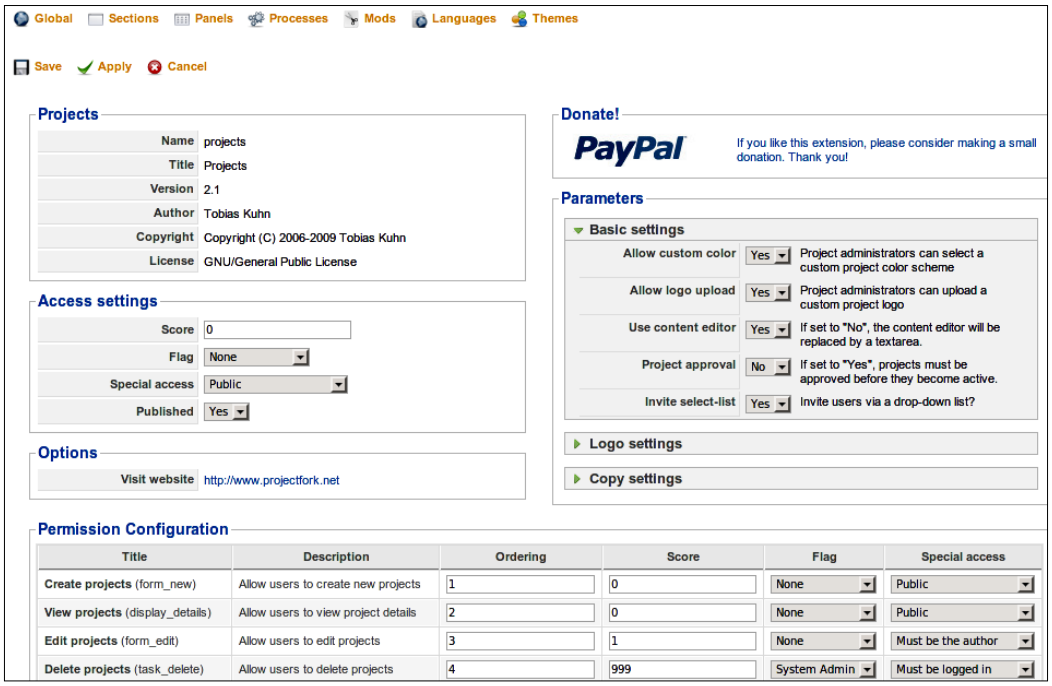
There are some settings for Projectfork that can be configured from the **Config** | **Global** section. You can configure the following as global configurations:

- **Display settings**—**Date format**—whether to show an avatar, tool tips, and the panel edit button; and sending e-mail in HTML format.

- **Frontend settings**—you can choose to **Hide Joomla! template** in the frontend.
- **Enable debugging**—you can **Enable debugging** and **Show panel positions**.

Managing Sections

Sections for displaying different information blocks can be configured from **Config** | **Sections** in the Projectfork control panel. First, you see a list of all the available sections. Click on the **Edit** button for changing options for a section. For example, clicking on the **Edit** button for the **Projects** section displays a configuration screen, as shown in the following screenshot:

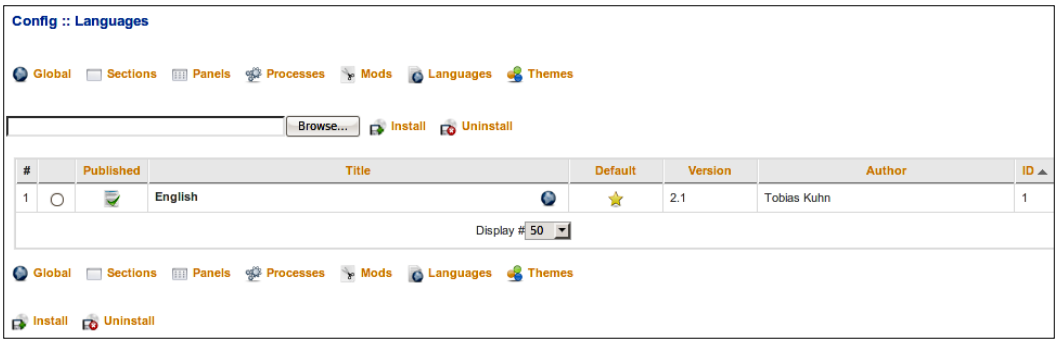


As you can see from this screen, you can set its display order, access rights, basic settings, and more importantly, permissions to perform different tasks in this section.

Similarly, you can manage **Processes**, **Panels**, and **Mods**.

Managing Languages

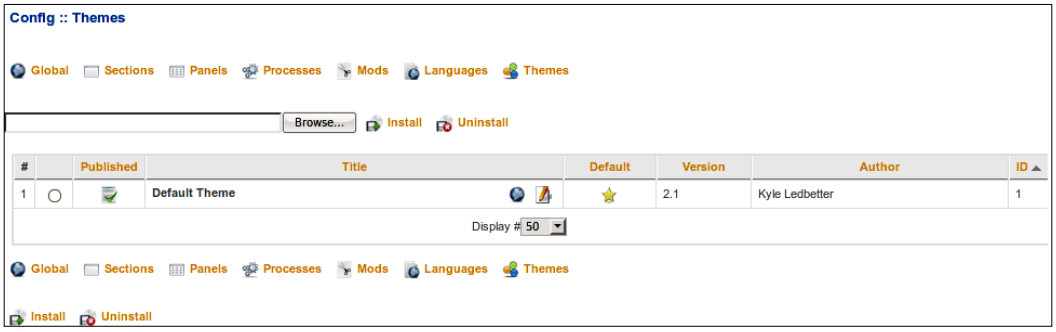
You can install and manage languages for Projectfork from the **Config :: Languages** screen.



You can download the language package from `www.projectfork.net` and install it by selecting the package and clicking on the **Install** button.

Managing Themes

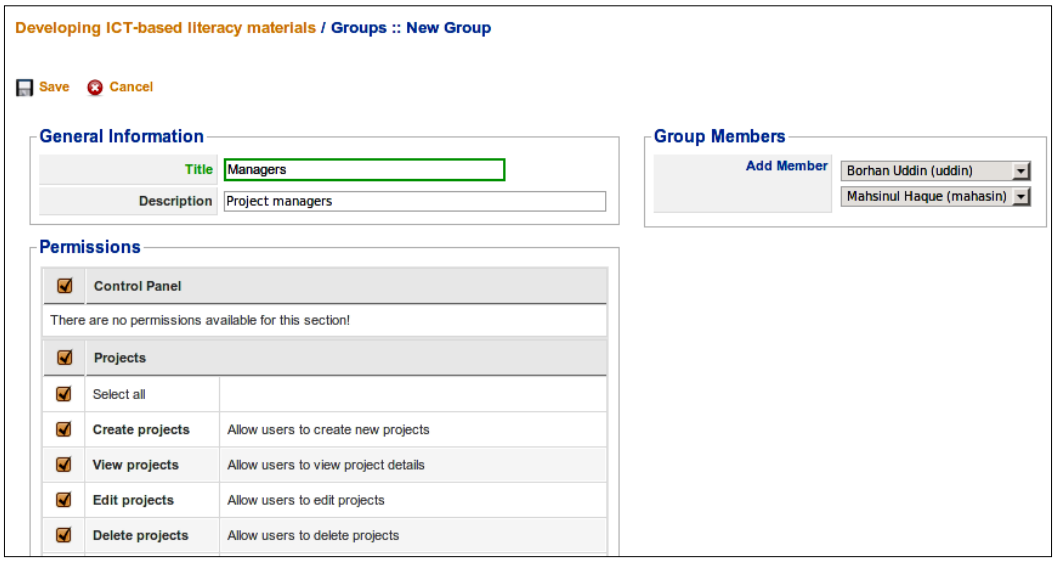
Themes for Projectfork can be installed and configured from the **Config :: Themes** screen.



Like languages, you can download a theme package from `www.projectfork.net` and install it from this screen.

Managing Groups

Groups in Projectfork provide sophisticated ways to control projects in Projectfork. You can configure groups by clicking on the **Groups** icon in the Projectfork control panel. Click on the **New** icon to create a group. This shows the **Groups:: New Group** screen.



First give a **Title** to the group and a brief **Description**, then click on the **Add Member** link in the **Group Members** section and select members to add to this group. In the **Permissions** section, select the sections that group members can access. When you click a section name, it expands and shows the actions associated with that section. Select the actions that the group members will be able to perform. When you have finished assigning the permissions, click on the **Save** button to save the group.

8
Using Photos and Images

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Creating thumbnails in articles
- Creating a photo gallery inside an article
- Adding a dynamic photo gallery
- Adding a Flash photo gallery
- Adding an Ajax image slideshow

Introduction

Images are essential ingredients for a website. Joomla! WYSIWYG Editor provides convenient ways to insert images and add captions. However, Joomla! content authors often need to resize the images earlier, to display them properly inside articles. Some Joomla! extensions can help position images better by resizing and generating thumbnails.

Besides inserting images into articles, it is common to build a photo gallery and display images. Joomla! has many popular extensions to build photo galleries. Among them, in this chapter, we discuss two popular extensions. We also show how to display an image gallery inside an article.

Creating thumbnails in articles

If you often write articles for Joomla!, you know how difficult it is to resize the image to fit a particular template. First, you need to resize the original images to fit the template screen. How easy would it be if the images were resized automatically, or resized to the size you want, without editing them manually? Yes, it is possible. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to create thumbnails automatically in Joomla! articles.

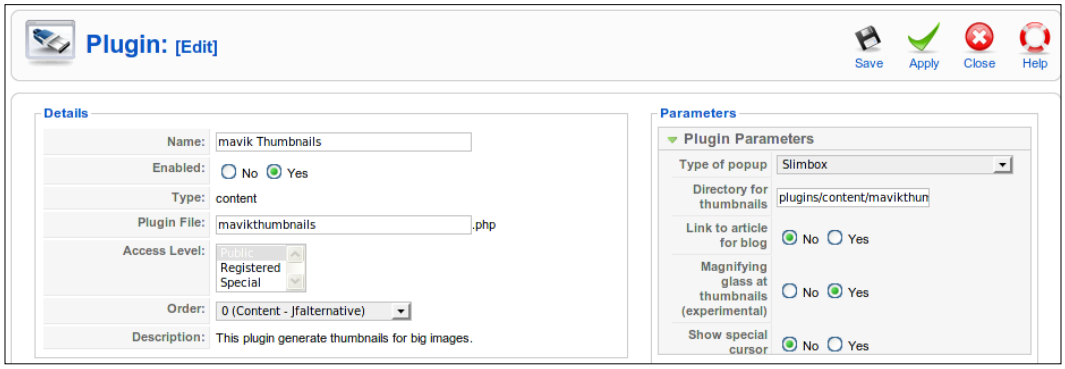
Getting ready...

There are a few plugins that create thumbnails automatically for Joomla! articles. Among them, the most popular one is **mavik Thumbnails**. Download this plugin from `http://www.mavik.com.ua/download/mvThumbnails.zip` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

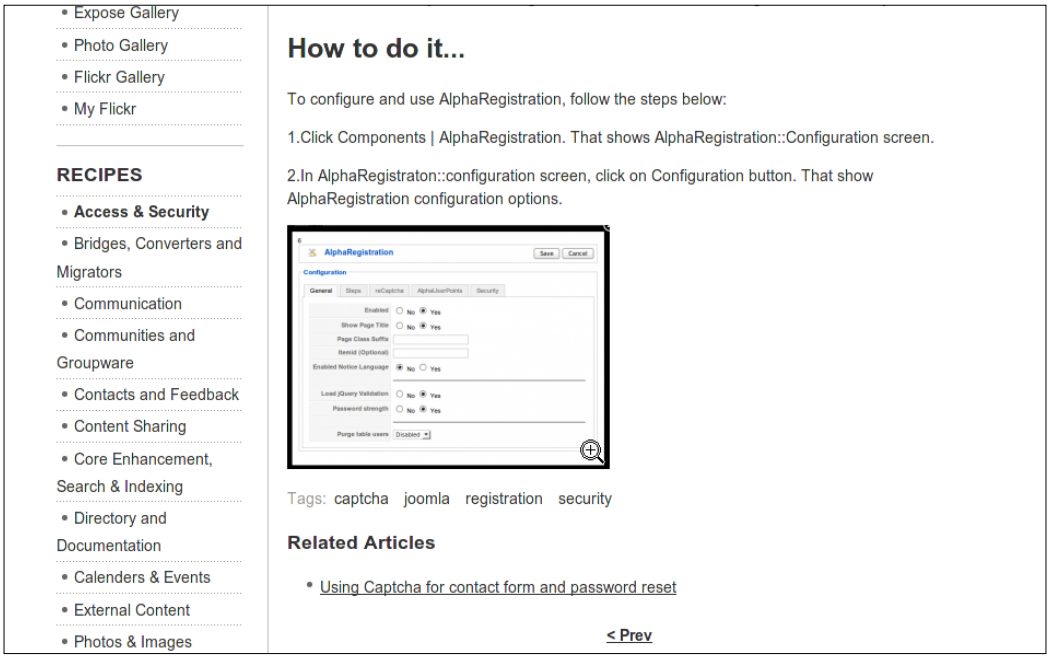
How to do it....

After installing the plugin, carry out the following steps:

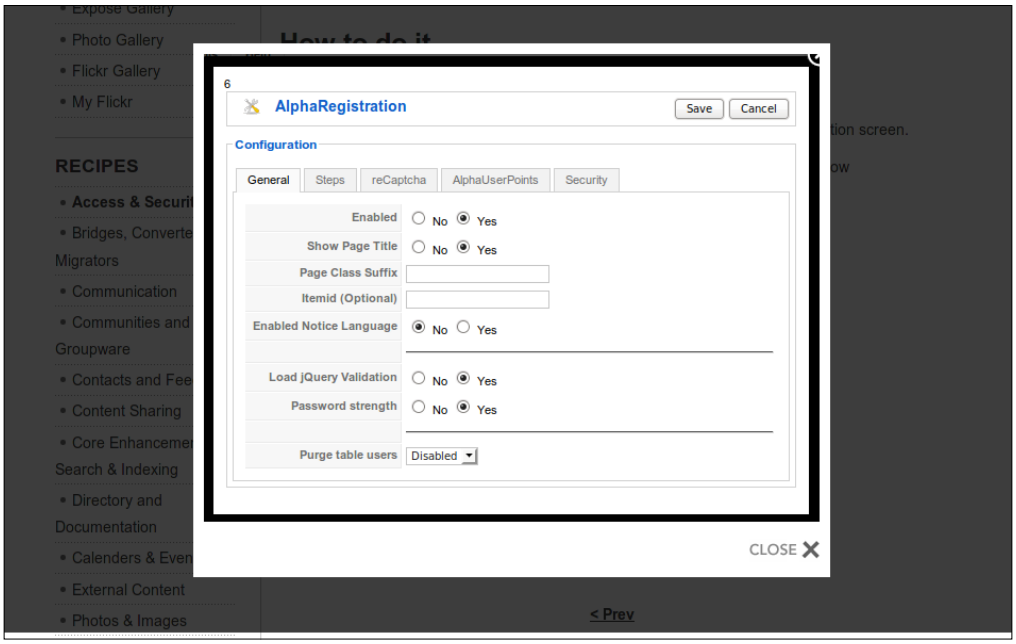
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **mavik Thumbnails** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Also select **Yes** in the **Show special cursor** field. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Now click on **Content | Article Manager** and edit an article. Insert images where necessary. While inserting images, resize them by dragging the corner crosshair or specify the width and height you need. Save and publish the article.
4. Preview the site's frontend and click on the article you have edited. You will see the image in the resized shape with a special symbol on it.



5. Click the thumbnail image, and you will see the full image through SlimBox.



6. You can close the image view by clicking on the **Close** button at the bottom-right corner.

This plugin can resize all image formats used on the web, and can be used in all articles that are influenced by content plugins.

Creating a photo gallery inside an article

What will it look like when you can display an image gallery inside an article? You may have a bunch of pictures to display along with an article. In that case, you would probably like to store those in a single folder and display the whole bunch inside the article. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to insert a photo gallery in an article and add a caption for each photo in the gallery.

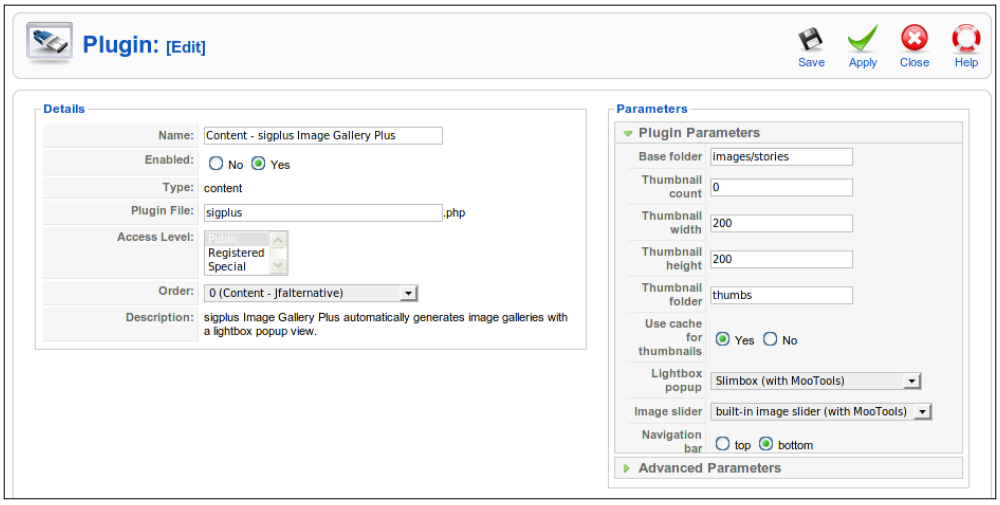
Getting ready...

sigplus Image Gallery Plus is a popular plugin for displaying images as a gallery inside articles. Download this plugin from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/sigplus/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the plugin, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing all the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **Content - sigplus Image Gallery Plus** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. From the **Plugin Parameters** section, type the base folder for images to be displayed. The default base folder is `images/stories`, which is fine for most of us. Accept the default values and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Now you can add a gallery to an article. First, copy your images into a sub-directory within the base folder, that is, `images/stories`. For example, you could put the images in the `images/stories/slides` folder. If you like, you can create a caption file with the following entries:

```
01.jpg|Focus Group Discussion|A Focus Group Discussion (FGD was
held at Baharchara in Cox's Bazar district to identify information
needs by the community)

02.jpg|Children on hills|Children were very eager watching what's
happening

03.jpg|Consultative meeting|Consultative meeting held at Zilla
Parishad auditorium

04.jpg|Briefing on NFE-MIS|A briefing on use of NFE-MIS was
delivered to the local stakeholders

05.jpg|Child Rights Club| A meeting with Child Rights Club
organized by HELP Cox's Bazar
```

4. Save the file with the name `labels.txt` and make sure that it is saved with UTF-8 encoding.
5. Inside your article, insert the following code: `{gallery id=coxsbazar count=3} slides{/gallery}`, where `slides` is the sub-directory under the base folder (that is, `images/stories`). Save the article.

6. View the article from the site's frontend and you will see an image gallery inside that article, as shown in the following screenshot:



Clicking on an image will display that image in detail, either in a new window or using SlimBox JavaScript. If there are many images in the same folder, an image slider will be displayed for navigation. You can add multiple image galleries to an article.

Adding a dynamic photo gallery

Photo galleries are very important for many websites. Photos from different events can be shared with the visitors through photo galleries. In Joomla! you can use several extensions for building a photo gallery. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to build a dynamic photo gallery for Joomla!.

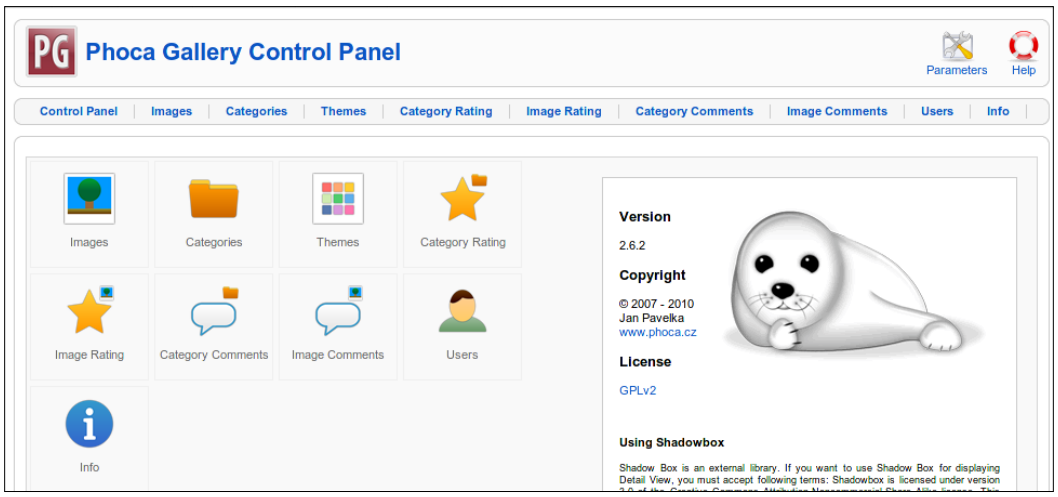
Getting ready...

There are a bunch of popular extensions for Joomla! that help to build a photo gallery. Out of those, **Phoca Gallery** is the most popular—it's feature-rich, and is easy to use. Download Phoca Gallery from `http://www.phoca.cz/download/category/1-phoca-gallery-component` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

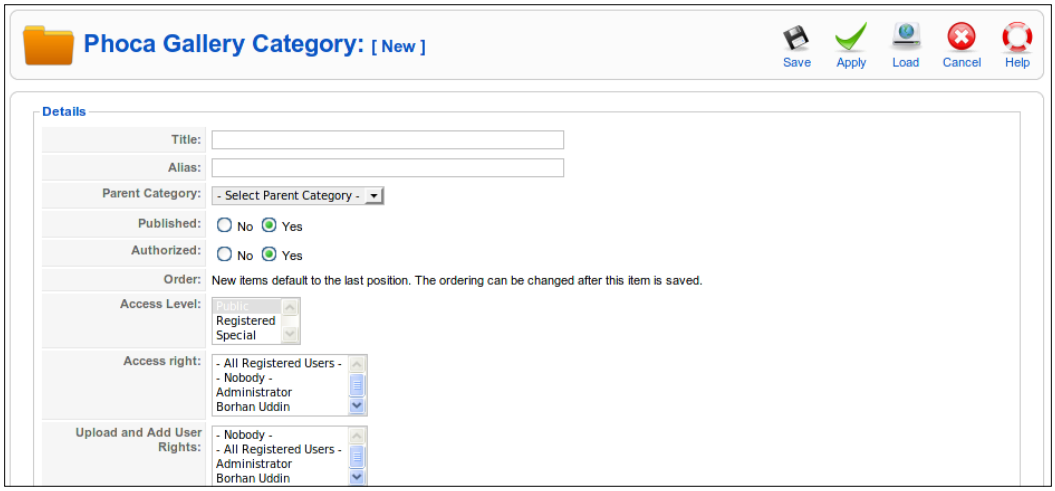
How to do it...

After installing the component, carry out the following steps:

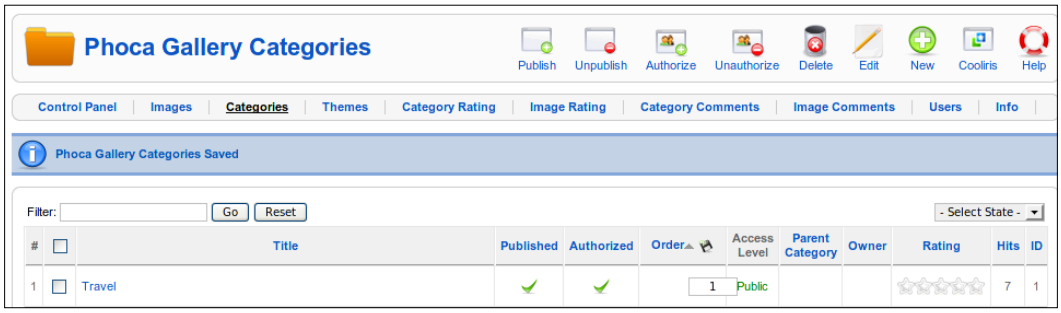
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Phoca Gallery**. This shows the **Phoca Gallery Control Panel** screen:



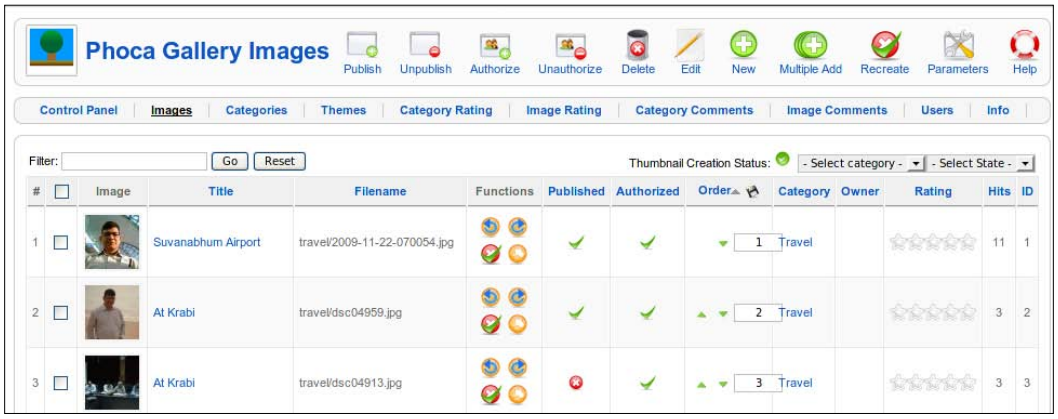
2. Click on the **Categories** icon. This shows the **Phoca Gallery Categories** screen, listing all the available categories. For creating a new category, click on the **New** button. This will show the **Phoca Gallery Category: [New]** screen.



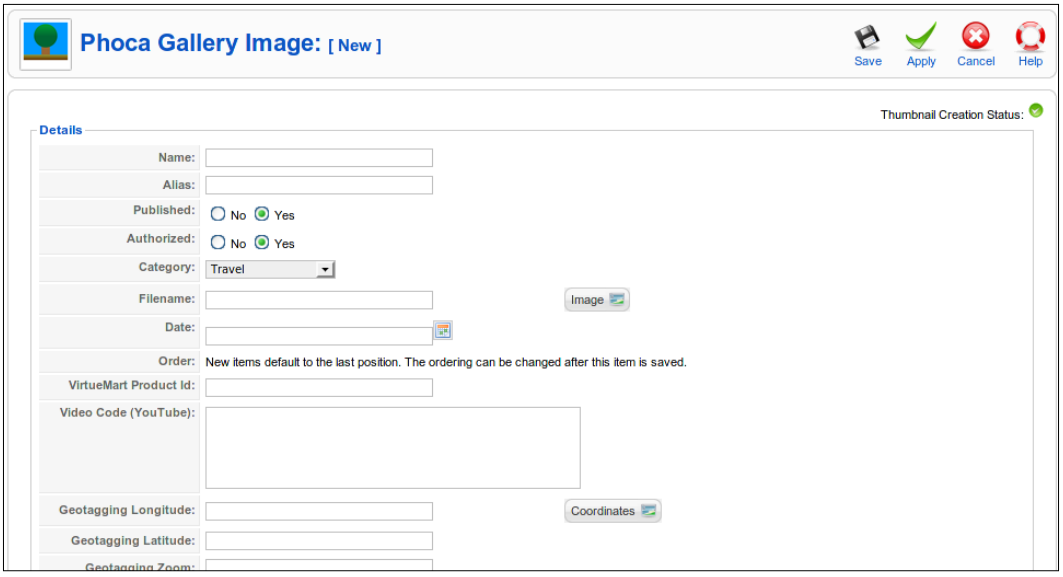
3. Type details for the category title and alias. Select a parent category, if needed, then select **Yes** in the **Published** and **Authorized** fields. Select groups in the **Access Level** and **Access right** fields. Also select the groups in the **Upload and Add User Rights** fields and **Delete and Publish User Rights** fields. Then you can specify the **Owner folder** and **Geo-tagging** options. In the **META Description** and **META Keywords** fields, type the META description and keywords for search engines. Then fill in the **Description** field. When done, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. This adds the category and shows the **Phoca Gallery Categories** screen. Repeat this step to create as many categories as you need.



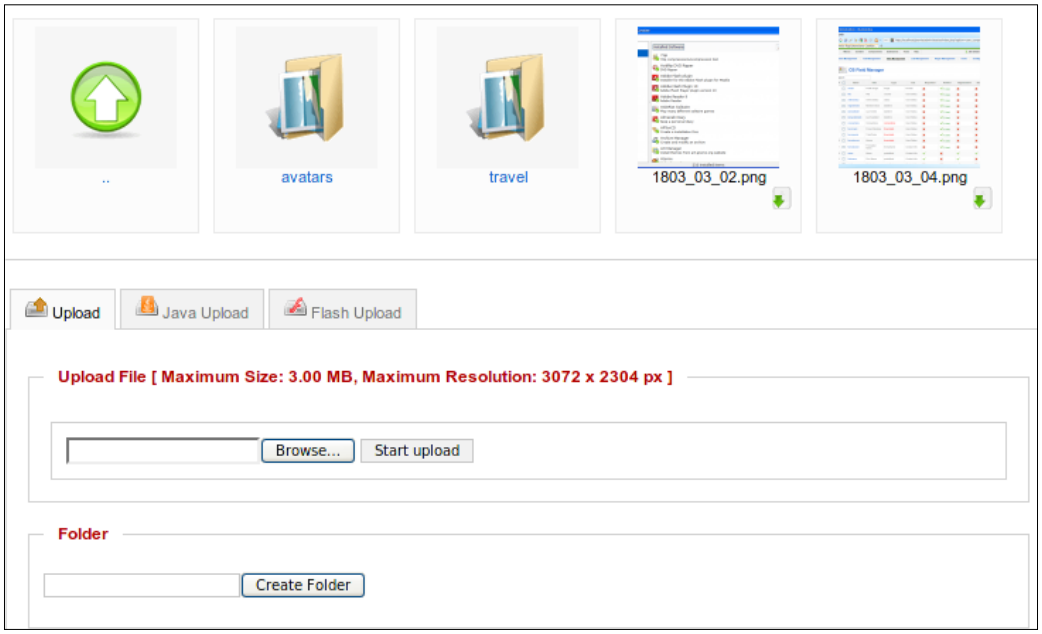
4. Now click on **Images**. This will show the **Phoca Gallery Images** screen, with a list of the images already added to the gallery.



5. Click on the **New** button in the toolbar. This shows the **Phoca Gallery Image: [New]** screen.



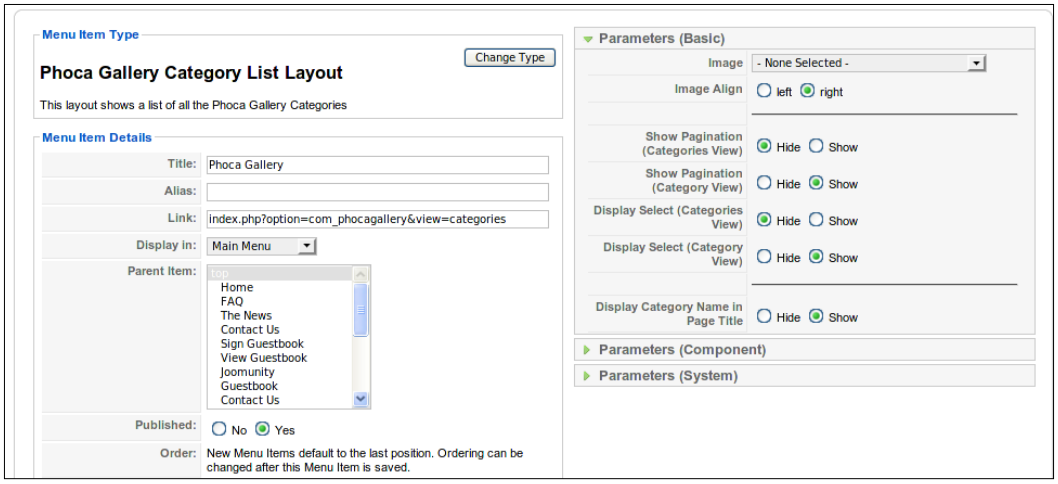
6. Type a title for the photo in the **Name** field. Select **Yes** in the **Published** and **Authorized** fields. Select a **Category** for the photo you are adding. In the **Filename** field, you can type the path and filename of the image file, or you can click on the **Image** button beside it. This shows the following dialog:



7. From this dialog, you can a select a folder by double-clicking that folder's icon, or you can create a new folder for uploading new photos to. Either select a photo from an existing folder or click on the **Browse** button, select an image for upload, and click on the **Start upload** button. This uploads the image to the specified folder. When done selecting the image, close the dialog.
8. On the **Phoca Gallery Image: [New]** screen, in the **Date** field, optionally select a date for the photograph. Type a short description for the photograph in the **Description** field. Click the **Save** button in the toolbar. Add as many photos as you want.
9. Click on **Menus | Main Menu**. This shows the **Menu Item Manager: [mainmenu]** screen. Click on the **New** button on this screen. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. In **Select Menu Item**, click on the **Phoca Gallery Category List Layout** link.

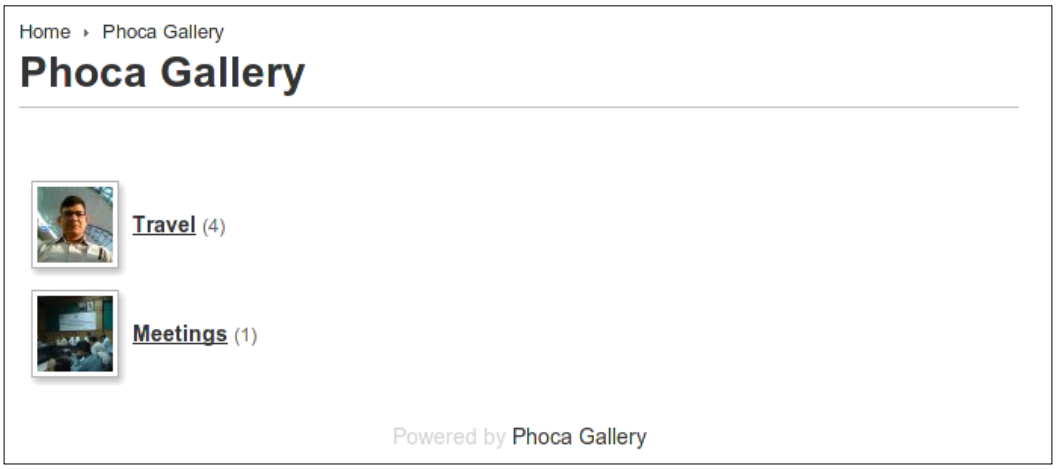


10. Now you will see following screen:

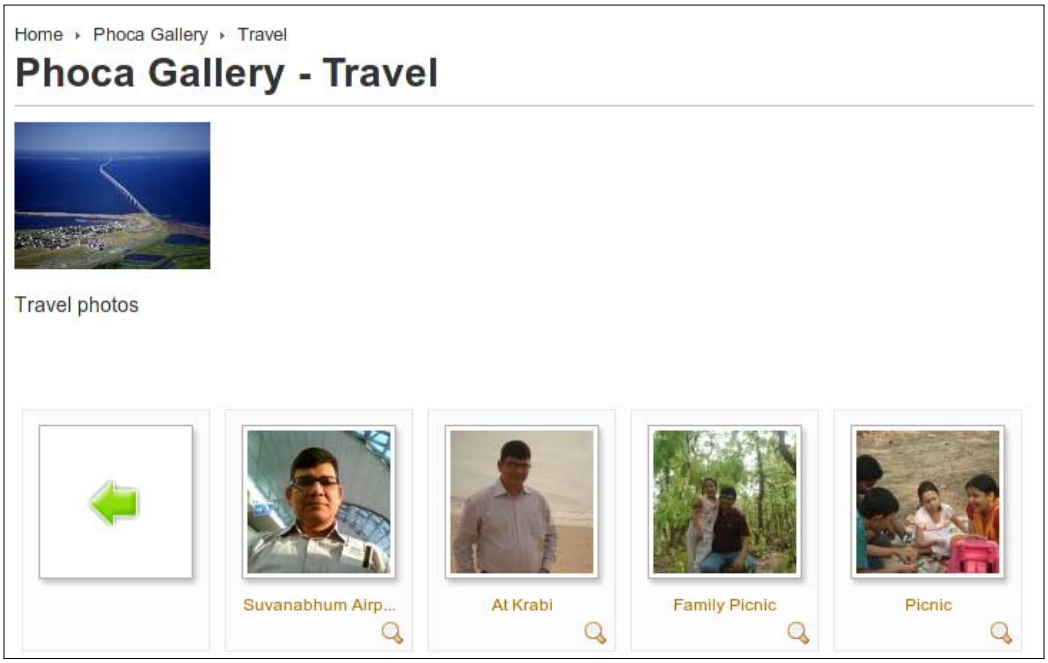


11. Type a **Title** for the menu item and make sure that **Yes** is selected in the **Published** field. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

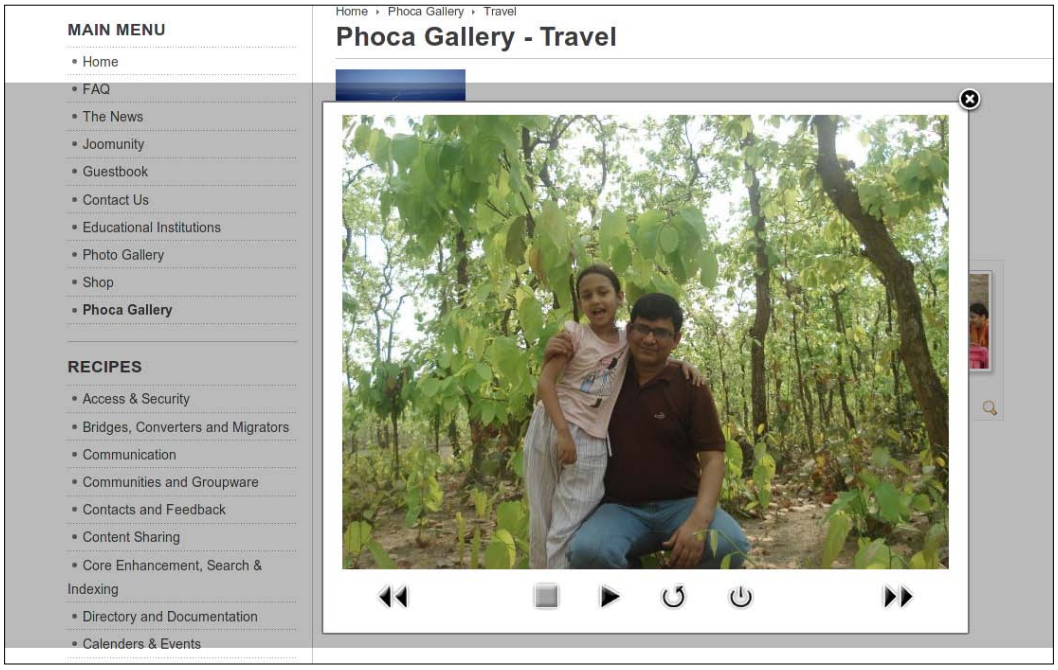
12. Preview the site's frontend and click on the menu item that you have created. This will show the Phoca Gallery component listing the available categories.



13. Click a category icon. This shows the thumbnails of the photographs in that category.



14. Click a photo to view its details.



Note that you can start a slideshow of the images from this viewer.

There's more...

Phoca Gallery has some advanced features. You can integrate it with the Virtuemart shopping cart, display images from the Picasa Web Gallery, configure the display of gallery categories and photos, add geo-tags, and so on. Details of these features are well documented. Please refer to the online document available at `http://www.phoca.cz/documentation/category/2-phoca-gallery-component`.

Adding a Flash photo gallery

Flash is often used to add animation to a website. Flash photo galleries are famous for their animation and stunning effects. Considering the large array of features the Flash image galleries provide, you may like to add one to your Joomla! site. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to add a Flash photo gallery to your Joomla! site.

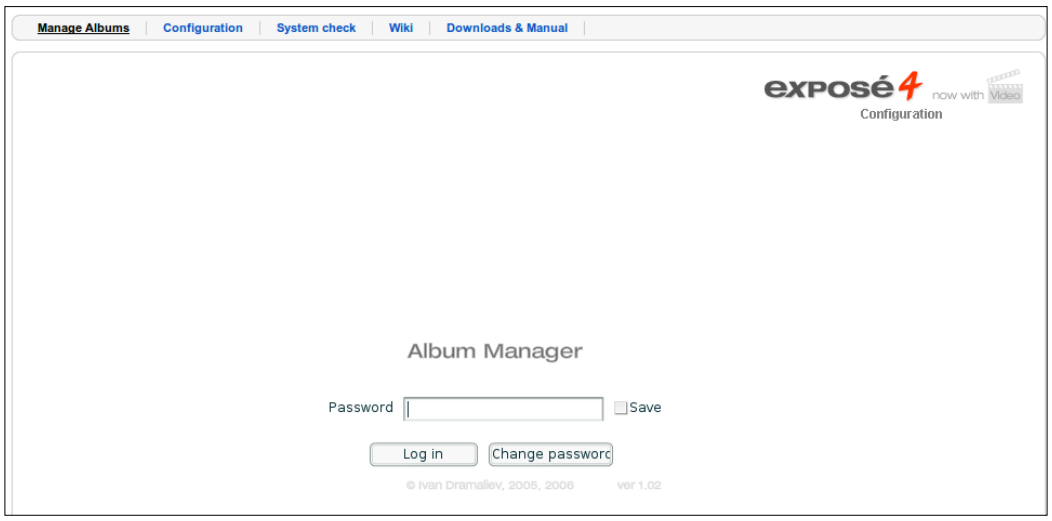
Getting ready...

The most popular extension available to add a Flash photo gallery to a Joomla! site is **Expose photo gallery**. Download this extension (the `com_expose_4.6.3_alpha3c.zip` file) from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/expose/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

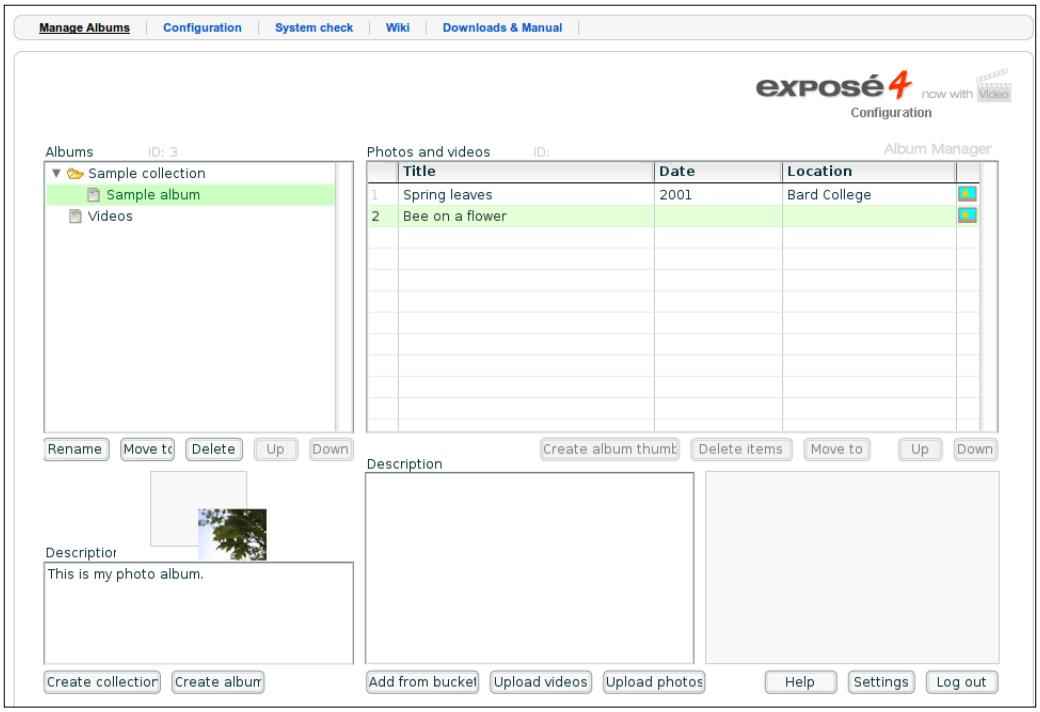
How to do it...

Once you have installed the component, carry out the following steps:

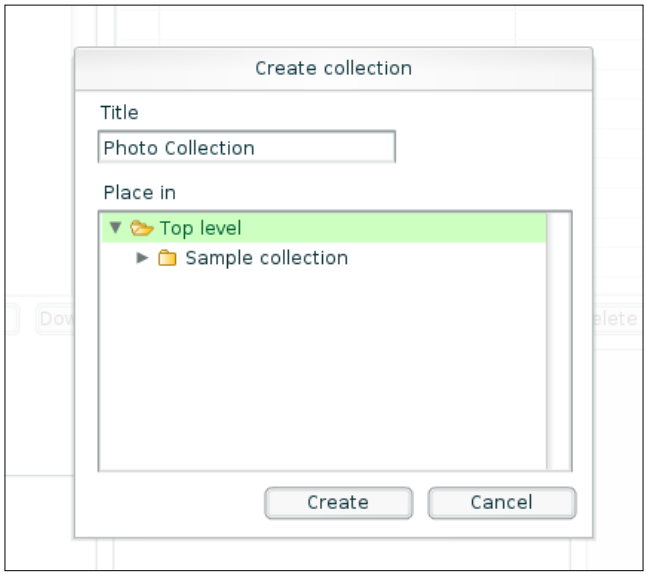
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Expose | Manage Albums**. This takes you to the login screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



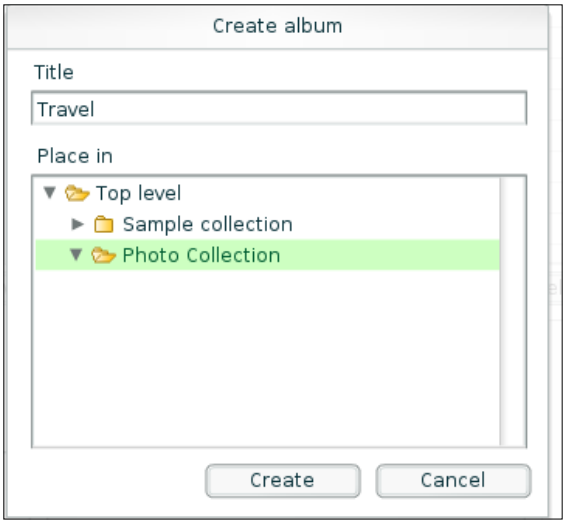
2. The default password for Album manager is manager. Type manager in the **Password** field and click on the **Log in** button. This will show you the following screen:



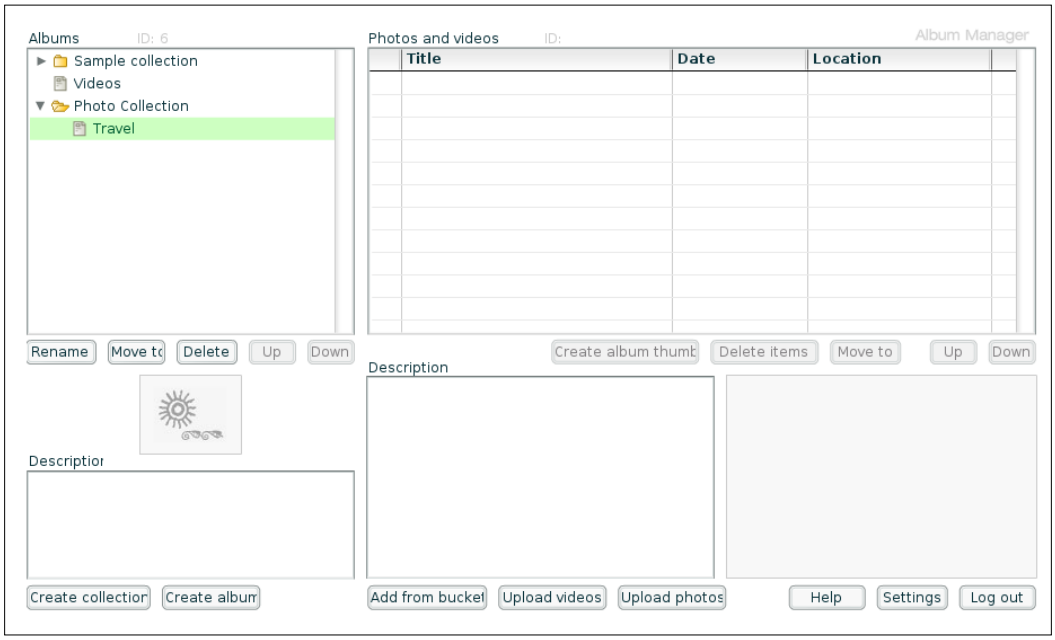
3. The **Manage Albums** screen lists the available collections, albums, photos, and videos. In order to create a new collection, click on the **Create collection** button. This shows the **Create collection** dialogs, as shown in the next screenshot:



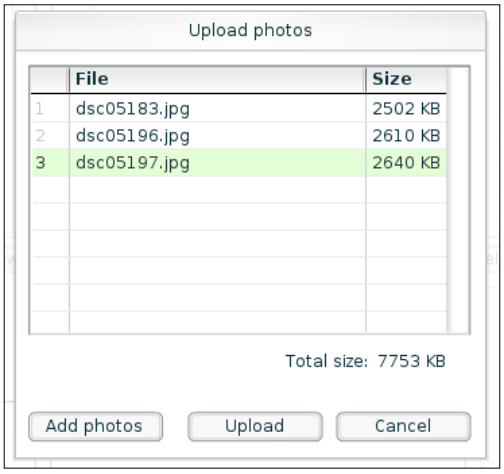
4. Type a **Title** for the collection, for example **Photo Collection**, and click on the **Create** button. This will add the collection to the list. Select the collection name and click on the **Create Album** button. This will show the **Create Album** dialog.



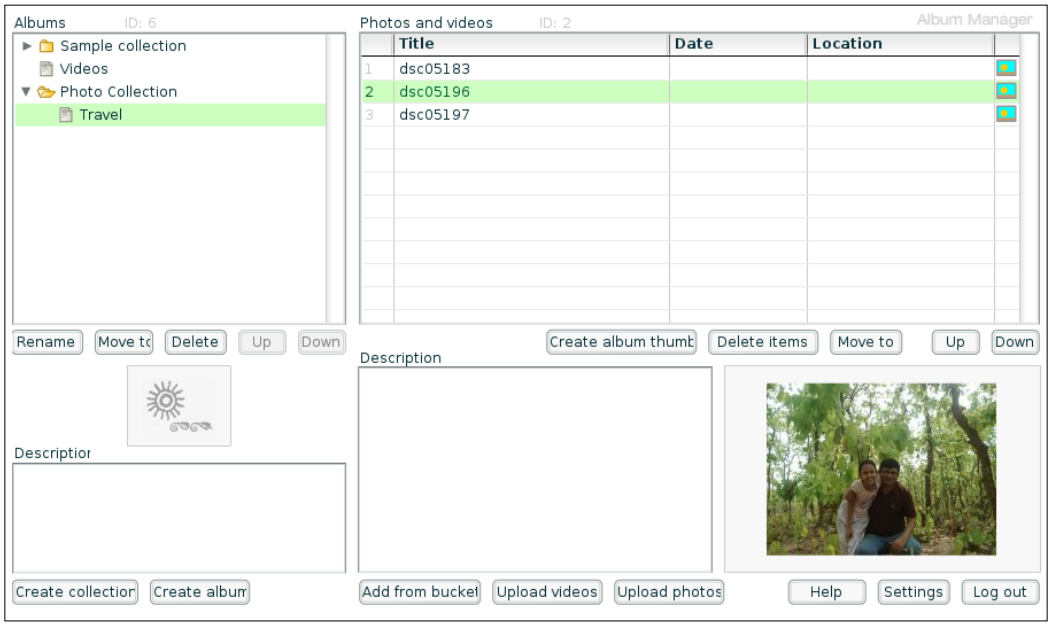
5. Type **Title** of the album and select a collection from the list. Then click on the **Create** button. This adds the album to the collection.



6. From the list of albums, select an album and click on the **Upload photos** button. This shows the browse dialog. Select the image file from your computer and you will see the **Upload Photos** dialog box.

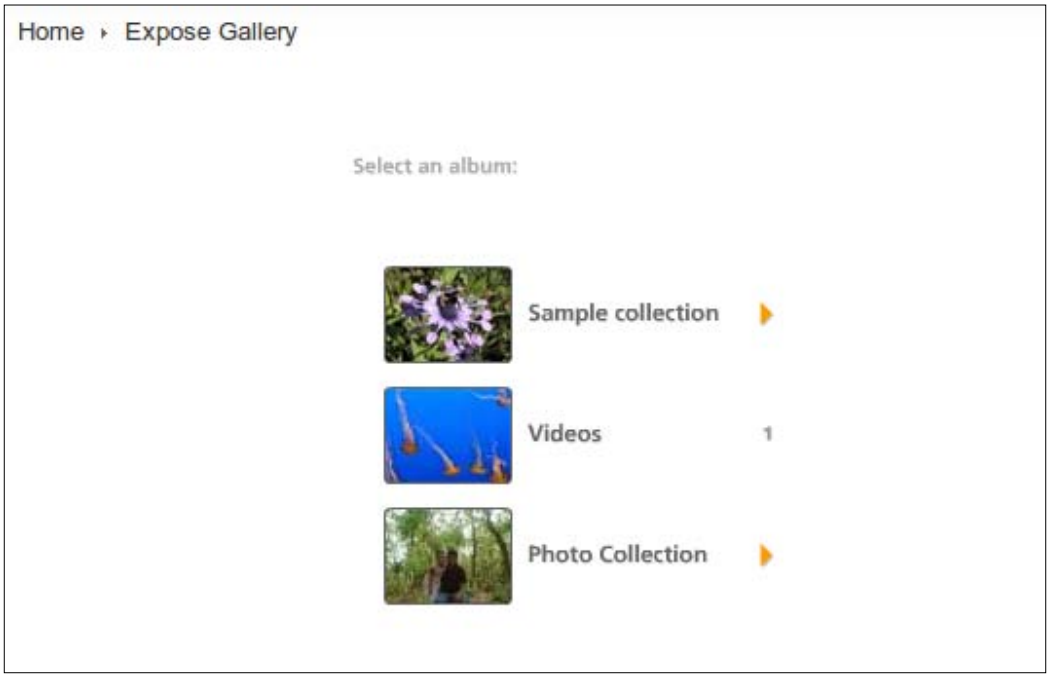


7. Your selected photos will be listed in this dialog. For adding more photos, click on the **Add photos** button and select more photos. Then click on the **Upload** button to start uploading the photos to the web server. When this is done, you'll see the photos listed in the album. Select a photo from the list and you will see a preview.

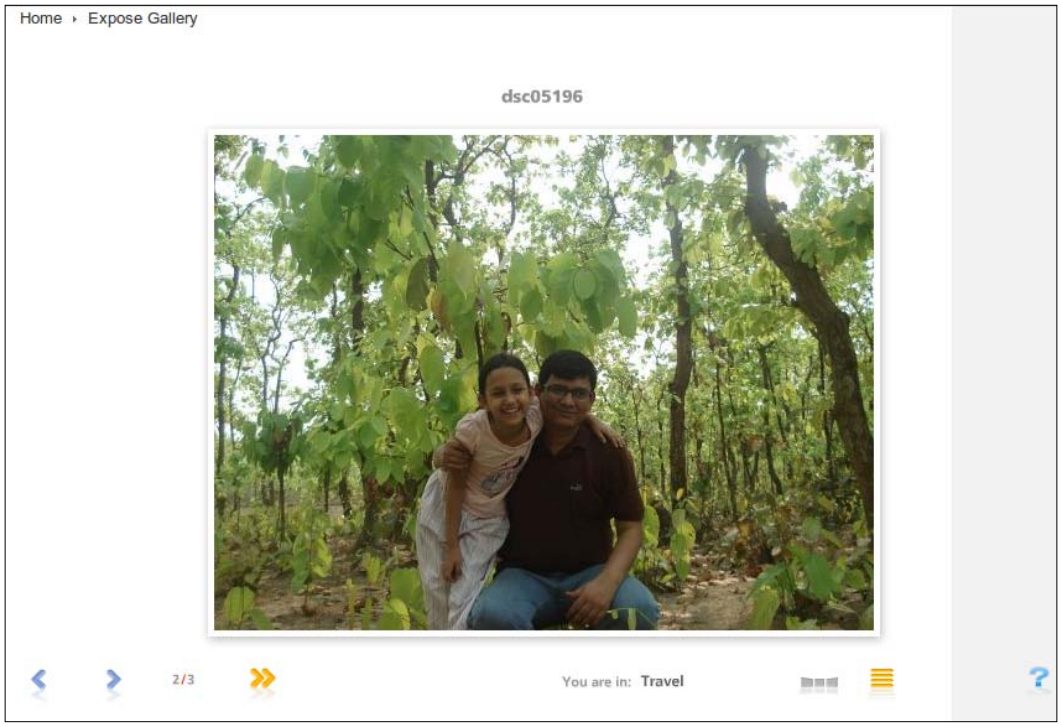


8. For creating an album thumbnail from the selected photograph, click on the **Create album thumbnail** button. You can also rearrange the order of photographs in an album by moving the photos up or down, this is done by by clicking on the **Up** or **Down** buttons, respectively.
9. Click on the **Log out** button, when you have finished adding albums and photographs.
10. Click on **Menus | Main Menu** and click on **New**. Create a menu item pointing to the **Expose** gallery component.

Preview the site's frontend and click on the menu item linked to the Expose gallery. This shows the available collections, as displayed in the following screenshot:



On clicking a collection and album, you will see the thumbnails of the photographs. Click on a photograph, you will see the details of that photograph.



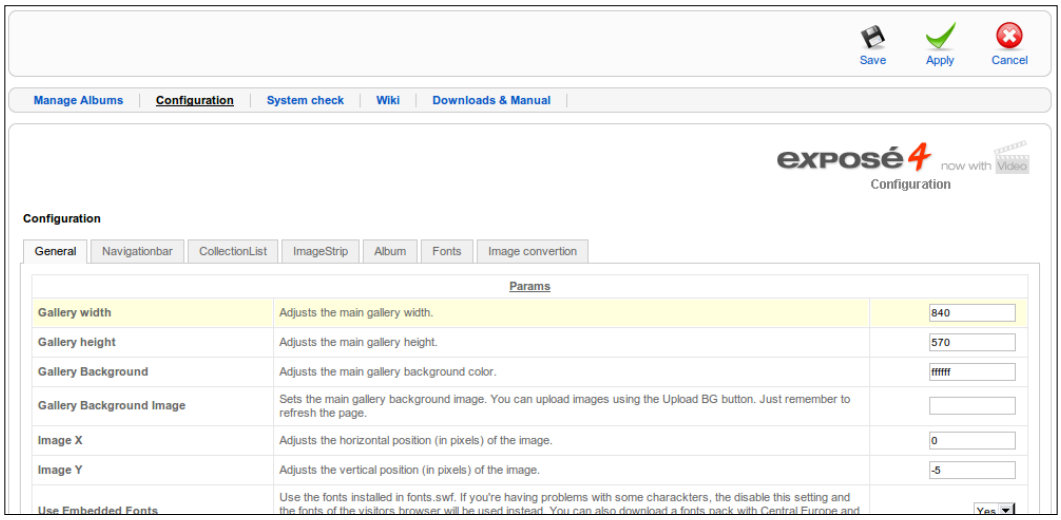
You can start a slideshow by clicking on the slideshow button (the double arrow icon).



The Expose gallery works fine with non-SEF URLs. When using Joomla!'s inbuilt SEF URLs, the linking to albums, photos, and collections do not work. If you are using an sh404sef extension for SEF URLs, there is a workaround. You can download and use `expose_sh404sef_plugin` from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/expose/frs/`.

There's more...

Although the Expose gallery works fine with its default configurations, almost all aspects of the Expose gallery can be configured. For configuring the Expose gallery, click on **Components | Expose | Configuration**. This will show the **Configuration** screen for the Expose gallery.



You can configure almost every aspect of Expose, using the seven tabs on this screen.

Adding an Ajax image slideshow

Image slideshows can be useful in some cases. For example, you want to display photos of an event one at a time. A full-fledged photo album may not be necessary for such image slideshows, a simple mechanism can satisfy your needs. In this recipe, we are going to see how to display image slideshows on a Joomla! website using Ajax.

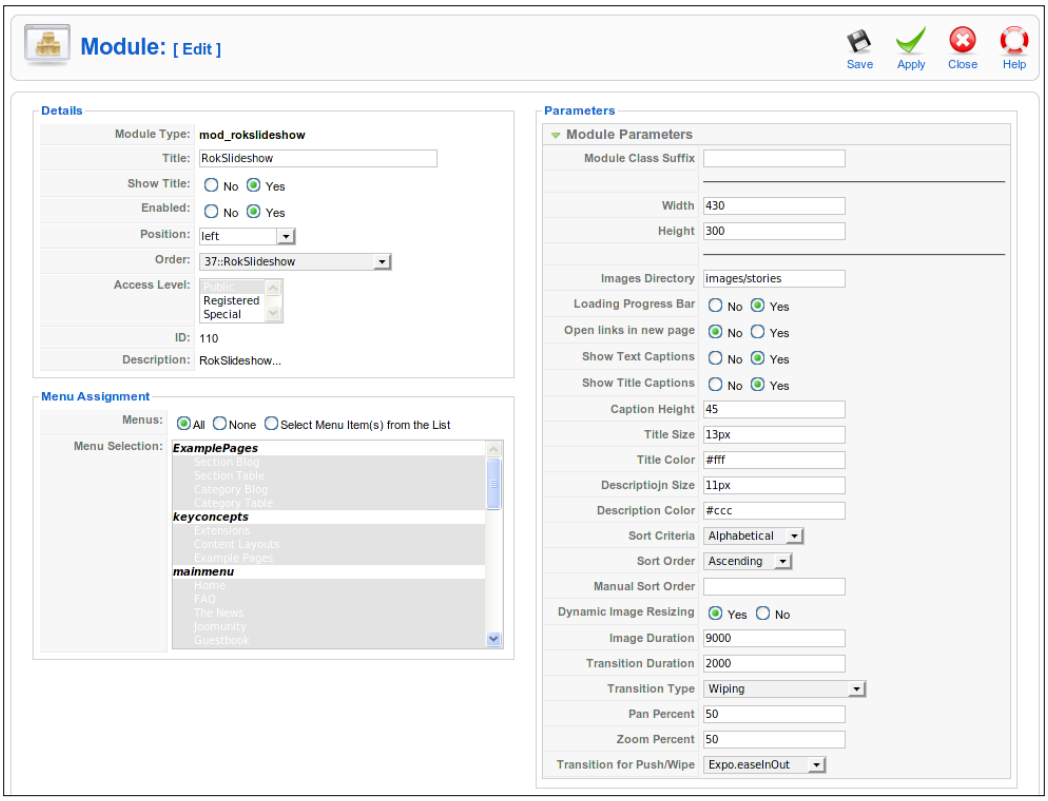
Getting ready...

There are several modules and components that can show image slideshows on a Joomla! website. Among those, a popular module is RokSlideshow. Download this module from `http://www.rockettheme.com/extensions-downloads/club/1029-rokslideshow`, and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installation, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules. From the module list, click on the **RokSlideshow** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in **Show Title**, and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Select a module position, for example, **banner**. From the **Module Parameters** section, configure the following:
   - **Width**: Specify the width of the slideshow in pixels.
   - **Height**: Specify the height of the slideshow in pixels.
   - **Images directory**: Specify the image directory path from where images will be displayed. This path is relative to the Joomla! web root, for example, `images/stories/slides`.
   - **Loading Progress Bar**: Select **Yes** to display the progress bar while an image loads.

- **Show Text Captions**: Select **Yes** to display the text captions for images. If **Yes** is selected, it looks for captions in the `.txt` files, in the same folder where the images reside.
- **Show Title Captions**: If **Yes** is selected, then animated title captions should be shown for the images.
- **Show Captions**: Select **Yes** to show link captions, if available.
- **Caption Height**: Specify the height of the captions in pixels.
- **Sort Criteria**: Specify how the images should be sorted: **Alphabetical** or by **Creation Date**.
- **Manual Sort Order**: You can specify the manual sort order by a comma-separated list of images, for example, `image3.jpg`, `image2.jpg`, `image1.jpg`.
- **Image Duration**: Specify the duration, in milliseconds for which each image is shown.
- **Transition Duration**: Specify the time, in milliseconds for the transition between images.
- **Transition Type**: Select a type of transition: **Fading**, **Zooming**, **Panning**, **Combo - Ken Burns Effects**, **Push**, and **Wipe**.
- **Transition for Push/Wipe**: Choice of any of the MooTools transition effects. There are more than 30 transition effects to choose from.

3. When you have finished configuring these, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
4. Now configure your images and prepare the captions. Copy your images to `images/stories/slides` (or any other directory you have mentioned earlier), rename them as `1.png`, `2.png`, `3.png`, and so on. For adding the captions and links, create text files with the names `1.txt`, `2.txt`, `3.txt`, and so on. Specify an image title, link, and caption as follows:

```
Consultative Meeting at Cox's Bazar
http://www.unescodhaka.org/education/nfemis/ds
A Consultative meeting was held with Cox's Bazar district
administration and NGO representatives to identify information
needs for the administration and community.
```

5. The first line provides the title of the image, the second line is the link to page, and the third line is the caption for the image. If there is no link, type `#` in second line.
6. Prepare such files for other images too, and save them with the same file name as the images and add the `.txt` extension.

Preview the site and you will find the module with the slideshow, as shown in the following screenshot:



Note that the images will move at your chosen speed. Images for which there are no captions, will not show captions. You need to adjust the height and width of the slideshow, based on the module position where you are publishing it.

9

Enriching your Site with Multimedia

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Displaying a multimedia file in a Joomla! article
- Adding a simple Flash video player
- Adding an MP3 browser to your Joomla! site

Introduction

Joomla! can build multimedia-rich websites. There are many extensions in the Joomla! Extensions Directory that can add multimedia functionality to a Joomla! site. In each category, you will find more than one popular extension to choose from. In this chapter, we are going to learn about three popular extensions, through which we can add multimedia functionality to Joomla!-based sites.

First, we will learn about displaying a multimedia item inside a Joomla! article. This allows you to show `.flv`, `.mpg`, `.avi`, and other media files from YouTube, blip.tv, and such other services. For many sites, only this extension is enough to display multimedia content.

Next, we will learn how to add a Flash video player to the site. The Flash video player can also display videos in different formats and from different video-sharing services. Besides videos, we may also add an MP3 player on our site. The Simple MP3 bar allows us to display multiple MP3 files and allows visitors to choose an MP3 file to play.

Displaying a multimedia file in a Joomla! article

There are many sites on the Internet that provide videos to embed on your site. You may need to use such videos on your site. For example, you may like to embed some videos from YouTube, Google Video, or blip.tv. You may even like to upload videos in different formats, including `.flv`, `.mpg`, `.avi`, and so on. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to display almost any kind of audio or video files, both from the same web server or from a remote web server, inside your Joomla! articles.

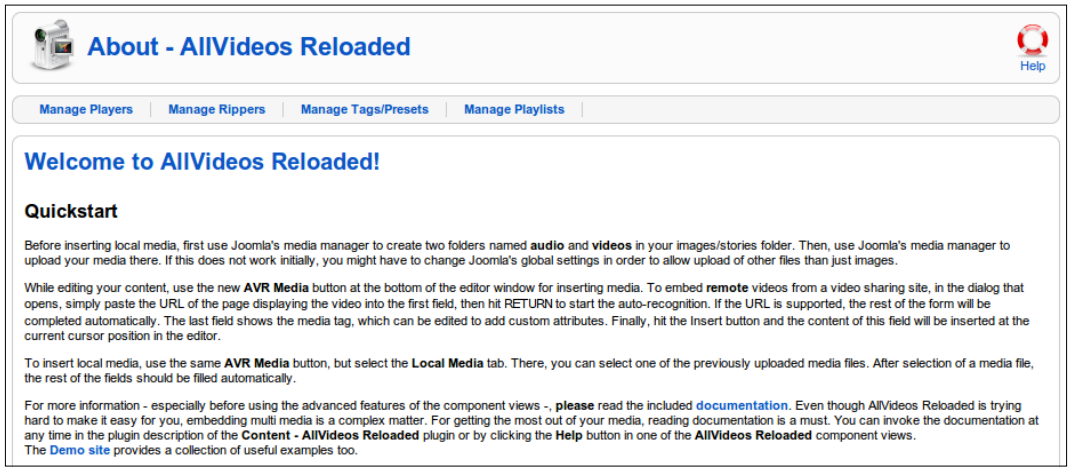
Getting ready...

AllVideos Reloaded is a popular extension that can display any kind of videos within Joomla! content. Download this extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/allvideos15/frs/`, and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen. Note that this will install one component and several plugins and modules.

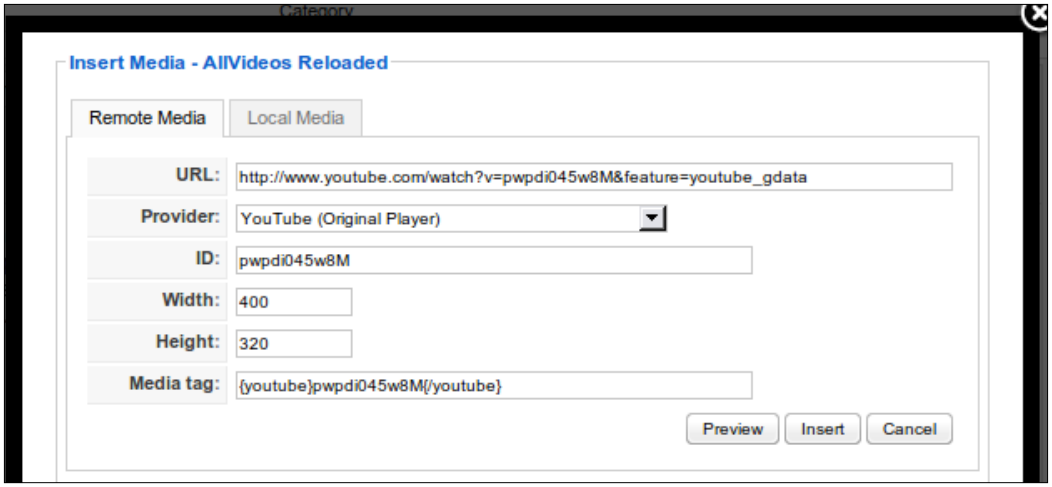
How to do it...

After installation, follow the steps as shown:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | AllVideos Reloaded**. This shows the following screen. Read the instructions on this screen carefully:

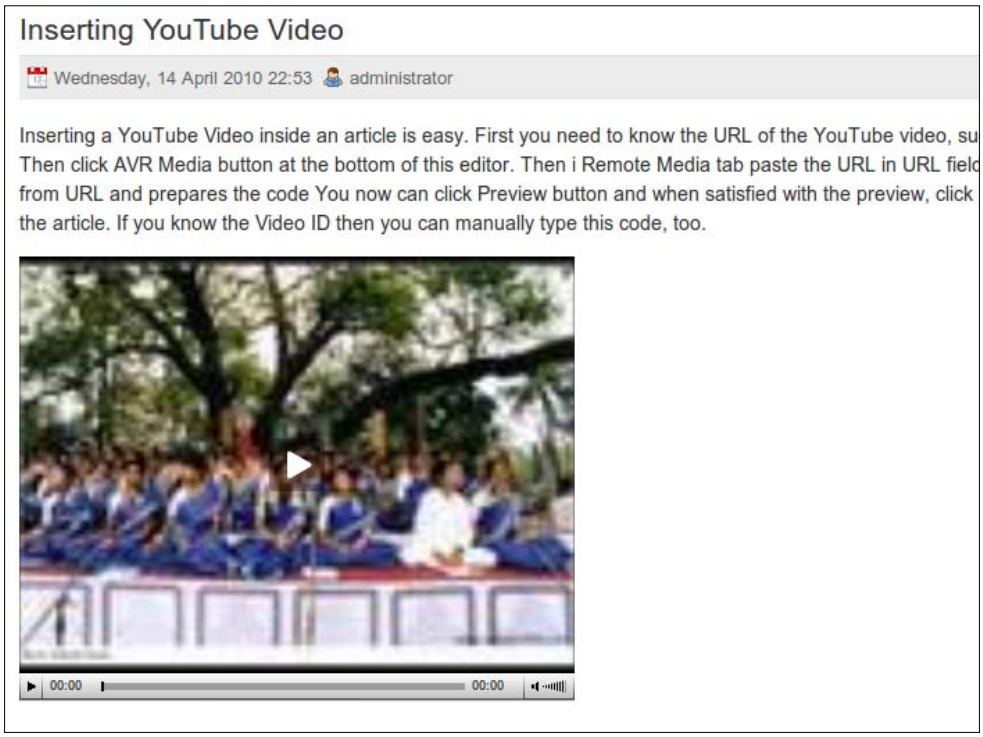


2. As per the instructions provided, go to the **Site** | **Media Manager** screen, and create two folders—`audio` and `videos`—inside the `images/stories` directory.
3. Now click on **Content** | **Article Manager**. This shows the list of articles. Click on the **New** button to create a new article and write your content. Then click on the **AVR Media** button at the bottom of the editor. This will show the following screen:



4. Browse for the YouTube video you want to insert. Copy the URL of the video and paste it in the **URL** field. This automatically extracts the video ID from the URL. Click on the **Preview** button and you will see the video at the bottom of the screen. When you are satisfied with the preview, click on the **Insert** button. This inserts a code such as `{youtube} {/youtube}` inside the article. Alternatively, if you know the YouTube video, you can manually insert this code.

5. Save the article and view the article from the site's frontend. This will show the video playing inside the article:



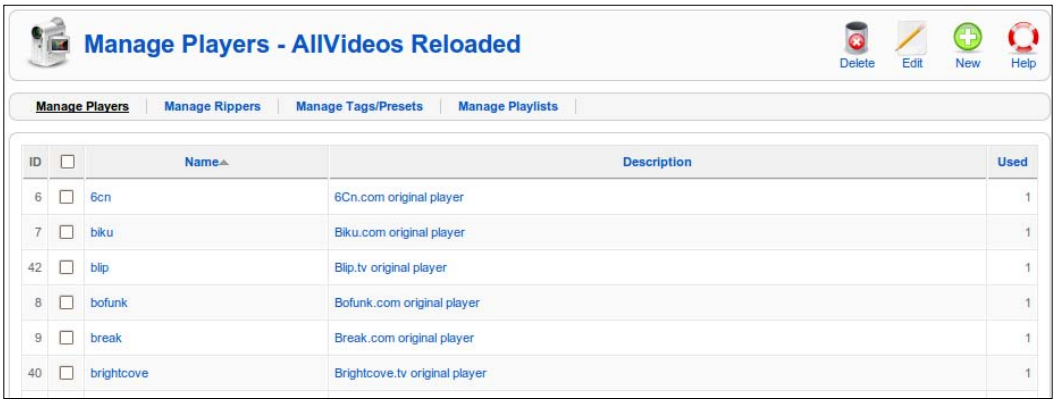
6. Similarly, you can also add any video from other services.

There's more...

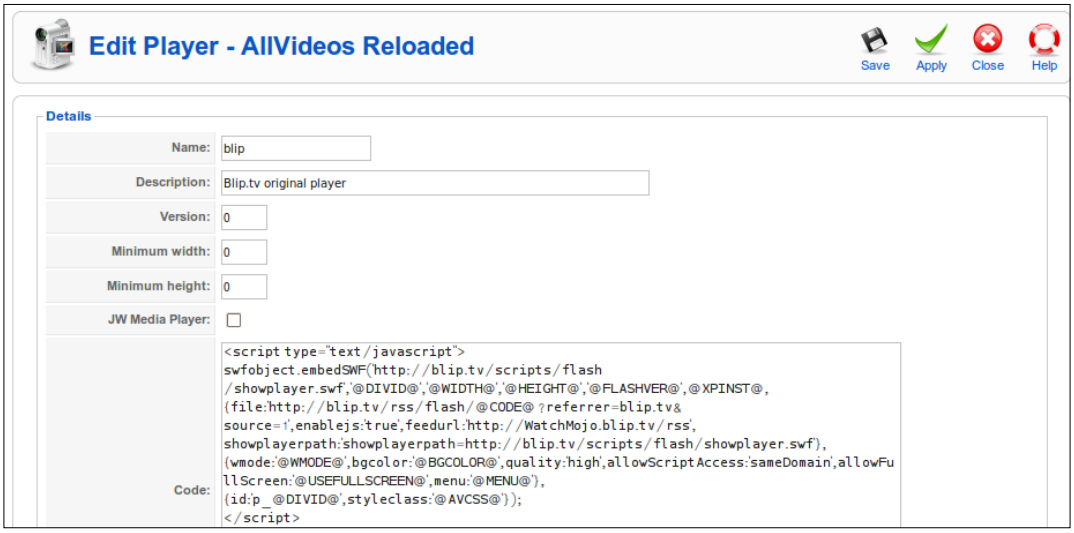
Although you can start using AllVideos Reloaded without any configuration, it allows you to configure many aspects. Besides showing videos from video-sharing services, it also allows you to display videos from your own web server. The following sections show you some advanced features of AllVideos Reloaded.

Managing players

There are many players configured for playing audio and video files. You can view these players by clicking on **Components** | **AllVideos Reloaded** | **Manage Players**. This shows the screen listing the available players.



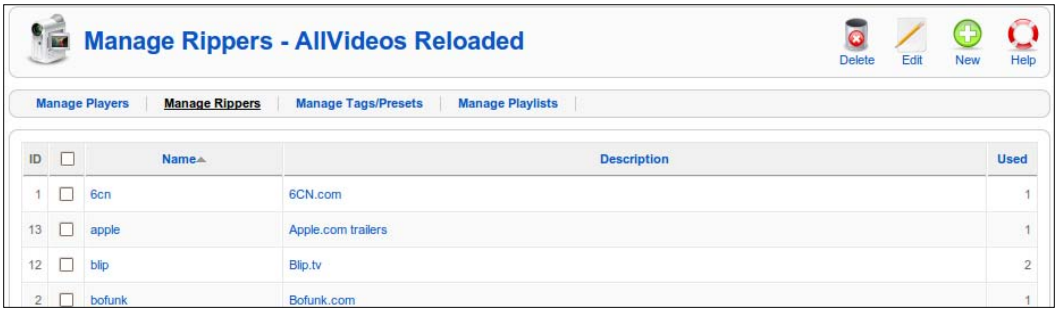
You can configure these players by clicking on the name of one of the players. This opens up the **Edit Player** screen for that player.



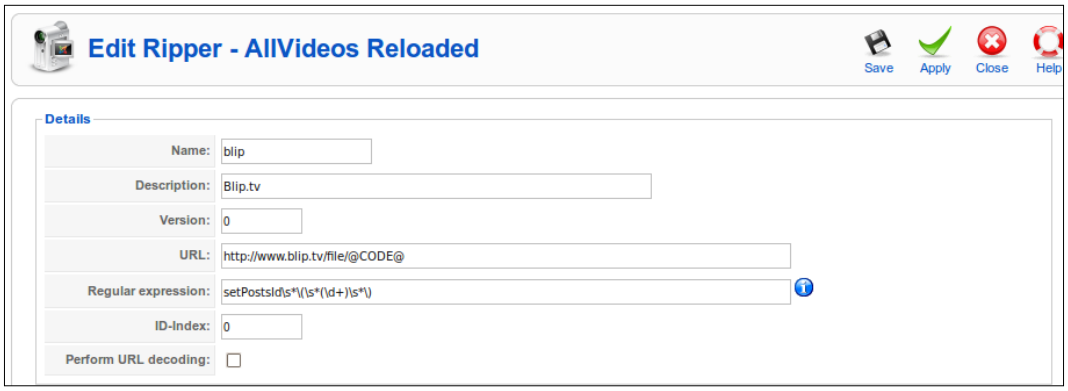
As you see, you can specify **Minimum width**, **Minimum height**, and the **Code** needed to embed and play videos from that service. The default code is fine, you should not change this without fully understanding what this means. If you want to delete a player, select that player and click on the **Delete** button in the **Manage Players** screen.

Ripping multimedia files

There are different rippers defined for different services. These rippers obtain the videos from the service, and also extract the video or file ID from a given URL. For viewing the existing rippers, click on **Components** | **AllVideos Reloaded** | **Manage Rippers**. This shows the **Manage Rippers** screen, listing all the defined rippers.



Click on a ripper name, for example **blip**, to see how this definition looks. It shows the **Edit Ripper** - **AllVideos Reloaded** screen:

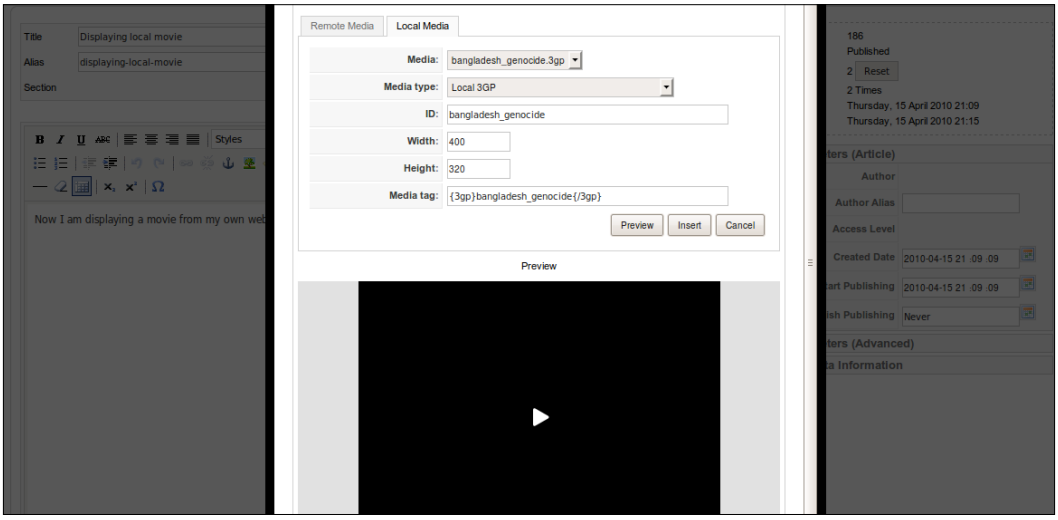


Note that the **URL** field specifies the URL from where the files will be ripped. The `@CODE@` variable is the file ID given by the user. Next, **Regular expression** provides a pattern that determines the file ID from the given URL.

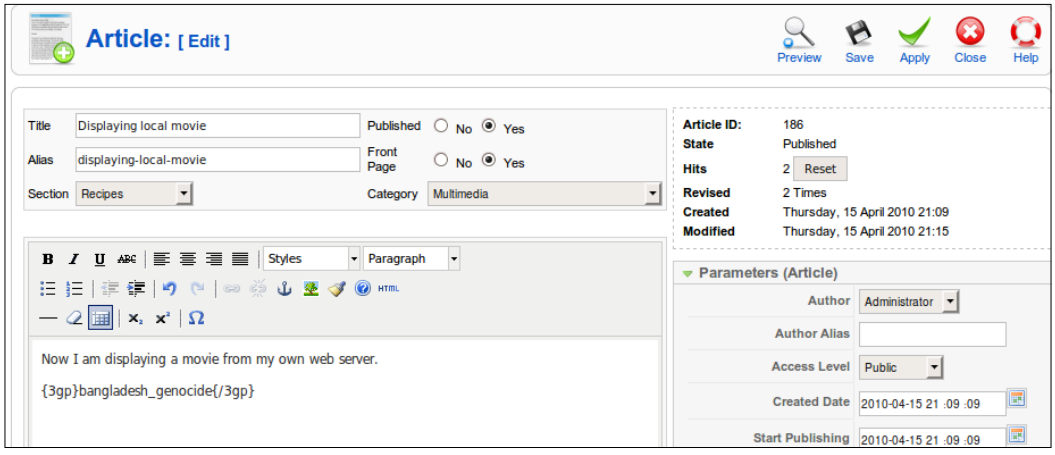
Like players, you can create new rippers and delete old rippers from the **Manage Rippers** screen.

Displaying videos from the local server

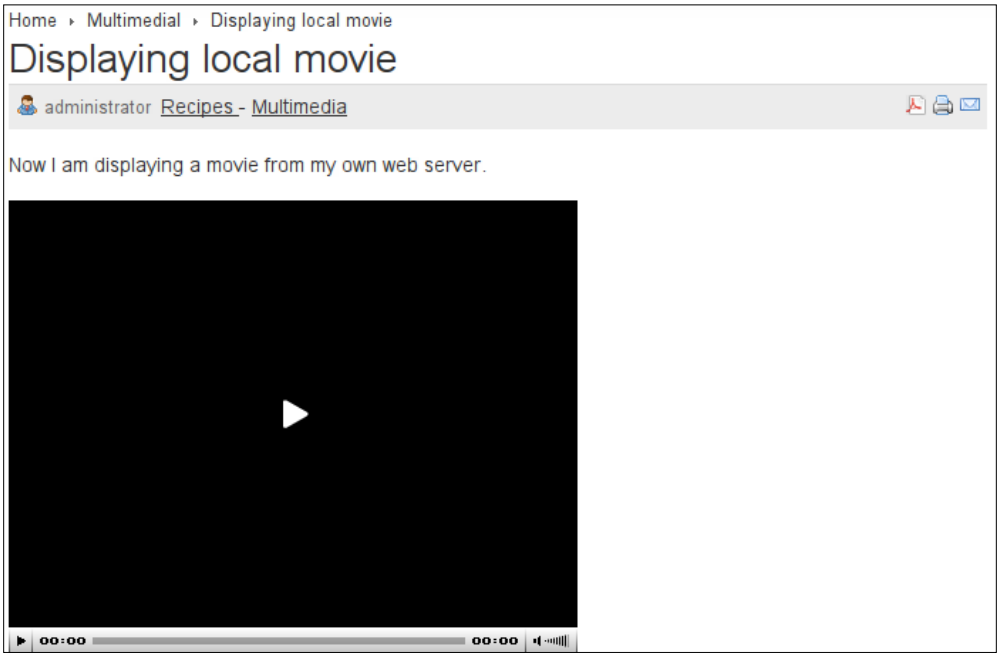
You can upload your audio files and videos to your web server and display them in articles. When we began to use AllVideos Reloaded, we created two subfolders—`audio` and `videos`—inside the `images/stories` folder. The chosen multimedia files must be uploaded to one of these folders. While writing the article, click on the **AVR Media** button and then click on the **Local Media** tab.



From the **Media** drop-down list, select a file. This automatically completes the other fields. Now click on the **Preview** button, and when satisfied with the preview, click on the **Insert** button. This inserts a code similar to the one shown in the following screenshot:



Now save the article and view it from the site's frontend. You'll see the video being displayed inside the article.



You can also add the code for displaying the file manually. For example, for displaying the `hello_dhaka.avi` file, you need to type `{avi}hello_dhaka{/avi}` inside the article.

Adding a simple Flash video player

Flash movies are popular on the web, and many sites need Flash video players. Flash video players can play many types of videos, including Flash videos (`.flv`). In this recipe, we are going to learn how to add a Flash video player to a Joomla! website.

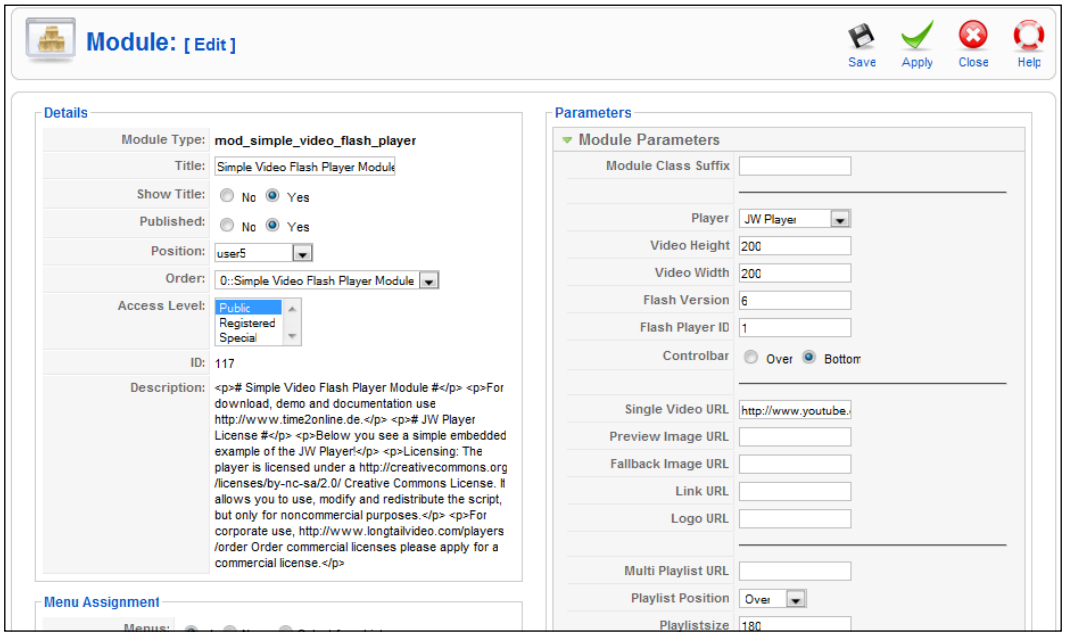
Getting ready...

Simple Video Flash Player is a popular module for viewing Flash videos. Download this module from `http://www.joomlaos.de/Joomla_CMS_Downloads/Joomla_Module/Simple_Video_Flash_Player.html`, and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

Once downloaded and installed, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager.** This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules. From the list, click on **Simple Video Flash Player**. This opens the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the Simple Video Flash Player module.



2. From the **Details** and **Menu Assignment** section, set the common settings for modules—provide a name for this module and publish this module in your preferred module position. The module-specific settings are in the **Parameters** section.
3. In the **Module Parameters** section, configure the following options:
   - **Player**: Select the player you want to use. There are three types of players: **JW Player**, **Mini Player**, and **Youtube Player**. Each of these players has a different look. The default player is **JW Player**. If you would like to use some other player, say **Youtube Player**, select it from the drop-down list.
   - **Video Width** and **Video Height**: Specify the width and height of the Flash video player. It does not need to be the size of the video you want to play.

- **Single Video URL**: When trying to play a single video, you can add the URL of that video to this field. For example, if you want to show a video from YouTube, add the URL of that video, that is, `http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=iS_sPFh9B30`. If you have uploaded the video to your web server, then specify the URL for that file.
- **Preview Image URL**: Specify the URL of the preview image for the video. It is better to provide a preview image than show nothing of the video. This preview image will be displayed until the video starts playing. The image can be in `.jpg`, `.gif`, or `.png` format.
- **Multi Playlist URL**: Instead of showing a single video, you can show videos from a playlist. The playlist should be in any of the formats supported, which were shown earlier. If the playlist is in an appropriate format, you can specify the URL of the playlist in this field. If you are showing videos from YouTube, then it is better to create a playlist with the chosen videos, and specify the URL of that playlist in this field.
- **Playlist Position**: Specify where to show the playlist. Available options are **Over**, **Right**, **Bottom**, and **None**. Select **None** to not show the playlist. If you select **Over**, then the playlist will be displayed over the video. Similarly, you can display the playlist to the right or at the bottom of the video.
- **Playlist size**: Specify the size of the playlist in pixels. The default size is **180** pixels.
- **Logo URL**: Specify the URL of the logo to be displayed with the video. This logo will be displayed in the top-right corner.
- **Link URL**: You can link the video to a specific page or site. Just enter the link URL to this field.
- **Autostart**: Select **Yes** to start playing the video after loading the page. Often, you may, not want to play the video automatically. In that case, select **No**.
- **Repeat**: If you want to repeat all videos—both single video and videos from the playlist—then select **Always** in this drop-down list. Selecting **List** will repeat the videos played from the playlist only. Select **None** to not repeat any videos.
- **Shuffle**: When playing videos from the playlist, the order the videos are played in can be shuffled. Select **Shuffle** from this drop-down list to enable this feature.

- **Flash Version**: Specify the Flash version needed to play the video. The default version is **6**, which is fine for most of the videos.
- **Flash Player ID**: Specify the Flash player's ID. This is to identify the Flash player and will be beneficial for scripting.

4. When done, select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
5. Preview the site's frontend and the video in the module will play, as shown in the following screenshot:



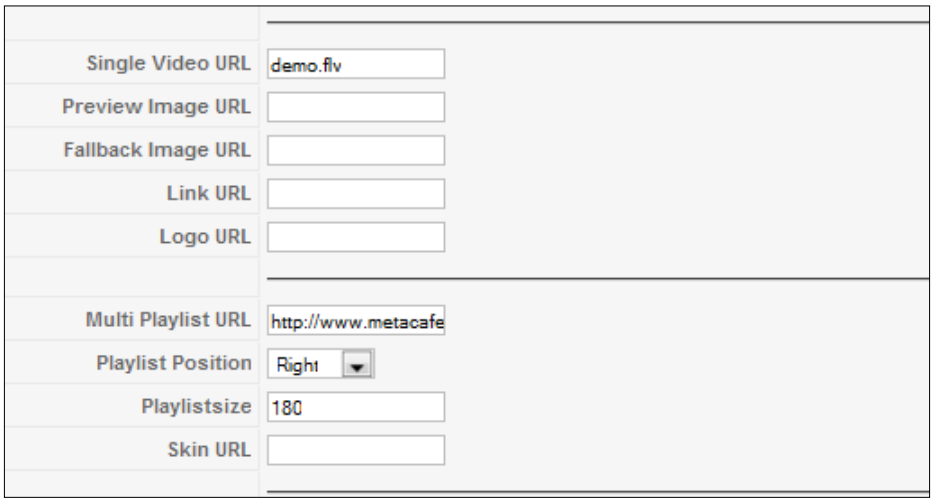
As you can see, the controls for playing the video are shown at the bottom of the player. You can choose to display these controls at the top.

There's more...

Besides showing a single video from a URL, this module can play several videos from a playlist. It also supports different types of videos that can help you show almost any kind of video through this module.

Now we have seen how to use YouTube videos on our site, let us try another video-sharing site, `http://www.metacafe.com/`. For adding a playlist, carry out the following steps:

1. Go to Metacafe and search with the keywords 'Nursery Rhymes'. You will get a big list of videos with these two keywords. On the toolbar, you will see the RSS icon. Simply copy the URL link for this RSS icon. Then paste the URL at the **Multi Playlist URL** field on the **Module: [Edit]** screen. You will get a URL like `http://www.metacafe.com/tags/nursery_rhymes/rss.xml`.



2. Select **Right** in the **Playlist position** drop-down list and click on the **Save** button to save and publish the module.
3. Preview the site's frontend and you will see the **Simple Flash Video Player**, as shown in the following screenshot.



As you can see, the playlist is shown on the right-hand side of the player. You can scroll down and click on any video icon to play that video. You can show this playlist at the bottom by selecting **Bottom** in the **Playlist position** field and adjusting the value in the **Playlist size** field. You can experiment with the size and position of the playlist and adjust the size.



You can also create your own media + RSS file. For a good tutorial, please visit `http://developer.truveo.com/DirectorDocumentation.php`. For a reference on using media + RSS XML files, please refer to `http://search.yahoo.com/mrss/`.

Adding an MP3 browser to your Joomla! site

There are several extensions for Joomla!, through which you can embed Flash-based MP3 players in your Joomla! site. Embedding such MP3 players allow visitors to play MP3 songs on your site. Some extensions allow you to upload and build MP3 collections. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to add an MP3 browser to a Joomla! site so that visitors can select and play MP3 music on the site.

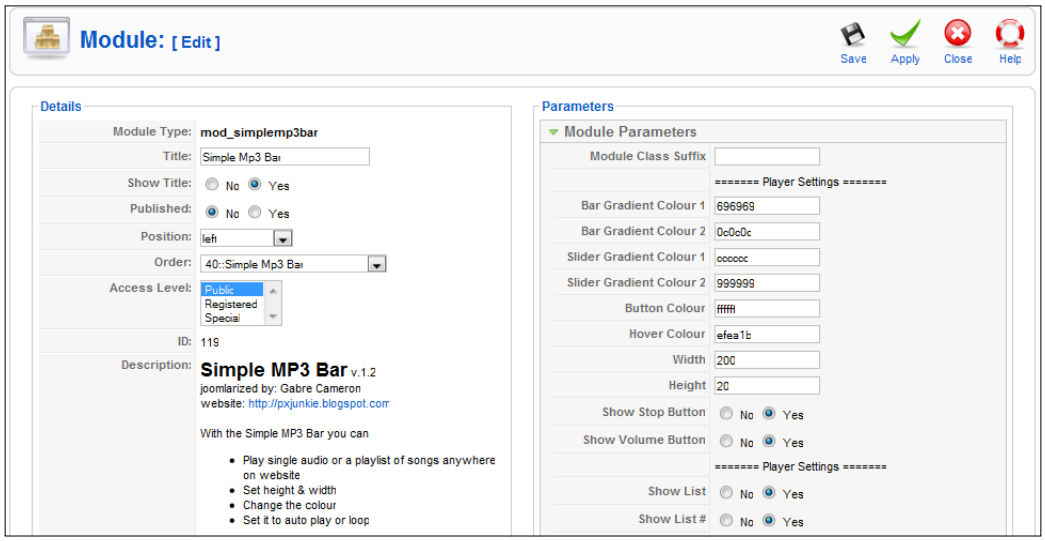
Getting ready...

Simple MP3 Bar is a simple module that can display a Flash MP3 player on your site, and can play one or more MP3 files from a specified folder on your web server. Download this module from `http://code.google.com/p/simple-mp3-bar/downloads/list` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

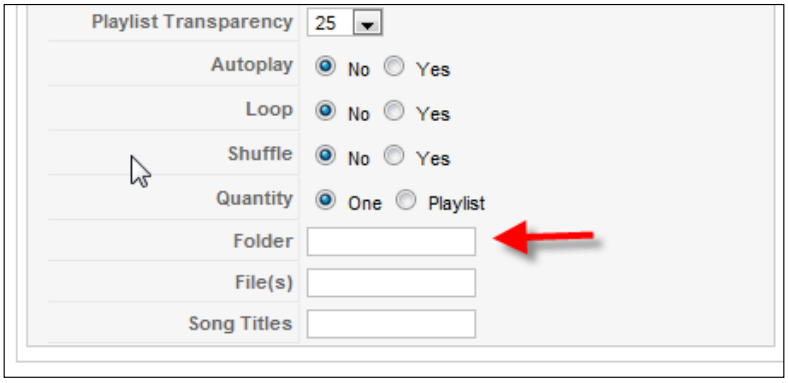
Once downloaded and installed, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager.** This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules. From the list of modules, click on the **Simple MP3 Bar** module. This opens up the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the **Simple MP3 Bar** module.

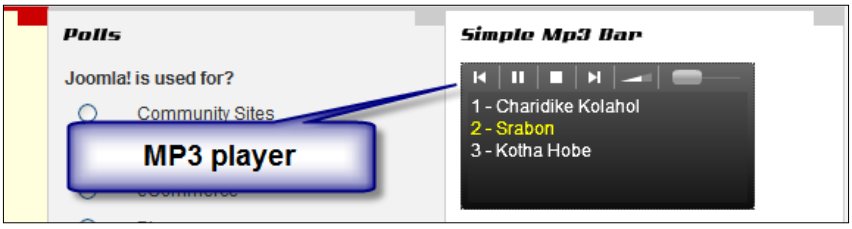


2. In the **Details** section, provide a title for the module, enable the module, and select the position and order of display for the module.

3. From the **Parameters** section, accept the defaults. From this section, among other settings, you can specify **Gradient Colour**, **Button Colour**, **Width**, and **Height** of the Flash MP3 player. You can also specify whether the stop and volume buttons will be shown or not, whether autoplay will be enabled or not, whether looping will be enabled or not, and so on. An important setting in this section relates to whether the player will play a single file or play from a playlist.
4. In the **Parameters** section, specify the path for the folder from where the MP3 files will be played. You need to upload your MP3 files in this folder. For example, if you keep the MP3 files in the `/images/songs` folder, then type this path in the **Folder** field. In the **File(s)** field, type the name of the MP3 files you want to play. This list may contain multiple names separated by commas (,). If you would like to display the song titles, you can type a comma-separated list in the **Song Titles** field.



5. When you have finished configuring, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
6. Preview the site's frontend and the module will appear as in the following screenshot:



7. The limitation of this module is that you don't get an interface for uploading the MP3 file to the designated folder. You have to upload using other methods, such as FTP. You can also use Joomla! Media Manager for uploading MP3 files to the `images/songs` folder. However, you need to add a `.mp3` extension in the **Legal Extensions (File Types)** field in the **Site** | **Global Configuration** | **System** screen**.** Also, you may need to set a suitable value for the maximum file upload size to allow the MP3 files to be uploaded.

10
Building a Directory and Documentation

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Creating an alphabetical list of your sections, categories, and articles
- Building a Yellow Pages-like directory
- Building a document repository
- Adding an attachment to an article

Introduction

Directories are an important part of web-based applications. For example, you may need to build a directory of publishers who publish books on computers, or you may like to build a software repository from where users can download software or other documents. In Joomla!, you can add these applications by installing readily available extensions.

An alphabetical list of sections, categories, and articles can be built using the AlphaContent extension. Similarly, you can build a more advanced Yellow Pages-like directory (see `http://www.indiayellowpagesonline.com/`) using SOBI2. One of the greatest functions of SOBI2 is that you can add custom fields to it.

Later, we will learn about building a document repository using DOCman 1.4. In this chapter, we will discuss how to use DOCman to build a document repository.

Besides building a document repository, sometimes you may need to upload one or two documents and attach those to an article. Adding a file as an attachment to an article can be accomplished by using a simple plugin called Add Attachments.

Creating an alphabetical list of your sections, categories, and articles

I hope you have already seen Yahoo!-like directories, where content is listed in alphabetical groups and orders. This type of alphabetical listing of content on a Joomla! site will be useful when your site contains hundreds of articles. In this recipe, you will learn how to create an alphabetical list of sections, categories, and articles in a Joomla!-based website.

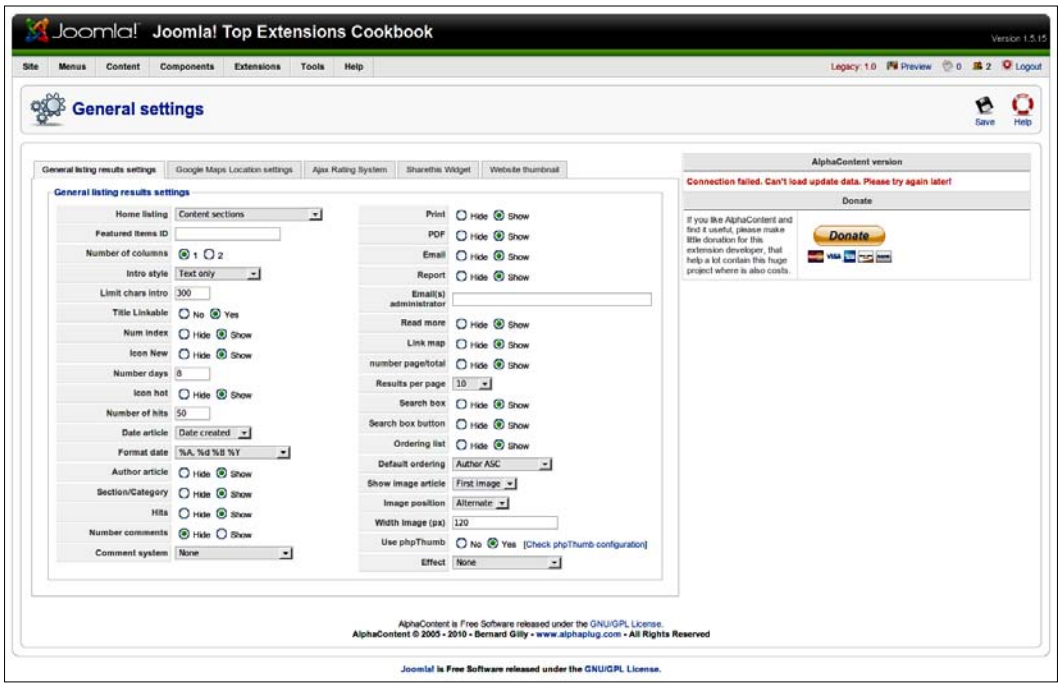
Getting ready...

AlphaContent is a popular extension for showing an alphabetical list of sections, categories, and articles. Download this component from `http://www.alphaplug.com/index.php/downloads.html?func=fileinfo&id=1` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

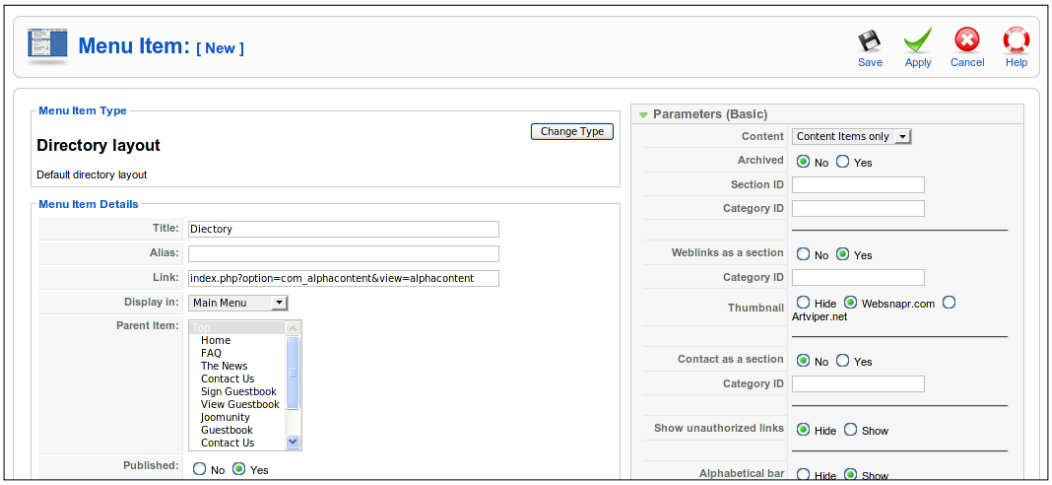
How to do it...

After installation, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | AlphaContent**. This shows the **General settings** screen.

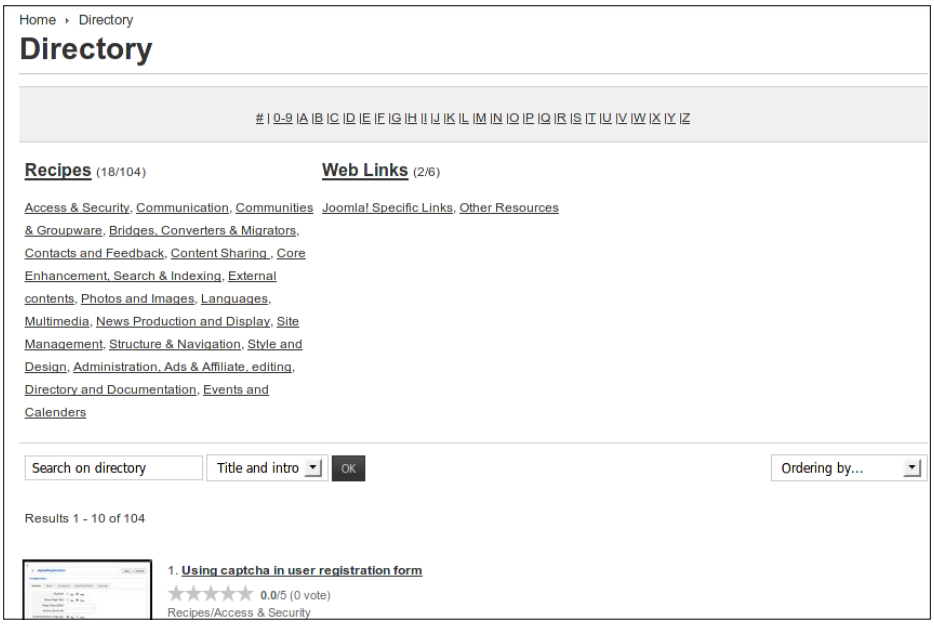


2. In the **General listing results settings** tab, select **Content sections**. Keep the other fields unchanged. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Click on **Menus | Main Menu**. This shows the **Menu Item Manager: [mainmenu]** screen. Click on the **New** button and this will show the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. In the **Select Menu Item Type** section, click on **AlphaContent** and then **Directory Layout**. This will show the **Menu Item: [New]** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



4. Type a menu title in the **Title** field, select **Main Menu** in the **Display in** drop-down list, and select **Yes** in the **Published** field. Keep the defaults in the **Parameters (Basic)** section and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

Preview the site's frontend and you will see the menu item in **Main Menu**. Click the menu item and you will see a directory listing, as shown in the following screenshot:



First you will see the **Sections**. Under it are categories listed in alphabetical order. Clicking a category will show articles in that category.

There's more...

The AlphaContent component has some other features that can be configured by selecting **Components | AlphaContent**. You can add a Google Maps location, Ajax rating system, Share This widget, and Website thumbnails. For each service, you will need to get an API or code and configure them in their respective tabs.

You can also configure the display of AlphaContent from the Parameters section, when creating a menu item using the AlphaContent component.

Building a Yellow Pages-like directory

You must have already seen the Yellow Pages or telephone directories. You can build such directories in Joomla! without much hassle. In this recipe, we will see how to build a Yellow Pages-like directory in Joomla!.

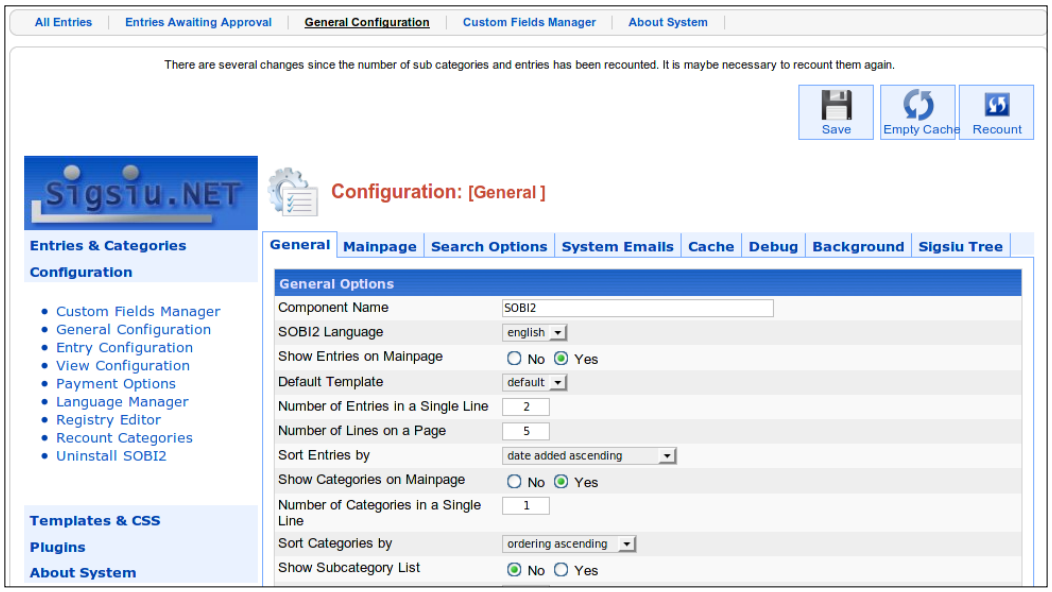
Getting ready...

SOBI2 is a popular extension for building directory applications in Joomla!. It allows you to add custom fields and publish information as you want it to appear. It has some advanced features for example it can show information only to paid members, and can also show locations in a Google map. This extension is freely available for download. Download it from `http://www.sigsiu.net/download/components/sigsiu_online_business_index_2.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

How to do it...

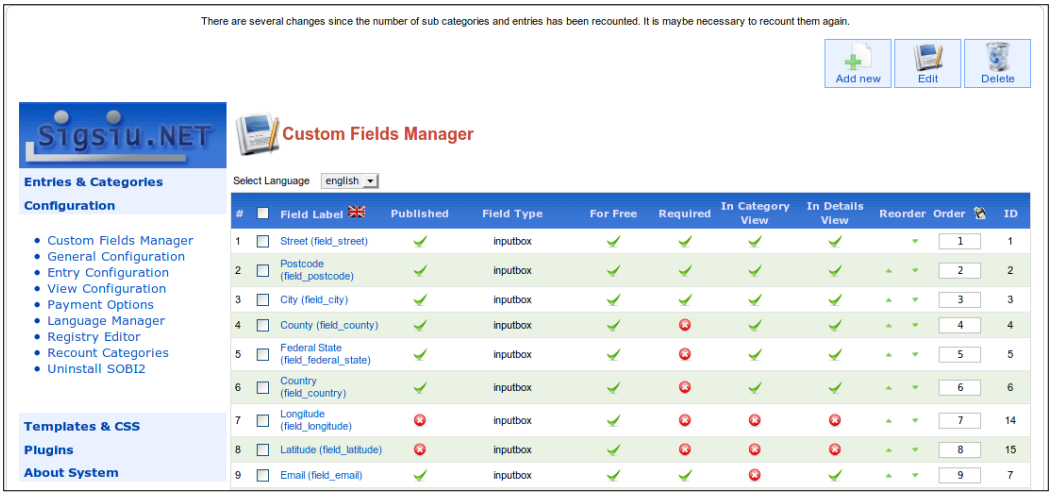
After installation, carry out the following steps to build a directory:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | SOBI2 | General Configuration**. This shows the SOBI2 configuration screen.

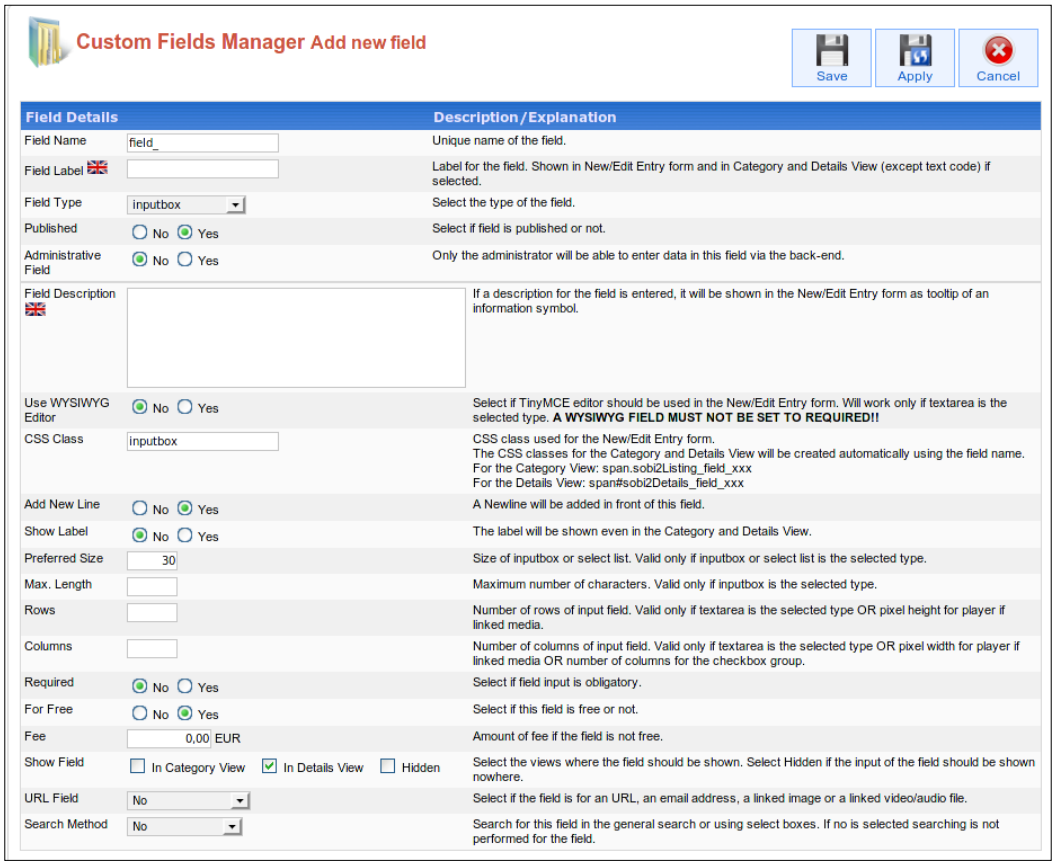


2. From the **Configuration: [General]** screen, type a title for the component in the **Component Name** field. From the **Mainpage** tab, select **Yes** to show a description, and type a description in the **Description of Component** field. When finished, click on the **Save** button.

3. Click on the **Custom Fields Manager**. This will show the **Custom Fields Manager** screen, listing all the custom fields made in SOBI2.

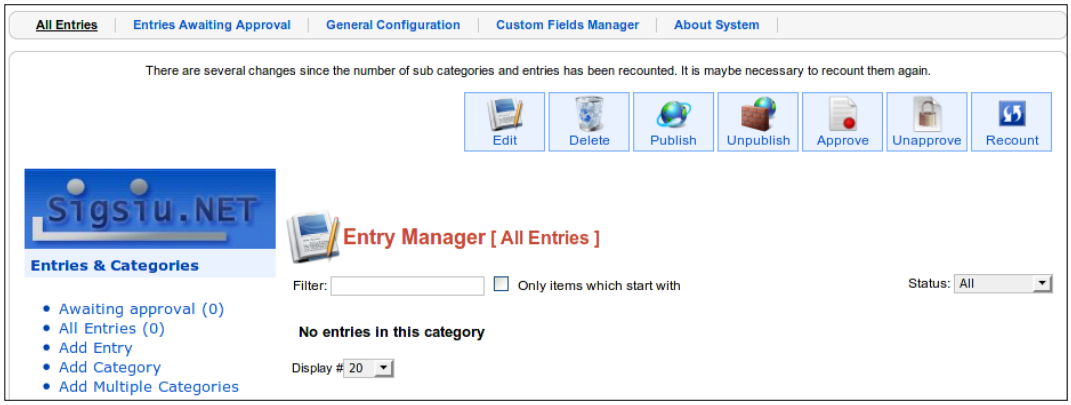


4. For adding a new custom field, click on the **Add new** button. This shows the **Custom Fields Manager Add new field** screen.

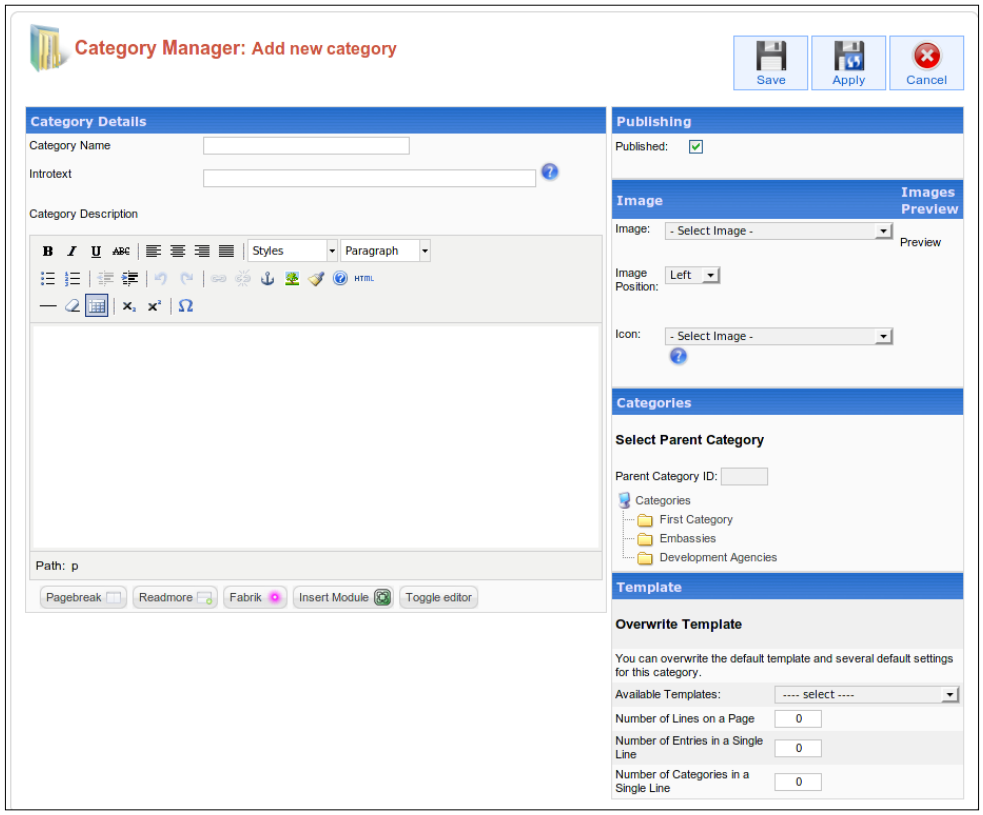


Type a field name and field label. Then select **Field Type** from the drop-down list. You can choose **inputbox**, **textarea**, **select list**, **checkbox**, **checkbox group**, **text code**, or **calendar**. Then select **Yes** in the **Published** box. You can choose **Yes** in the **Administrative Field** to make that field accessible only to the administrator. Add a description to the field in the **Field Description** box. For the text area, choose **Yes** in the **Use WYSIWYG Editor** field. You can select the field as **Required** or **For Free**. If you want to charge a fee for displaying information in that field, select **No** in the **For Free** field and type a fee amount in the **Fee** field. Click on the **Save** button to save the field. Repeat this step to create as many fields as you want.

5. Now click on the **All Entries** link and this will show the **Entry Manager [All Entries]** screen.

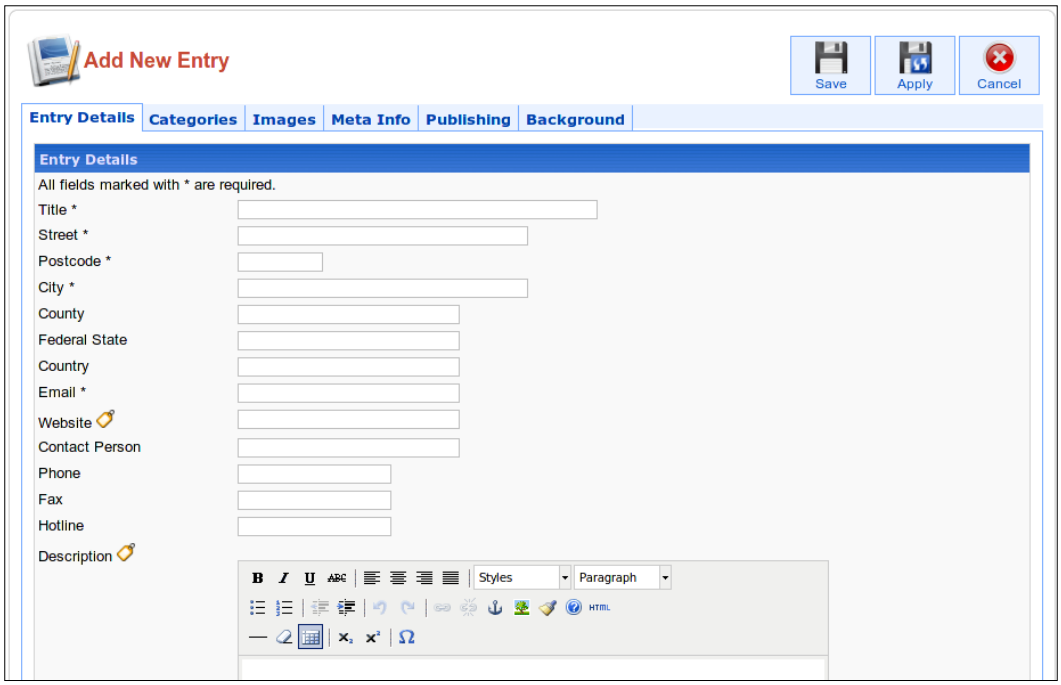


6. Click on the **Add Category** link, which will show the **Category Manager: Add new category** screen.

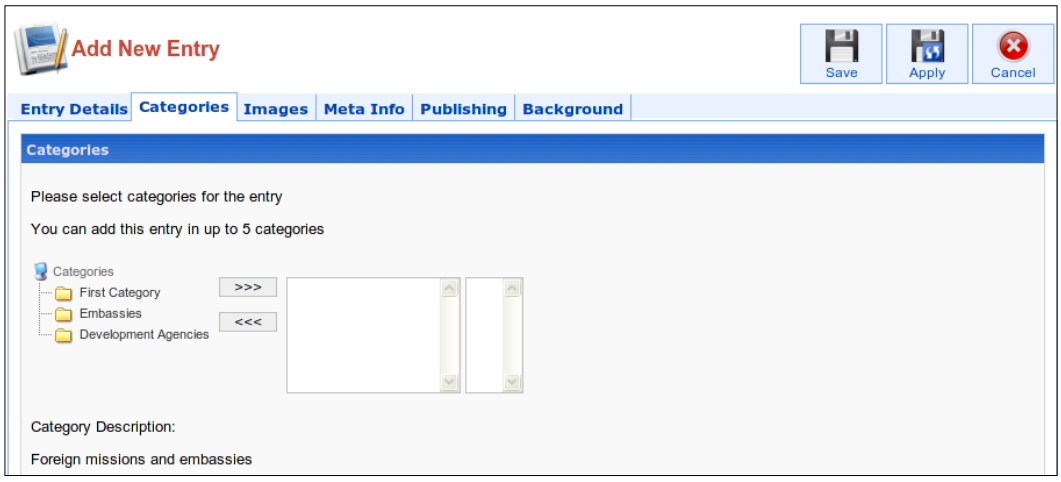


7. Insert the **Category Name**, **Introtext**, and **Category Description**. Then check the **Published** checkbox. Select an image for the category from the **Image** drop-down list. From the **Categories** tree select a parent category, if necessary. You can also override a template by selecting a template from the **Available Templates** drop-down list. Finally, click on the **Save** button to save the category information. Repeat this step to create as many categories as you need.

8. After adding the categories, click on the **Add Entry** link. This will show the **Add New Entry** screen.



9. On the **Entry Details** tab, you will find the fields you have created. Fill in the fields with the appropriate information and click on the **Categories** tab.



10. From the category tree, select a category and click on the **>>>** icon to add this category to the listing item. Then click on the **Images** tab.



11. Select a logo image for the entry and an image for the icon. Then click on the **Meta Info** tab. Add a META description and META keywords for the entry and click on the **Publishing** tab.



12. In the **Publishing** tab, check the **Published** and **Approved** checkboxes and click on the **Background** tab.



13. In the **Background** tab, select a background image for that entry and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. This will show the **Entry Manager [All Entries]** screen with the entries you have added.

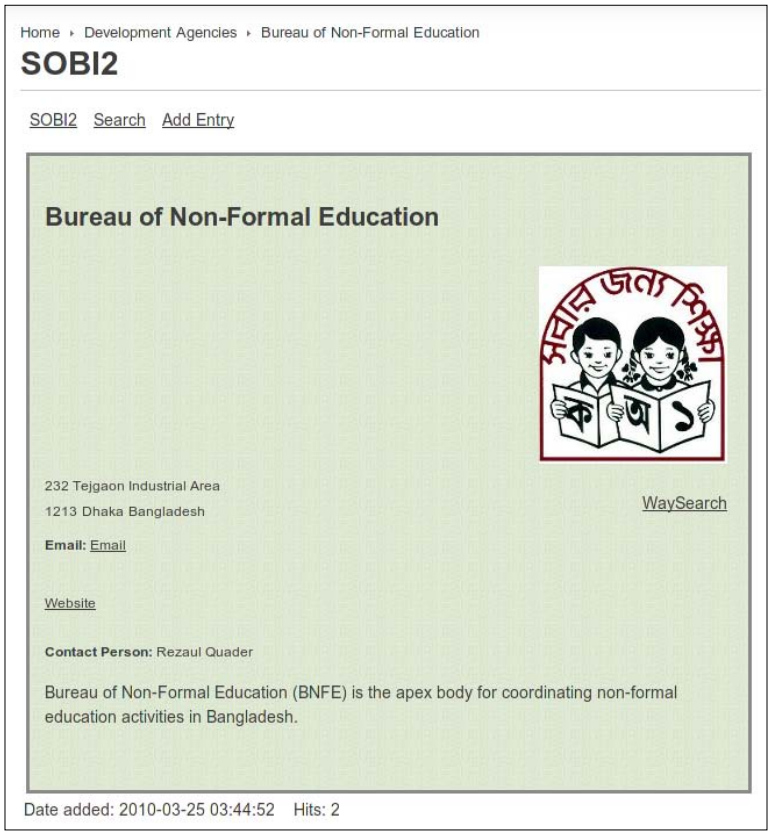


14. Select **Menus | Main Menu** and create a menu item linking to the SOBI2 component [the Latest entries].

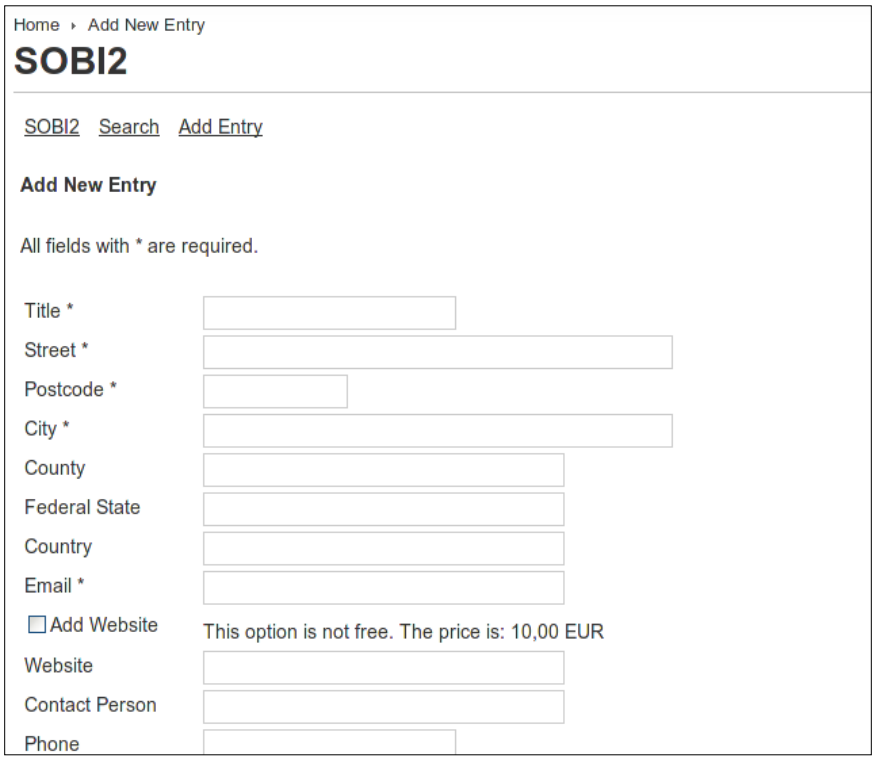
Preview the site's frontend and click on the menu item you have added. This will display the list of entries, as shown in the following screenshot:



Click on the item and it will show the details of the entry:



If you have already logged in as a frontend user, click on the **Add Entry** link, this will show the **Add New Entry** form.



A logged-in user can fill in the form and submit a new entry. Note the **Add Website** field, which indicates that the field is a paid field. The information will be added after your payment.

Building a document repository

If you want to share files through your site or want to provide downloads, you need to build a document repository. There are many document management systems or repository extensions for Joomla!, and you can use any one of them. In this recipe, we will learn how to build a document repository for Joomla! using the DOCman extension.

Getting ready...

DOCMan is a popular extension for Joomla! that helps you build a fully functional and extensive document repository. Download DOCman 1.4 from `http://www.joomlatools.eu/docman-14/doc_download/1-docman-v140stable.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen. Note that DOCMan 1.4 is a Joomla! 1.5 Legacy extension, which means that you need to enable the **System – Legacy** plugin from the **Extensions | Plugin Manager** screen before trying to install the component.

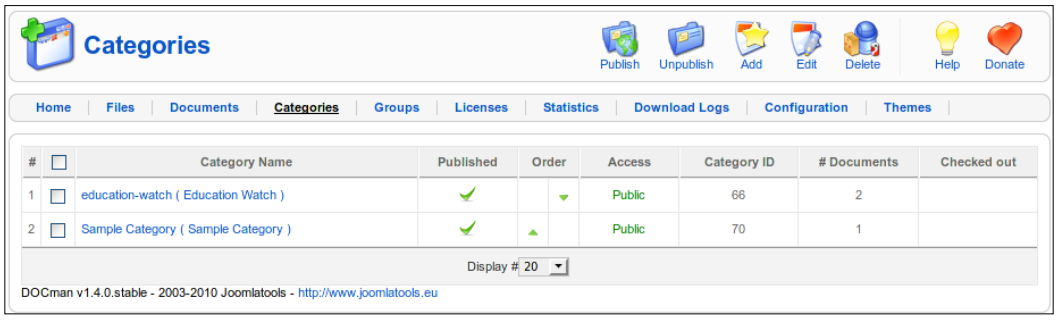
How to do it...

After installation, carry out the following steps to build the document repository:

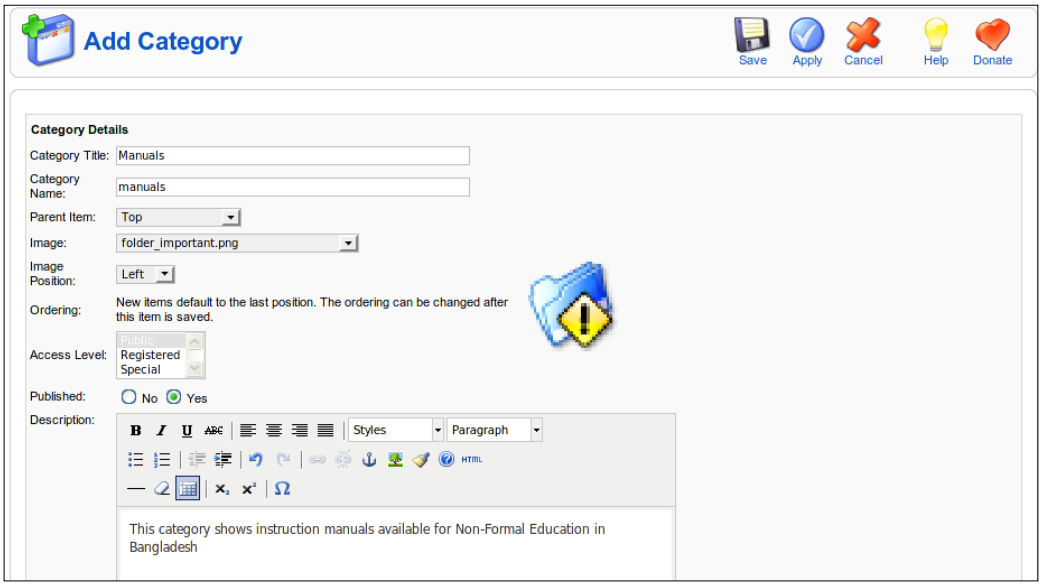
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | DOCman**. This will show the DOCman control panel.



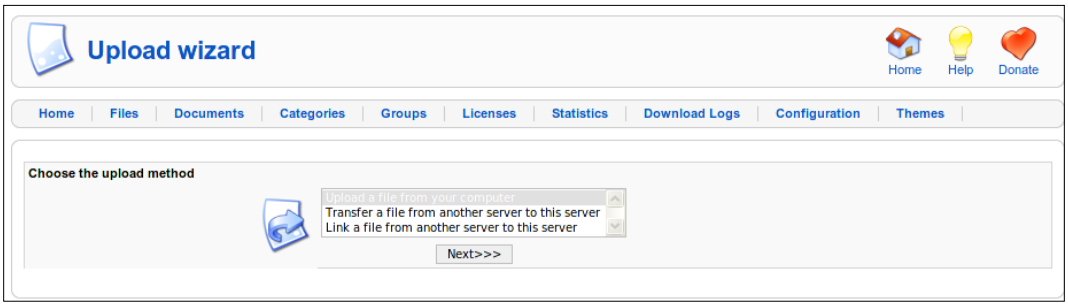
2. Click on the **Categories** icon. This will show the **Categories** screen, listing the available categories.



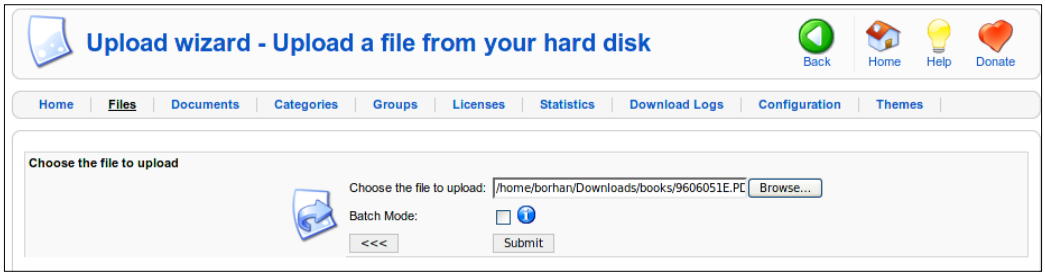
3. Click on the **Add** button and this shows the **Add Category** screen.



4. In the **Add Category** screen, type **Category Name**, provide a title for the category, select an image and its position, **Ordering**, **Access Level**, and **Description**. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. Repeat the step for creating more categories, if required.
5. Click on **Files**. This shows the **Files** screen, listing the files uploaded to the repository. Click on the **Upload** button to upload a new file. This starts the **Upload wizard**.



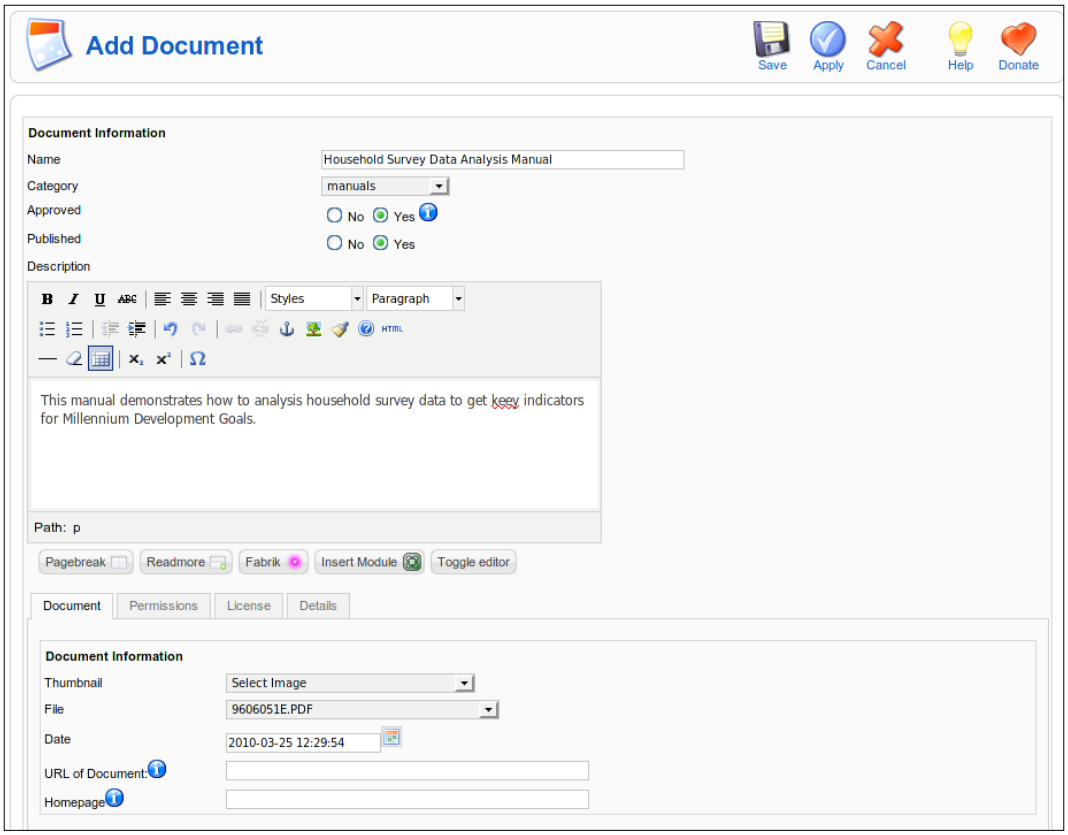
6. From the **Choose the upload method** step, select **Upload a file from your computer**. You can select **Transfer a file from another server to this server**, or **Link a file from another server to this server**, if the file already resides on a web server and is publicly available. Click on the **Next>>>** button, this will show you the **Upload wizard – Upload a file from your hard disk** screen.



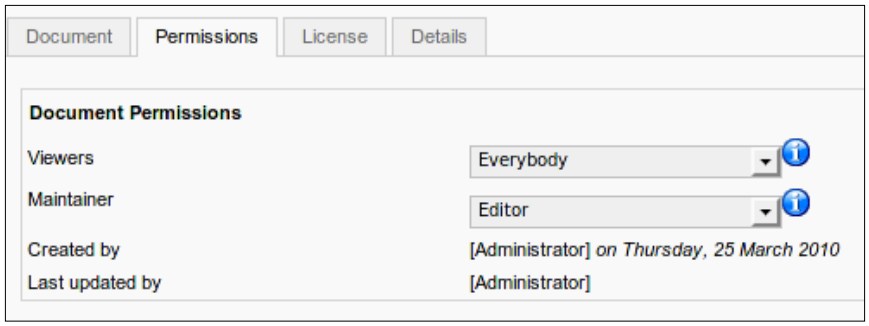
7. Click on the **Browse...** button and select the file you want to upload. Then click on the **Submit** button. The progress of the upload will be displayed. On completion, you will see the following success message:



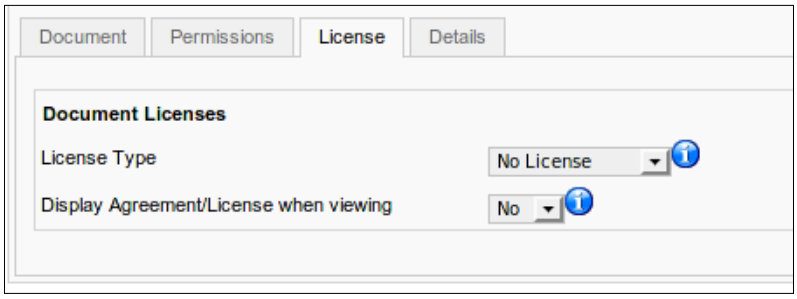
8. Click on **Display Files** and you will see the list of uploaded files on the **Files** screen. Click on the **New Doc** icon to create a document. This will show the **Add Document** screen.



In the **Add Document** screen, type the name of the document, select a category, select **Yes** in both the **Approved** and **Published** fields, and type a description of the document. In the **Document** tab, choose a thumbnail for the document (optional) and choose the file from the **File** drop-down list. You will see the list of files uploaded to the server. If it is a linked document, select **>>>LINKED DOCUMENT<<<** in the **File** drop-down list, and type the URL of that document in the **URL of Document** field. From the **Permissions** tab, select who can view and who can maintain the document.

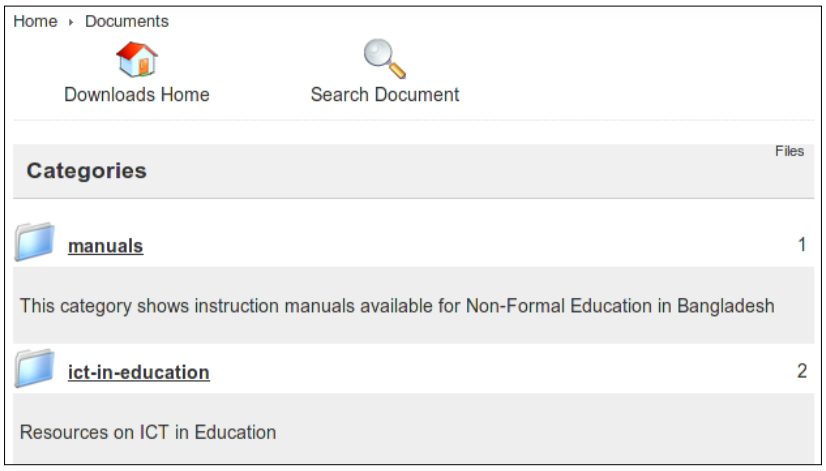


9. From the **License** tab, select the license you want to show for this document.

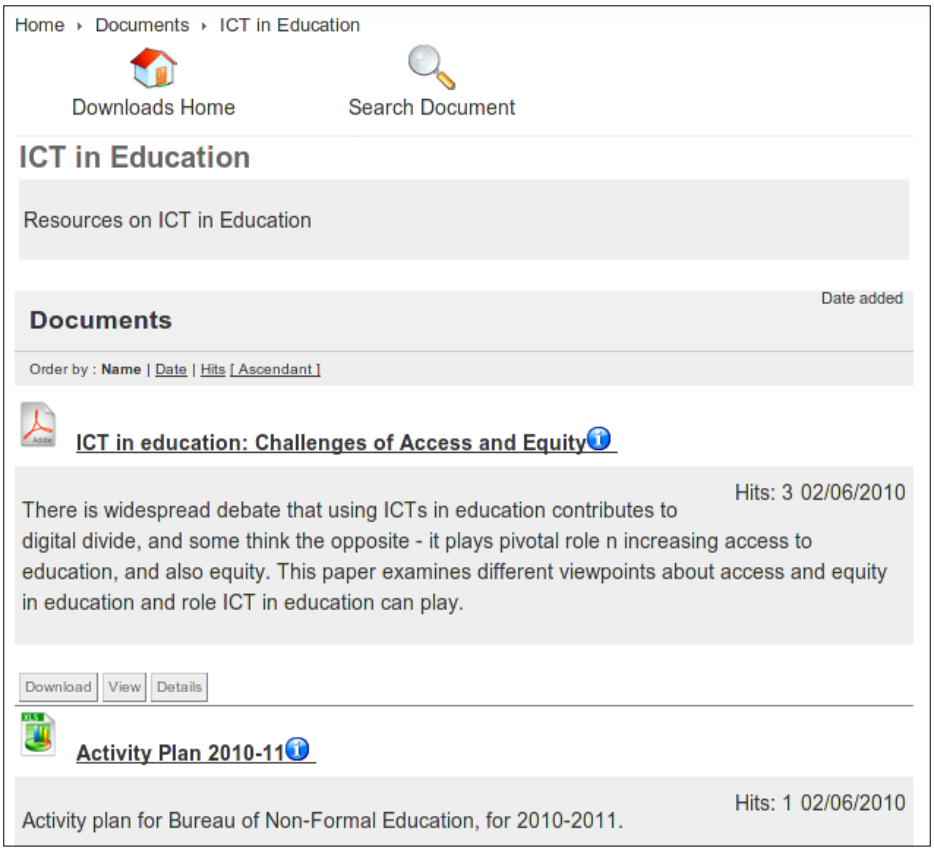


10. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
11. From **Menus | Main Menu**, create a menu item named **Documents** linking to the DOCman component.

Preview the site and click on the **Documents** link in the **Main Menu**. This shows the categories in the document repository.



Click on a category, such as, ICT-in-Education, and you will see the list of documents in that category.



Note that the appropriate icons are displayed based on their file types. You can view the file by clicking on the **View** button, download it by clicking on the **Download** button, or view the details by clicking on the **Details** button.

There's more...

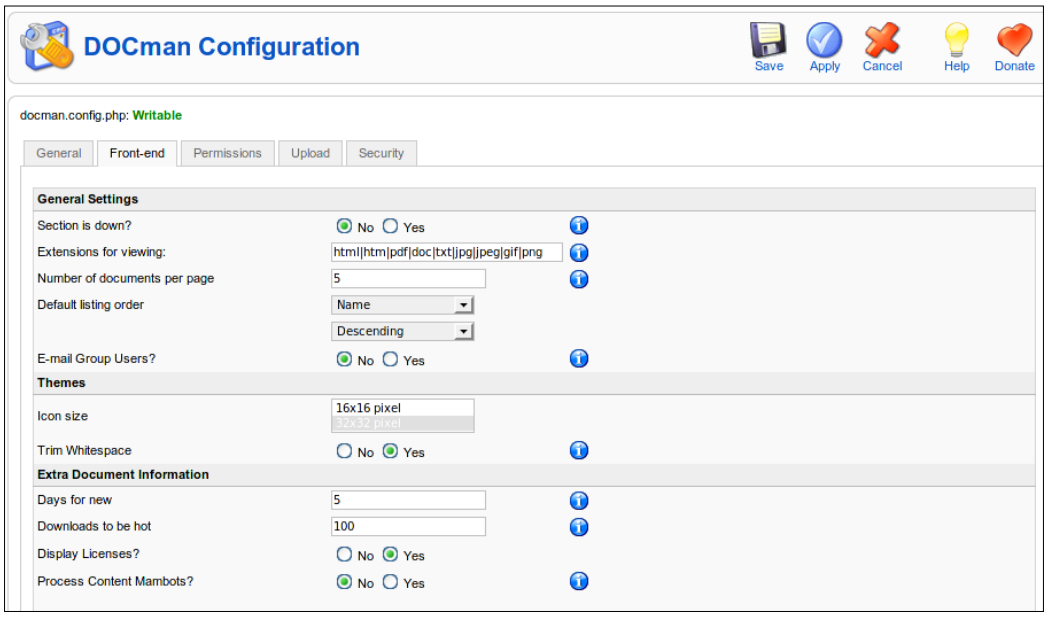
DOCman has many features and you can configure it to suit your needs. Many extensions exist for DOCMan. In the following sections, we are going to learn about some of the more advanced features of DOCman.

Configuring DOCman

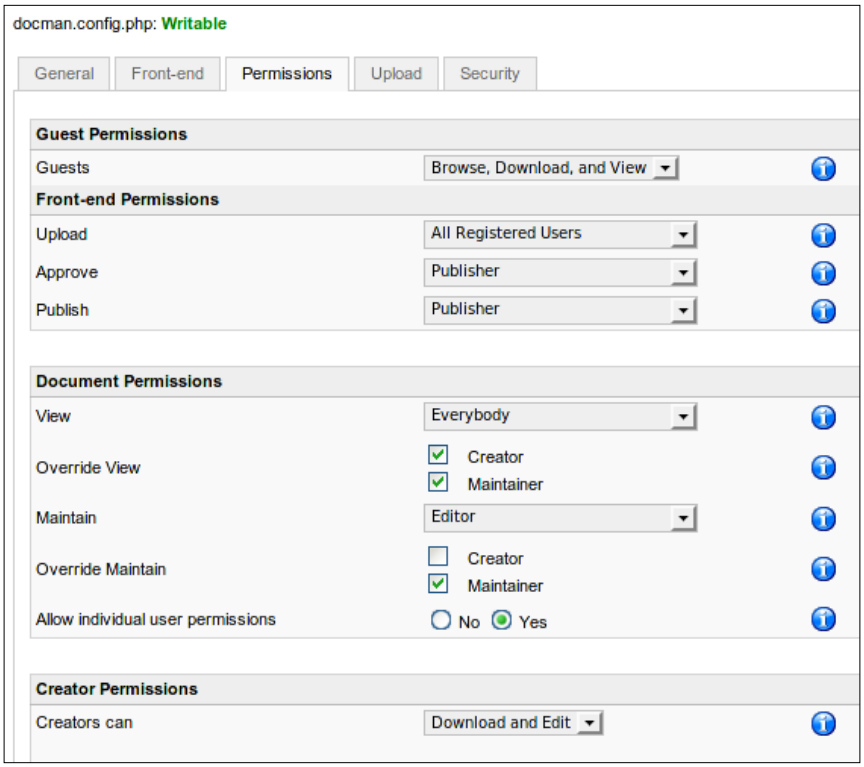
For configuring DOCman, click on **Components | DOCman | Configuration**. This will show the **DOCman Configuration** screen.



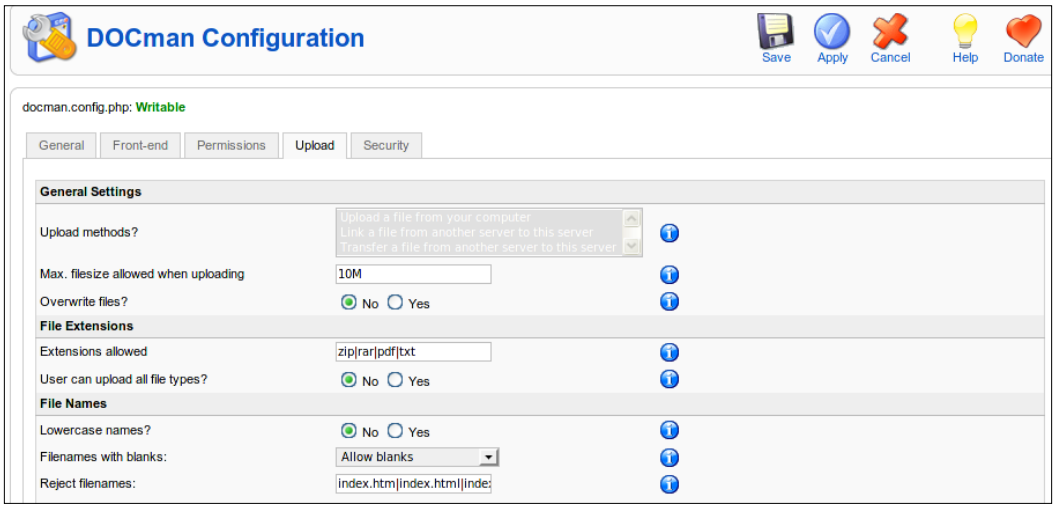
From the **General** tab, you can specify the path to store uploaded files. You can change this path to other directories, but the directory must be writable by the web server process.



From the **Front-end** tab, you can configure the extensions for viewing files (not all files are viewable), the number of documents per page, ordering, the icon size, the threshold for considering new and hot, and whether to display the license or not.



From the **Permissions** tab, you can configure what guests can do, what frontend users can do, and the permissions for the documents. These are the defaults for all documents added to the repository.



From the **Upload** tab you can specify the upload methods, maximum upload file size, and overwriting option. Not all files can be uploaded. You can allow files to be uploaded by adding their extensions in the **Extensions allowed** field. You can also define how file naming will be used. You can change the filenames to lowercase, strip the blanks, and reject certain names.

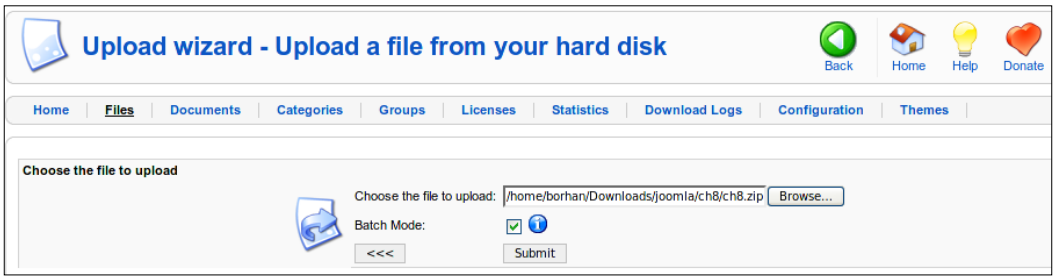


From the **Security** tab, you can activate an anti-leech system, specify the allowed hosts, view logs, and hide remote links.

Uploading multiple files to your document library

By this time, you may have found that uploading files one at a time, and adding documents, is time consuming. You may need to upload multiple files at once. You can do this by using **batch mode**. Carry out the following steps:

1. Make a ZIP archive with the files you want to upload.
2. From the DOCman control panel, click on **New File**. This will start the **Upload Wizard**.
3. Select **Upload a file from your computer** and click on the **Next>>>** button. This will show the **Upload wizard - Upload a file from your hard disk** screen.



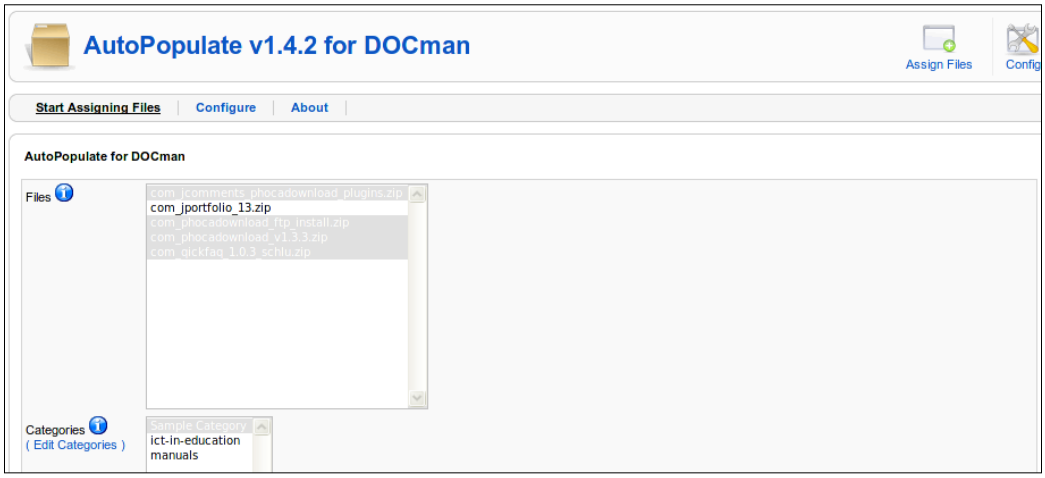
4. Click on the **Browse...** button and select the ZIP archive. Check the **Batch Mode** checkbox and click on the **Submit** button. This will upload the files, extract them inside the archive, and show a success message.

Once uploaded, you can add documents using these files.

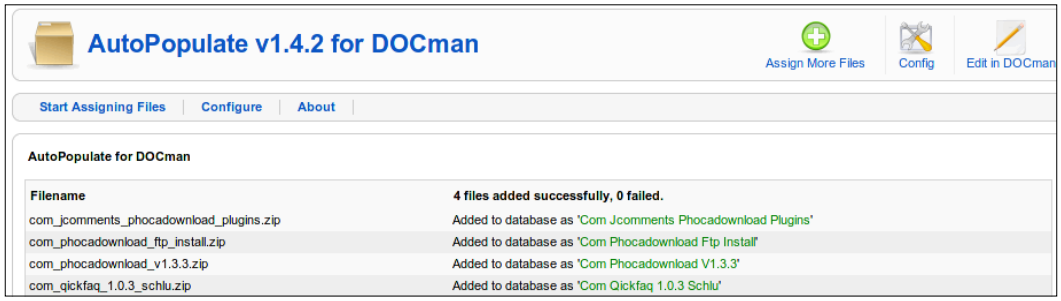
Adding documents for uploaded files

After uploading files to the document repository, you need to create a document for these files. Creating documents for multiple files can be automated using AutoPopulate for the DOCman 1.4 extension. Download this extension from `http://www.joomlatools.eu/docman-14/doc_download/46-autopopulate-v142.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen. Then carry out the following steps:

1. Click on **Components | AutoPopulate for DOCman | Start Assigning Files**. This shows the following screen, with the files in the document repository directory:



2. Select the files, category, and click on the **Assign Files** button on the toolbar. This will show the following screen with the results:

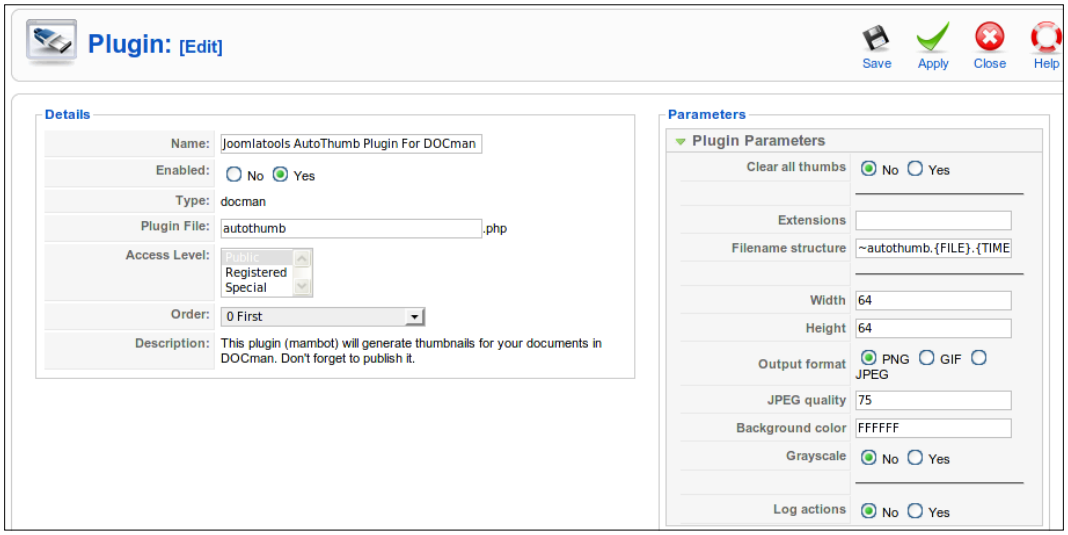


3. Note that document names are generated from filenames, stripping out the underscores and adding spaces. You may need to edit these entries further. You can also set the default category, description, and so on by clicking on the **Config** button in the toolbar.

Automatically generating thumbnails for uploaded documents

Thumbnails for documents are displayed in the document listing. You can create thumbnails manually or use AutoThumb for the DOCman 1.4 plugin. Download it from `http://www.joomlatools.eu/docman-14/cat_view/8-docman/11-add-ons.html` and install it from **Extensions | Install/Uninstall**. Then carry out the following steps:

1. Click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager**, listing the installed plugins. Click on **Joomlatools AutoThumb Plugin For DOCman**, and this will show the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



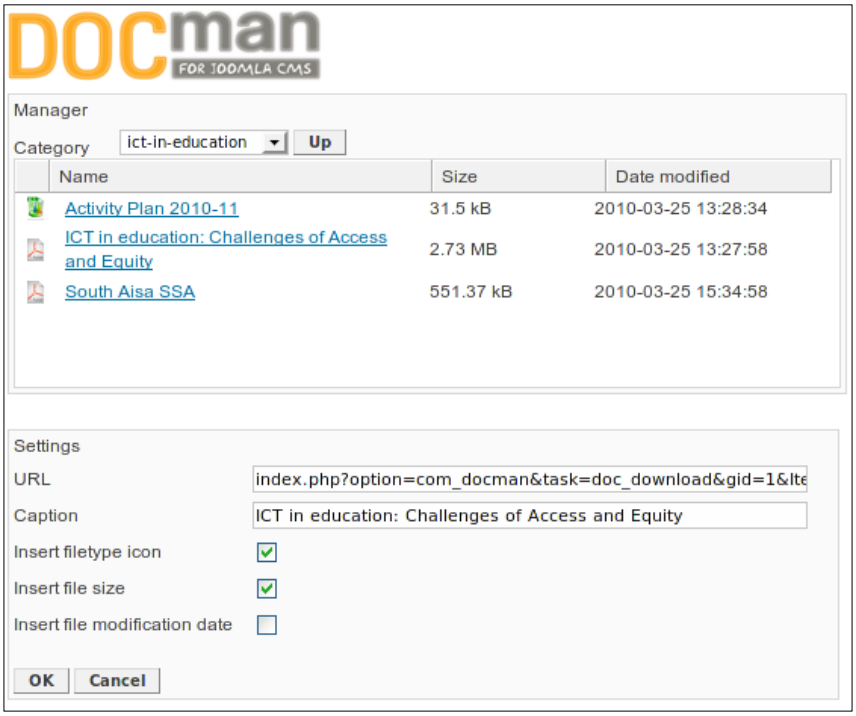
2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field and configure the parameters from the **Plugin Parameters** section. Specify the width and height of the thumbnails, output format, and JPEG quality. Click on the **Save** button to save the configuration.

Once you have enabled the plugin, a thumbnail will be generated automatically when you add any file to the document repository. You can manually assign that thumbnail to any document entry.

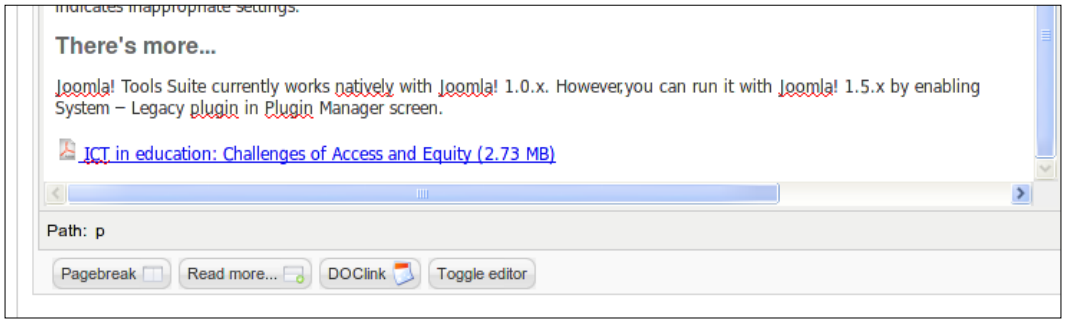
Inserting links to uploaded documents inside articles

Inserting a link in articles to files added to the document repository is possible by installing DOClink for DOCman 1.4 plugin. Download it from `http://www.joomlatools.eu/docman-14/doc_download/48-doclink-v140stable.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen. Once installed, you will find two plugins named **DOClink Standard Button** and **DOClink** in the **Plugin Manager** screen. Make sure that these plugins are enabled.

Click on **Content | Article Manager** and click **New**. This shows the HTML Editor. At the bottom of the editor, you will see the **DOCLink** button. Finish writing the article and click on the **DOCLink** button to insert a link to the uploaded documents. This will show the following dialog:



From the **Category** drop-down list, select a category and you will see the available documents in that category listed in the box below. Click on the document you want to link. The URL and the caption of that document will be displayed. You can also choose to display the file type icon, file size, and file modification date. When finished selecting the document and options, click on the **OK** button. The link will be displayed in the article, as shown in the following screenshot:



Adding an attachment to an article

The articles you add to Joomla! can contain images and other media files. You can upload media files to your web server through **Media Manager**. However, there is no easy way to upload document files, to link to them, or to show them as an attachment to the article. In this recipe, we will learn how to add an attachment to an article.

Getting ready...

The Attachment plugin allows you to upload documents and add them as attachments to an article. Download this freely available extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/attachments/frs/`. After downloading the package, extract it and you will find four installation files, namely `add_attachment_btn_plugin.zip`, `attachments_component.zip`, `attachments_plugin.zip`, and `attachment_search.zip`. Install all these files from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

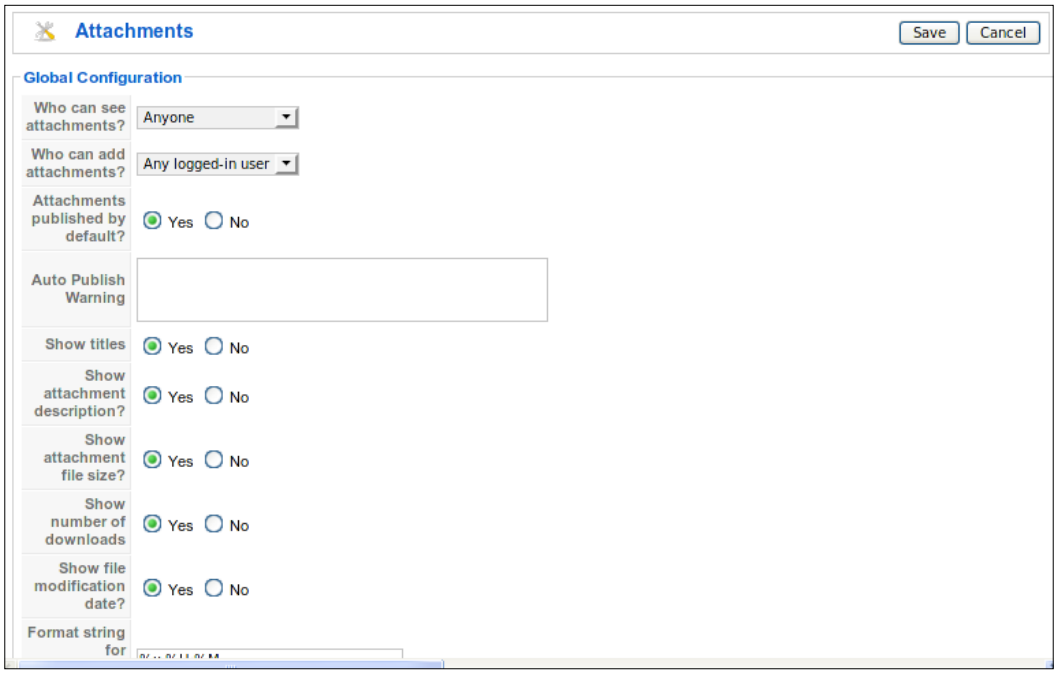
How to do it...

After installing this plugin, carry out the following steps to add an attachment to an article:

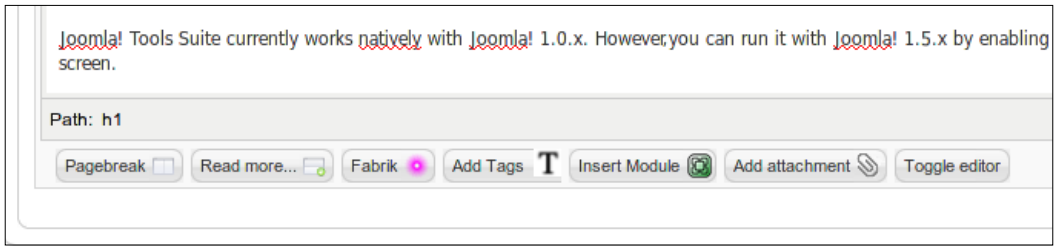
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, go to **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. In the **Plugin Manager** screen, you will see the installed plugins listed. Click on the **Content – Attachments** plugin and select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field on the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen. Then click on the **Save** button to save the changes.
2. From the **Plugin Manager** screen, also enable the **Editor Button – Add Attachment** and **Search – Attachments** plugins by clicking on these and selecting **Yes** in the **Enabled** field on the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.
3. Now click on **Components | Article Attachments**. This shows the **Article Attachments** screen.



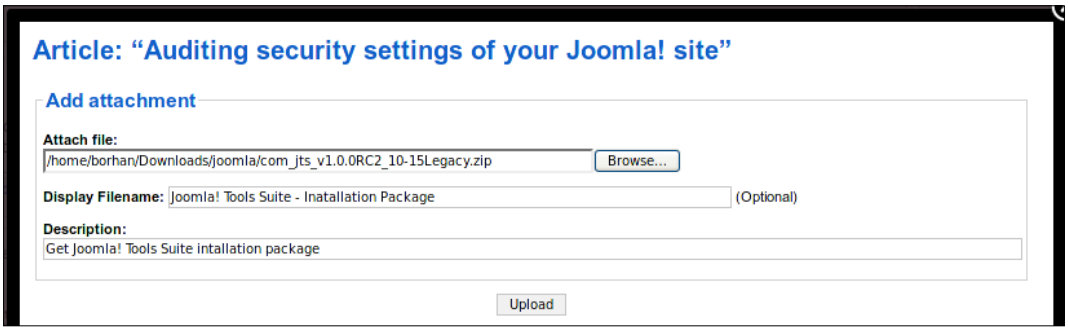
4. On the **Article Attachments** screen, click on the **Parameters** icon. This will show the **Attachments** screen.



5. In the **Attachments** screen, select **Anyone** in the **Who can see attachments?** field, **Any logged-in user** in the **Who can add attachments?** field, and **Yes** in the **Attachments published by default?** field. Keep the default settings for the other options. When learn, click on the **Save** button.
6. Now log in to the frontend as a registered user, or from the administration panel and go to **Content | Article Manager | New** to add an article. You will see the HTML Editor, at the bottom of this editor you will see the **Add attachment** button.

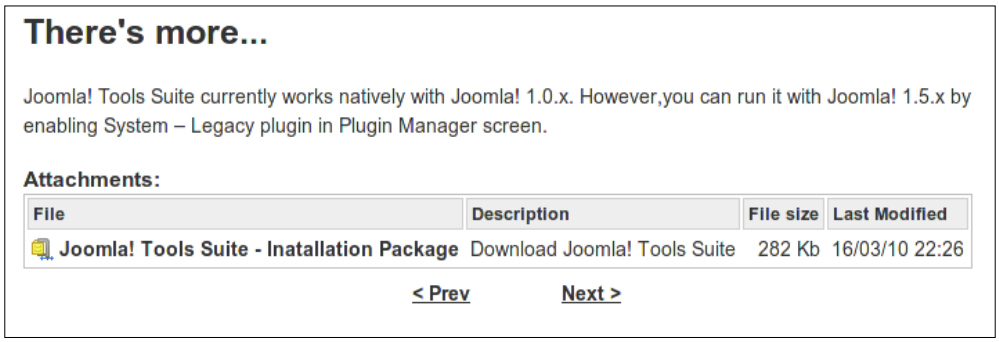


7. Click on the **Add attachment** button. This shows a dialog for adding an attachment.



8. In the **Add attachment** dialog, click on the **Browse...** button and select the file you want to add as an attachment. Then type a display name and a brief description in the **Display Filename** and **Description** fields respectively. Then click on the **Upload** button to upload the file to the web server.
9. You can upload certain types of files to your web server. The file types allowed for **Media Manager** will be uploaded through the attachments plugin. If you find that you cannot upload a particular type of file, add the file extension to **Media Manager** from the **Site | Global Configuration | System | Media Settings** section.
10. When you have finished writing the article, save and publish it.

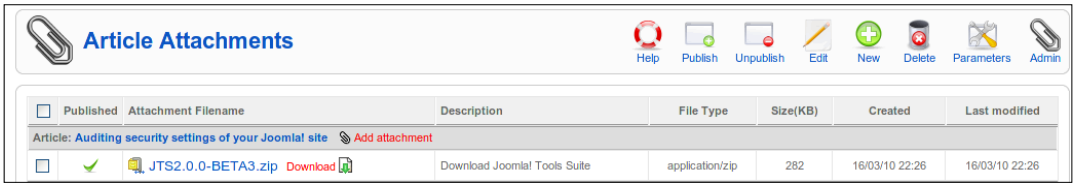
View the article from the frontend and you will find the file attached to the article. The filename and link to that article will be displayed at the bottom of the article, as shown in the following screenshot:



Now the users can download the file by clicking on the filename listed in the **Attachments** section.

There's more...

Files attached to articles can be managed from the **Components | Article Attachments** screen. The screen lists the available attachments.



You can view the list of attachments, publish, unpublish, delete, or edit these attachments. You can also add new attachments. For adding a new attachment, click on the **New** button. This shows the **Attachment: [New]** screen.



In the **Attachment: [New]** screen, first click on the **Select Article** button and select an article to which you want to attach the file. Then click on the **Browse...** button to select the file to attach. Optionally, add a filename and description, and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. This will add the file to the selected article.

11
Using Languages

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding a language to your site
- Translating language files for your site
- Translating your site's content using Google's translation service
- Manually translating your site's content into your desired language

Introduction

One of the greatest features of Joomla! is that you can build a multilingual website. The Joomla! interface can be displayed in many languages. You can simply download the translation pack for the required language and install that to Joomla!. If you don't have a translation pack for your desired language, you can translate it by editing language files directly or by using the translation manager component. The translation manager component allows you to visually translate your site's interface into any language, right from the Joomla! administration area. After completing the translation, you can pack the translation and share it with others, so that they can install the translation in other Joomla! sites.

Besides translating the Joomla! interface, you can translate a site's contents into your desired language. The **GTranslate** component allows you to translate your site's content into 55 languages using Google's translation service. If you are not satisfied with the Google translation, or simply want to use your own translation for the site's content, you can use **Joom!Fish**. It allows you to translate the articles, modules, banners, menus, sections, categories, and so on into your desired language. It also shows a language selection module for visitors to choose a language from the site's frontend. Many other components and modules can be translated by installing their respective content elements.

Adding a language to your site

Joomla! can build a multilingual site. A site interface can be in multiple languages, using different locales. In this recipe, you will learn how to add an additional language to a Joomla! site.

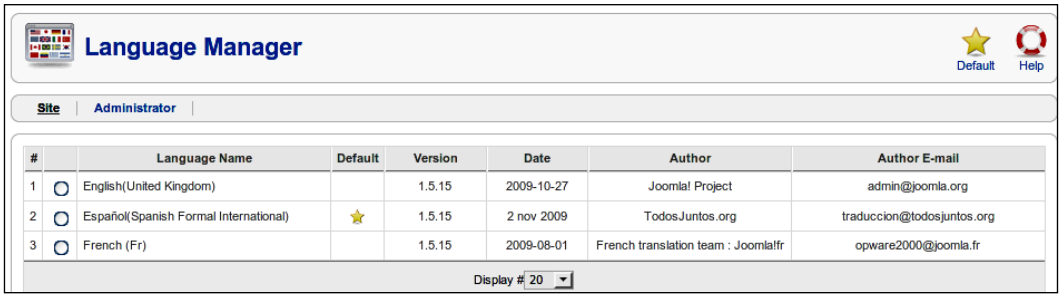
Getting ready...

Joomla! translations are available in major languages. First, decide which language you want to add to your site. For example, we want to add French to a Joomla! website. A French translation for Joomla! 1.5 is available to download at the Joomla! Extensions Directory, `http://extensions.joomla.org/extensions/languages/translations-for-joomla`. Download this extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/french/frs/`, and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installation, follow the steps as shown:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Language Manager**. This will show the **Language Manager** screen, listing the installed languages for the site:



2. Note that the default language for the site is marked with a yellow star in the **Default** column. To make the newly-installed language, **French (Fr)**, the default language for your site, select the language and click on the **Default** button in the toolbar.

3. Preview the site's frontend and you will find the site's interface (not content) in **French**. For example, the **Login Form** module will look like the following screenshot:



4. For changing the language of the administration panel, in the **Language Manager** screen click on **Administrator**, select a language from the list, and set that as the default language for the administrator backend.

See also...

Adding a translation will only show the Joomla! interfaces in that language. The content of the site is not translated or displayed in the selected language. Also note that we still don't have a mechanism to select our desired language. All of these things can be done using the Joom!Fish extension, which is discussed in the recipe *Manually translating your site's content into your desired language*.

Translating language files for your site

Joomla!'s translations are available in most major languages. However, you may like to change the translations and have your own translation in your desired language. In that case, Joomla! provides a mechanism to translate the Joomla! interface language. In this recipe, you will learn how to translate language files for your site from the administration backend.

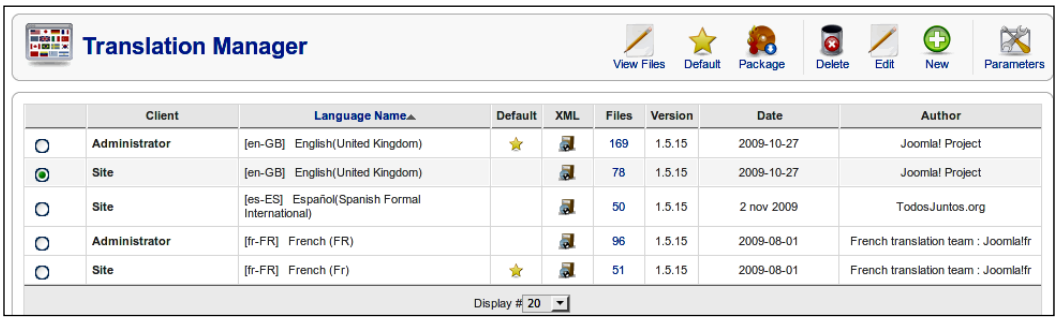
Getting ready...

Translation Manager is a popular extension that can help you translate the site's language files right from the administration backend, without opening a text editor. Download this extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/joomla_1_5_tr1/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

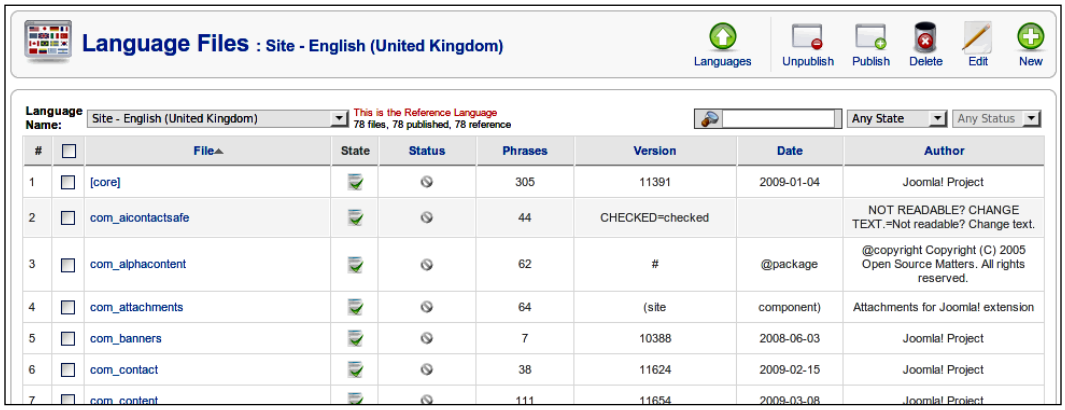
How to do it...

After installation, follow the steps as shown:

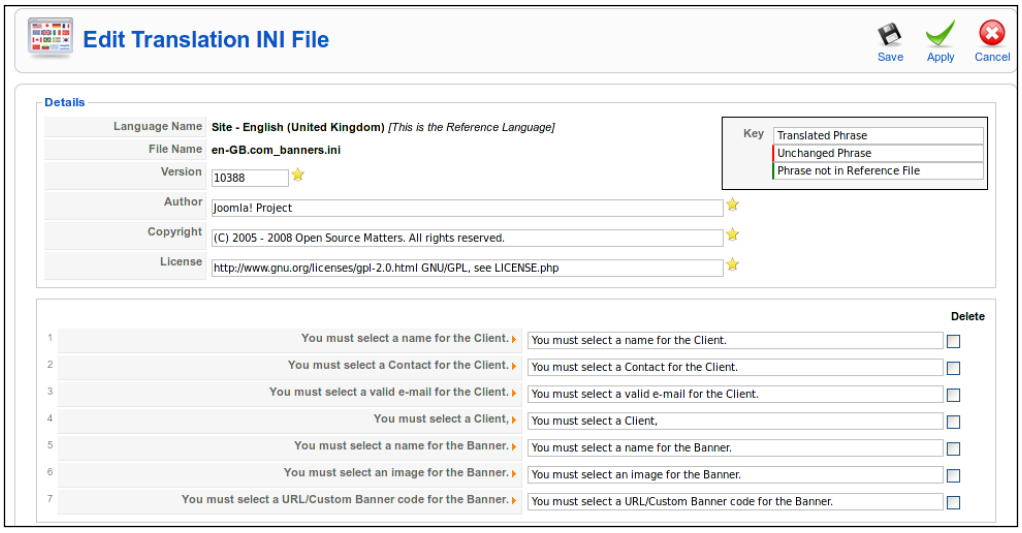
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Translation Manager**. This will show the **Translation Manager** screen, listing all of the installed languages for the site and the administration backend.



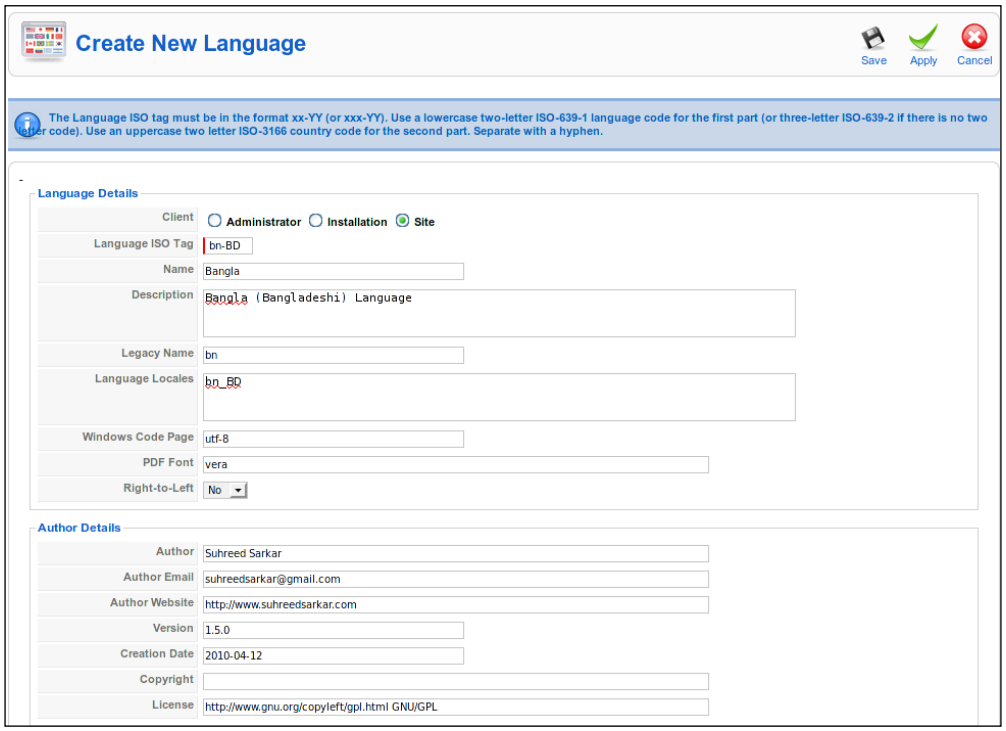
2. For changing any language translation, select that language, for example **Site [en-GB] English(United Kingdom)**, and click on the **View Files** button. This will show the language files for that language.



3. Now select a file, such as, **com_banners**, and click on the **Edit** button. This shows the string editing screen for the **com_banners.ini** file.

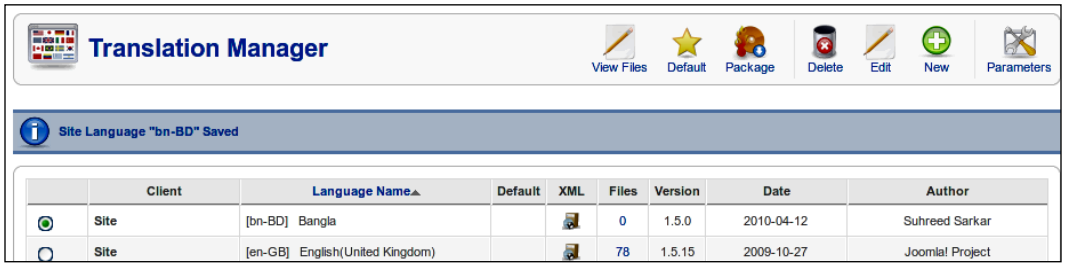


4. Change the strings accordingly, and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
5. For adding a new language, click on **New** in the **Translation Manager** screen. This will show the **Create New Language** screen:

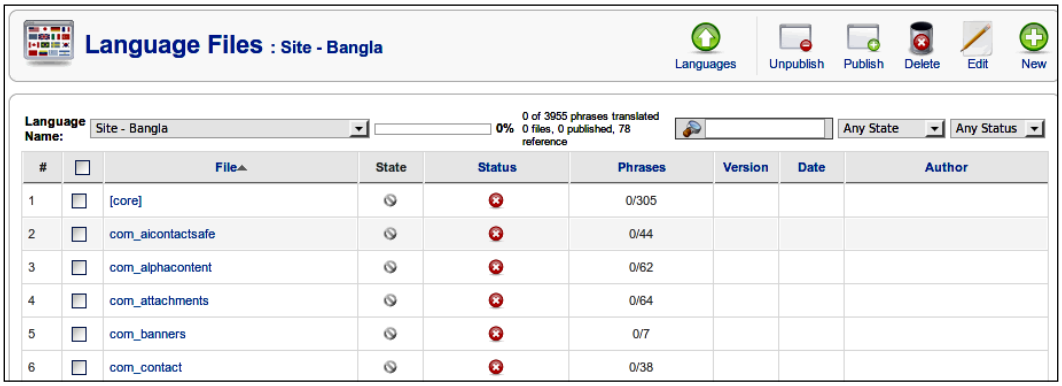


6. In the **Language Details** section, configure the following:
   - **Client**: Select who will be the client for this translation—**Administrator**, **Installation**, or **Site**. If you want to translate for the administrator interface, select **Administrator**. We want to translate the site's frontend, therefore we select **Site**.
   - **Language ISO tag**: Type the ISO tag for the language. For example, if we want to translate it into Bengali, type ISO code **bn-BD**.
   - **Name**: Type language name, that is **Bangla**.
   - **Description**: Type a short description for the translation.
   - **Legacy Name**: Type the traditional name of the language, for example, **bn** for **bn-BD**.
   - **Language Locales**: Type the locale code for the language.
   - **Windows Code page**: Specify the code page for the language. The default is **iso-8859-1**. For the **Bangla** language it will be **utf-8**.
   - **PDF Font**: Specify the font family to be used for displaying the PDF in that language.
   - **Right-to-Left**: Specify **Yes** if the language is to be read from right to left (for example, Arabic).

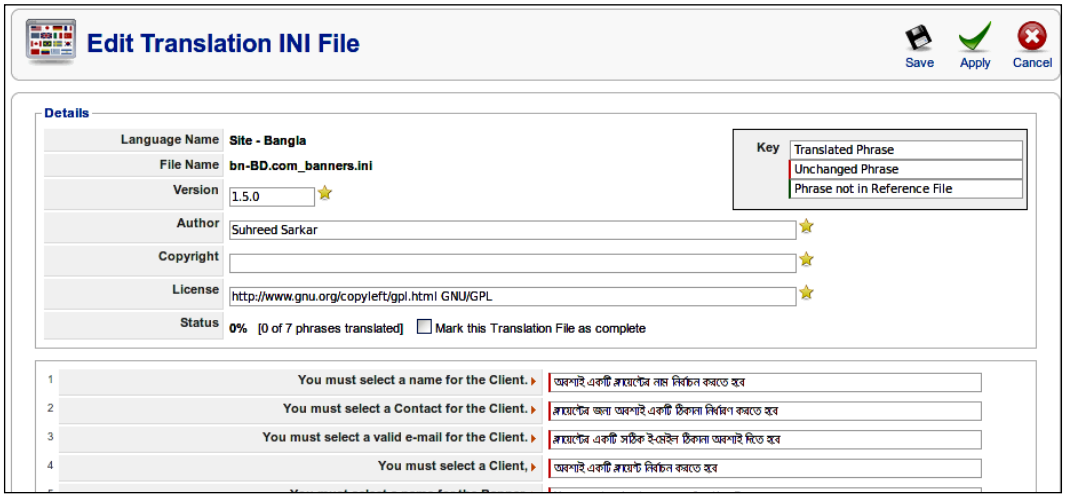
7. In the **Author Details** section, provide the translator's name (probably your name), e-mail address, website URL, version number for the translation, creation date, the copyright holder's name, and URL to the license document. When done, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. This saves the language definition and you will see the language name on the **Translation Manager** screen:



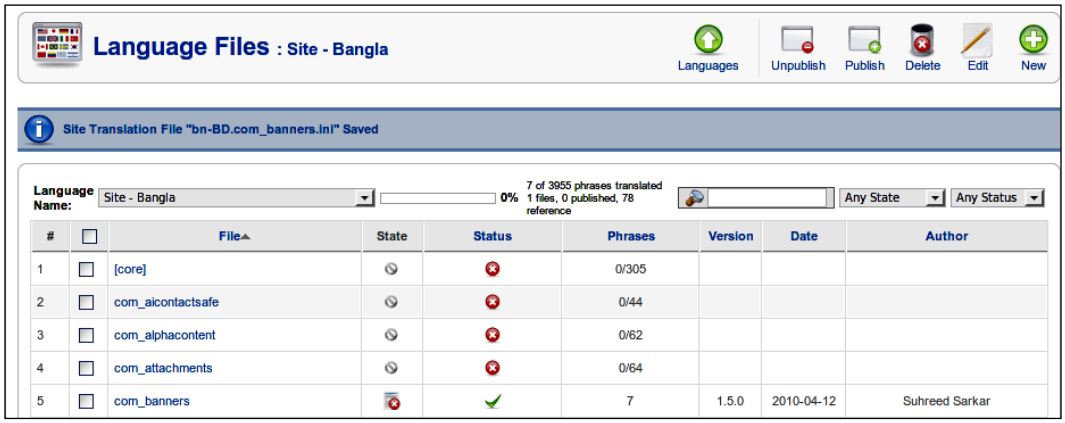
8. Now select the newly-created language that is, **Site [bn-BD] Bangla**, and click on the **View Files** button in the toolbar. This shows the **Language Files: Site - Bangla** screen, listing the language files to be translated.



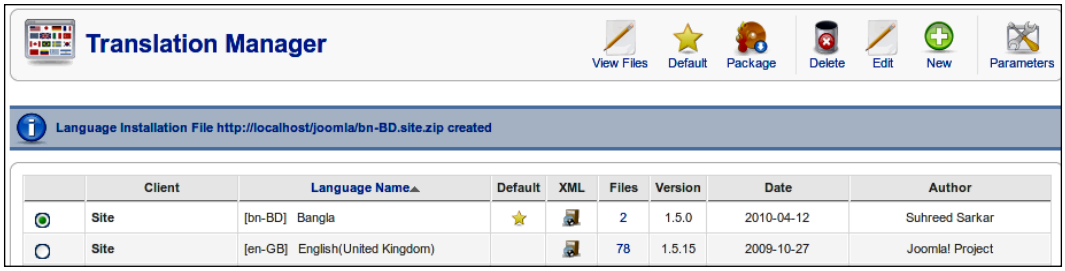
9. From the list, select a file to translate, such as **com_banners**, and click on the **Edit** button in the toolbar. This shows the **Edit Translation INI file** screen.



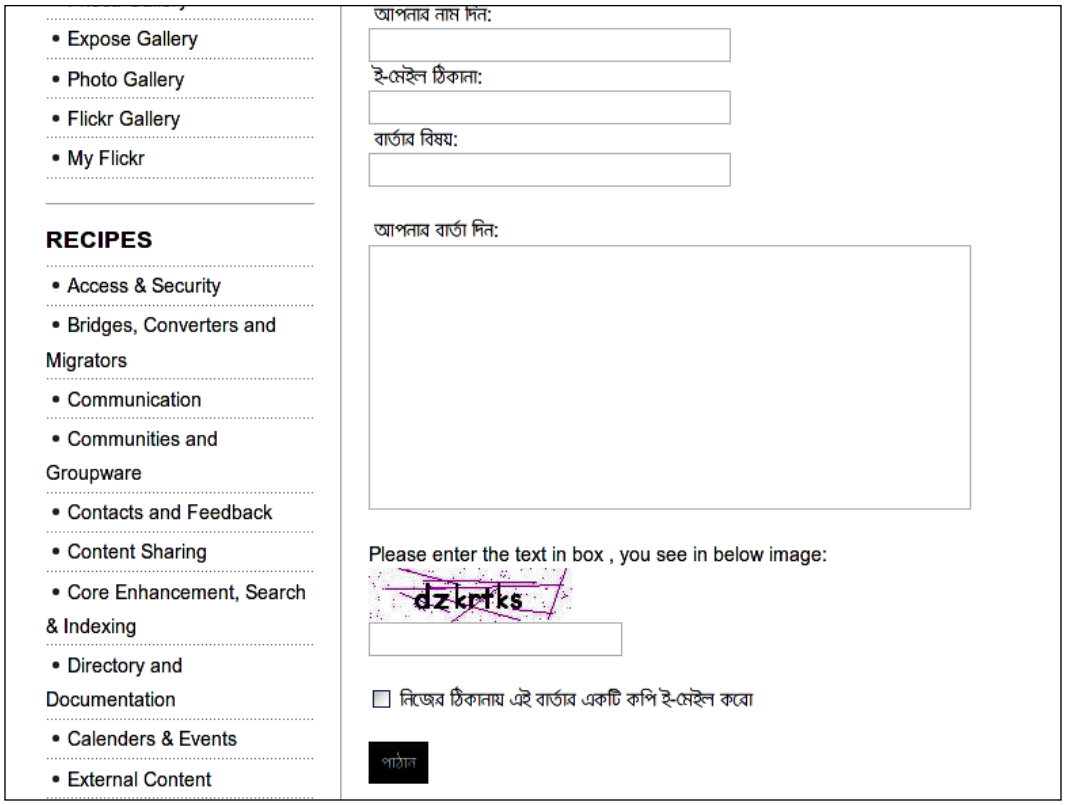
10. In the **Edit Translation INI File** screen, you will see the English strings and textboxes, as well as the strings to type your translation. Type the translations for each phrase and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar when finished. This will show the **Language Files: Site – Bangla** screen.



11. Note that a green tick is displayed in the **Status** column when all the phrases in that file are translated. For using that translation file, click on the icon in the **State** column so that a green tick appears there. Follow these steps to translate all of the other language files.
12. When finished translating all of the language files, you can package that language for using it in other site. For packaging, select that language and click on the **Package** button in the toolbar. Soon, you will see a message informing you that the language package has been created.



13. Download the package by clicking on the link provided. Note that the package includes only completely translated files. You can install this package on other sites.
14. For viewing the result of your translation, select that language and click on the **Default** button in the toolbar. This sets the language as the default language for that site. Now preview the site's frontend and you should find some translations, as shown in the following screenshot:



You can create as many languages as you want using Translation Manager.

Translating your site's content using Google's translation service

Google provides translation services for many languages. In this recipe, you will learn how to translate your site's content using Google translation services.

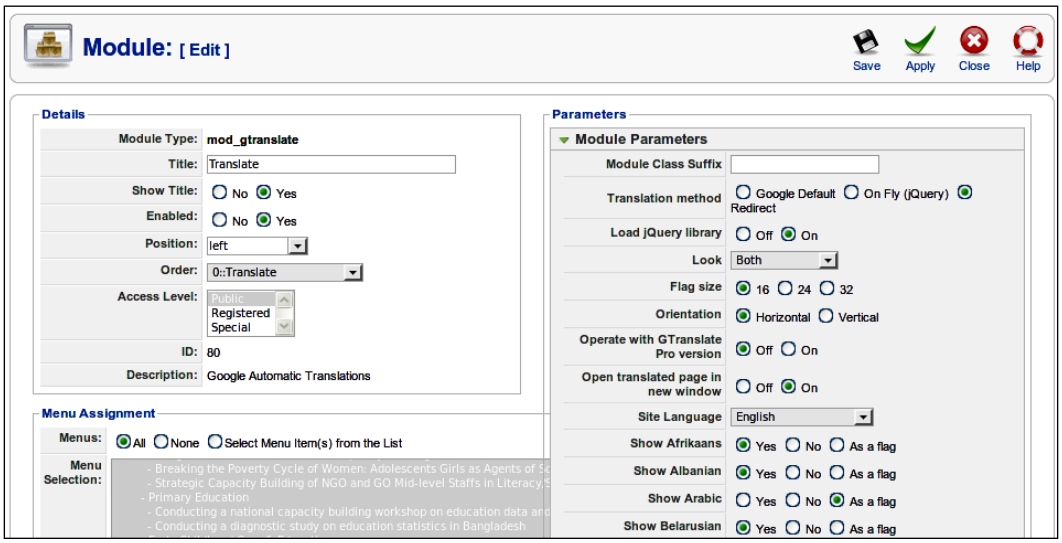
Getting ready...

GTranslate is a popular module for Joomla! that can translate your site's content into many languages. Download this module from `http://edo.webmaster.am/gtranslate`, and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen. Note that you need to register to download the free version of GTranslate. It has a paid Pro version too, which supports some extra features such as search engine indexing, META information translation, and caching.

How to do it...

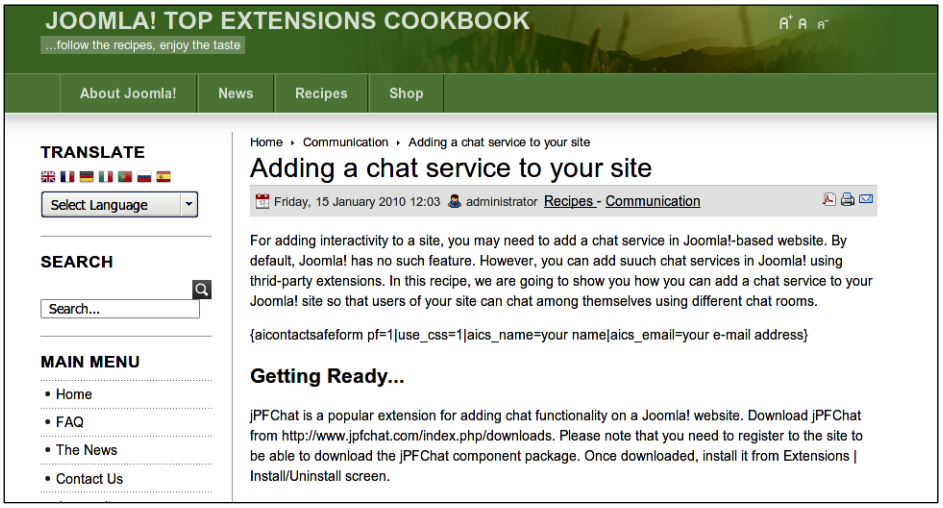
After installation, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen and lists the installed modules. From the list click on **GTranslate**. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the GTranslate module.

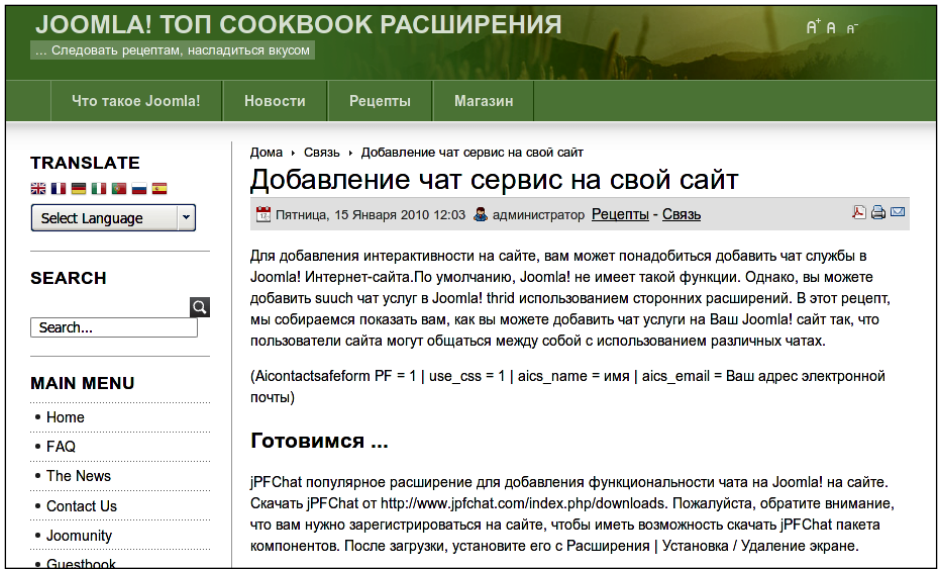


2. Type the title of the module, for example, **Translate**. Select **Yes** in the **Show Title** and **Enabled** fields. In the **Position** drop-down list, select a module position where the module will be displayed. From the **Module Parameters** section, select **On Fly (jQuery)** in the **Translation method** field. Accept the default settings for all other fields and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

3. Preview the site's frontend and you should see the module with flag icons and a drop-down list.



4. Click on a language icon or select a language name from the drop-down list. This shows the site or article translated into your selected language, as shown in the following screenshot:



6. As you can see, the text has been translated into Russian. You can select another language to translate it into.



If you select **Redirect** in the **Translation method** field while configuring the module, it will not translate non-public pages, such as, your site hosted on localhost. **On Fly (jQuery)** is the best option as it translates and shows the translated page, both on local and public websites.

Manually translating your site's content into your desired language

There is no doubt that GTranslate performs magic when translating your site's content into your chosen language. But that is done by Google's Translation Service, `http://translate.google.com`. The full process is automated and the machine does the translation. However, machine translation is not always good and can sometimes be misleading. To avoid your content getting lost in translation, or in the absence of a translation service for a specific language, you may like to manually translate the site's content. For example, we want to build a bilingual website that will show its content in English and Bengali. Google doesn't provide a translation service for Bengali. Therefore, it is useful to translate the site content manually. In this recipe, you will learn how to implement the manual translation of your site content.

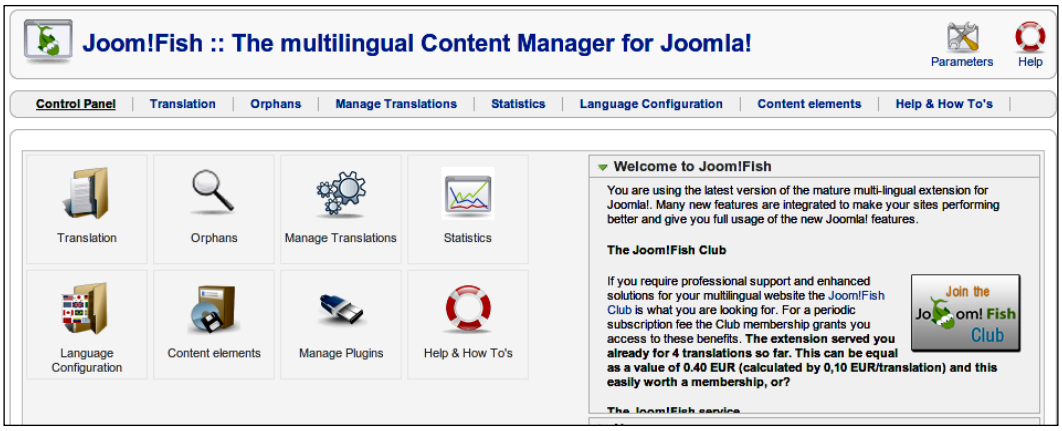
Getting ready...

Joom!Fish is the most popular extension for building multilingual Joomla! websites. Download the latest version of Joom!Fish from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/download/frsrelease/11315/45280/JoomFish2.0.4.zip`, and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen. It installs one component, two modules, and several plugins.

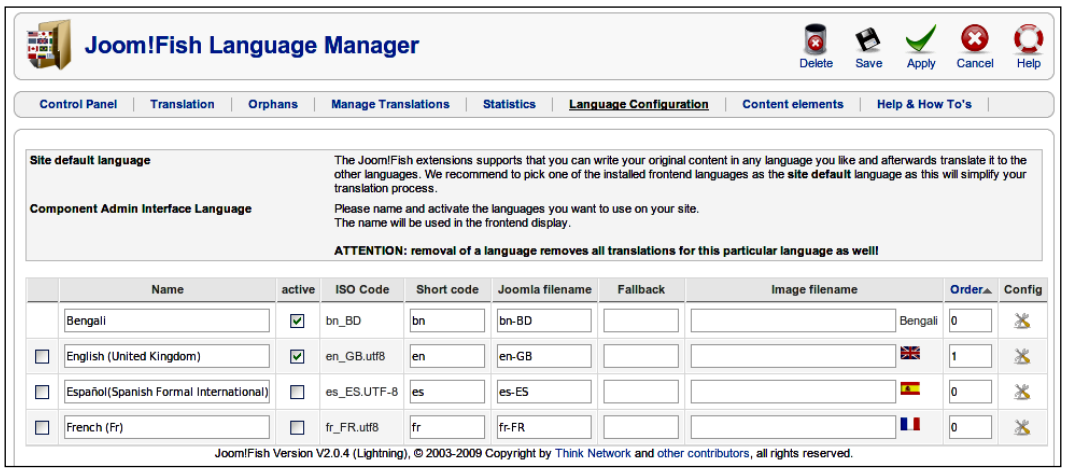
How to do it...

After installation, carry out the following steps:

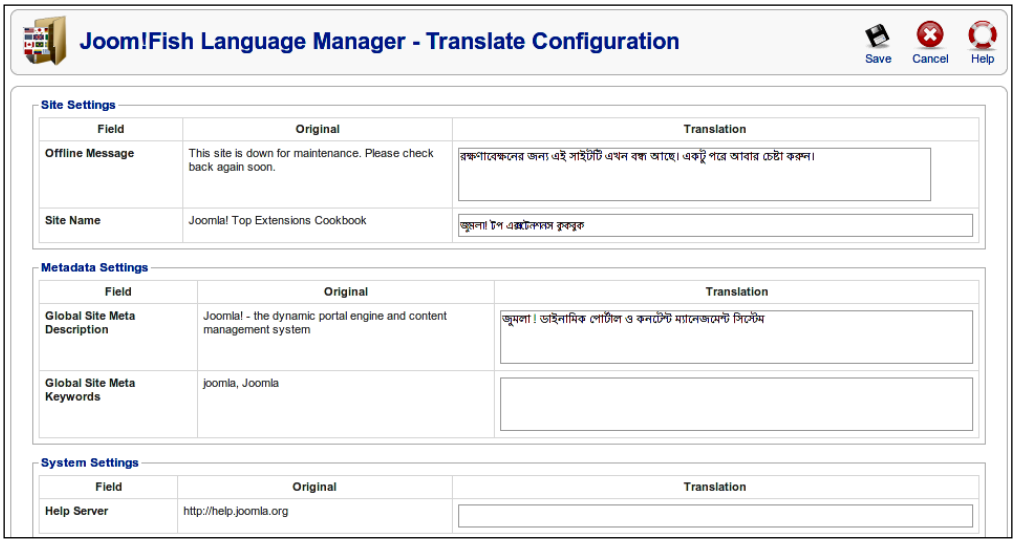
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Joom!Fish** | **Control Panel**. This shows the **Joom!Fish :: The multilingual Content Manager for Joomla!** screen.



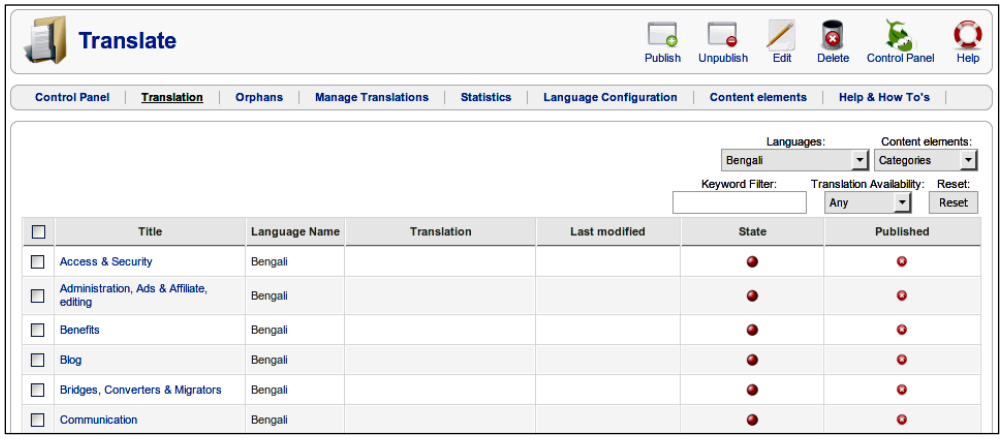
2. Click on **Language Configuration**. This shows the **Joom!Fish Language Manager** screen, and lists all the installed languages.



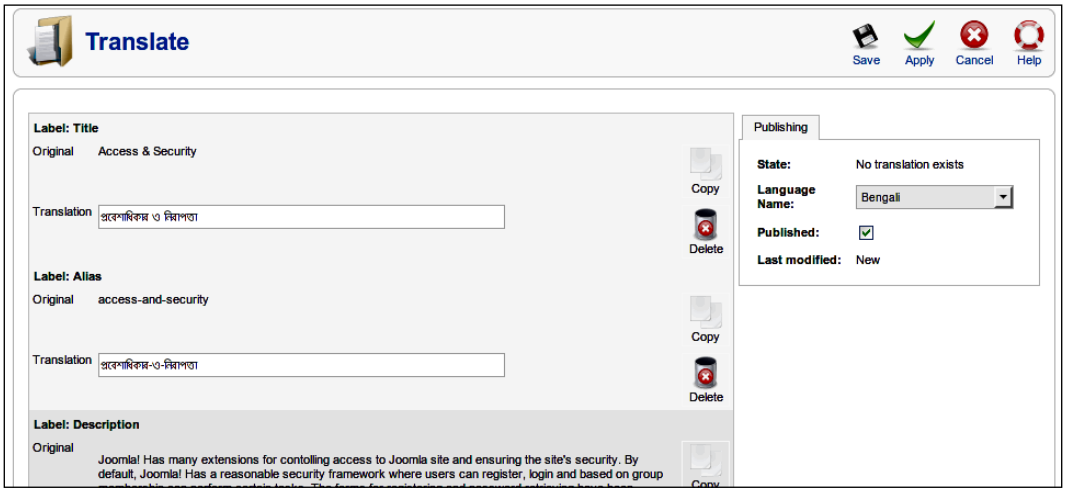
3. In the **Active** column, enable the checkboxes to activate the required languages. If you don't see an image for a language, type the image's URL in the **Image filename** field. Then click the icon displayed in the **Config** column. This shows the **Joom!Fish Language Manager - Translate Configuration** screen.



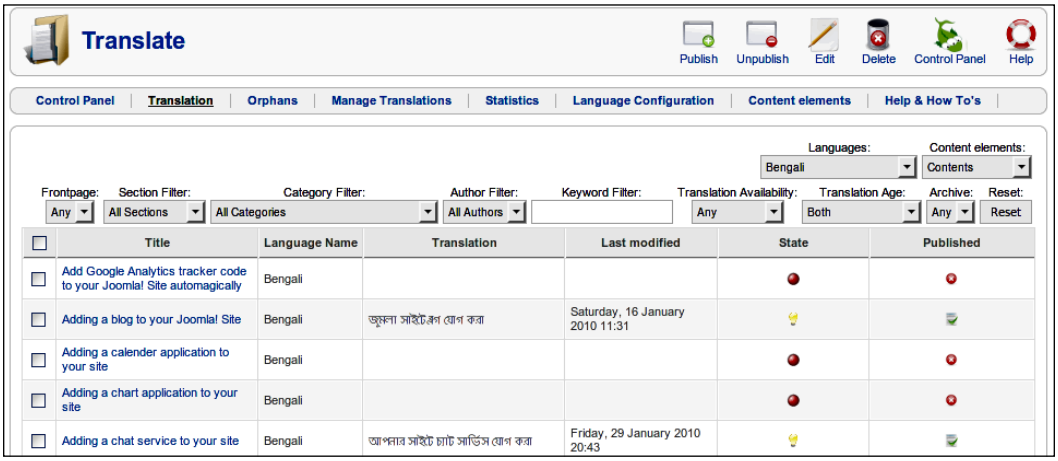
4. In this screen, you can translate some common phrases, for example **Offline Message**, **Site Name**, **Global Site Meta Description**, **Global Site Meta Keywords**, a help site URL, mail settings, and so on. Type in the translations and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
5. Now click on **Translation**, select **Bengali** in the **Languages** drop-down list, and select **Categories** in the **Content elements** drop-down list. This shows the translatable categories.



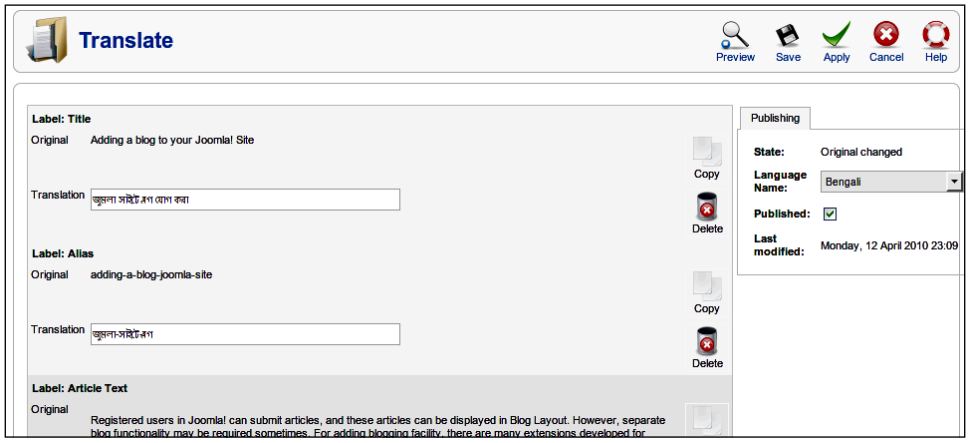
6. Click on a category name and you should see the **Translate** screen, with the original text and a textbox to insert your translation.



7. Type your translation in the **Translate** fields, enable the **Published** checkbox and then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. Follow the same process for translating other categories. When finished translating all categories, select **Contents** in the **Content elements** drop-down list on the **Translate** screen. This shows the list of available articles for translation.

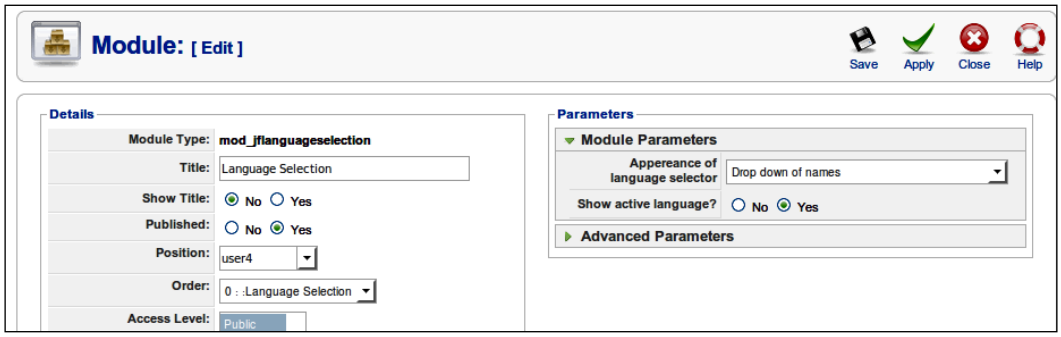


8. Click an article title to translate. This shows the **Translate** screen with the original text and textboxes for translation.



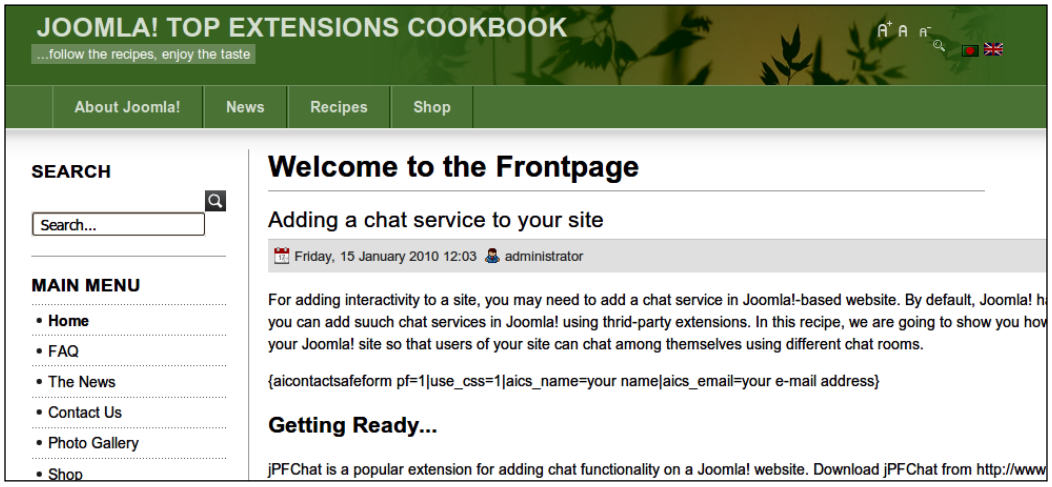
9. Type the translations in the **Translation** fields, enable the **Published** checkbox, and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

10. Similarly, change types in the **Content elements** drop-down box and translate other content including **Modules**, **Menus**, **Contacts**, **Banners**, and so on. When finished translating, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules. From the list, click on the **Language Selection** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen:



11. Select **Yes** in the **Published** field and select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. From the **Module Parameters** section, in the **Appearance of language selector** drop-down list select how you want to display the language selection box. You can choose from **Drop down of names**, **Drop down of names with current language flag**, **ul-list of names**, **ul-list of names with flag**, **ul-list of images**, and **Raw display of images**.

12. Preview the site's frontend and you should see the site in the default language, with the language selection box at the specified position.



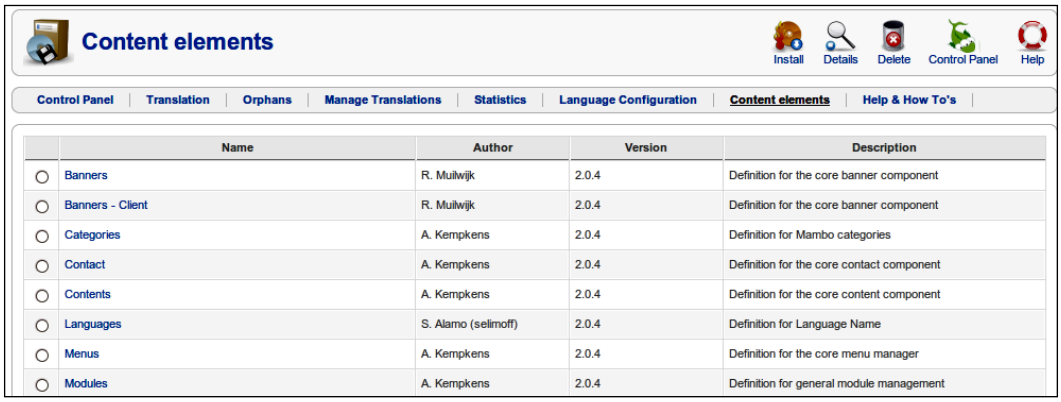
13. From the language selection module, click another case, in my case Bangla, to show the site content in that language.



14. Visitors to your site can now switch to any active language through this language selection module. Note that the URL of the site now appends language code, for example, `http://www.yourjoomlasite.com/index.php?lang=bn`, where `bn` stands for the Bangla language.

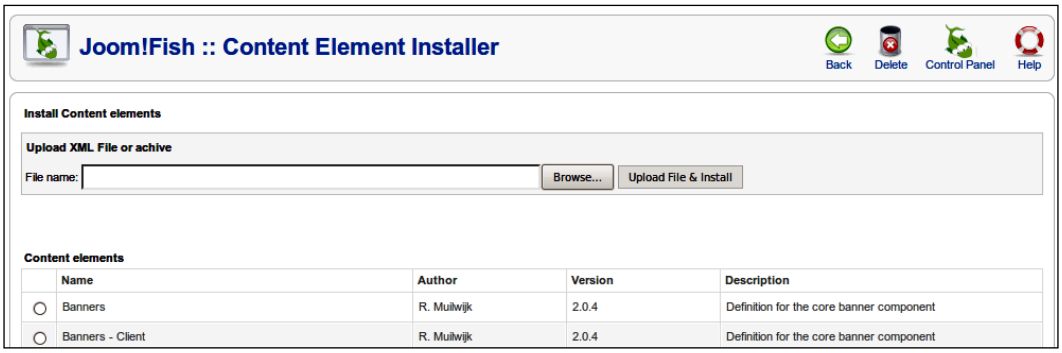
There's more...

Note that in Joom!Fish, you can translate almost anything—articles, modules, menus, sections, categories, and so on. These translations are done through content elements. You can see any component or module by clicking on **Components** | **Joom!Fish** | **Content Elements**.



	Name	Author	Version	Description
○	Banners	R. Muilwijk	2.0.4	Definition for the core banner component
○	Banners - Client	R. Muilwijk	2.0.4	Definition for the core banner component
○	Categories	A. Kempkens	2.0.4	Definition for Mambo categories
○	Contact	A. Kempkens	2.0.4	Definition for the core contact component
○	Contents	A. Kempkens	2.0.4	Definition for the core content component
○	Languages	S. Alamo (selimoff)	2.0.4	Definition for Language Name
○	Menus	A. Kempkens	2.0.4	Definition for the core menu manager
○	Modules	A. Kempkens	2.0.4	Definition for general module management

You can download content elements for new extensions from `http://extensions.joomla.org/extensions/extension-specific/joomfish-extensions` and `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/joomfish/frs/`. After downloading content elements, click on the **Install** button on **Content Elements** screen. This shows the **Joom!Fish::Content Element Installer** screen.



	Name	Author	Version	Description
○	Banners	R. Muilwijk	2.0.4	Definition for the core banner component
○	Banners - Client	R. Muilwijk	2.0.4	Definition for the core banner component

Click on the **Browse** button, select the content element file, and then click on the **Upload File & Install** button. This installs the content and you can translate the content for that particular component or module.

12

Adding Ads, an Affiliate System, and E-commerce

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Improving banner ads on your site
- Showing classified ads
- Using Google AdSense
- Using ads within your content
- Adding a simple shop to your Joomla! site

Introduction

Joomla! has many features such as advertisements, affiliations, and e-commerce. Banner advertising is inbuilt. However, there are many extensions that can be used to improve the advertisement system in Joomla!. Third-party advertisement extensions allow Joomla! to display different types of ads. For example, classified ads can be displayed using a third-party extension. Also, to display Google AdSense ads in Joomla!, we need third-party extensions. Besides advertisements, we can use shopping cart extensions to add e-commerce functionalities. **VirtueMart** is an excellent shopping cart for Joomla!. However, it is very big and complex to manage. We will discuss a lighter alternative in this chapter.

Improving banner ads on your site

By default, Joomla! has a banner component for adding banners to the Joomla! website. This banner system is quite good and many sites use this. However, there are always opportunities to improve it. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to implement **Page Peel Banner** in our Joomla! website.

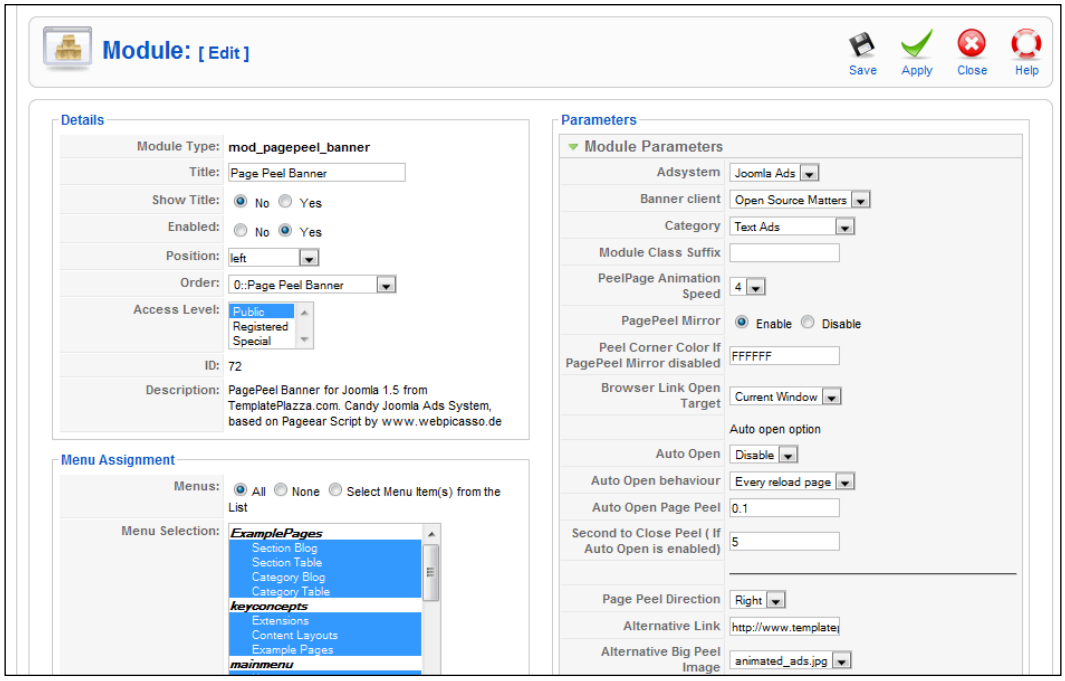
Getting ready...

Page Peel Banner is a popular extension that makes your banner ads eye-catching. Download this extension from `http://www.templateplazza.com/start-download/pagepeel-banner/126-page-peel-banner-for-joomla-1.5.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

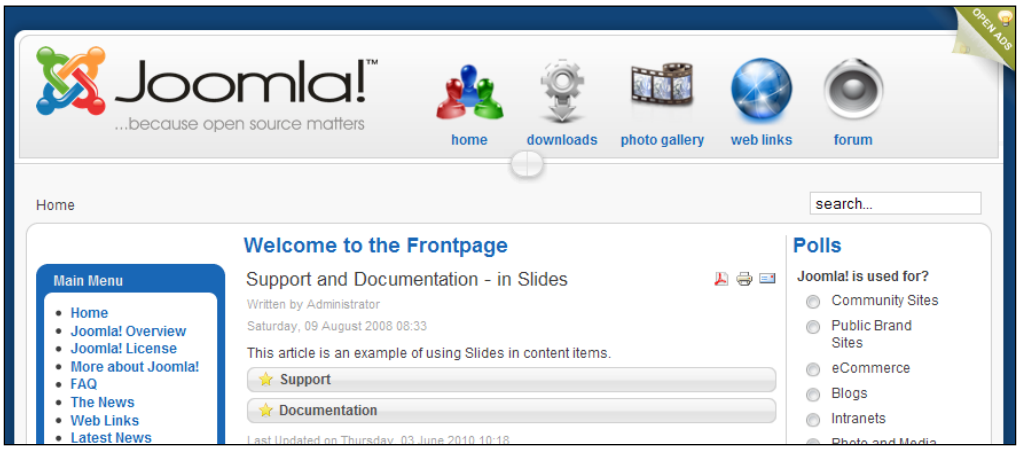
How to do it...

After installing the extension, follow these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. That will show the **Module Manager** screen listing all the installed modules. From this list, click on the **Page Peel Banner** module to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. From the **Module Parameters** section, go to the **Adsystem** drop-down list and select either **Joomla! Ads** or **Static ads**. If you want to show the ads from Joomla!'s banner component, then select **Joomla! Ads**. Then select a banner client from the drop-down list and select a category of ads from the **Category** drop-down list. Make sure **Enable** is selected in the **PagePeel Mirror** field and click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Preview the site's frontend and you will see the ad collapsed in the top-right corner of the browser window, as shown in the following screenshot.



4. As you can see, in the top-right corner, there is a triangular shape called small page peel. Hover your mouse pointer over this area, it will expand to show the ad.



5. If you want to show an ad of your own, select an image with a size of 500 x 500 pixels in a `.jpg` format, and attach it with an ad. The ad will show the image inside the page peel banner.

Showing classified ads

Classified ads can be useful if your site is a community site, where people meet and try to sell or buy their products or services. Adding a classified ad service to your Joomla! site will allow visitors or members to post ads in categories, and the buyers can bid for the product or service. Actual buying, selling, and transactions may or may not happen online. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add classified ads to your Joomla! site.

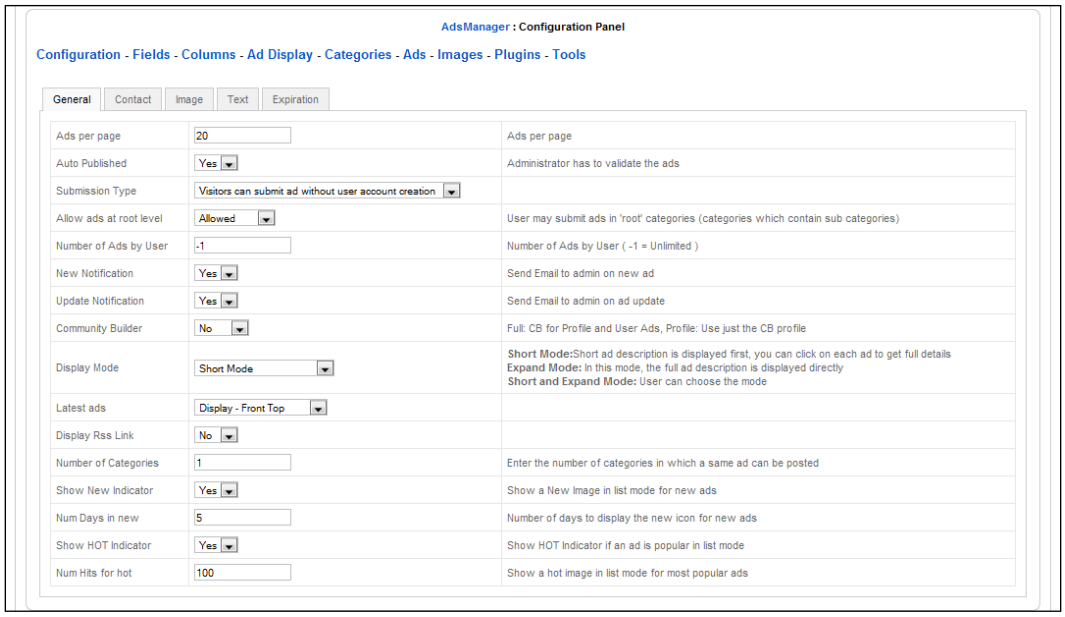
Getting ready...

AdsManager is a popular extension for providing a classified ad service for Joomla!. Download the component and module files for this extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/adsmanager/frs/` and install them from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

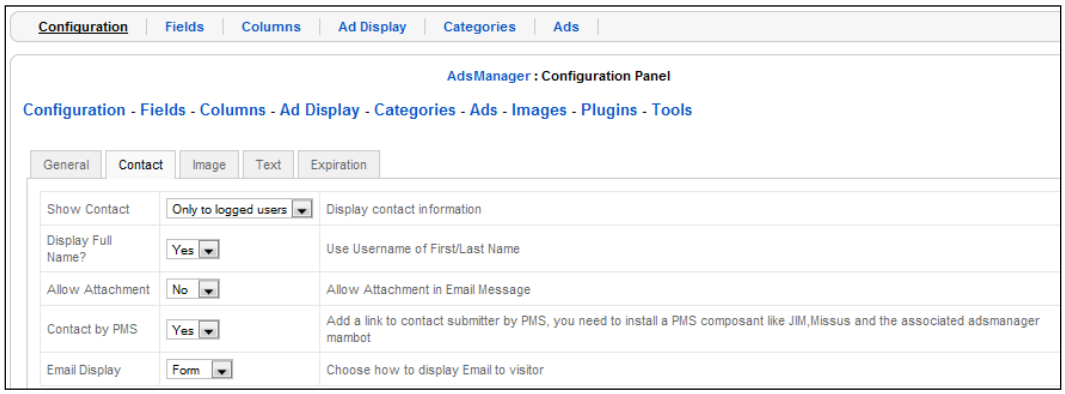
How to do it...

After installing the extension, follow these steps:

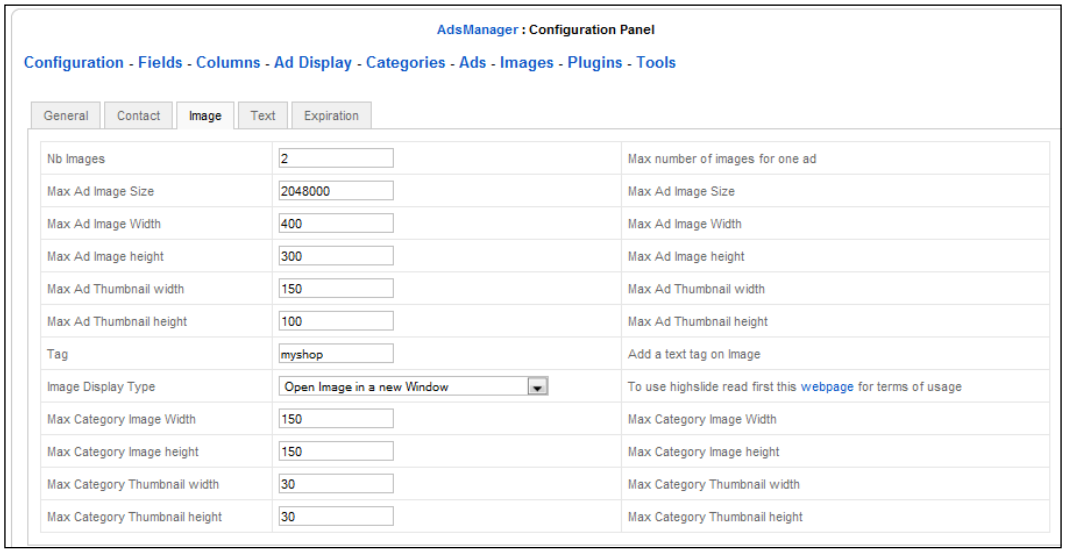
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, select **Components | AdsManager | Configuration**. This will show the **AdsManager: Configuration Panel** screen.



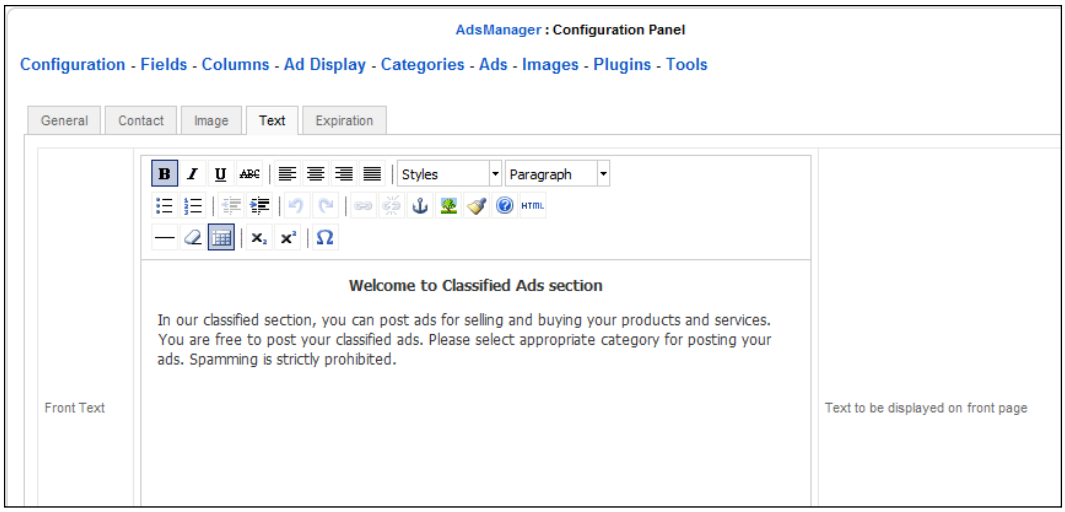
2. From the **General** tab of the **AdsManager: Configuration Panel** screen, you can specify the number of ads per page, whether ads are auto published, the submission type, number of ads by user, new notifications, and so on. Selecting **Yes** in **Auto Published** will publish the submitted ad instantly. Selecting **No** will keep the posted ad for the administrator's approval. If you don't want to limit the number of posts per user, type **-1** in the **Number of Ads by User** field. When you have finished configuring the options in the **General** tab, click on the **Contact** tab.



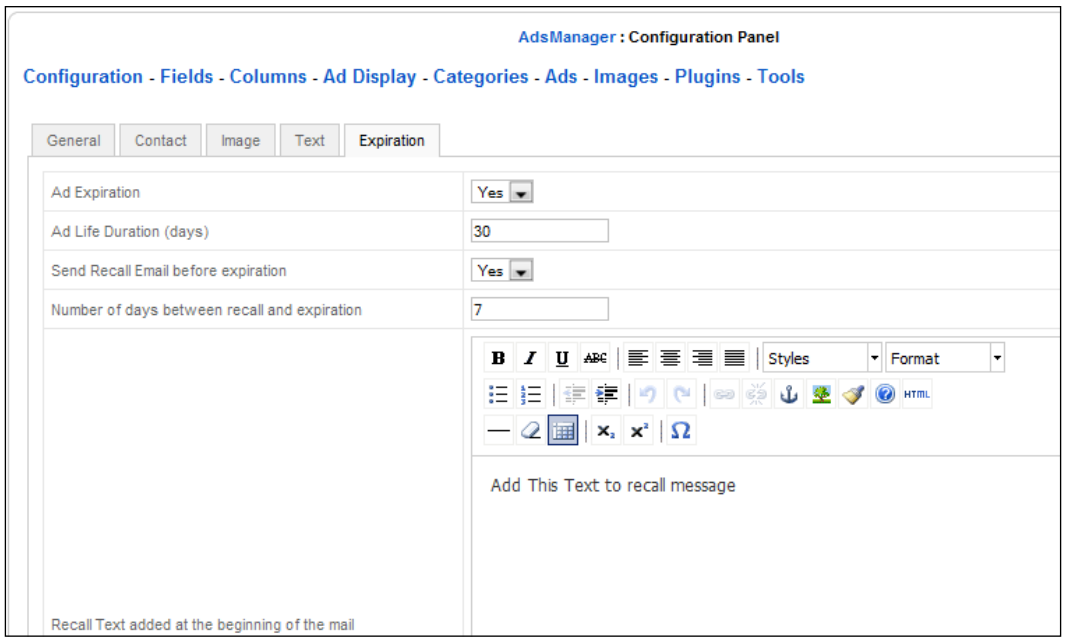
3. The **Contact** tab allows you to configure options for showing contact information, display an e-mail address, and ways to contact the person who posted the ad. Select **Only to logged users** in the **Show Contact** field. Select **No** in the **Allow Attachment** field. If you have the **UdderIM** component installed, you can select **Yes** in the **Contact by PMS** field. This allows users to contact the person who posted the ad through personal messaging service or PMS. From the **Email Display** field, you can select one of three options: **Form**, **Image**, or **Link**. Select **Form** so that it opens up a form to contact the ad poster. When finished configuring options in the **Contact** tab, click on the **Image** tab.



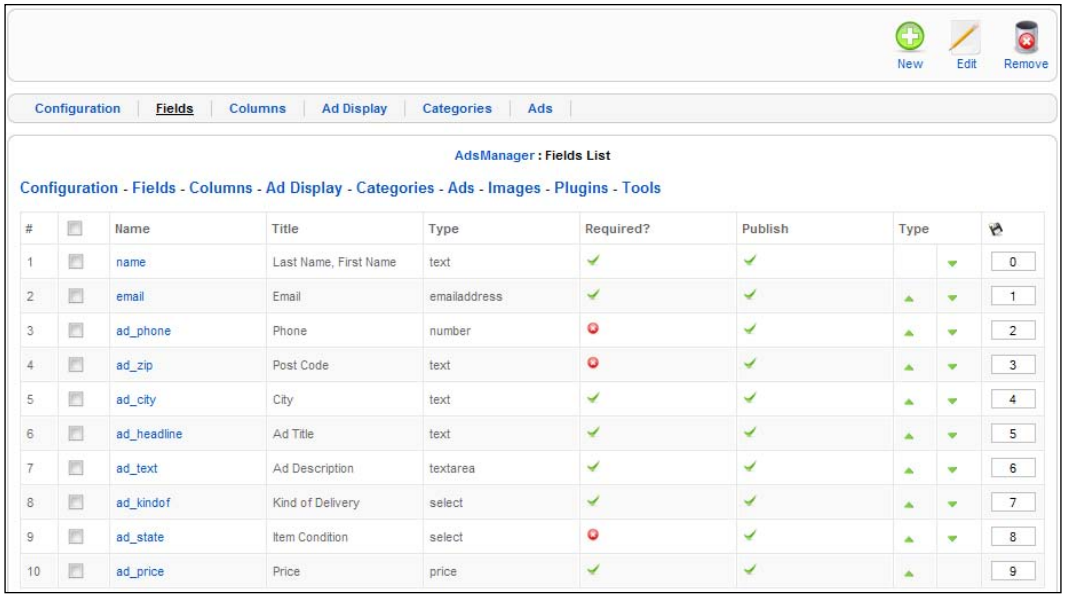
4. From the **Image** tab, you can configure options for images to be attached with ads. Most of the fields are self-explanatory. When finished configuring the options in the **Image** tab, click on the **Text** tab.



5. In the **Text** tab, you can type text that will be displayed on the front page of the AdsManager component and rules for posting ads to the site. You can use fully formatted HTML in these text areas. When you are finished, click on the **Expiration** tab.

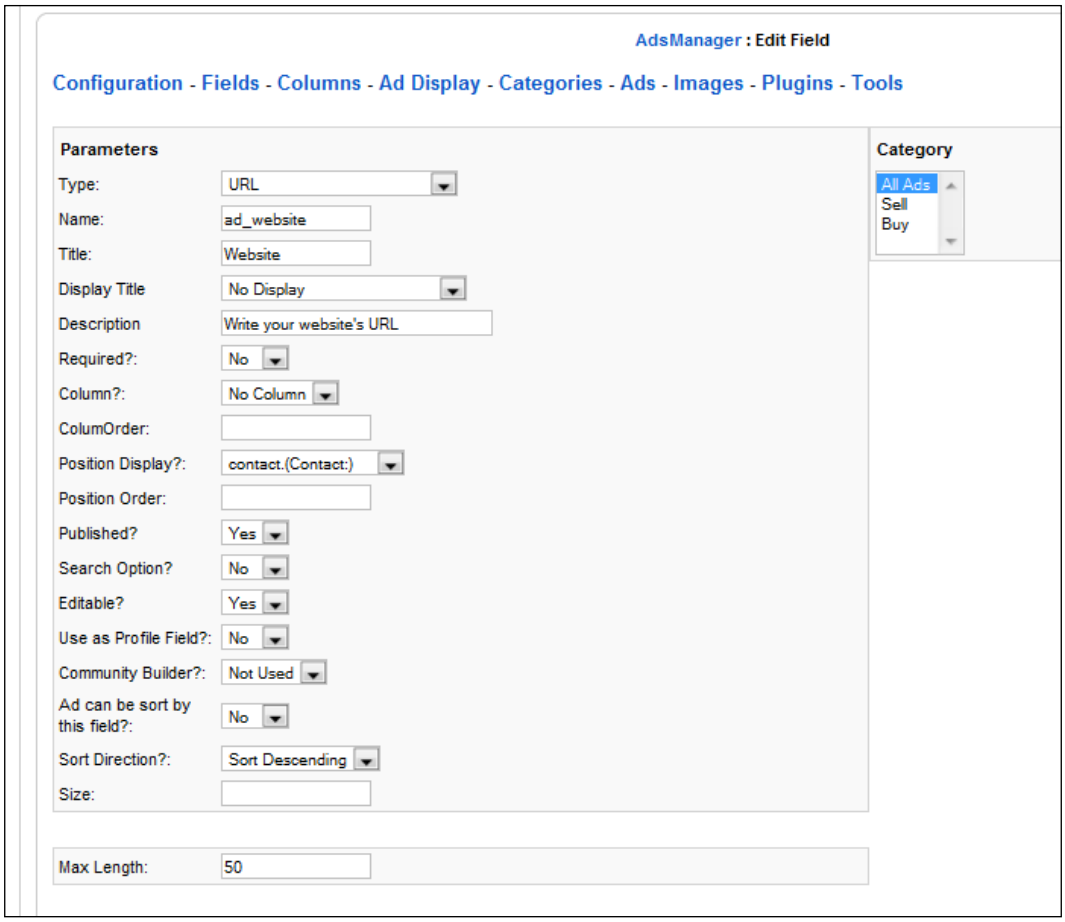


6. In the **Expiration** tab, you can specify the ad expiration policy. Specify the duration of an ad, whether a recall message is to be sent—if yes, then how many days before expiration will the recall message be sent and what will the text of the recall message be. When finished configuring the options in the **Expiration** tab, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
7. In the **AdsManager: Configuration Panel** screen, click on the **Fields** link. That will show you the available fields for posting the ad.



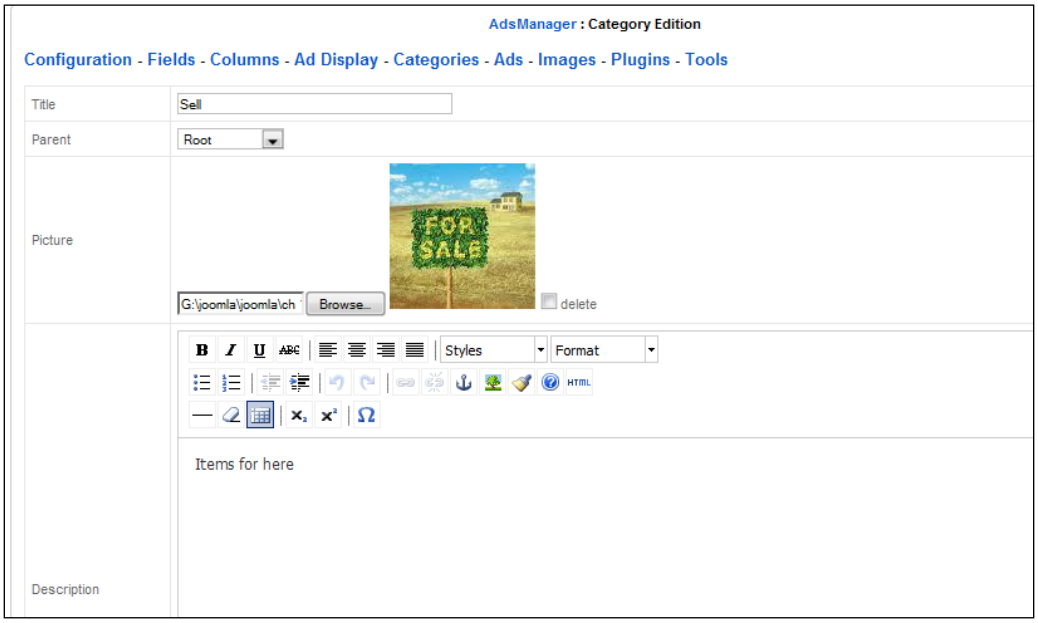
#		Name	Title	Type	Required?	Publish	Type		
1		name	Last Name, First Name	text	✓	✓			0
2		email	Email	emailaddress	✓	✓			1
3		ad_phone	Phone	number	✗	✓			2
4		ad_zip	Post Code	text	✗	✓			3
5		ad_city	City	text	✓	✓			4
6		ad_headline	Ad Title	text	✓	✓			5
7		ad_text	Ad Description	textarea	✓	✓			6
8		ad_kindof	Kind of Delivery	select	✓	✓			7
9		ad_state	Item Condition	select	✗	✓			8
10		ad_price	Price	price	✓	✓			9

8. From the **Fields** screen, you can make a field required, published, and rearrange the sequence. You can also delete, edit, or create a new field. To create a new field, click on the **New** icon in the toolbar. This will show the **AdsManager: Edit Field** screen.

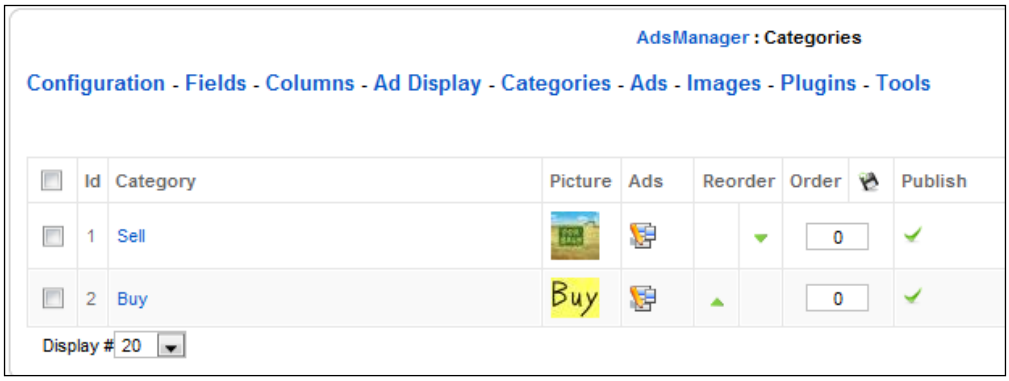


9. In the **AdsManager: Edit Field** screen, first select a type of field, then provide a name and title for the field. You can configure a number of options for this field. When finished, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. This will add the field to the list of fields in the **Fields** screen.

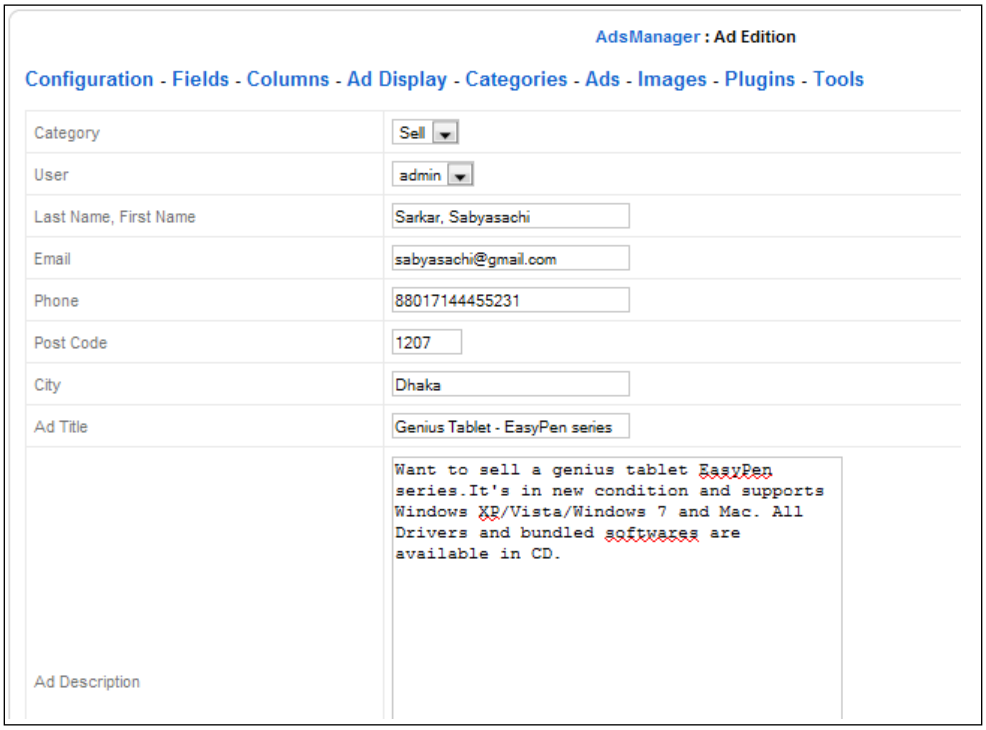
10. Now click on **Categories** and then the **New** icon in the toolbar. This will show the **AdsManager: Category Edition** screen.



11. First, type the name of the category in the **Title** field. Select a **Parent** for the category. Then click on the **Browse...** button to select an image for the category. In the **Description** field, write a short description of the category. Then select **Published** in the **Publish** drop-down list. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar. This will create the category. Repeat this step to create as many categories as you want. When finished, go back to the **AdsManager: Categories** screen. You can publish or unpublish any category or reorder the categories.

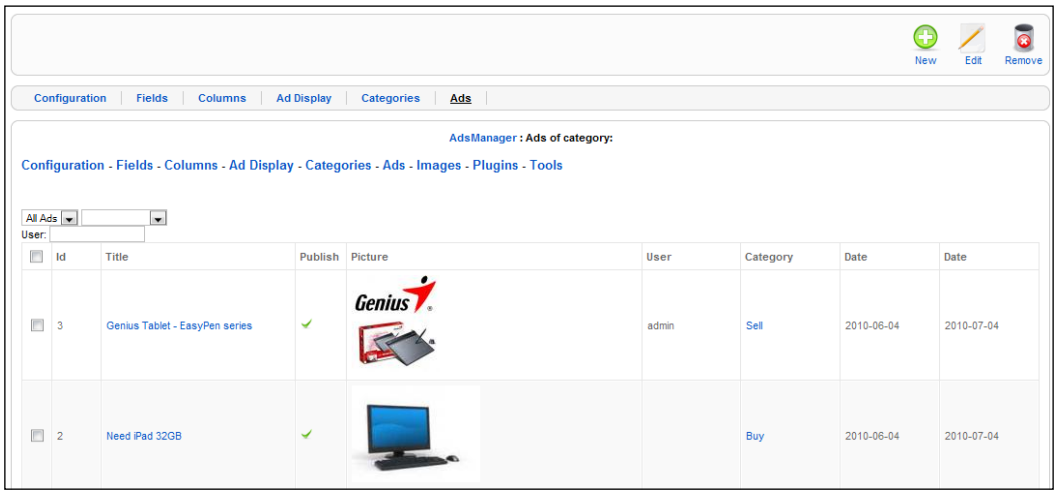


12. Click on the **Ads** link in the **AdsManager: Configuration Panel** screen. Then click on the **New** icon. That shows the **AdsManager: Ad Edition** screen. Select a category from the **Category** drop-down list and you will see all of the fields in this screen.

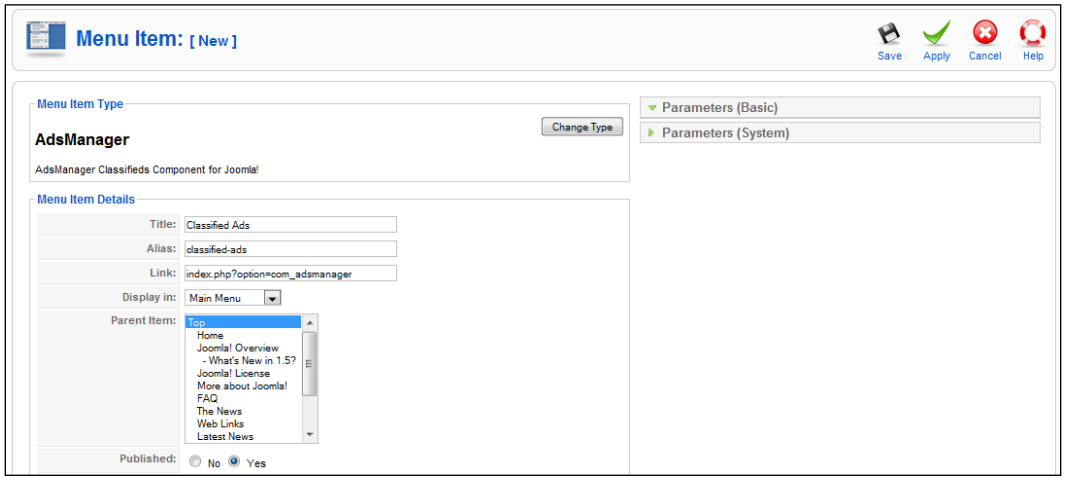


13. Provide the contact details, title of the ad, a brief description of the product or service you want to sell or buy, select the kind of delivery, item condition, price, and a picture. Then select **Published** in the **Publish** drop-down list and click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar. This will adds the ad. Follow the same process for adding as many ads as you want.

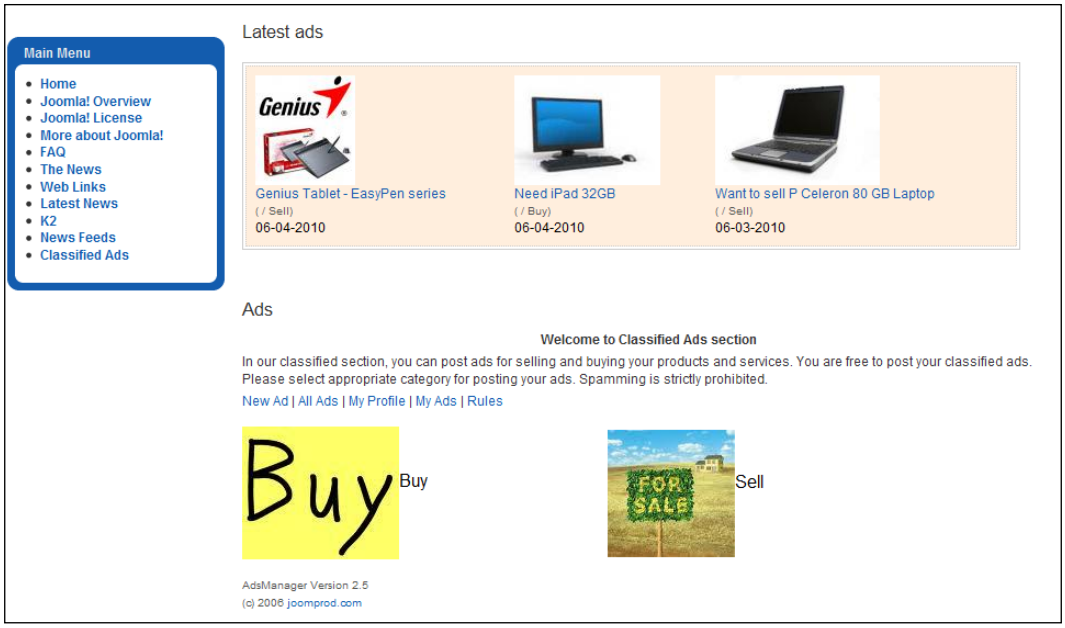
14. Now click on the **Ads** link and you see all of the ads listed.



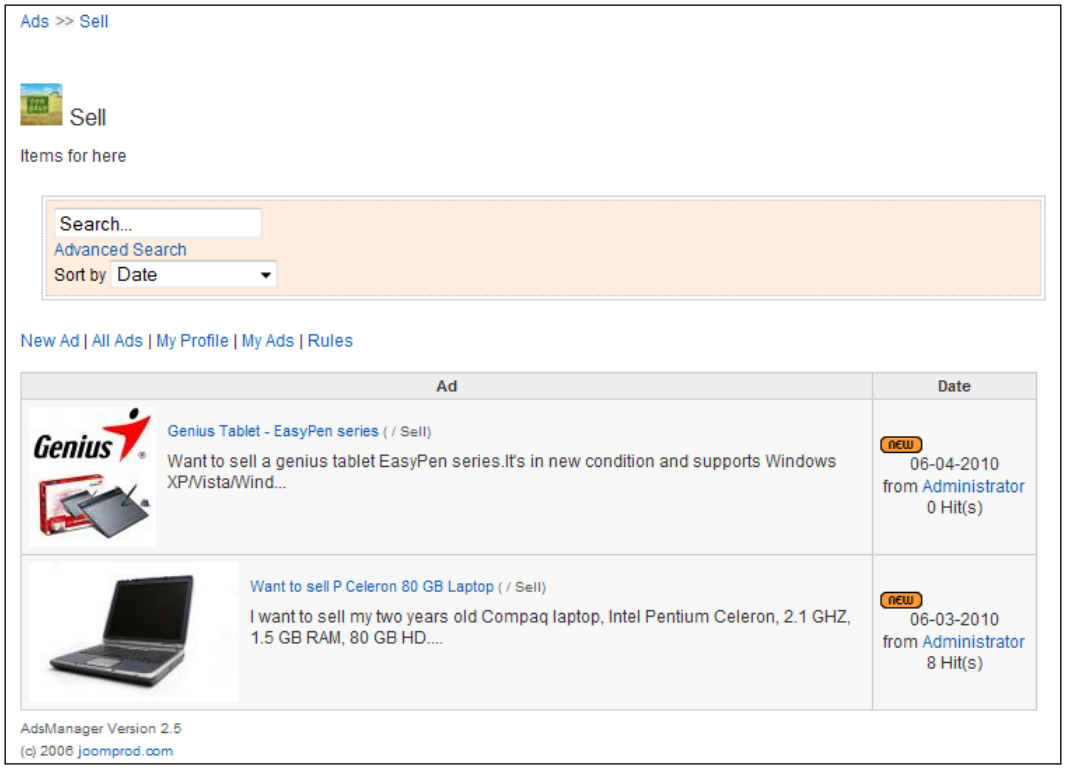
15. Now we need to make a menu entry for frontend users. Click on **Menus | Main Menu** and then click on the **New** icon in the toolbar. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. In this screen, click on **AdsManager**. This will show you the following screen:



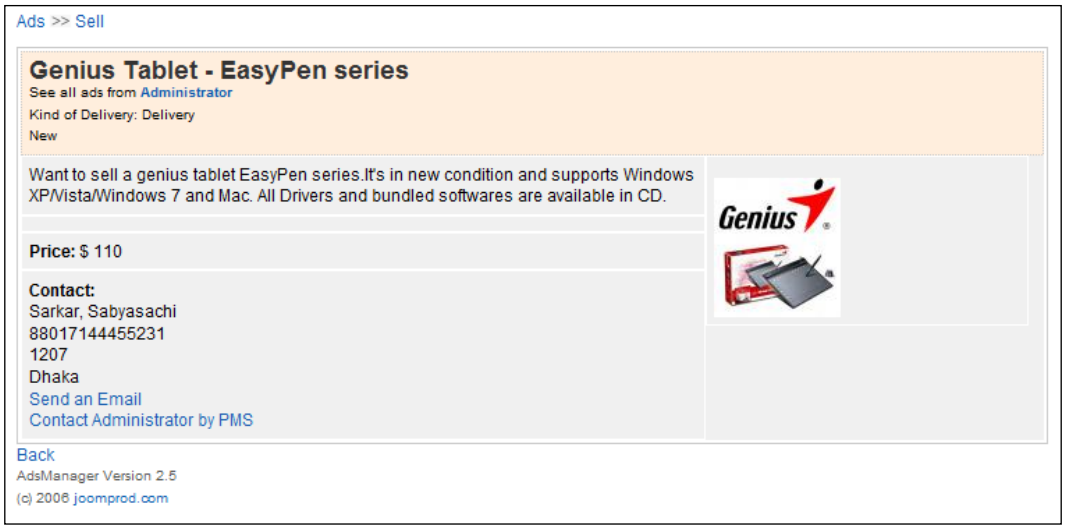
16. Provide a title, for example 'Classified Ads', and an alias for the menu item. Select the **Parent Item** and **Yes** in the **Published** radio box. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
17. Preview the site's frontend and click on the menu item you have created, that is, Classified Ads. This shows the **Classified Ads** section of your site, as shown in the following screenshot:



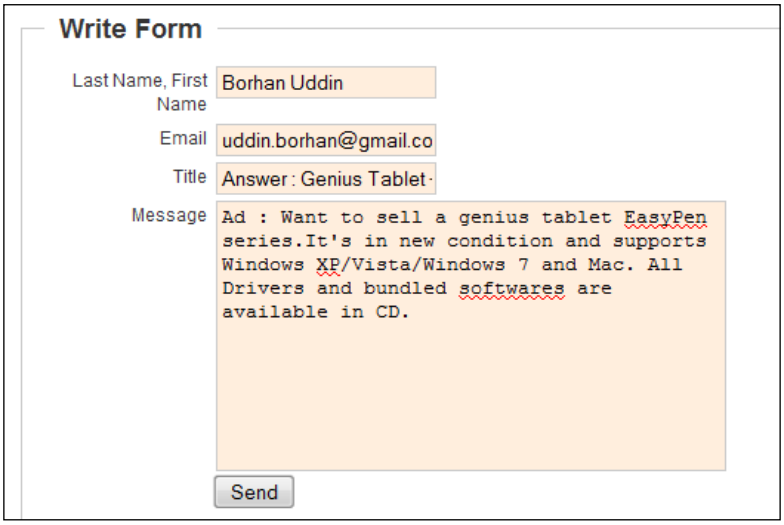
18. Click on any category and you will see the ads in that category listed. The list shows the item title, an image, and a brief description.



19. Click on an ad, and you will see the details, containing contact information, price, and all images of the product.



20. As you can see, the title of the ad and any other information, along with the image, is displayed. Click on the **Send an Email** link and that will show you a form to contact the ad poster.



21. Buyers may contact the ad owner through this e-mail form and settle the buying process.

Using Google AdSense

Google AdSense is a way to monetize your site's content. The AdSense ads are displayed based on the keywords present on your site. That means that AdSense displays content-related ads from which visitors may benefit, while you can earn money based on the clicks made. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to use Google AdSense with Joomla! content.

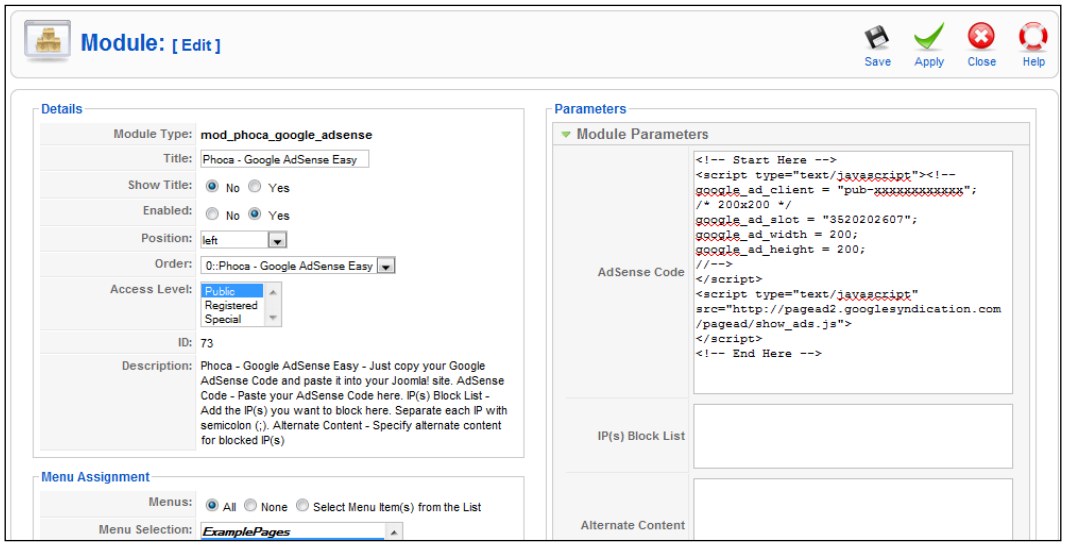
Getting ready...

There are a few modules and plugins for using Google AdSense with Joomla!. Among them, the most popular and easiest one to use is the **Phoca Google AdSense Easy** Module. Download this module from `http://www.phoca.cz/download/category/7-phoca-google-adsense-easy-module?download=74%3Aphoca-google-adsense-easy` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it....

After installing the module, follow these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This will show the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules. From the list, click on the **Phoca Google AdSense Easy** module to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Select a position to publish the module. Now go to your Google AdSense account and generate the AdSense code. Copy the code and paste it into the **AdSense Code** field in the **Module Parameters** section. In the **IP(s) Block List** field, specify the IP addresses for which you want to block AdSense ads. Optionally, you can specify alternate content for blocked IPs in the **Alternate Content** field. When finished, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Preview the site's frontend, and you will see the module with the AdSense ad.

Using ads within your content

Although showing Google AdSense ads in a module can help you show ads relevant to your site, you may also want to display article-specific ads. To do so, we need to add a Google AdSense ad to content articles. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add any ad to an article.

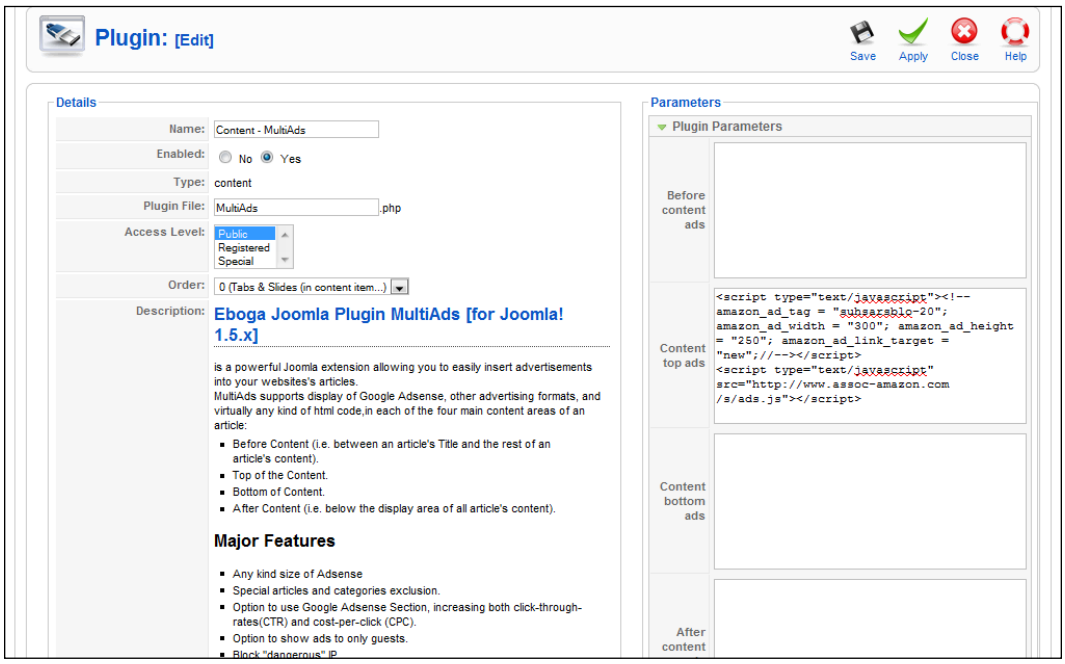
Getting ready...

MultiAds is a popular plugin for showing any kind of ads inside Joomla! articles. Download this plugin from `http://www.eboga.org/joomla-plugin-mulitads.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the plugin, follow these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, select **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From this list, click on the **Content – MultiAds** plugin to show the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



2. First select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then go to the **Plugin Parameters** section. This section has some configuration fields. You can put any code for ads, from Yahoo!, Google AdSense, Amazon Associates, or any other, in the boxes: **Before content ads**, **Content top ads**, **Content bottom ads**, and **After content ads**. For example, we put the Amazon associate code in the **Content top ads box**. From the other fields, you can exclude ads by article ID, category ID, section ID, or author ID. When finished configuring, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Now preview the site's frontend and click on any article. Note that an ad is inserted within the article.



As you can see, the ad is inserted in the content automatically. If you create an AdSense code and insert the code at any position inside the article, relevant ads will be displayed. However, be cautious of using too many ads inside an article.

Adding a simple shop to your Joomla! site

If you want to sell products or services through your Joomla! website, you may add a shopping cart to it. There are many fully-fledged shopping carts for Joomla!, and VirtueMart is one of the most popular shopping carts for Joomla!. However, managing a shopping cart like VirtueMart requires much effort from the administrator's end. A full book has been written on administering the VirtueMart shopping cart. You may use VirtueMart when your site's main purpose is to sell and buy goods. However, when you occasionally want to sell items, it's better to use a simpler solution. In this recipe, I will show you how to implement a simple shop for Joomla!.

Getting ready...

SimpleCaddy is a popular shopping cart for Joomla! that allows you to sell products in small quantities, with the ease of administration. Download this extension from `http://atlanticintelligence.net/index.php?option=com_phocadownload&view=category&id=1:simplecaddy-core&Itemid=93` and extract the compressed file. You will get three installation files: one for the component, one for the module, and one for the plugin. Install all three files from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

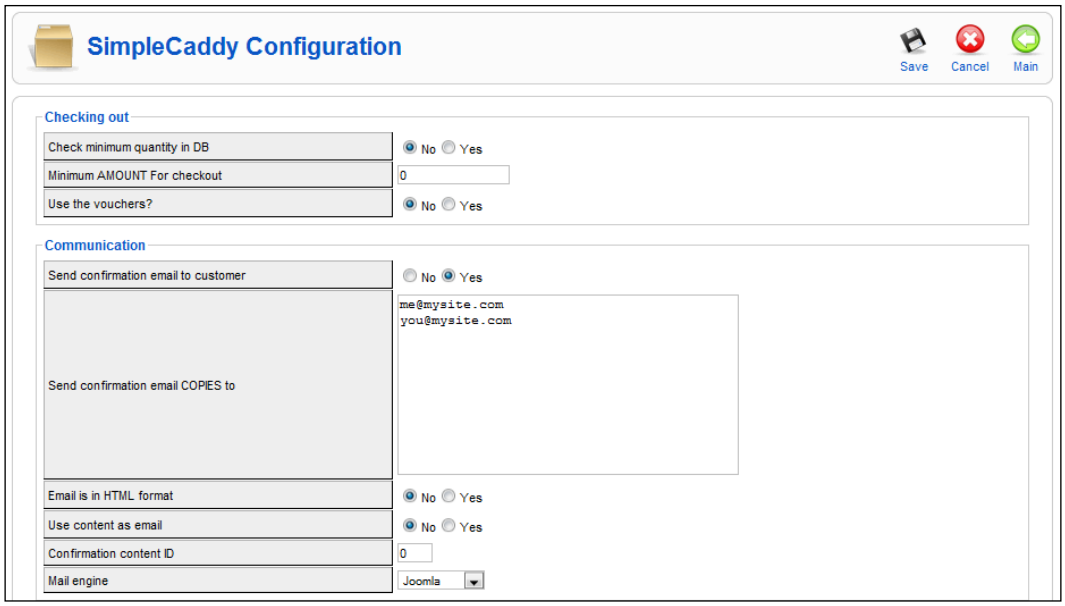
How to do it...

After installing the component, module, and plugin, follow these steps:

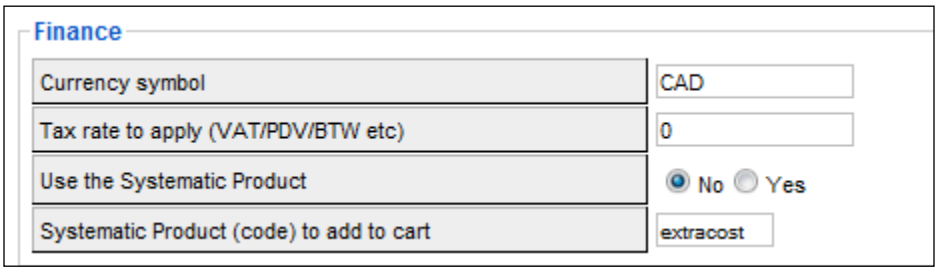
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | SimpleCaddy** to show the **SimpleCaddy Control centre** screen.



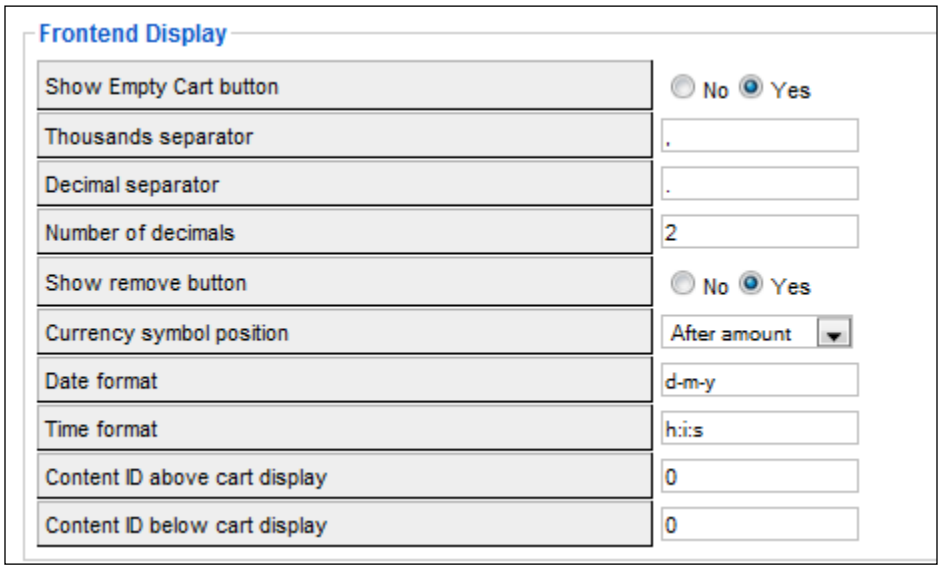
2. Click on the **Configuration** icon on the **SimpleCaddy Control centre** screen to show the **SimpleCaddy Configuration** screen.



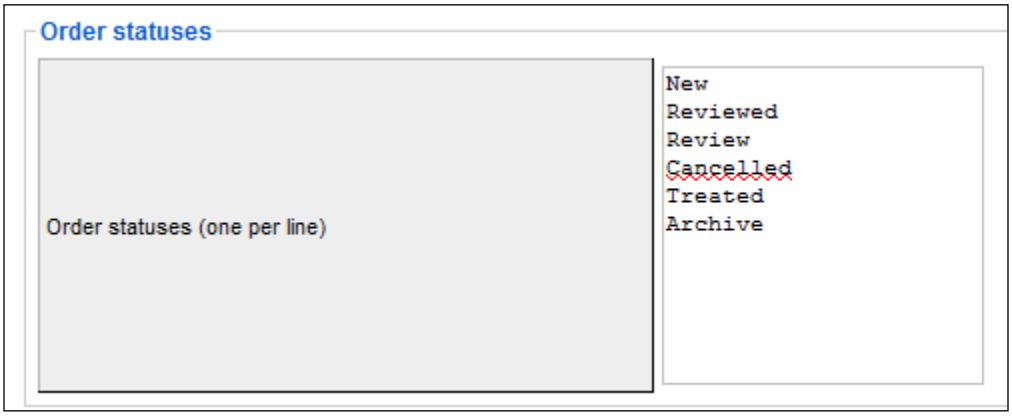
3. From the **Checking out** section, select **Yes** in **Check minimum quantity in DB** to ensure that the ordered item is of a sufficient number to meet the requirements. You can also specify the **Minimum AMOUNT for checkout**. Select **Yes** in the **Use the vouchers?** checkbox to enable the use of vouchers for payments.
4. From the **Communication** section, select **Yes** in **Send confirmation email to customer**, and specify e-mail addresses in the **Send confirmation email COPIES to** field. If you want to send the e-mail in HTML format, select **Yes** in the **Email is in HTML format** field. You can also choose to send content as an e-mail. In the **Mail engine** drop-down list, you can select either **Joomla** or **Alternative**.



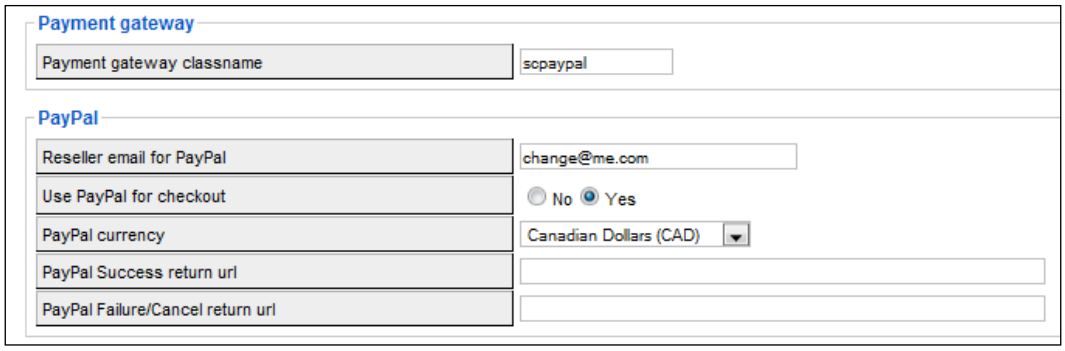
5. From the **Finance** section specify the currency symbol, such as US$ or AU$. Then specify the tax rate (as a percentage).



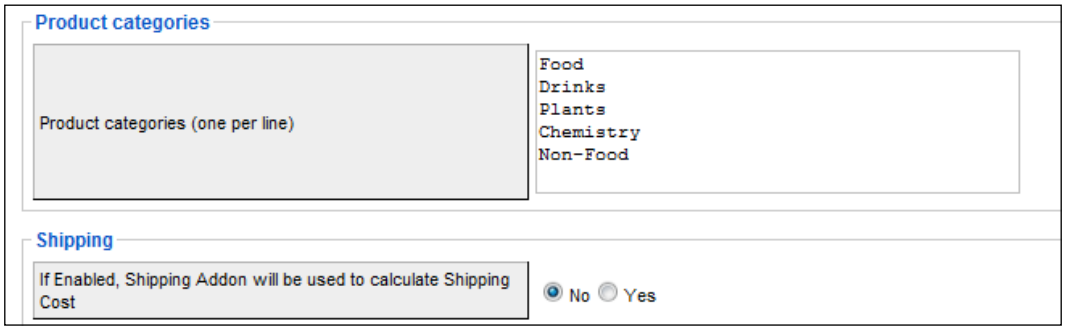
6. From the **Frontend Display** section, you can choose to show an empty cart button, a thousands separator, decimal separator, the number of decimals, and a remove button. You can specify how to show the date format, currency symbol, and content items above and below the cart display.



7. From the **Order Statuses** section, you can specify the status of orders to control your workflow. Any new status you want to add should be added on a new line.

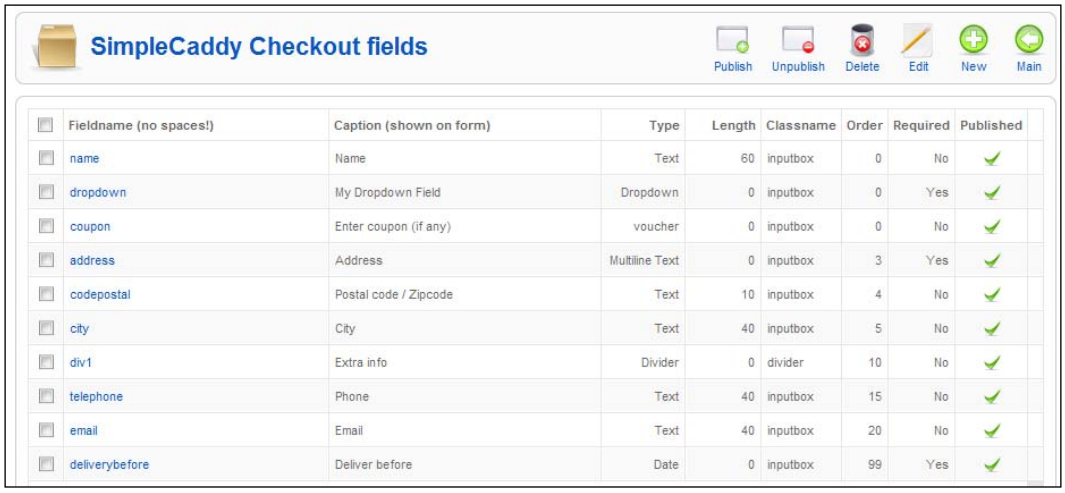


8. From the **Payment gateway** section, you can specify the name of the payment gateway class. By default, it is **scpaypal** that is used for processing payments with PayPal. If you have another gateway class, you can mention that name here.
9. From the **PayPal** section, you can provide details about your PayPal account, namely the e-mail address, whether to use PayPal for checkout or not, the currency for PayPal checkout, success return URL and failure/cancel return URL. If you have a PayPal account, you can find these settings easily.



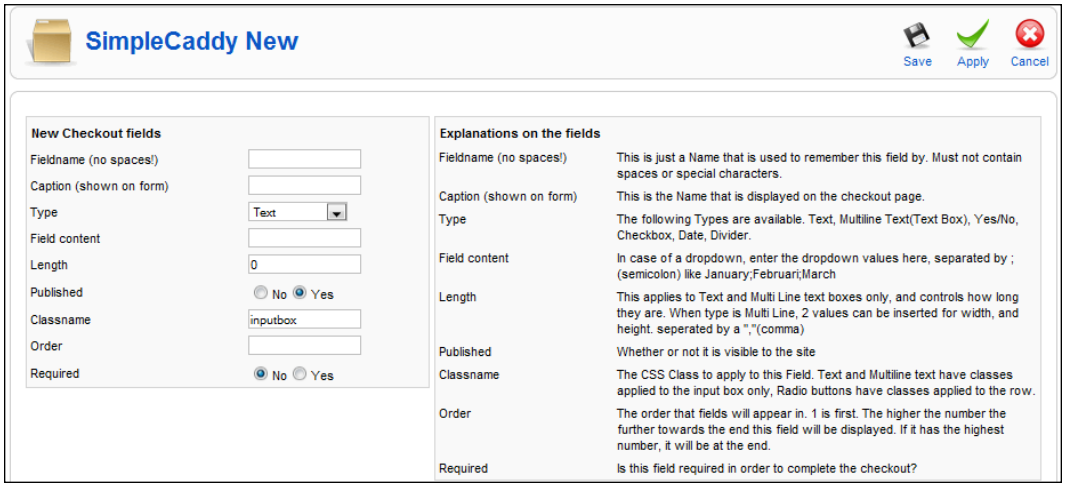
10. From the **Product categories** section, you can create product categories. Each category name should be on a separate line. Then, from the **Shipping** section, select **Yes** to enable the shipping module that adds shipping costs based on shipping addresses.

11. When you have finished configuring all of the options, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar to save your configurations. Now click on the **Main** icon in the toolbar to go to the **SimpleCaddy Control centre** screen. Click on the **Checkout Fields** icon to go to the **SimpleCaddy Checkout fields** screen.

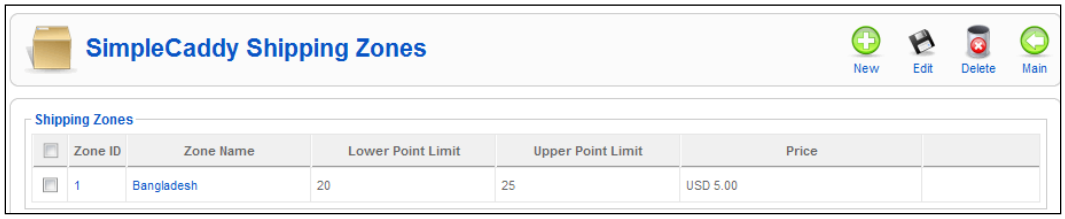


Fieldname (no spaces!)	Caption (shown on form)	Type	Length	Classname	Order	Required	Published
name	Name	Text	60	inputbox	0	No	✓
dropdown	My Dropdown Field	Dropdown	0	inputbox	0	Yes	✓
coupon	Enter coupon (if any)	voucher	0	inputbox	0	No	✓
address	Address	Multiline Text	0	inputbox	3	Yes	✓
codepostal	Postal code / Zipcode	Text	10	inputbox	4	No	✓
city	City	Text	40	inputbox	5	No	✓
div1	Extra info	Divider	0	divider	10	No	✓
telephone	Phone	Text	40	inputbox	15	No	✓
email	Email	Text	40	inputbox	20	No	✓
deliverybefore	Deliver before	Date	0	inputbox	99	Yes	✓

12. The **SimpleCaddy Checkout fields** screen lists all of the available fields that are to be displayed on the checkout page. If you want to add a field, click on the **New** icon in the toolbar to show the **SimpleCaddy New** screen.



13. In the **SimpleCaddy New** screen, you need to name the field, provide a caption for the field, select the field type, content, and length. You can also set the **Published** status by selecting **Yes** or **No**. You can make this field required by selecting **Yes** in the **Required** field. When finished, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar to save the field. You will be taken back to the **SimpleCaddy Checkout fields** screen. Add as many fields as you want to. Click on the **Main** icon to go back to **SimpleCaddy control Centre**. Click on the **Shipping Zones** icon to show the **SimpleCaddy Shipping Zones** screen.



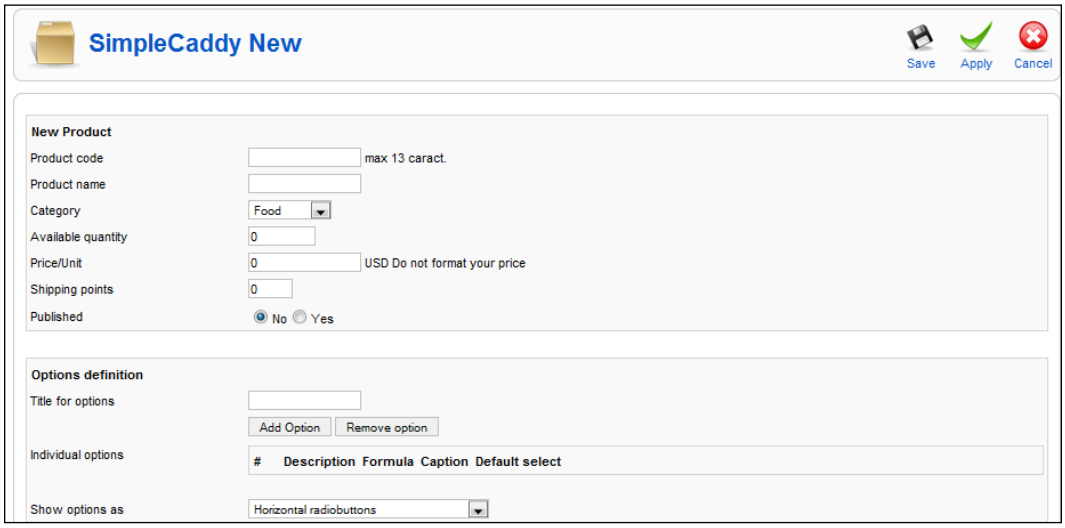
14. For creating a new shipping zone, click on the **New** icon in the toolbar. That show the **SimpleCaddy New** screen.



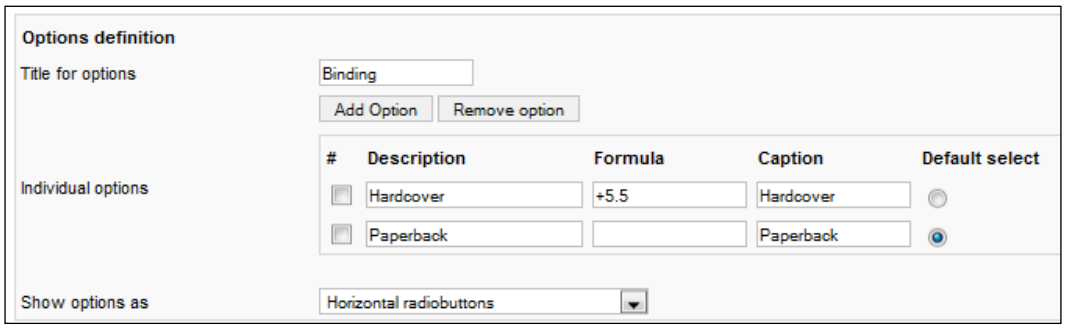
15. Provide a **Zone Name**, then specify the **Lower Point Limit** and **Upper Point Limit**, and finally the **Price** (the shipping cost to this zone). Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar. Click on the **Main** icon in the toolbar to go back to **SimpleCaddy Control centre**.
16. In the **SimpleCaddy Control centre** screen, click on the **Products** icon. This will shows the **SimpleCaddy Products** screen, listing all the available products.



17. For adding a product, click on the **New** icon in the toolbar on the **SimpleCaddy Products** screen. This will show the **SimpleCaddy New** screen for adding a new product.

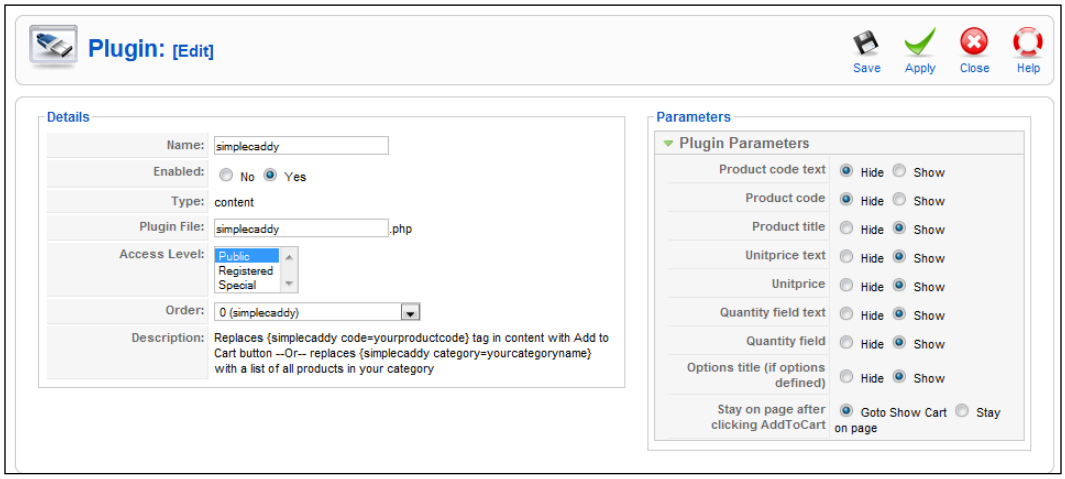


18. Type a unique product code, and then the product title. Select a category, specify the available quantity, price per unit, and shipping points. Then select **Yes** in the **Published** field. You can specify options from the **Options definition** section.



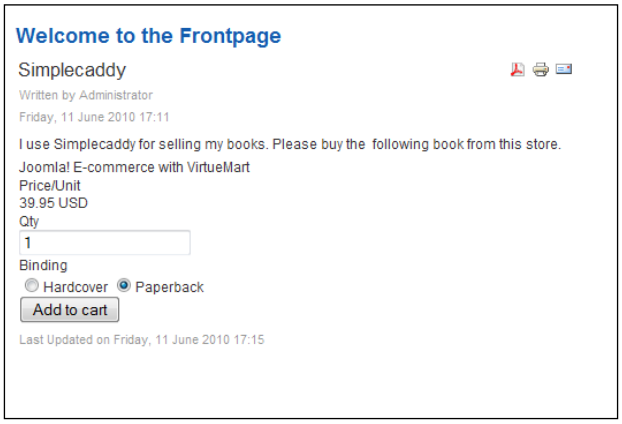
19. For adding options, first type a title for option and click on the **Add Option** button. This adds a row. In that row, provide a description in **Description** column. In the **Formula** column, specify a price increase or decrease for choosing that option. Then specify the caption for that option. If this is the default option, check the radio button in the **Default select** column. Add as many options as you want. In the **Show options as** drop-down list, either select **Horizontal radiobuttons**, **Vertical radiobuttons**, **Dropdown list**, **Standard list**, or **Singleline textbox**.
20. When finished, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar to add the product to the product catalog.

21. Select **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **simplecaddy** plugin to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.

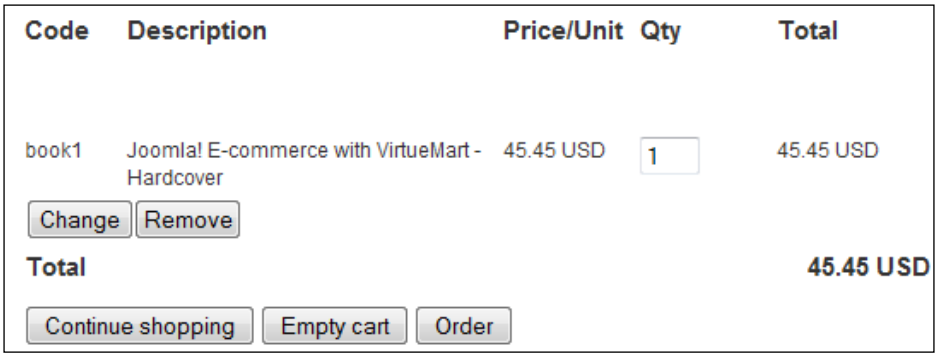


22. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. From the **Plugin Parameters**, select **Show** for all fields, except the first two. In the **Stay on page after clicking AddToCart** field, select **Goto Show Cart**. Click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.

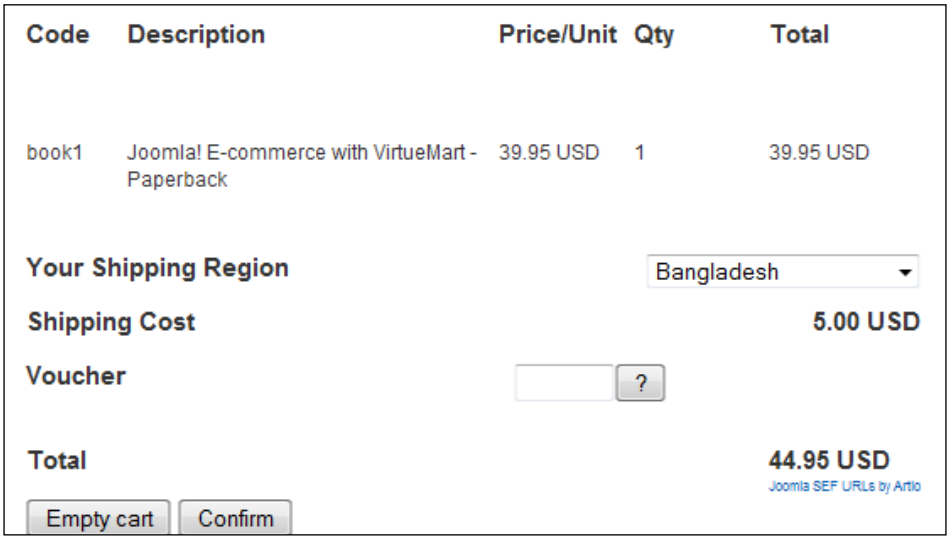
23. Now select **Content | Article Manager** and then click on the **New** icon. This will show the article editor. In the editor, type your text and then use a code like this: `{simplecaddy code=yourproductcode}`. Then replace `yourproductcode` with the product code of the product you want to display here. For example, we use `{simplecaddy code=book1}`. Save the article and preview it in the frontend. The article should show the product, as seen in the following screenshot:



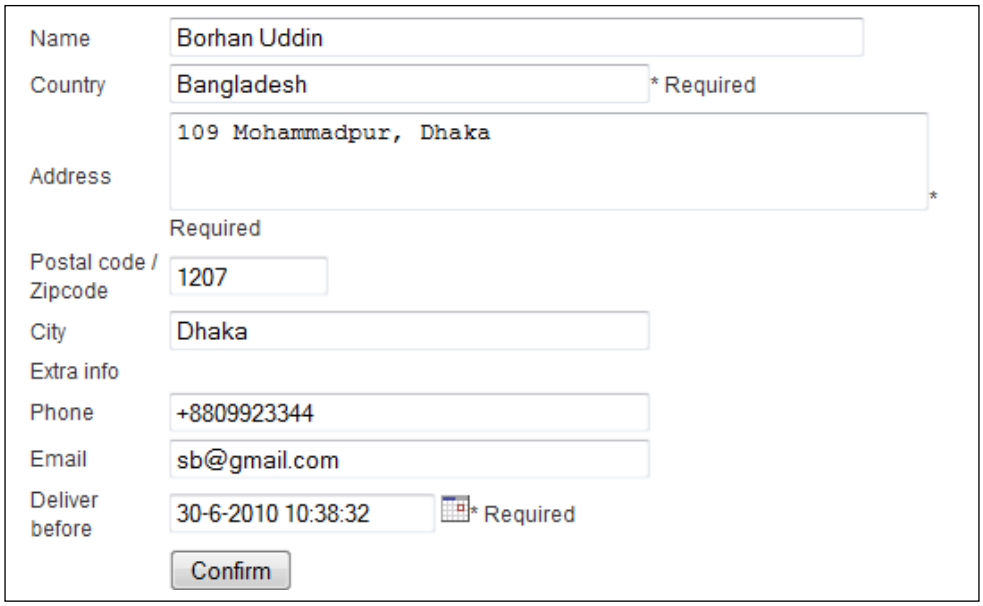
24. As you can see, there are two options for **Binding**. Select **Hardcover** and click on the **Add to cart** button. This will show the following screen:



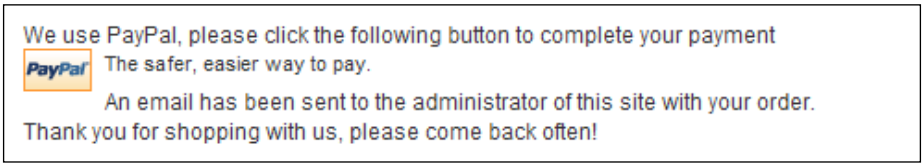
25. As you can see, selecting **Hardcover** increases the price by 5.5 USD. You can change the quantity, remove the item from the cart, or continue shopping while keeping the items in the cart. When ordering, click on the **Order** button to take you to the following screen.



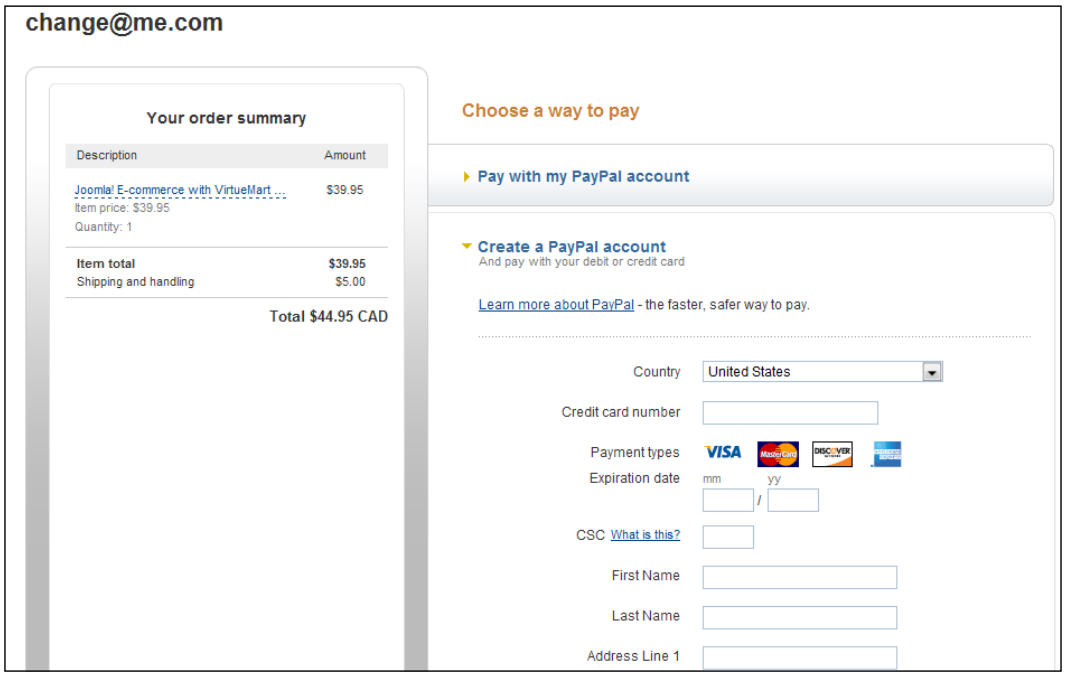
26. From the **Your Shipping Region** drop-down list, select a shipping region and the **Shipping cost** field will be updated. If you have a voucher to redeem, type the code in the **Voucher** field. Then click on the **Confirm** button. That will show the following screen.



27. This screen is for entering shipping addresses. Complete this form and in the **Deliver before** field, select a date before which you want the product to be delivered. When finished, click on the **Confirm** button to show the following message:



28. Click on the **PayPal** icon in this screen. This will take you to the PayPal payment screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



29. At the top, you will see the account to which you are paying. Then you will see your order summary. On the right, you can pay using your existing PayPal account or you can create a new PayPal account, if you don't have one. You can also pay using your credit card. You need to provide your card information and then click on the **Agree and Continue** button. Based on the provided information, your payment will be processed by PayPal and the shop owner will be notified.
30. Upon notification, the shop owner will ship the products to the customer.

As you can see, SimpleCaddy is used for selling simple products through normal article pages. You can create a section for product pages and provide a menu link to that section. This helps visitors to buy all of their items in one place.

13
Managing Structure and Navigation

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding a drop-down menu
- Adding a FishEye menu
- Adding a Flash menu
- Adding a quick jump menu
- Adding a tree menu
- Adding an image menu
- Adding a sliding menu
- Generating a site map based on the menu structure

Introduction

Structure and navigation are very important aspects of a successful website. First, you need to structure the site's content appropriately for the visitors. Second, you need to design the navigation to help visitors find things on your website easily. Many different types of menus are used to make navigation easier. In Joomla!, you can also use different types of menus. Besides menus, a site map can help visitors to get an idea about your site at a glance and find information easily. In this chapter, we will discuss ways of implementing different types of menus on a Joomla! website. We will also show you how to create a site map.

Adding a drop-down menu

Drop-down menus are common to many sites, and it is likely that you will use it for some sites. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to add a drop-down menu to a Joomla! website.

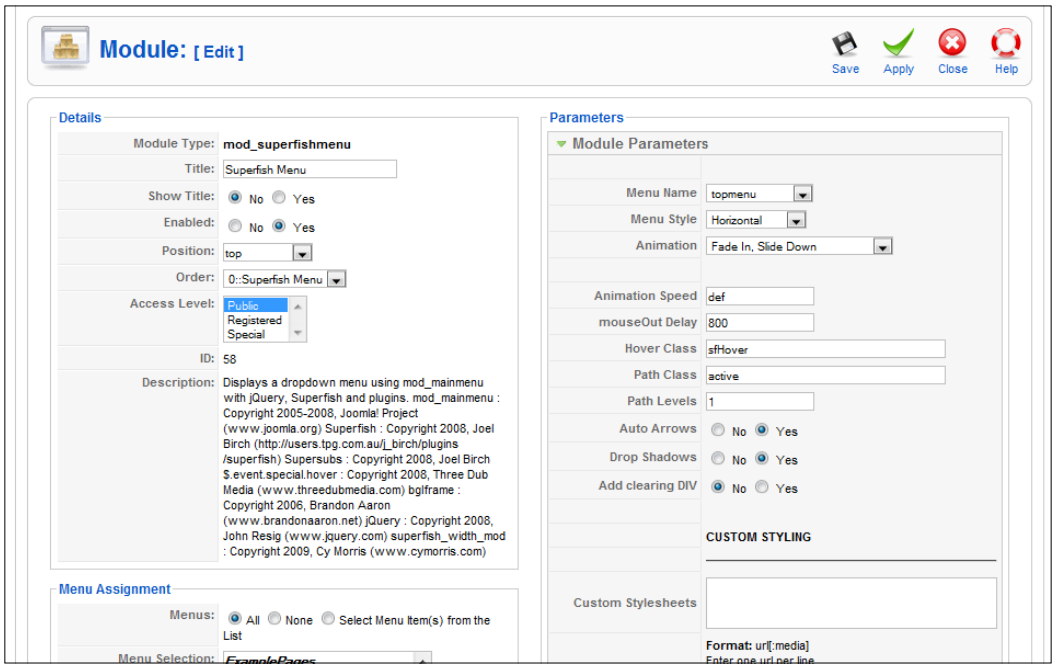
Getting ready...

The SuperFish extension helps you to build a drop-down menu for Joomla!. Download this module from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/superfishmodule/frs` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

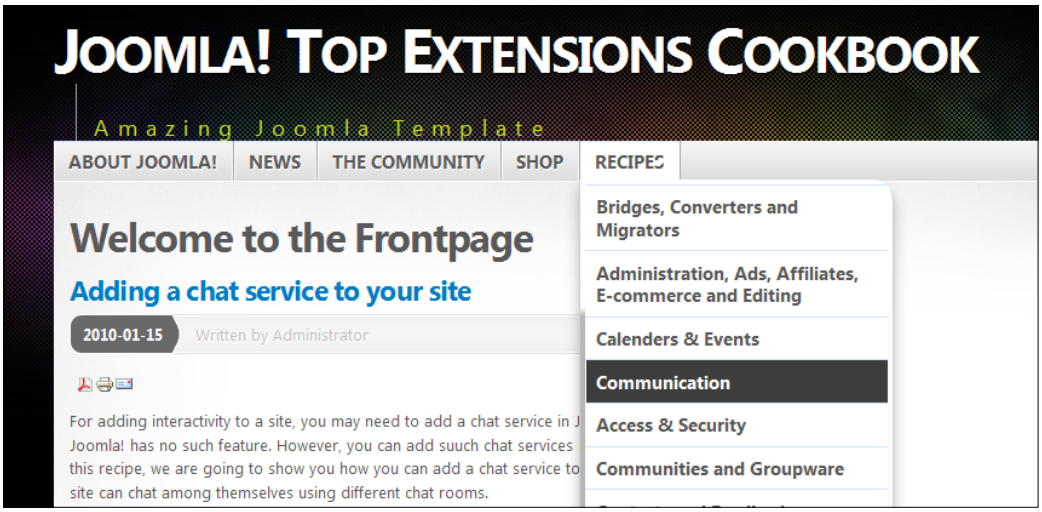
After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From the list, click on the **SuperFish Menu** module, this shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then select a module position, for example **top**. In the **Menu Assignment** section, select **All** in the **Menus** field. From the **Module Parameters** section, select a menu, for example **topmenu**, from the **Menu Name** drop-down list. Select **Horizontal** in the **Menu Style** drop-down list. Accept the default settings for the other fields, and click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

Preview the site's frontend and you will see the menu at the specified menu position. The menu item with children will have a drop-down effect, as shown in the following screenshot.



Note that items of **topmenu** are displayed in this module. The **Recipes** menu has sub-menu items, and scrolling the mouse pointer over this menu drops down other child items.

For using the module for other menus, just copy the menu and link it to a different menu, for example **usermenu**, and publish it in a different module position.

Adding a FishEye menu

FishEye menus are a special type of menu, where each link is represented by an icon. When a mouse pointer hovers over the icon it increases in size, showing a nice animation. In Joomla!, we can add such menus through a third-party extension. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to add a FishEye menu on your Joomla! website.

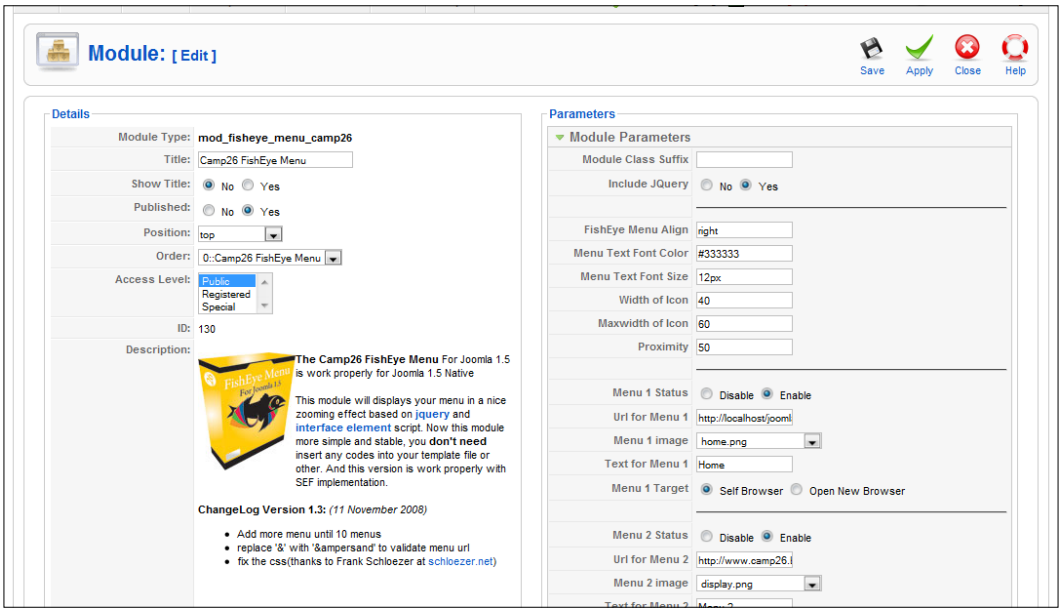
Getting ready...

The FishEye Menu For Joomla 1.5 is the most popular extension for adding FishEye menu. Download this module from `http://www.camp26.biz/component/option,com_remository/Itemid,7/func,startdown/id,8/` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From the list, click on the **Camp26 FishEye Menu** module to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field, **Yes** in the **Published** field, and **top** in the **Position** drop-down list. In the **Module Parameters** section, select **Yes** in the **Include JQuery** field, select **Enable** in **Menu 1 status**, **Menu 2 status**, **Menu 3 status**, and other such fields. Just after the **Menu 1 status** field, type the URL of the linked page in the **URL for Menu 1** field. Select an icon from the **Menu 1 image** field. Type the menu title in the **Text for Menu 1** field. In the **Menu 1 target** field, select **Self Browser**. For other menus, also fill in these fields accordingly. For each menu item, you need to specify its URL, title, icon, and target. When finished, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

Preview the site's frontend and you should see the module at the top. When the mouse pointer hovers over an icon in this menu, it looks like the following screenshot:



Note that hovering the mouse pointer over the home icon makes it larger. Taking the pointer over to another icon will also enlarge that icon.



This module allows you to add a maximum of ten items and you cannot add sub-menus to these items. Also, note that the module does not show the items from Joomla!'s menu structure. You need to add each link separately.

Adding a Flash menu

Flash menus are useful for certain types of websites. Flash menus display the menu with attractive animations. You can use a Flash menu on a Joomla! site through third-party extensions. In this recipe, you will learn how to add a Flash menu to your Joomla! website.

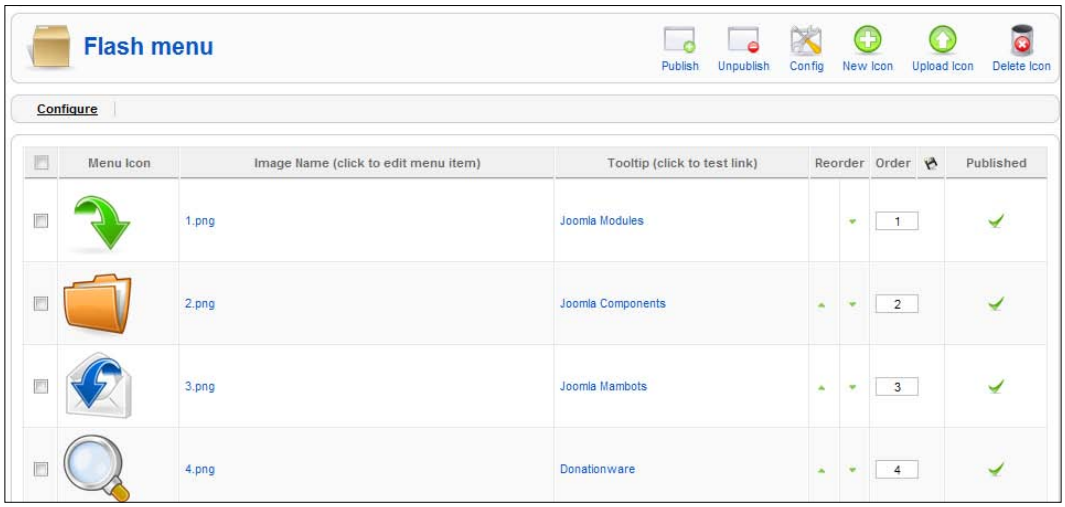
Getting ready...

There are several extensions for adding Flash menus. Out of these, a popular extension is Flash Menu. Download this extension from `http://www.webmaster-tips.net/Download/Start-download/1-Joomla-Modules/174-Joomla-1.5-Module-Flash-Menu.html`. Please note that downloading the extension requires registration on that site. After downloading, first extract the files to get two files: one for the component and one for the module. Install both the component and the module from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

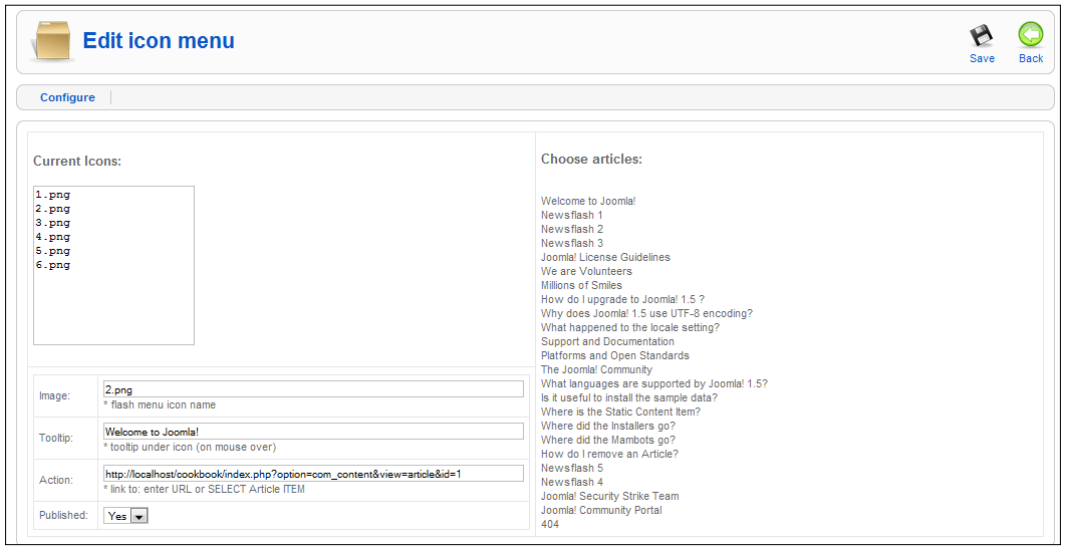
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Component | Flash Menu**. This shows the **Flash menu** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



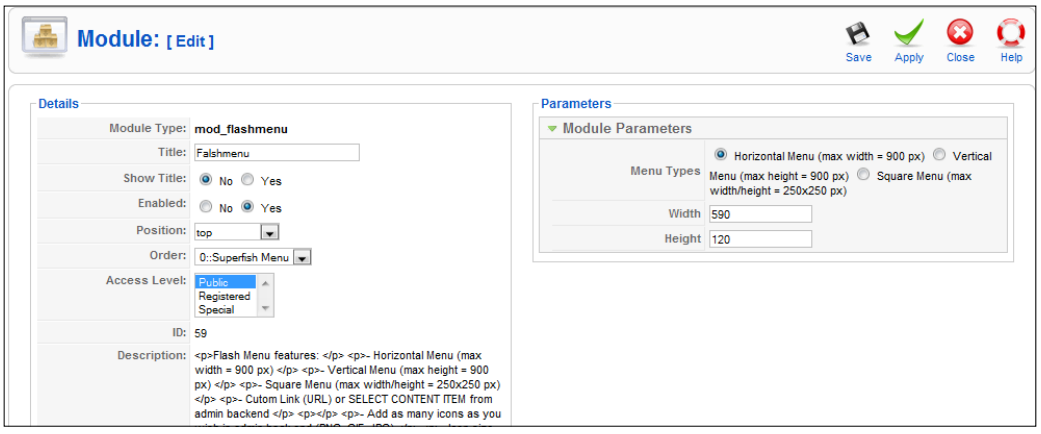
2. The **Flash menu** screen lists the icons that can be used for menus. You can add new icons to this screen. Click on the **Upload Icon** button in the toolbar to show the following screen for uploading icons.



3. Click on the **Browse...** button, select an image, and click on the **Upload Icon** button. That uploads the image to the icon library. Upload as many images, in the `.png` format, as you need to use as icons in the .png format.
4. For creating a new icon, click on the **New Icon** button in the toolbar. This shows the following screen, listing the available icons and articles:

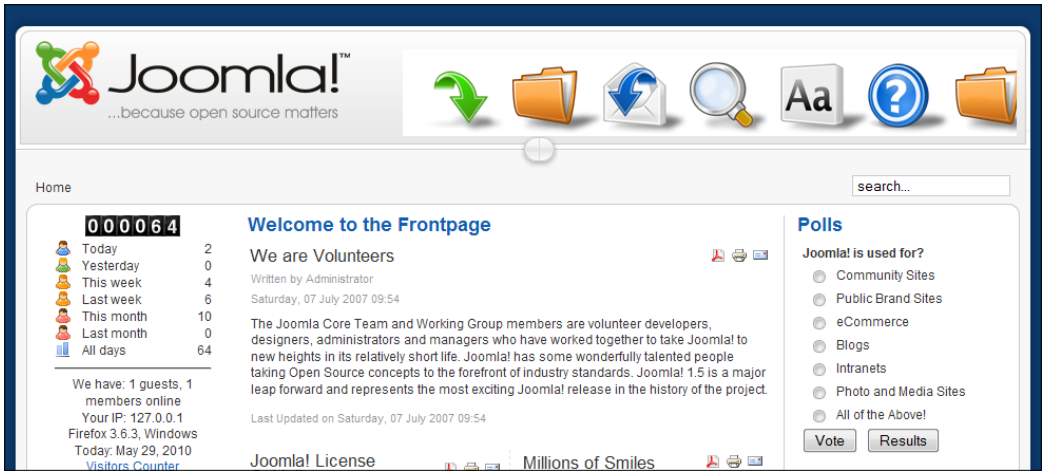


5. The available icons are shown in the **Current Icons** box. A list of the available articles are shown in the **Choose articles** section. You need to type the icon name, say `2.png`, in the **Image** field, and then type a tool tip for that item. In the **Action** field, you can type the URL for that item or simply click on an article from the list shown to the right. This inserts the URL of that article in the **Action** field. Then select **Yes** in the **Published** drop-down list. Click on **Save** in the toolbar.
6. Now click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From the list, click on **Falshmenu** (yes it is spelt incorrectly in the screenshot) module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



7. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field, **Yes** in the **Enabled** field, and **top** from the **Position** drop-down list. From the **Module Parameters** section, select **Horizontal Menu**. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.

Preview the site's frontend, and you will find the Flash menu in the top module position. It will look like the following screenshot:



As you can see, the icons are displayed in this menu. Moving the mouse pointer over an icon will animate that icon, and a tool tip will be displayed beneath the icon. Clicking on an icon will take you to its associated URL.

Adding a quick jump menu

Quick jump menus are straightforward. Visitors see a drop-down list, and from there they can choose a destination. Selecting an item from the drop-down list takes the visitor to that menu item. It is a simple way to navigate a large site, where listing all the sections and categories in a traditional menu seems lengthy. In this recipe, you will learn to use a quick jump menu in your Joomla! website.

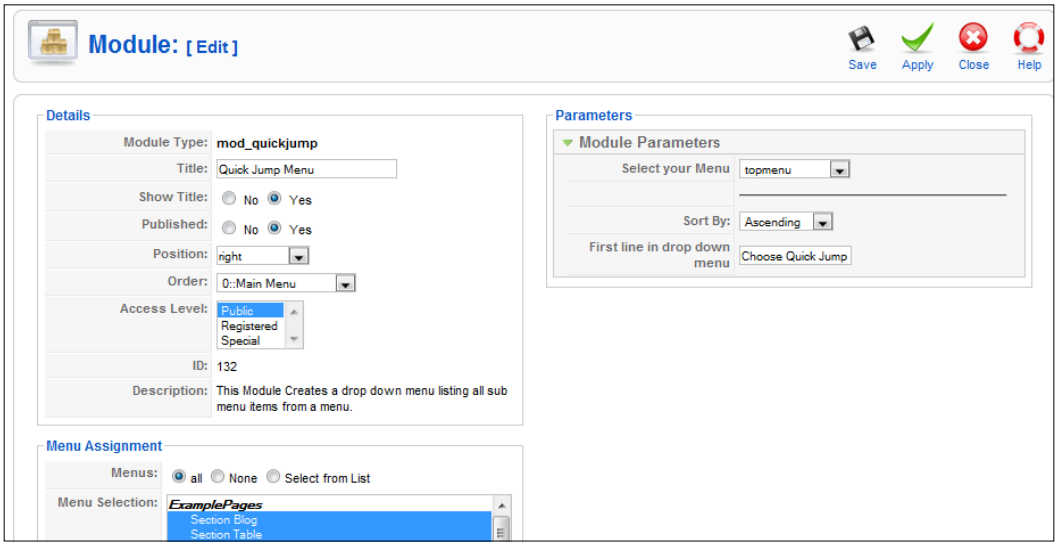
Getting ready...

The Quick Jump Menu module for Joomla! allows you to add a quick jump menu. Download this module from `http://www.nehmewalid.com/downloads.html` (you need to register first) and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

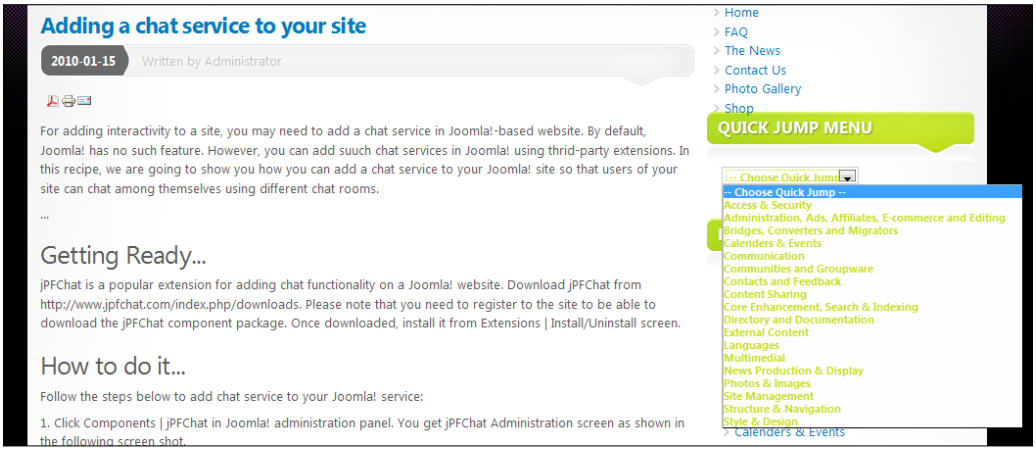
After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all the installed modules. From the list, click on the **Quick Jump Menu** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Type a title for the menu and select **Yes** in the **Show Title** radio box. Then select **Yes** in the **Published** field and select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. From the **Menu Assignment** section, select **all** in the **Menus** radio list. From the **Module Parameters** section, select a menu, for example **topmenu**, in the **Select your Menu** drop-down list. You can also type the text to be shown as the first line of the drop-down list in the **First line in drop down menu** field. When finished, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

Preview the site and you will see the published module. Click on the drop-down list and you will see the menu items, as shown in the following screenshot:



Select a quick jump menu item and you will be taken to that section.

Note that you can add any menu to this module. However, only second level items will be available through the drop-down list.

Adding a tree menu

Tree menus are also common to many websites. There are several extensions in Joomla! for creating tree menus. Joomla! also has a built-in mechanism to build a tree menu. However, using a third-party extension is much easier. In this recipe, you will learn how to create a tree menu in Joomla!.

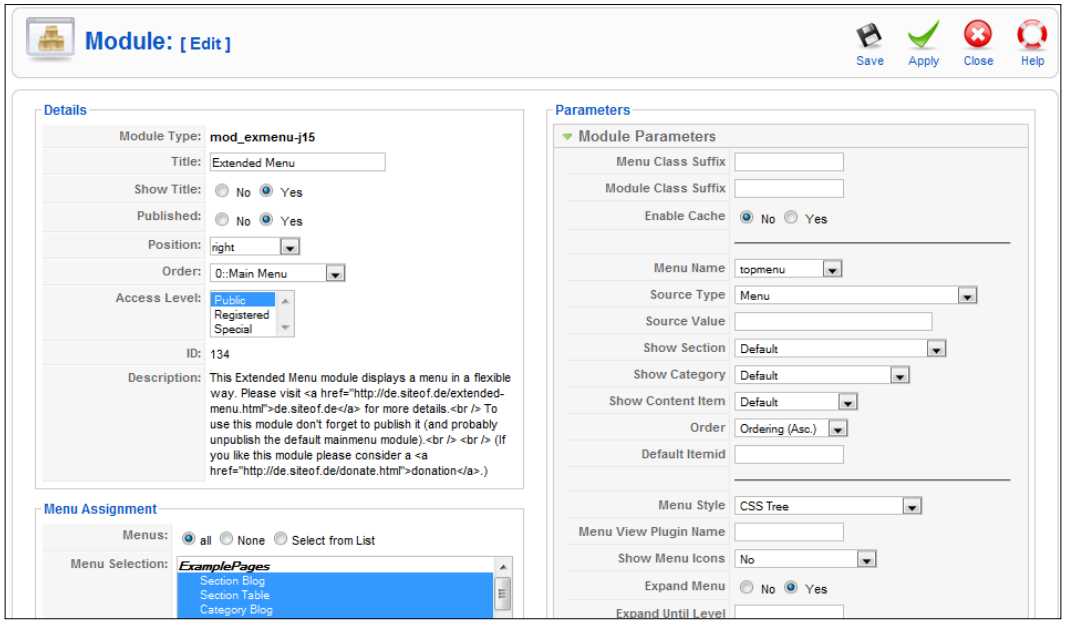
Getting ready...

The Extended Menu module is a popular extension for adding a tree menu to a Joomla! site. Download this module from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/extended_menu/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From the list, click on the **Extended Menu** module to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Type a title for your module, or accept the default, and select **Yes** in the **Published** field. Also select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. In the **Module Parameters** section and from the **Menu Name** drop-down list, select the menu you want to publish. Let's select **topmenu** here. In the **Menu Style** field, select **CSS Tree** and select **Yes** in the **Expand Menu** field. Accept the default value for the other fields. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

Preview the site's frontend and you will see the menu in the specified module position, as shown in the following screenshot:



As you can see, the sub-menu items under the **RECIPES** menu item are expanded by default, as we have selected **Yes** in the **Expand Menu** field.

You can also create a drop-down menu. For doing so, in the **Menu Type** field select **Select List**. This will show the menu as a drop-down list, as shown in the following screenshot:



As seen in the drop-down list, selecting an item will take you to the specified page or section.

Adding an image menu

Menus are often represented by icons. On the home page of a site, menu items can be shown as icons. In Joomla!, there are several extensions for showing image-based menus. In this recipe, you will learn how to add an image menu.

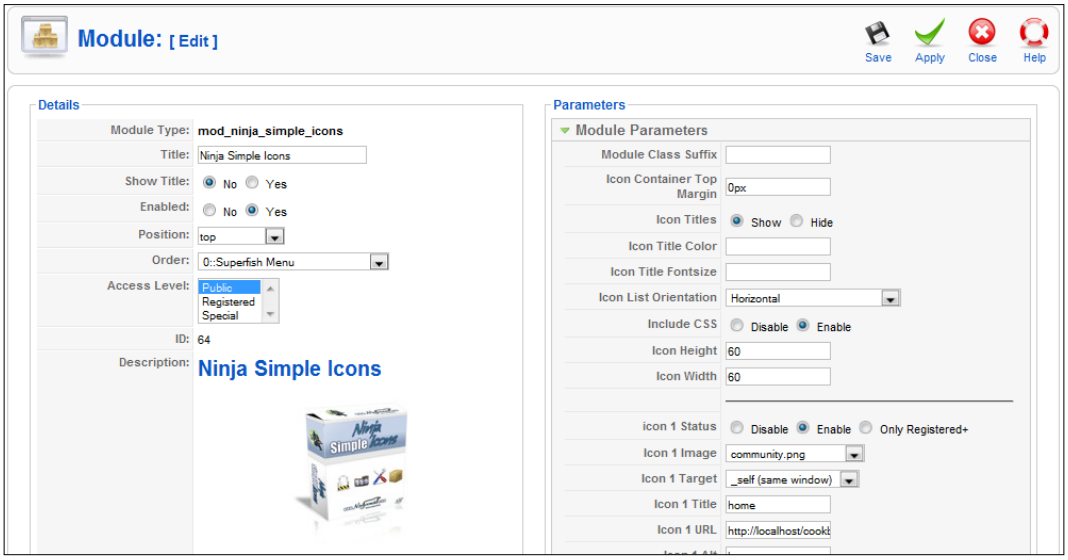
Getting ready...

Ninja Simple Icons is a popular module for adding image-based menus to Joomla! websites. Download this extension from `http://ninjaforge.com/index.php?option=com_ninjacentral&task=download&id=52&Itemid=236` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

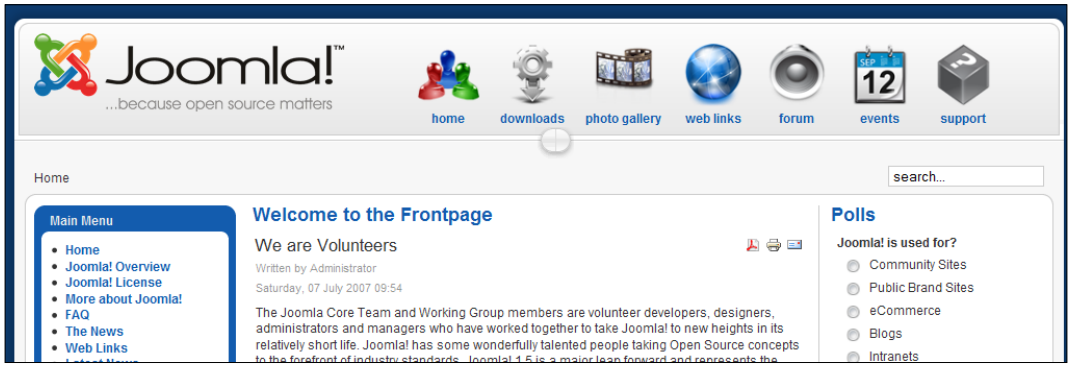
After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From the list, click on the **Ninja Simple Icons** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field, **Yes** in the **Enabled** field, and **top** in the **Position** drop-down list. In the **Module Parameters** section, select **Horizontal** in the **Icon List Orientation** drop-down list. In the **Icon Height** and **Icon Width** fields, specify the height and width of the icons in pixels. Then select **Enable** in the **Icon 1 Status** field. Select an icon from the **Icon 1 Image** drop-down list. Select target for the link from the **Icon 1 Target** drop-down list. In the **Icon 1 Title** field, type a title for the menu item. Then type the URL in the **Icon 1 URL** field. Also type alternative text for icon 1 in the **Icon 1 Alt** field. For other entries, you need to fill in similar fields such as Icon 2, Icon 3, and so on. When you have finished configuring all icons, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.

Now preview the site's frontend and you will see the menu icons in the top module position, as seen in the following screenshot:



As you see, the icons with associated labels are displayed. Clicking on one of these icons will take you to the associated URL.

You can also add your own icons. For doing so, design your icons and upload those to the `./modules/mod_ninja_simple_icons/assets/images` directory. Then you can select those icons when configuring menu items.



One of the limitations of this module is that you can add a maximum of twenty menu items, without any sub-menu items. It does not allow you to use the Joomla! menu structure, too.

Adding a sliding menu

Sliding menus are also interesting, and many sites use them to show interactivity. For Joomla!, there are some extensions that help to add sliding menus. In this recipe, you will learn how to add a sliding menu to a Joomla! website.

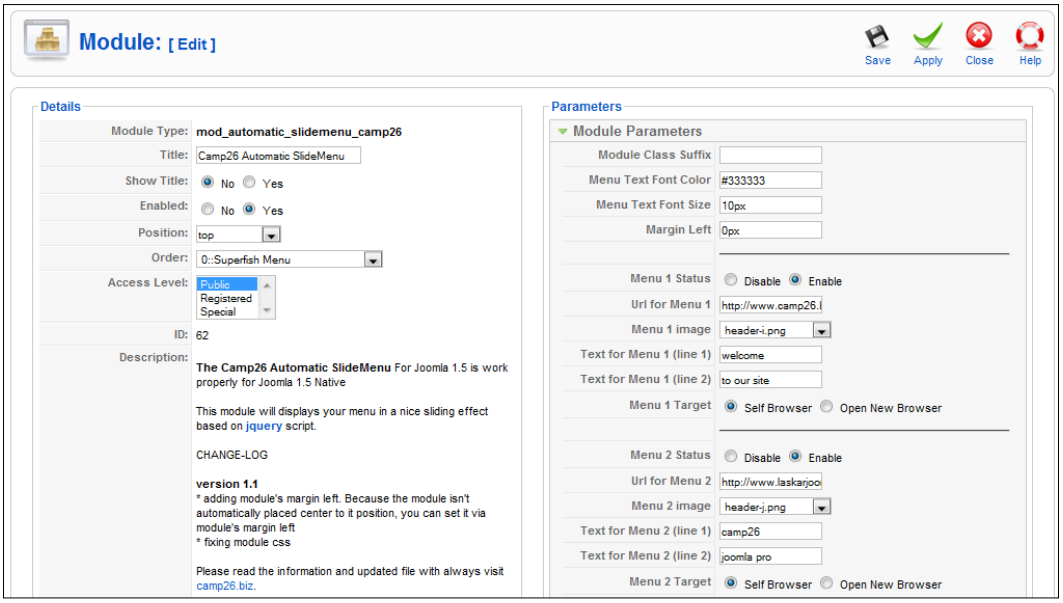
Getting ready...

Camp26 Automatic Slide Menu allows you to add a vertical sliding menu to a Joomla! site. Download this extension from `http://www.camp26.biz/component/option,com_remository/Itemid,7/func,fileinfo/id,172/` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

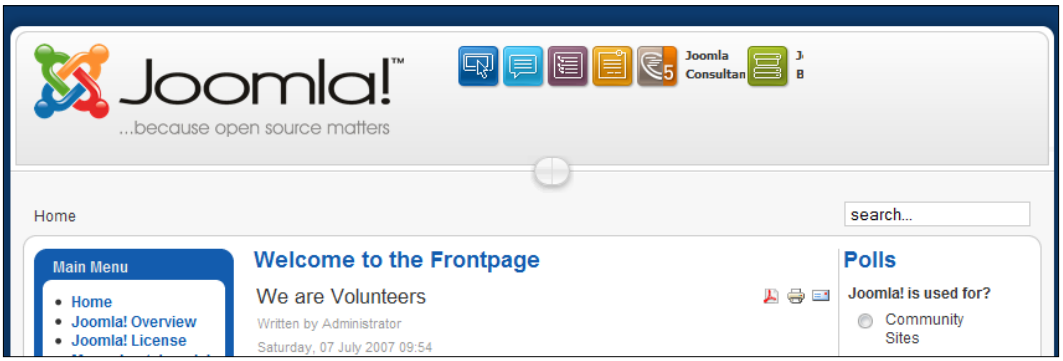
After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From the list, click on the **Camp26 Automatic SlideMenu** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field, **Yes** in the **Enabled** field, and **top** in the **Position** field. From the **Module Parameters** section, select **Enable** in the **Menu 1 Status** field. Then type the URL link in the **Url for Menu 1** field. In **Menu 1 image** field, select an image to display for the menu. Then type a menu description in the **Text for Menu 1 (line1)** and **Text for Menu 1 (line 2)** fields. Select **Self Browser** in the **Menu 1 Target** field. This defines one menu item. For other items, fill in the similar fields with Menu 2, Menu 3, and other such names.
3. Click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.

Preview the site's frontend and you will see the menu in the top module position, as seen in the following screenshot:



As you can see, the icons automatically slide and the associated text is displayed. This is why the module is called the automatic sliding menu.

You can use your own icons for these menu items. Upload those icons to the images subdirectory under the module's directory, for example, the `./modules/mod_automatic_slidemenu_camp26/automatic_slidemenu/images` directory. After uploading the images to this directory, you can select one for menu items from the **Menu x image** drop-down list.

Generating a site map based on the menu structure

Site maps are an essential part of a website if you want it to be indexed by search engines. It also helps visitors to quickly navigate around your site. Site maps can be generated automatically, based on the menus defined inside Joomla!. In this recipe, we are going to learn how to add site maps to Joomla! websites, based on the menus.

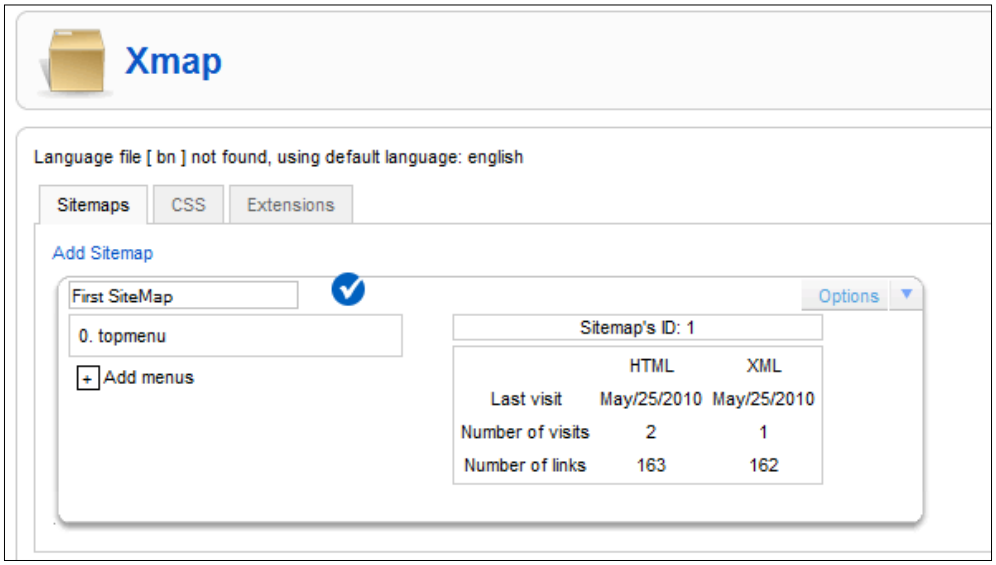
Getting ready...

Xmap is a popular extension for generating site maps in Joomla!. It generates site maps based on menu definitions. Download this extension from `http://joomla.vargas.co.cr/en/downloads/doc_download/135-xmap-127-for-joomla-15`. You get a single ZIP file for the extension. First, extract the ZIP file to get two files: one for the component and the other for the plugin. Install both files from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

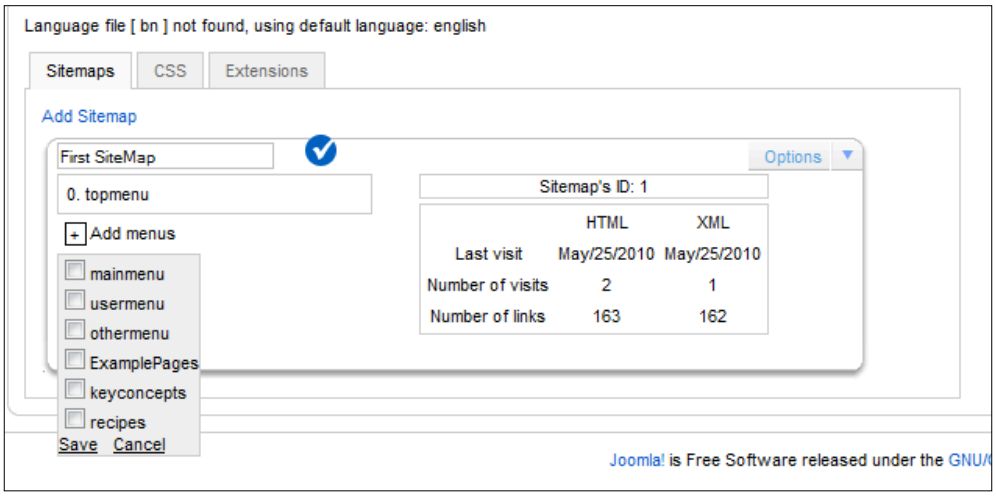
How to do it...

After installing the component and plugin, carry out the following steps:

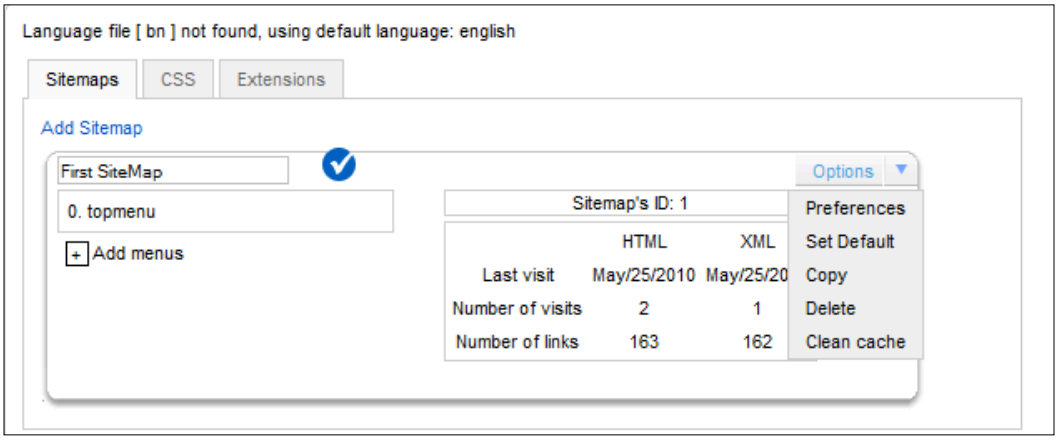
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Xmap**. This shows the **Xmap** screen. In the **Sitemaps** tab, click on the name of the first site map and type the name of that site map, for example **First SiteMap**.



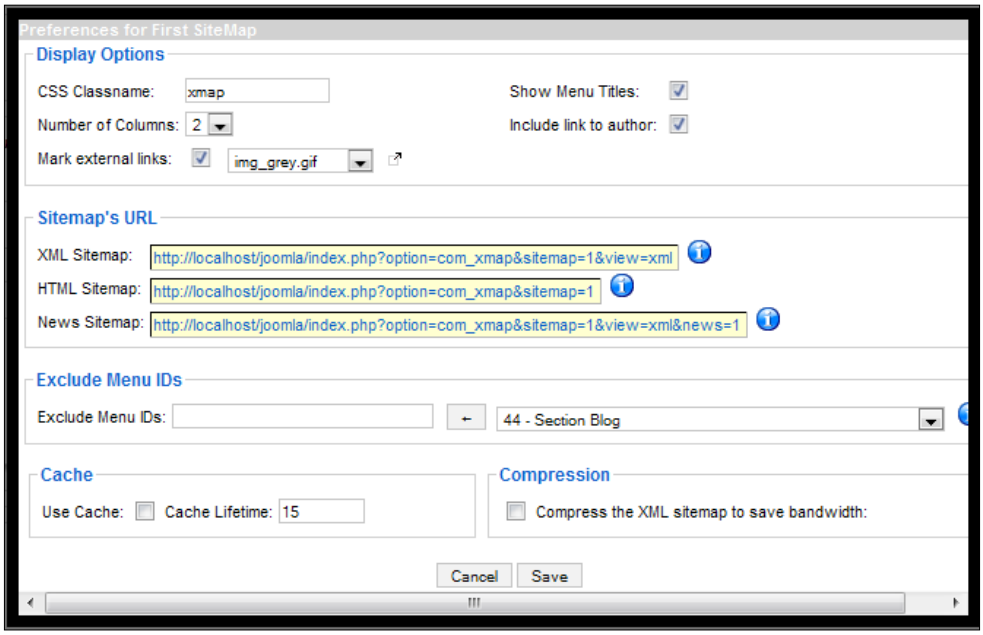
2. When you have finished assigning a name to the site map, click on the blue tick icon. Now click on **Add menus** and you will see a list of the available menus to add.



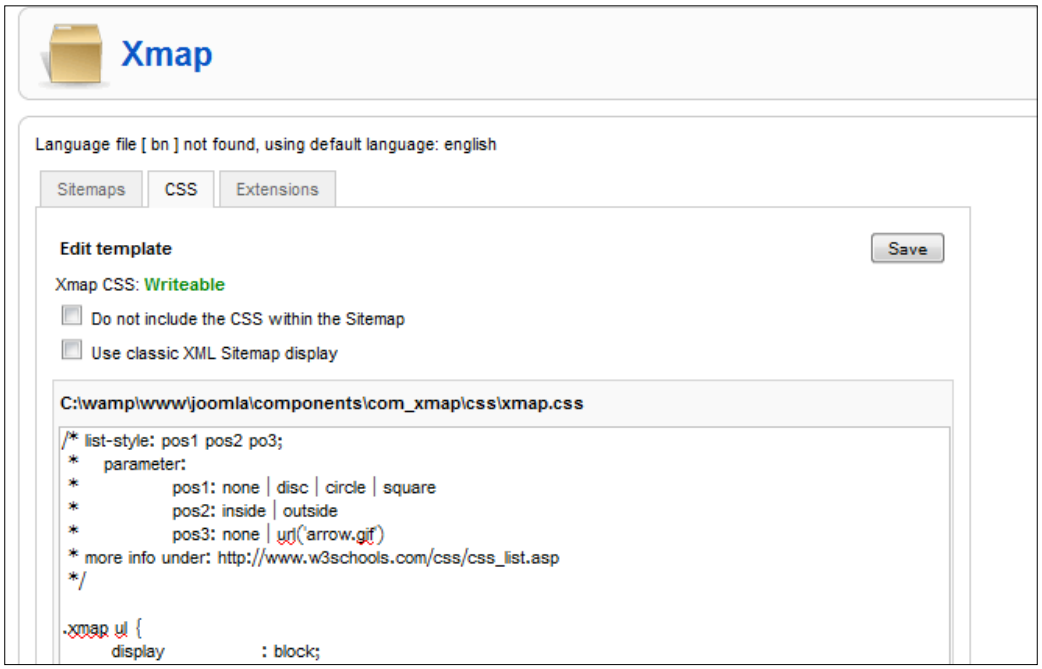
3. Check the menus you want to add and then click on the **Save** button in that dialog. This adds the selected menu. Now click on **Options** and you will see a list of the available drop-down menus.



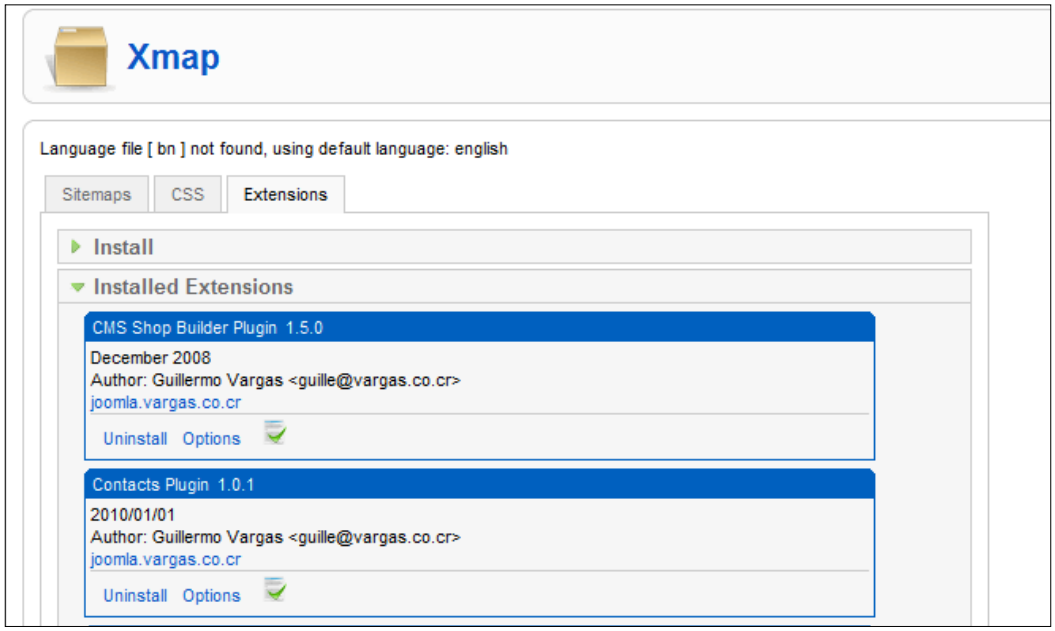
4. Click on the **Set Default** menu to set the current site map (that is **First SiteMap**) as the default site map. Then click on **Preferences**. This will show the **Preferences** pop-up window, as shown in the following screenshot:



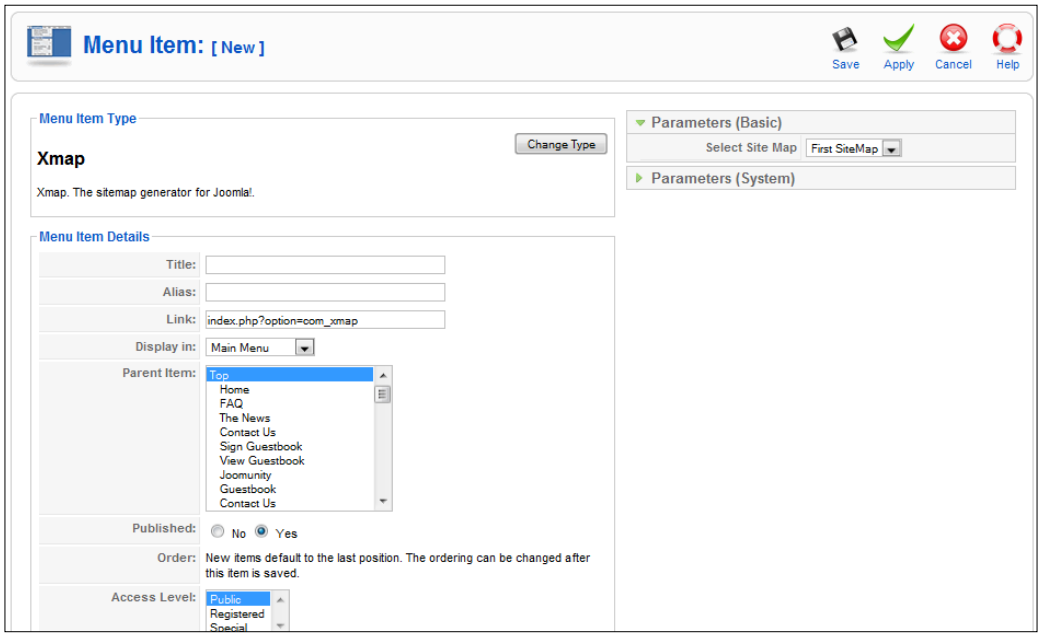
5. As you can see, there are several options to customize the site maps. First, select **2** in the **Number of Columns** drop-down list. Also, you can check the **Mark external links** checkbox to mark external links with a specified image. If you want to show the title of the menus, check **Show Menu Titles**. You can also choose to use cache and compression. When you have finished configuring the options, click on the **Save** button. You will then see the **Xmap** screen again. Click in the **CSS** tab on this screen.



6. You can change the CSS styles from the **CSS** tab and also choose not to use CSS. After changing the styles, click on the **Save** button. Then click on the **Extensions** tab and **Installed Extensions**. This shows a list of the installed extensions for **Xmap**.

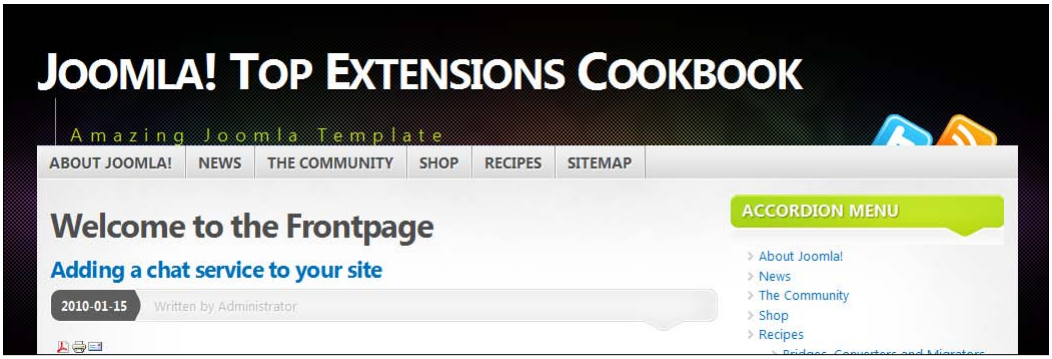


7. You can uninstall unnecessary extensions and install new extensions by clicking on the **Install** link. You will find the Xmap extensions at `http://extensions.joomla.org/extensions/extension-specific/xmap-extensions`.
8. Click on **Menus | Main Menu** and then click on the **New** icon. This shows the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. Click on **Xmap** on this screen, and you will see the following screen:

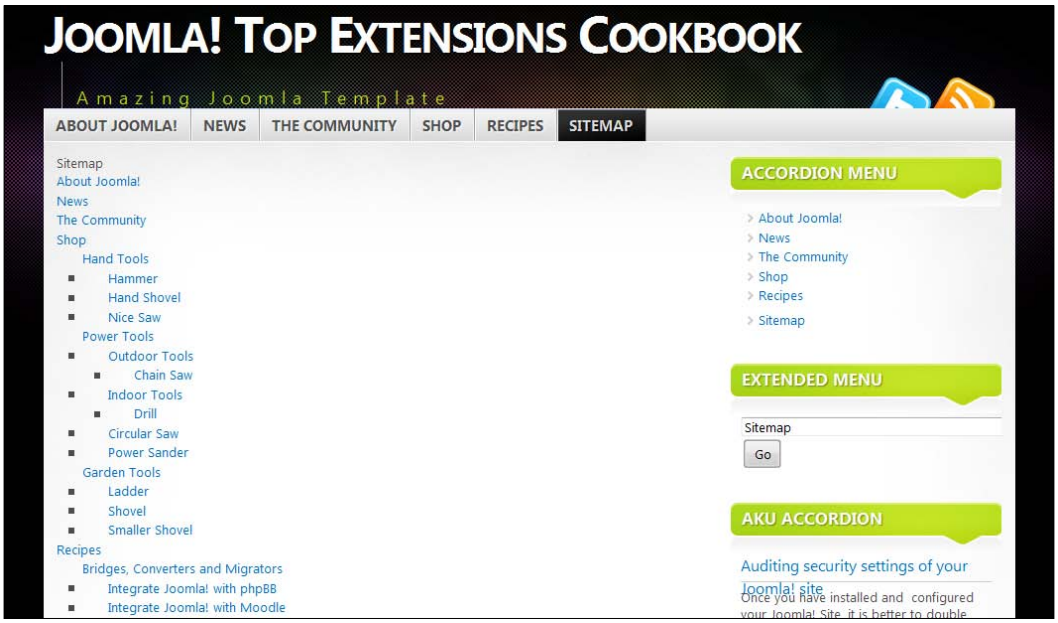


9. Type a title for the menu item in the **Title** field. Select **Yes** in the **Published** field and **Public** in the **Access Level** field. From the **Select Site Map** drop-down list in the **Parameters (Basic)** section, select **First SiteMap** (or the name of site map you have created). Click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.

Preview the site's frontend and you will see the menu item in the menu.



Click on the menu item, and you will see the site map has been created, based on the menu you chose earlier.



As you can see, the site map shows all expanded menu items and their sub-items.

14
Working with Style and Design

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Creating reusable content templates
- Viewing an external website in a Lightbox
- Publishing modules as tabs
- Using tabs and slides in content

Introduction

There are many ways to enhance the style and design of a Joomla! site. Some of the extensions allow you to add some flavor to the design, whereas others add extra functionality regarding usability and accessibility. In this chapter, we will mainly focus on the popular extensions that can be used to enhance the style and design, as well as the content layout of a Joomla! site.

First, we will discuss creating content templates that can be reused to write the same type of content. For example, we can create and save content templates to write news articles, and later use that template to save time.

Links to websites and images can be interesting when they allow us to preview the remote website or images in a Lightbox. In this chapter, we will learn how to implement such a Lightbox in Joomla! using a third-party extension.

Publishing modules as tabs can save some space on the front page. We will see how to use a popular module to show modules in tabs or slides. Later, we will also explore how to use tabs and slides in content articles.

Creating reusable content templates

Joomla!'s **Article Manager** allows you to create content for Joomla! sites. In this article manager, when creating a new article, you always need to select a section, category, whether published or not, whether to show the article on the front page or not, the author name, author's alias, and some other parameters. How about selecting these parameters for a particular type of article, and saving the parameters as a template for later use? This can be done using a third-party Joomla! extension. In this recipe, you are going to learn how to use content templates for Joomla! sites.

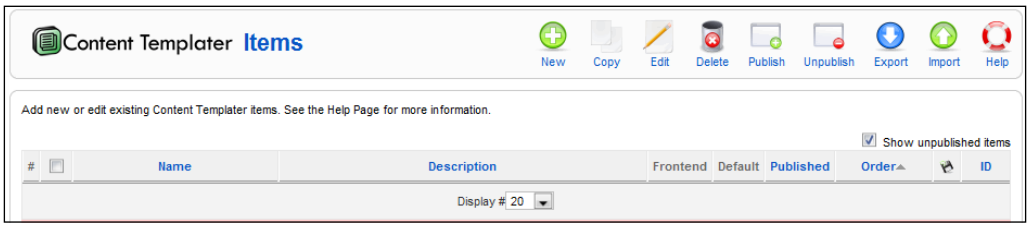
Getting ready...

Content Templater is a popular extension for Joomla! that allows you to create content templates and use those for creating new content. Download this extension from `http://www.nonumber.nl/extensions/contenttemplater?tab=download` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen. It will install a component and a plugin.

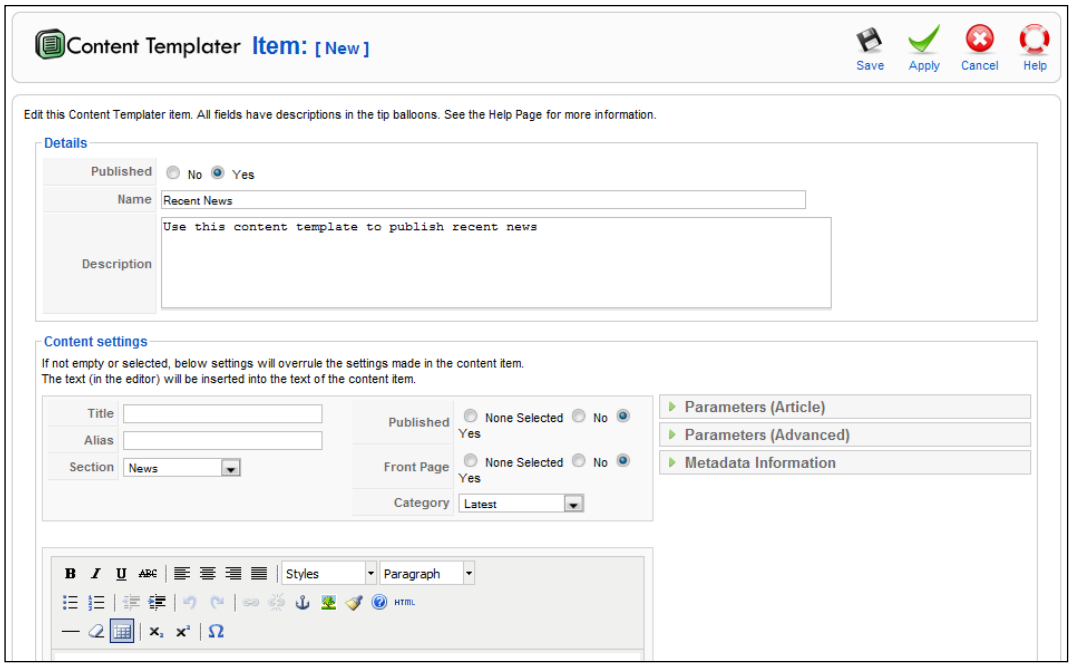
How to do it...

After installing the extension, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Content Templater**. This shows the **Content Templater** screen.

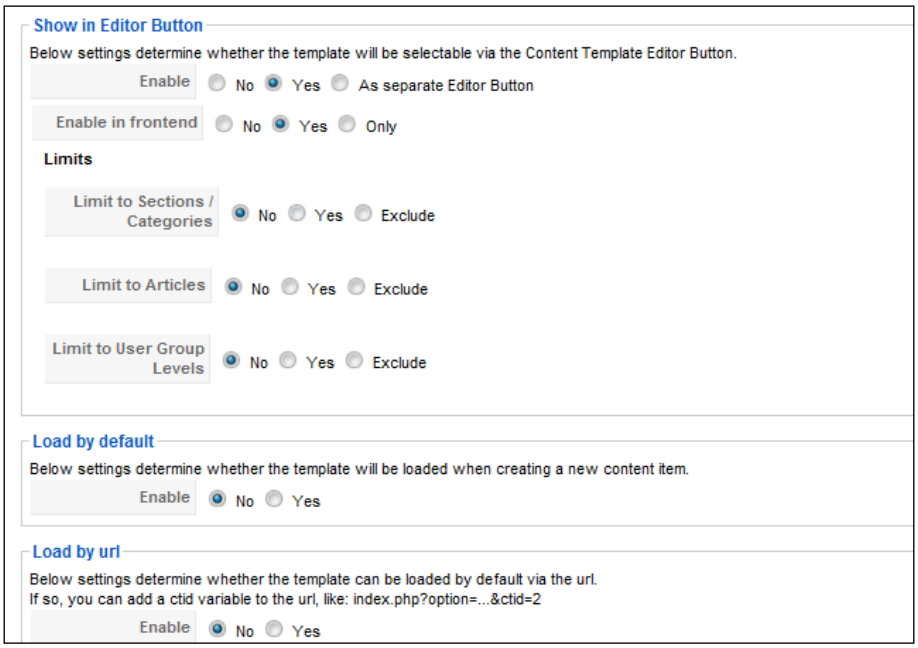


2. Click on the **New** button to create a new content template. This will show the **Content Templater Item: [New]** screen.

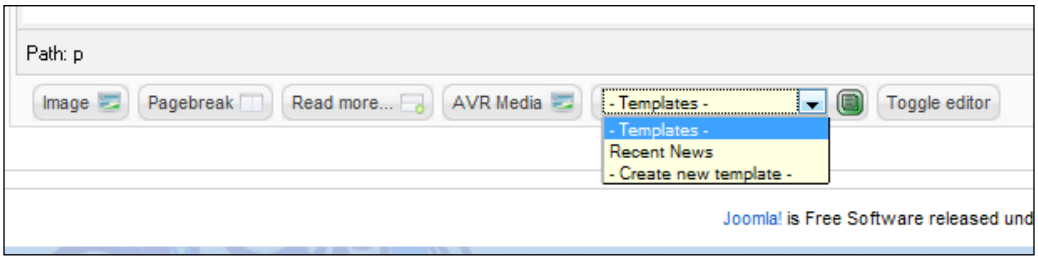


3. First select **Yes** in the **Published** field. This will publish the content template you are creating. Then provide a name for this content template and a short description.

4. In the **Content settings** section, type the **Title** of the article and an **Alias**. Then select a **Section** and **Category** for this content type. In the **Published** and **Front Page** fields, select **Yes** so that the content is published and shown on the front page. Click on **Parameters (Article)**, **Parameters (Advanced)**, and **Metadata Information**. Configure the parameters that will be used commonly for all content using this content template. Go down to the **Show in Editor Button** section as shown in the screenshot below:



5. Select **Yes** in the **Enable** and **Enable in frontend** fields. You can also limit the use of this template's availability into sections/categories, articles, and user group levels. Select **Yes** in the **Enable** field in the **Load by default** section. When you have finished, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
6. For trying the result of this content template, go to **Content** | **Article Manager** and click on the **New** icon in the toolbar. This opens the **Article: [New]** screen. At the bottom of the editor, you will see a new editor button for selecting a template.



7. From the drop-down list of templates, select a template and you should see that the fields in the article have been changed as per your template configuration. Now complete the other parts of the articles and you are done. This template reduces many repetitive tasks for article creation.

Viewing an external website in a Lightbox

Lightbox shows images in a floating dialog without leaving your site. The use of Lightboxes for showing images in a gallery is common practice today. You can think of showing a preview of a linked website or an image in a Lightbox. This will help visitors to stay on your site, as well as view the remote content. In this recipe, you are going to see how to add a Lightbox in a Joomla! site that can show a remote website or linked image.

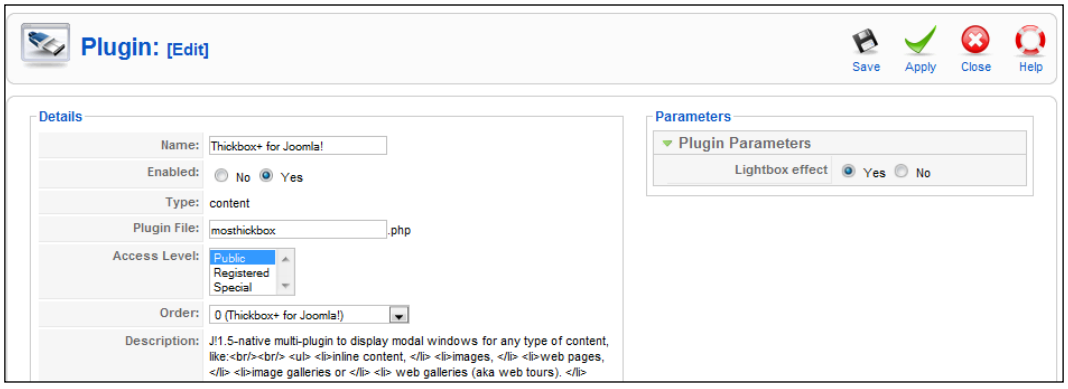
Getting ready...

Lightbox+ for Joomla! is an extension that allows you to show remote sites and linked images inside Lightboxes. Download this extension from `http://www.lbm-services.de/downloads/cb-rating/Thickbox/Thickbox-for-Joomla-1.5/` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the plugin, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing all the installed plugins for Joomla!. From this list, click on the **Thickbox+ for Joomla!** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** radio box, and **Yes** in the **Lightbox effect** radio box in the **Plugin Parameters** section. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Click on **Content** | **Article Manager** and create a new article. Write the article and insert a link similar to the following line:

```
{tiframe linktext:="Joomla! Beginners Guide" width:="600"
height:="400" url:="http://docs.joomla.org/Beginners"}
```

4. Save the article and preview it in the frontend. You will see a hyperlink titled **Joomla! Beginners Guide**. Click on this link and you should see the site `http://docs.joomla.org/Beginners` in the Lightbox, as shown in the following screenshot:

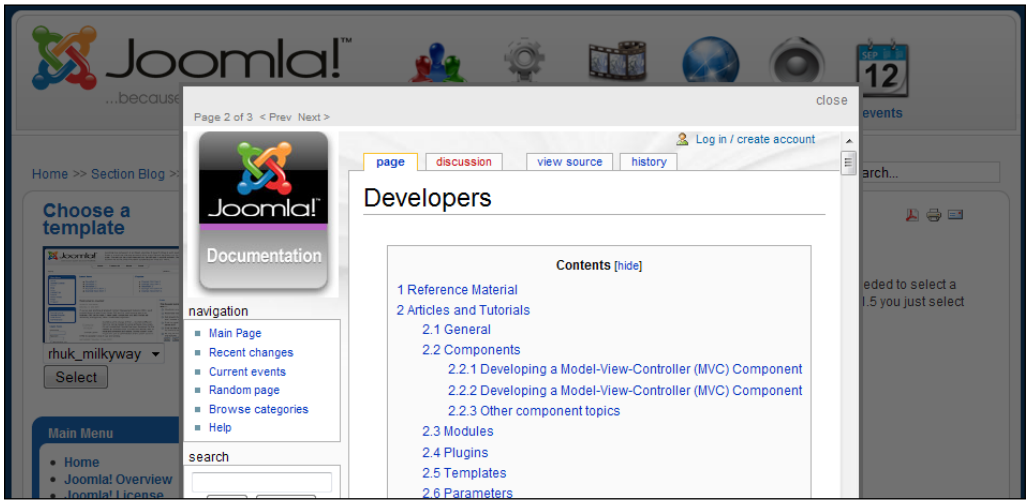


5. You can close this Lightbox by clicking on the **Close** button in the top-right corner. Multiple links can be displayed as a gallery. For example, you can add the following links:

```
{tiframe linktext:="Joomla! Beginners Guide" width:="600"
height:="400" url:="http://docs.joomla.org/Beginners"
gal:="tutorial"}

{tiframe linktext:="Joomla! Developers Guide" width:="600"
height:="400" url:="http://docs.joomla.org/Developers"
gal:="tutorial"}

{tiframe linktext:="Joomla! Template Guide" width:="600"
height:="400" url:="http://docs.joomla.org/Templates"
gal:="tutorial"}
```

Note that we have only added the `gal:="tutorial"` tag to name the gallery. Save the article and preview the page again.

6. Now you will see three links. Click on the second link and you will see the Lightbox, as shown in the following screenshot:



7. Note that we now see the **Page 2 of 3 <Prev Next>** link in the top-left corner. Now you can see the previous or next item by clicking on the **<Prev** or **Next>** link.

8. Similarly, you can add a link to an image and add those to a gallery by specifying a gallery name through the `gal:=` tag.

Publishing modules as tabs

Are you tired of publishing multiple modules on the front page and thinking of saving space? You can save some space on the front page by displaying the modules in tabs. In this recipe, you are going to learn how to display modules in tabs.

Getting ready...

Simple Tab and Slider Module is a popular extension that can show modules as a tab in Joomla!. Download this module from `http://blog.manchumahara.com/?dl_id=15` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

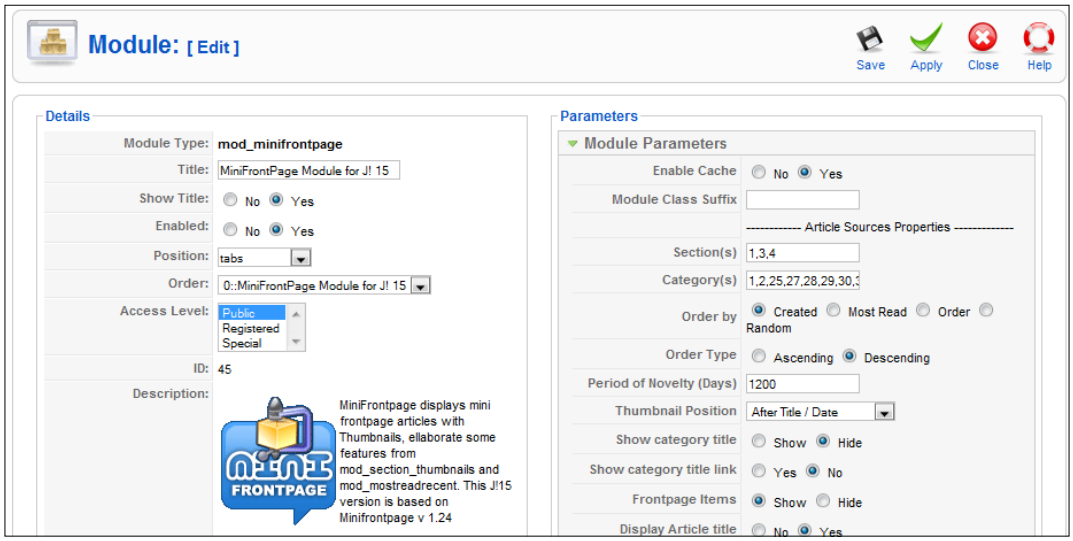
After installing the module, carry out the following steps:

1. First, you need to create a hidden module position in your template. For creating a hidden module position, open the `./templates/<template_name>/templateDetails.xml` file in your favorite text editor. Then add the following line (highlighted):

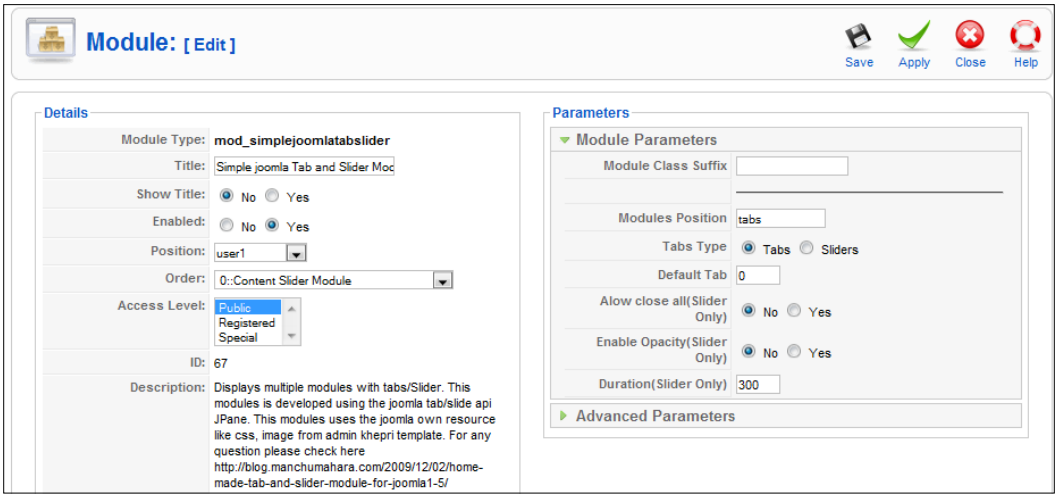
```
<positions>
    <position>breadcrumb</position>
    <position>left</position>
    <position>right</position>
    <position>top</position>
    <position>user1</position>
    <position>user2</position>
    <position>user3</position>
    <position>user4</position>
    <position>footer</position>
    <position>debug</position>
    <position>syndicate</position>
 <position>tabs</position>
</positions>
```

   When you have finished adding this line, save the file.

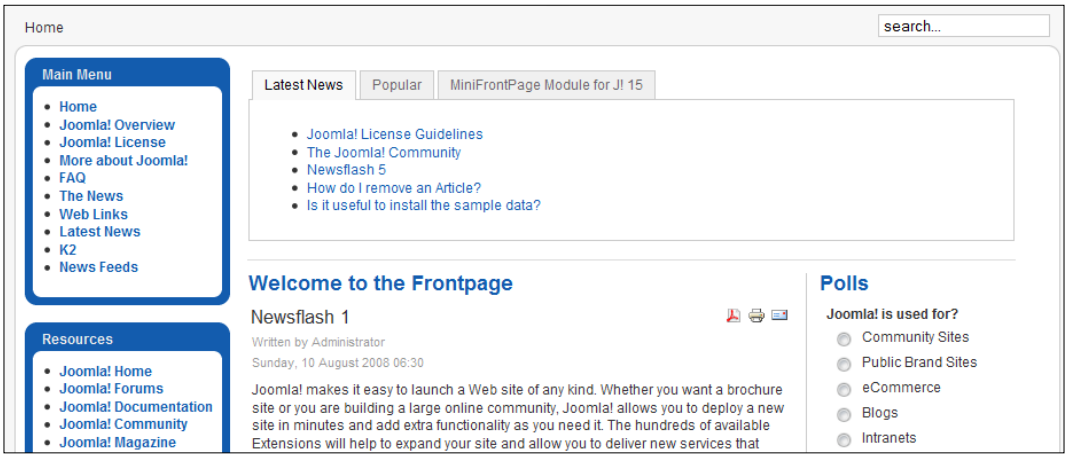
2. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This will show the **Module Manager** screen, listing the installed modules. From the list, select the module name that you want to publish into the tabs module position and click on the **Edit** button. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen. From this screen, enable the module and select **tabs** in the **Position** drop-down list:



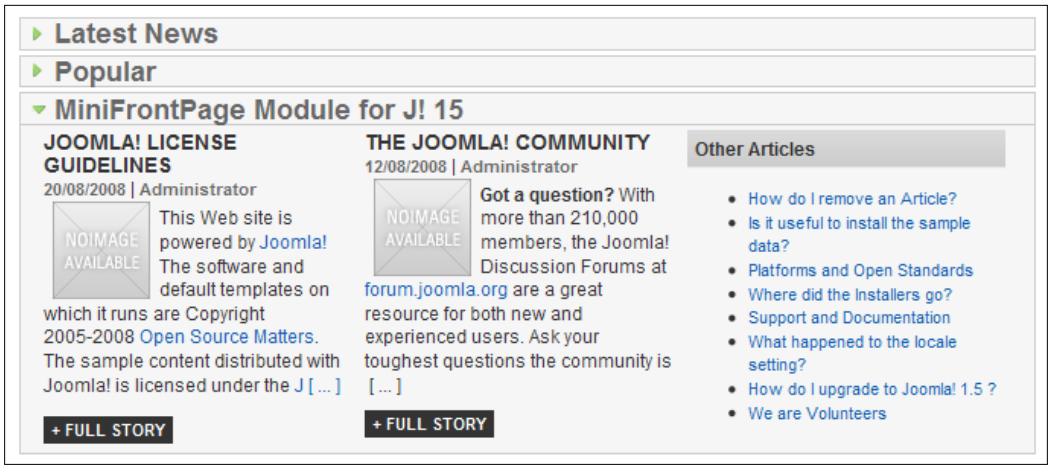
3. Save the module settings and repeat the steps for all the other modules you want to display as tabs.
4. From the **Module Manager** screen, click on **Simple joomla Tab and slider Module**. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen:



5. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list, for example, **user1**. Note that no other module should be published in this position except the current module. In the **Module Parameters** section, type the name of the hidden module position, **tabs**, in the **Modules Position** field. Select **Tabs** in the **Tabs type** field, accept the defaults for the other fields, and then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
6. Preview the site's frontend and you should see the module in the position you have specified, that is, **user1**. This module will show you the modules published in the **tabs** position, as displayed in the following screenshot:



7. As we can see, there are three tabbed modules, **Latest News**, **Popular**, and **MiniFrontPage Module for J! 1.5**. These modules are published in the **tabs** (hidden) module position. Any module you want to display as a tab should be published in this hidden position and will be visible as tabs.
8. When we select **Sliders** in the **Tabs type** field in the **Module: [Edit]** screen, the module will look like the following screenshot:



9. Clicking on any module title will display the contents of that module, hiding the content of other modules.

Using tabs and slides in content

We have seen how to show modules as tabs. How about showing these kinds of tabs in content items, such as inside articles? This will show a shorter version of long articles, and you will save some space on the screen. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to display tabs and slides inside content items in Joomla!.

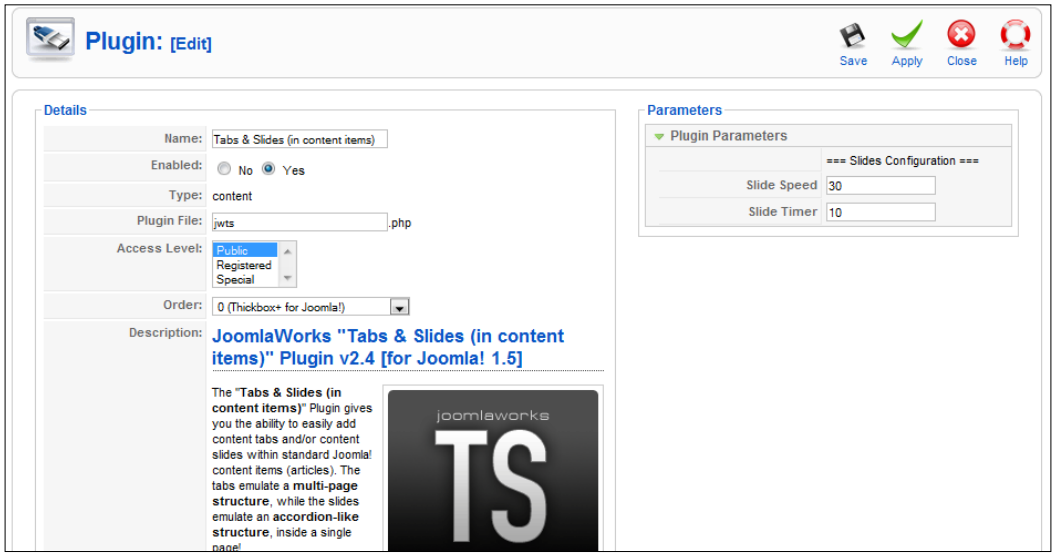
Getting ready...

Tabs & Slides (in content items) is a plugin for Joomla! that allows you to use tabs inside content items. Download this plugin from `http://joomlaworks.googlecode.com/files/plugin_jw_ts-v2.4_j1.5.zip` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the plugin, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions** | **Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **Tabs & Slides (in content items)** plugin, to show the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



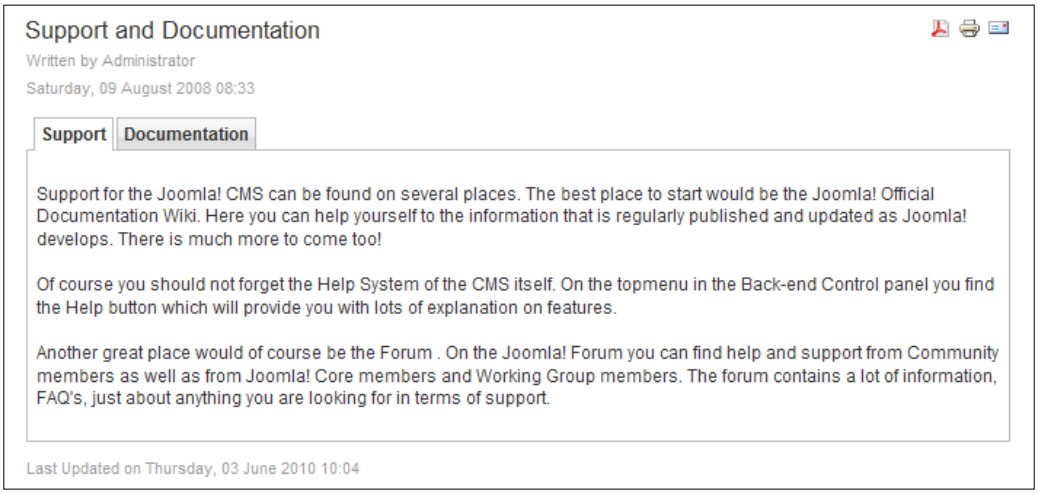
2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field and click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Now click on **Content** | **Article Manager** and then the **New** button to create a new article. In the article body, type the following content:

```
{tab=Support}
Support for the Joomla! CMS can be found on several places. The
best place to start would be the Joomla! Official Documentation
Wiki. Here you can help yourself to the information that is
regularly published and updated as Joomla! develops. There is much
more to come too!

Of course you should not forget the Help System of the CMS
itself. On the topmenu in the Backend Control panel you find the
Help button which will provide you with lots of explanation on
features.
```

```
Another great place would of course be the Forum. On the Joomla!
Forum, you can find help and support from Community members as
well as from Joomla! Core members and Working Group members. The
forum contains a lot of information, FAQs, and just about anything
you are looking for in terms of support.

{tab=Documentation}
Joomla! Documentation can of course be found on the Joomla!
Official Documentation Wiki. You can find information for
beginners, installation, upgrade, Frequently Asked Questions,
developer topics, and a lot more. The Documentation Team helps
oversee the wiki, but you are invited to contribute content, as
well.

There are also books written about Joomla! You can find a listing
of these books in the Joomla! Shop.

{/tabs}
```

Note that we have started the tab with the `{tab=title}` tag. Use this tag as many times as you need to create a new tab. The text after the `tab` tag is used as the title of the tab. When closing the tab, use the `{/tabs}` tag.

4. Save the article and view it from the frontend. The article will look like the following screenshot:

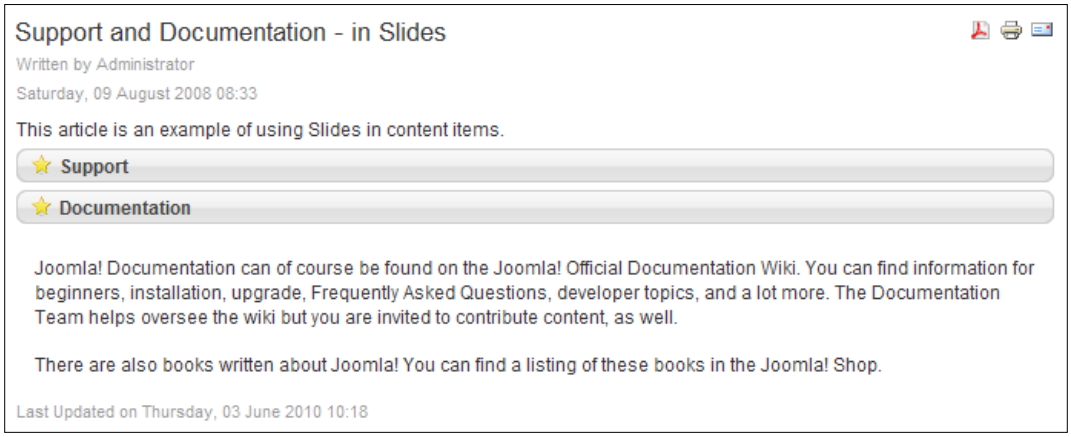


5. As you can see, the `{tab=Support}` and `{tab=Documentation}` tags have transformed into two tabs. You can make these slides by simply using the following syntax:

```
{slide=Support}
```

```
..contents for this slide ...
{/slide}

{slide=Documentation}
.. content for this slide ..
{/slide}
```

6. Note that when using a slide tag, we need a closing `{/slide}` tag. The preceding article with the `slides` tag will look like the following screenshot:



7. As you can see, two slides have been created with the given titles. Clicking on one title displays content inside that slide. You can create as many slides as you want.

15
Managing the Site

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Adding Google Analytics to your Joomla! site
- Implementing SEF URLs for your Joomla! site
- Showing a visitor counter on your Joomla site
- Viewing user statistics on your Joomla site
- Watching visitor activity in real time

Introduction

Site management is an important task for Joomla! administrators. There are many extensions for facilitating site management tasks. Site management tasks include tracking and analyzing site usage, getting content statistics, managing caching, improving performance, and so on. However, in the Site Management category of the Joomla! Extensions Directory, the most popular items are mostly related to site analytics, visitor statistics, search engine optimization, and search engine friendly URLs. In this chapter, we will discuss such extensions.

First, we will learn how to integrate Google Analytics with Joomla!. After integrating Google Analytics, the site administrator can obtain the statistics and graphs produced by Google Analytics from the Joomla! administration panel. Then we will move on to an important topic for Joomla! administrators, namely, search engine friendly URLs. We will learn how Joomla! site administrators can implement **search engine friendly** (**SEF**) URLs using the ARTIO JoomSEF extension for Joomla!.

Later in this chapter, you will also learn about including a visitor counter, collecting visitor statistics, and watching visitors in real time. All of these site management tasks can save time when managing your website.

Adding Google Analytics to your Joomla! site

You can use the Google Analytics service for analyzing statistics of your site's visitors. Knowing characteristics and demographics of visitors is helpful for targeting the content of your site. For using the Google Analytics service, first you need to register and embed a tracker code on your site's home page. There are some modules and plugins for Joomla! that help embed this tracker code into the site's front page. However, it is always better to integrate Google Analytics to your Joomla! site so that you can view the statistics and graphs from within the Joomla! administration panel. In this recipe, you will learn how to integrate Google Analytics with a Joomla! site, so that you can view the data and graphs from the Joomla! administration panel.

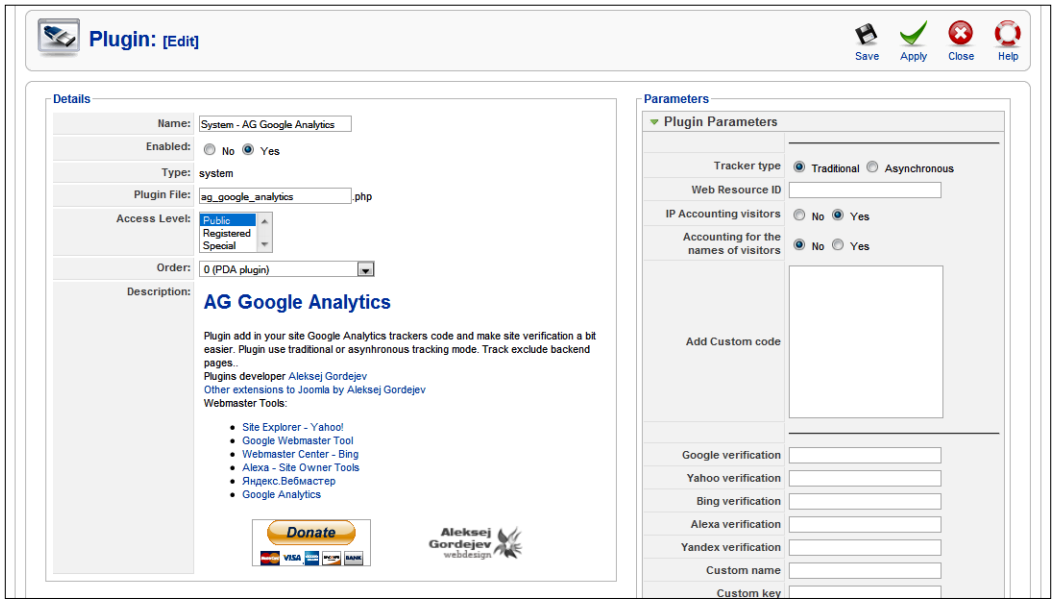
Getting ready...

The AG Google Analytics component allows you to integrate Google Analytics with Joomla!. Download this component from: `http://www.gordejev.lv/files/joomla_extensions/com_ag_google_analytics.zip`. Also download the plugin for this component from `http://www.gordejev.lv/files/joomla_extensions/plg_ag_google_analytics.actual.zip`. Install both the component and the plugin from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

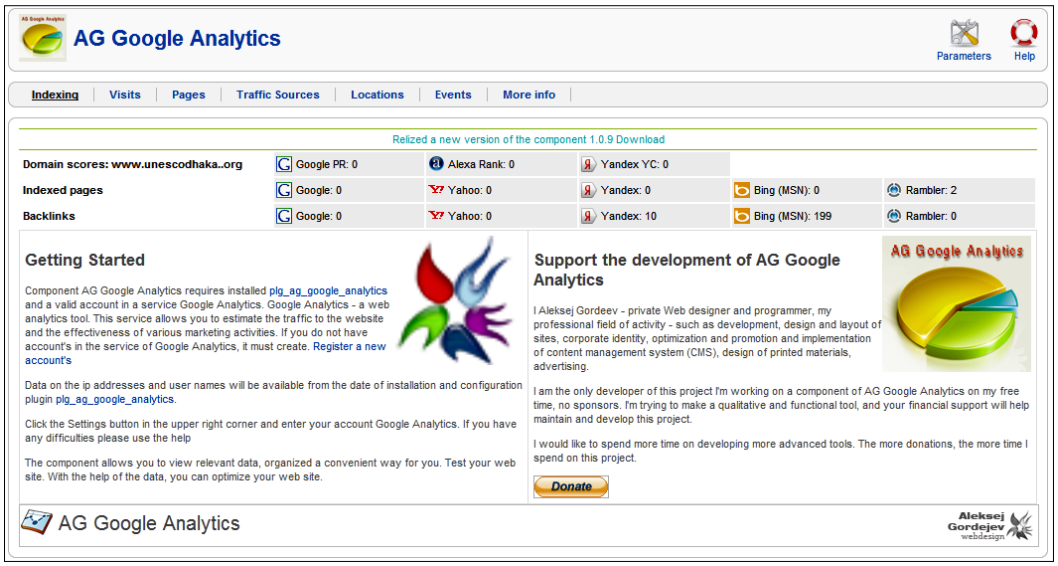
After installing the component and plugin, follow these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This will show the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing all installed plugins. From the list, click on the **System – AG Google Analytics** plugin to show the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.

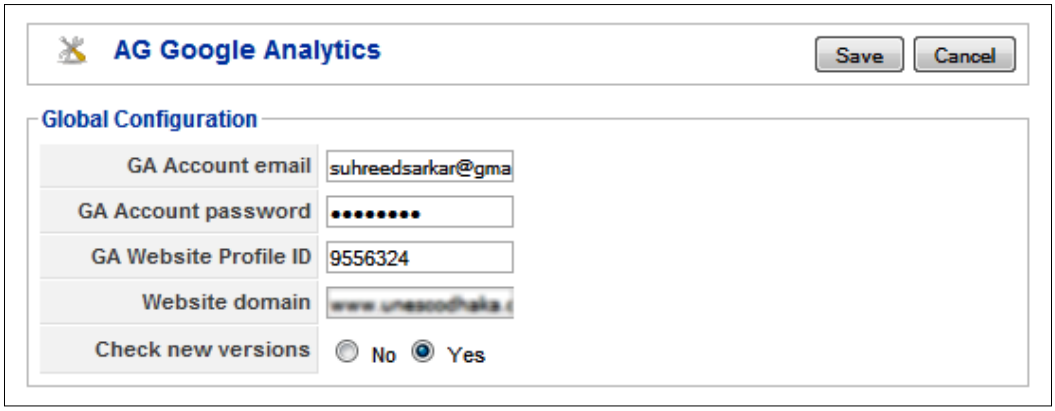


2. In the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen, click on **Yes** in the **Enable** field. From the **Plugin Parameters** section, enter the **Web Resource ID** from Google Analytics (looks like UA-xxxx-yy). For the other fields, accept the defaults. You may also add verification codes for search engines in the fields named **Google verification**, **Yahoo verification**, and so on. When finished configuring, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

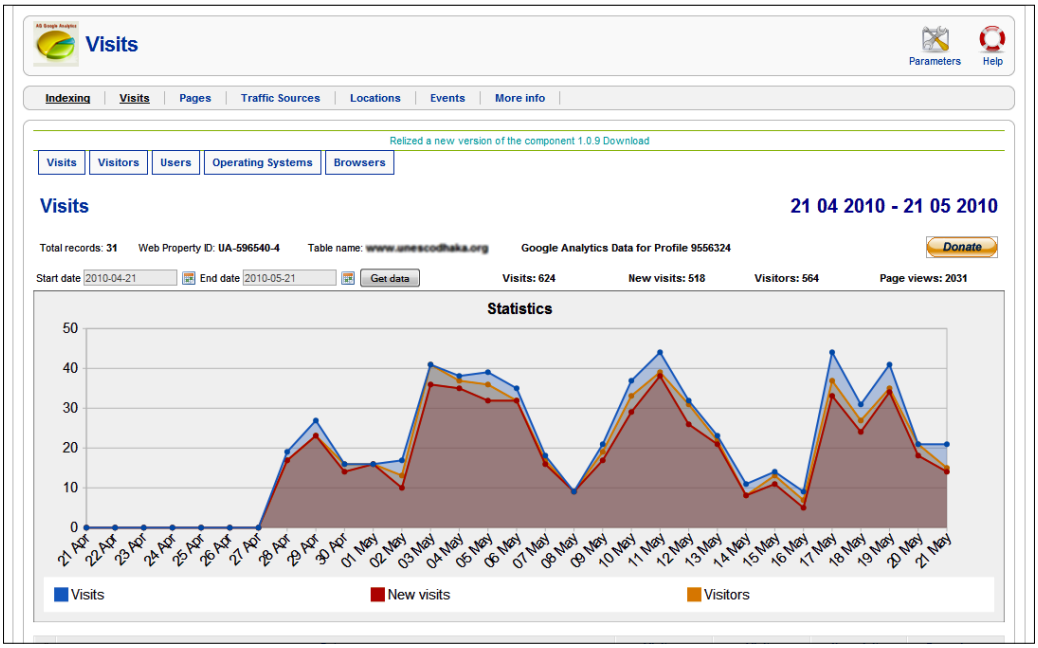
3. Now select **Components | AG Google Analytics | Indexing**. This shows the **Google Analytics** screen, listing key statistics.



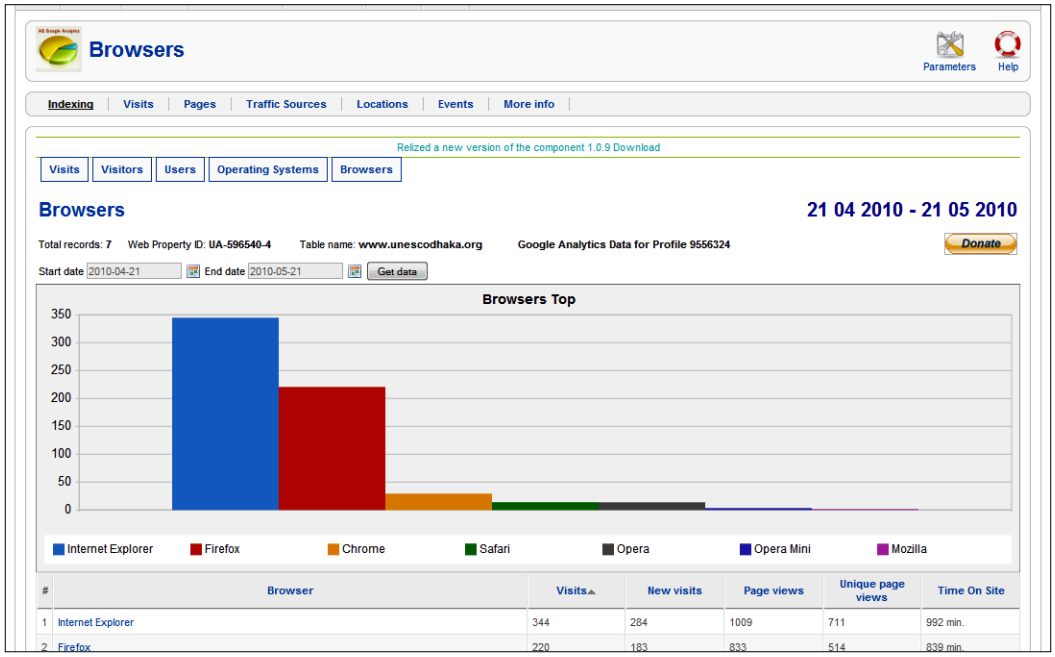
4. Click on the **Parameters** icon on top-right corner to show the following screenshot:



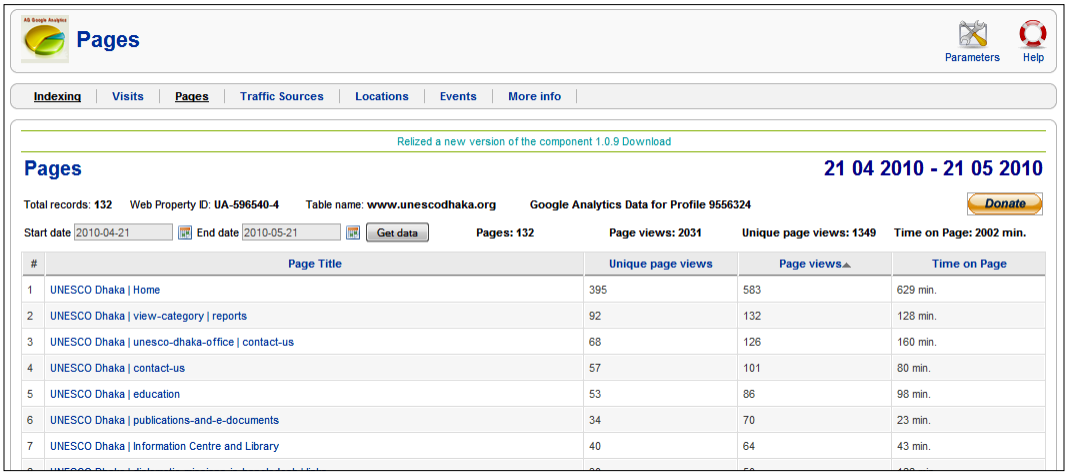
5. In the **Global Configuration** section, enter your Google Account e-mail address and password, website profile ID, and website domain. You will receive this information when you register for Google Analytics. For updating the component automatically, check **Yes** in the **Check new versions** radio box. Then click on the **Save** button.
6. Now click on the **Visits** link in the **AG Google Analytics** screen. This shows you statistics of the site visits, as shown in the following screenshot:



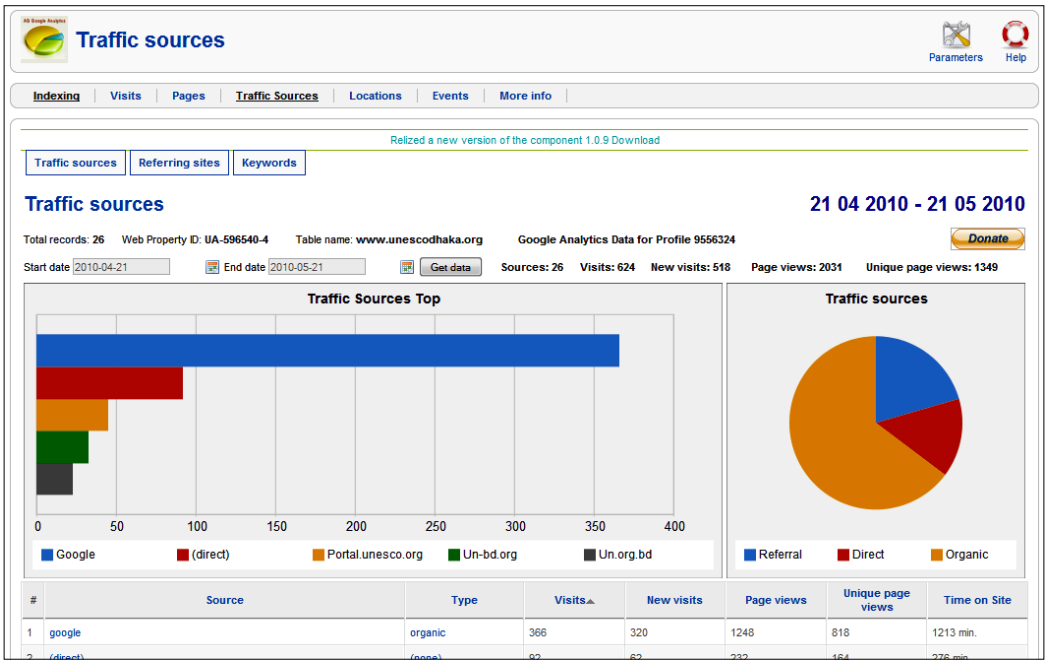
7. You can select a date range and view the statistics for that period. Besides the number of visits, you can also see the number of visitors, users, operating systems, and browsers. For viewing statistics on browsers, click on the **Browsers** link. This will show you the statistics on browsers, as shown in the following screenshot:



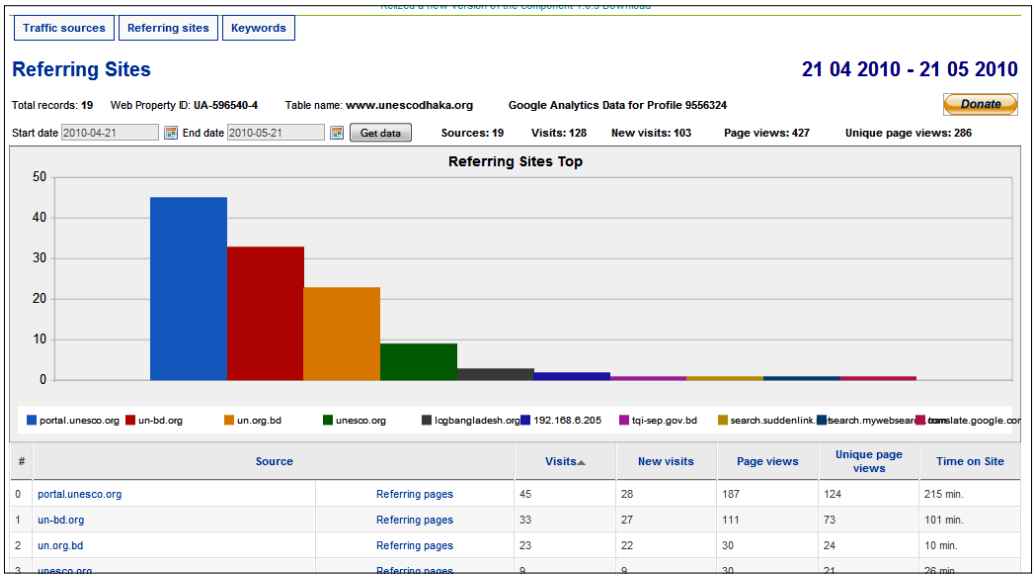
8. For viewing statistics on pages, click on the **Pages** link.



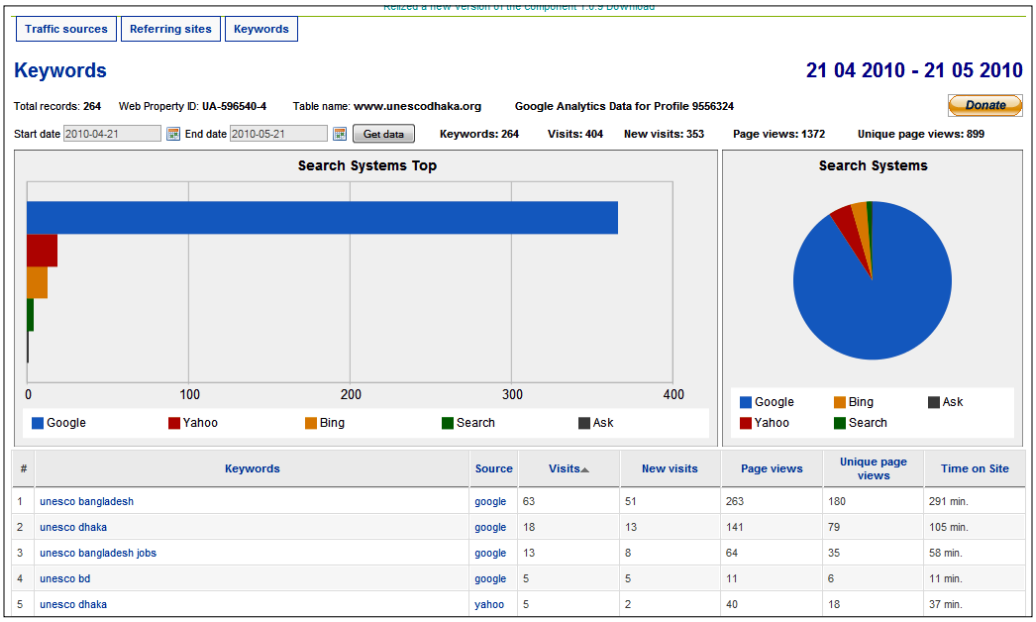
9. Analyzing traffic sources for a site is must. Click on the **Traffic Sources** link and you will see a graph showing the sources of traffic.



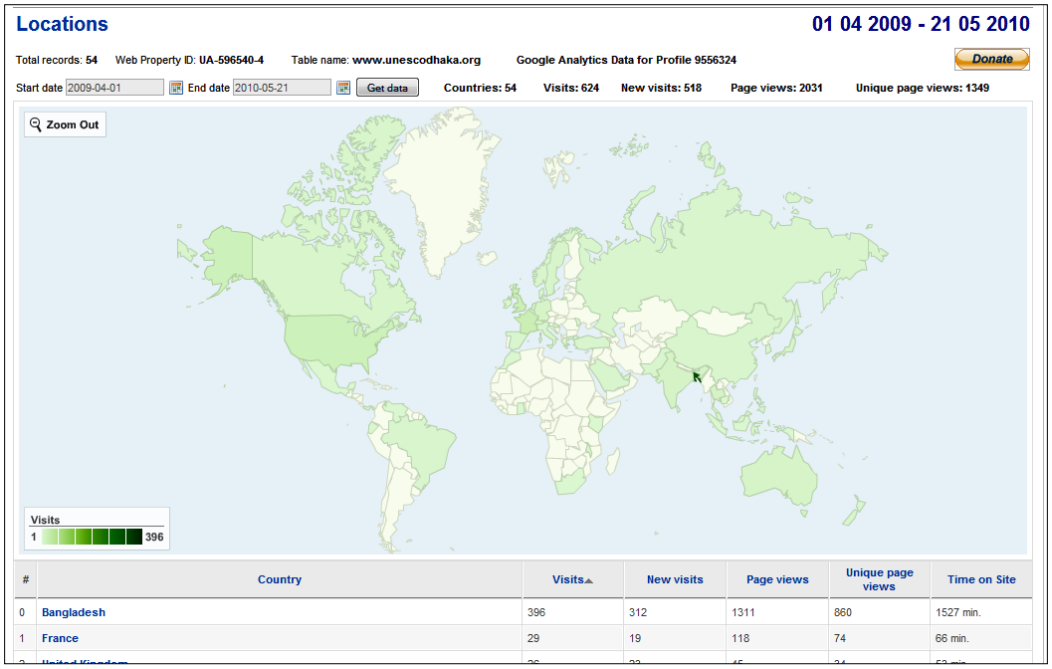
10. We can also view the traffic sources by referring to sites and keywords. Click on the **Referring Sites** link and you will see the graph showing referring sites.



11. For viewing the traffic sources using keywords, click on the **Keywords** link and you will get statistics by keyword, as shown in the following screenshot:



12. You may also like to know the locations from where users are visiting your site. For getting location data, click on the **Locations** link. The location data will be given in the format as shown in the following screenshot:



13. You can also view statistics on different events by clicking on the **Events** link. For links to other resources related to the **AG Google Analytics** component, click on the **More Info** link.

Implementing SEF URLs for your Joomla! site

Joomla! has a basic search engine friendly (SEF) URL generation facility. You can enable this from the **Site | Global Configuration | Site | SEO Settings** section. This works fine for most sites, however, you may need finer control on the generated SEF-URLs. In this recipe, you will learn how to generate SEF URLs for your Joomla! site with advanced properties.

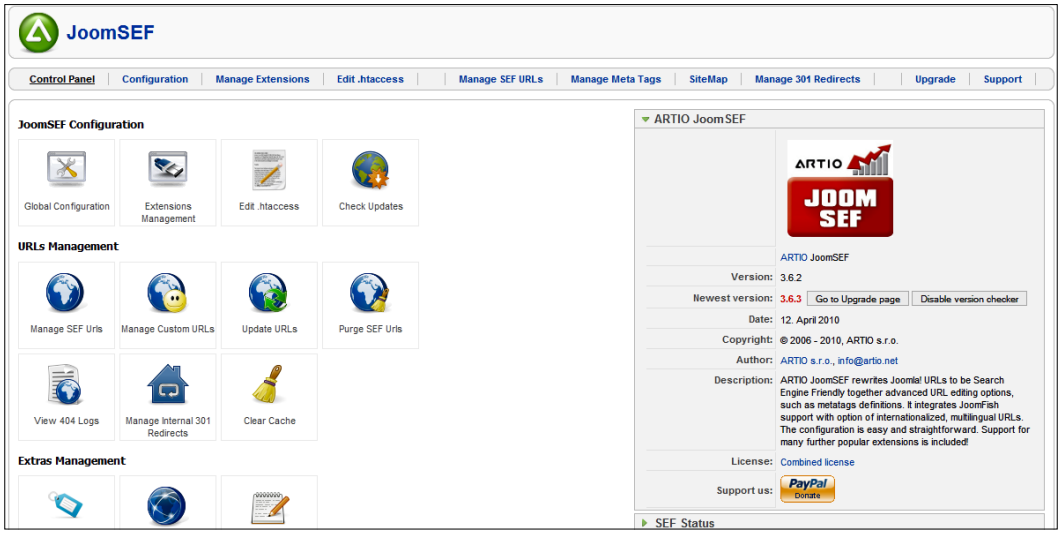
Getting ready...

Sh404SEF is the most popular extension for SEF in Joomla!. However, sh404SEF has now become a commercially-licensed extension. Therefore, we use a free extension that provides almost the same functionalities and is popular in the category. This component is the ARTIO JoomSEF component. There is a free version and a Pro version. The free version provides most essential functions, but one drawback is that it includes links back to their website. If you want to remove this link, you need to buy the Pro version. However, for learning purposes, download the latest version of this component from `http://www.artio.net/downloads/joomla/joomsef` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

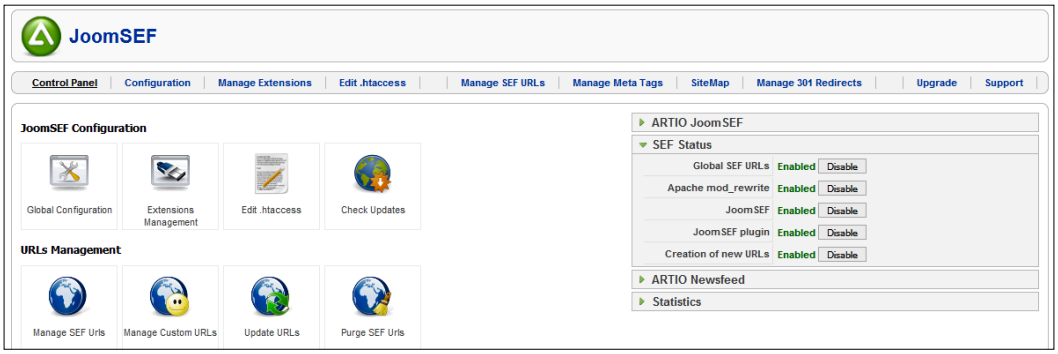
How to do it...

After installing the component, follow these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click **Components** | **ARTIO JoomSEF** | **Control Panel**. This will show you the **JoomSEF** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



2. On the right-hand side, just below the **ARTIO JoomSEF** module, click on the **SEF Status** module name. This shows the SEF Status for the site, as in the following screenshot:



3. In the **SEF Status** module, all options should be enabled (shown in green). If you find that one of the options is disabled, click on the **Enable** button. After some time, the feature will be enabled. And with this, you are done!
4. Preview the site's frontend and you will find the links are SEF. For example, `http://www.yourserver.com/index.php?option=com_content&catid=1&id=45&view=article` becomes `http://www.yourserver.com/latest/joomla-community-portal`.

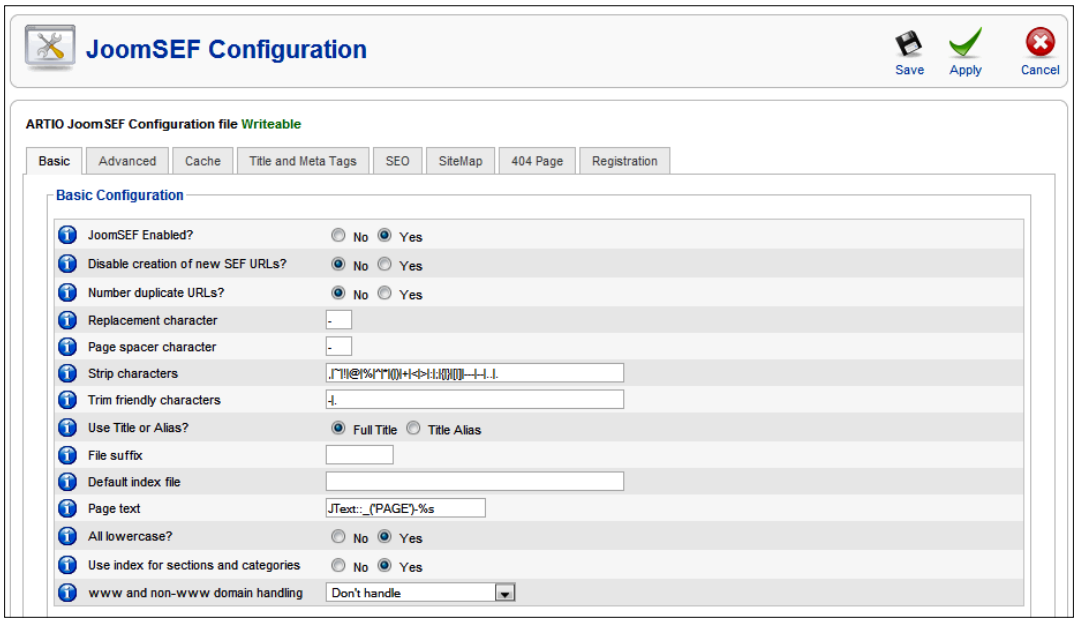
Note that the URLs become search engine friendly only for those components that have the JoomSEF extension enabled. By default, for banners, content, contacts, and some other components, JoomSEF extensions are enabled. Therefore, these components show SEF URLs. However, if you have some other component, for example K2, you need to install and enable the JoomSEF extension manually.

There's more...

JoomSEF has many advanced features for creating and managing search engine friendly URLs. Among them, it gives you ample opportunity to configure how the SEF URLs will appear. You can extend this SEF functionality to other components by installing and enabling JoomSEF extensions. You also have the freedom to view, edit, and delete the SEF URLs generated by JoomSEF. The following sections highlight these features.

Configuring JoomSEF

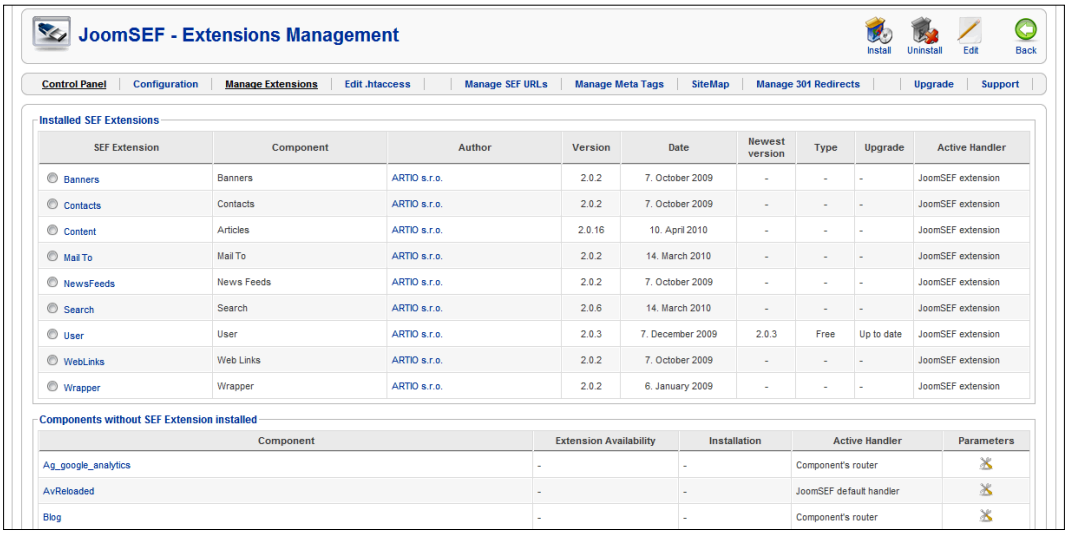
For configuring JoomSEF, click on **Components | ARTIO JoomSEF | Configuration**. This will show the **JoomSEF Configuration** screen.



In the **Basic** tab, you must select **Yes** in the **JoomSEF Enabled** field. The default values are fine for most of the sites. If you are using UTF-8 encoding and want to allow UTF-8 characters in URLs, please select **Yes** in the **Allow UTF-8 characters in URL** field under the **Advanced** tab. The defaults values are fine for most of the other tabs.

Managing extensions

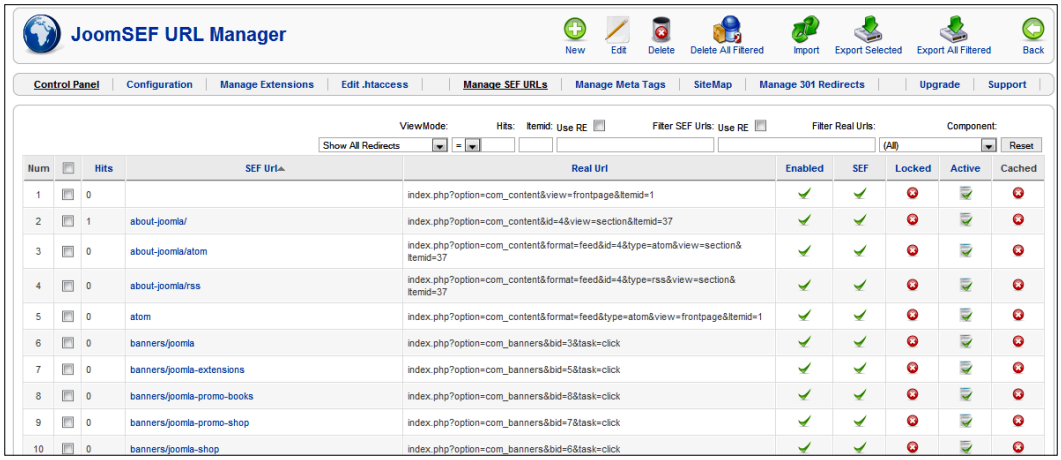
You will need to install and enable JoomSEF extensions for many other third-party Joomla! extensions. For managing these extensions, click on the **Manage Extensions** link in the JoomSEF screen. This shows the **JoomSEF – Extensions Management** screen, as in the following screenshot:



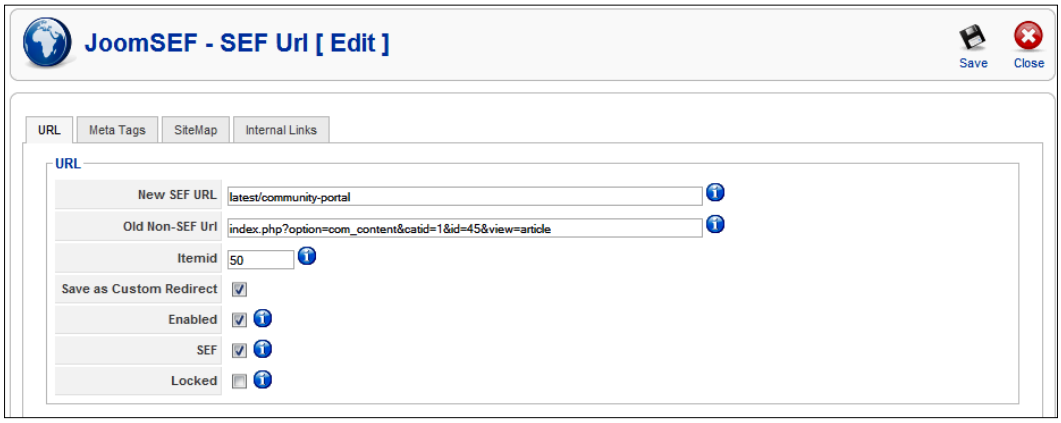
Installed extensions are shown on top of the list, whereas components needing installation are listed in the **Components without SEF Extension installed** section. Components for those JoomSEF extensions are available and are indicated by the **Get extension** button in the **Installation** column. You can install the extension by clicking on the **Get extension** button. As an alternative, you can search the extension at `http://www.artio.net/downloads/joomla/joomsef/`, and then download and install it by clicking on the **Install** button on the **JoomSEF – Extensions Management** screen.

Managing SEF URLs

JoomSEF automatically generates SEF URLs based on the rules specified. However, you can edit or delete these SEF URLs. For managing these SEF URLs, click on **Components | ARTIO JoomSEF | Manage SEF URLs**. This will show the **JoomSEF URL Manager** screen.



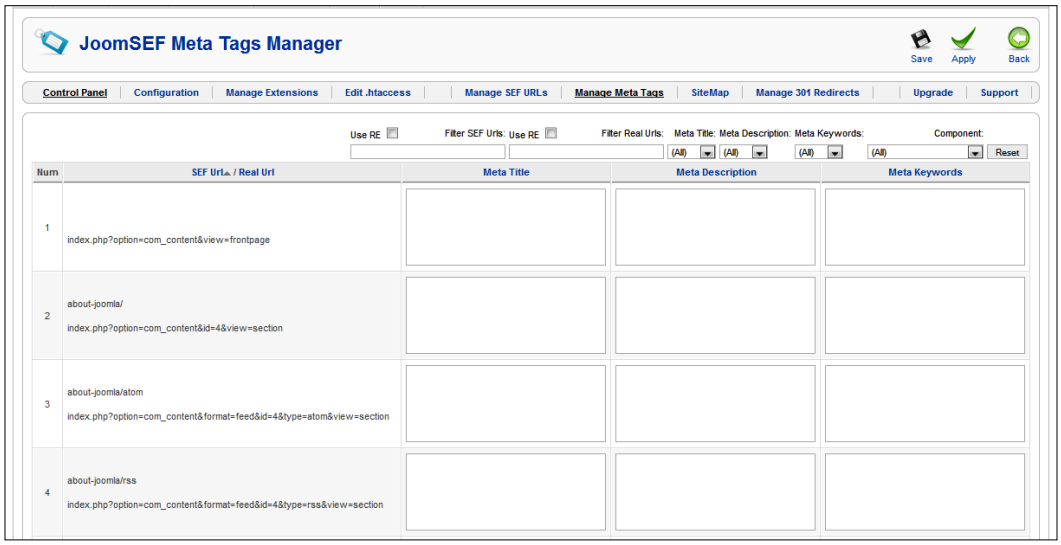
The **JoomSEF URL Manager** screen lists all generated SEF URLs. For editing an URL, click on it and you will see the **JoomSEF – SEF Url [Edit]** screen.



You can change the **New SEF URL** and tick the **Locked** checkbox to prevent accidental deletion of this URL. From the other tabs, you can specify meta tags, site map and internal links.

Managing meta tags

JoomSEF can help to add meta tags for each URL. For managing meta tags, click **Components | JoomSEF | Manage SEF URLs**. This shows the **JoomSEF Meta Tags Manager** screen.



In this screen, for each URL, you can add **Meta Title**, **Meta Description**, and **Meta Keywords**. Adding these meta tags to URLs will optimize your site for search engines, and your site is likely to get a better search engine ranking.

Showing a visitor counter on your Joomla! site

Many present day web developers may think of visitor counters as primitive. Most of the Web 2.0 sites do not use a visitor counter. However, there are some instances when a visitor counter may help the site owner by collecting visitor information, and also showing this information to other visitors. In this recipe, you will learn how to include a visitor counter on a Joomla! site.

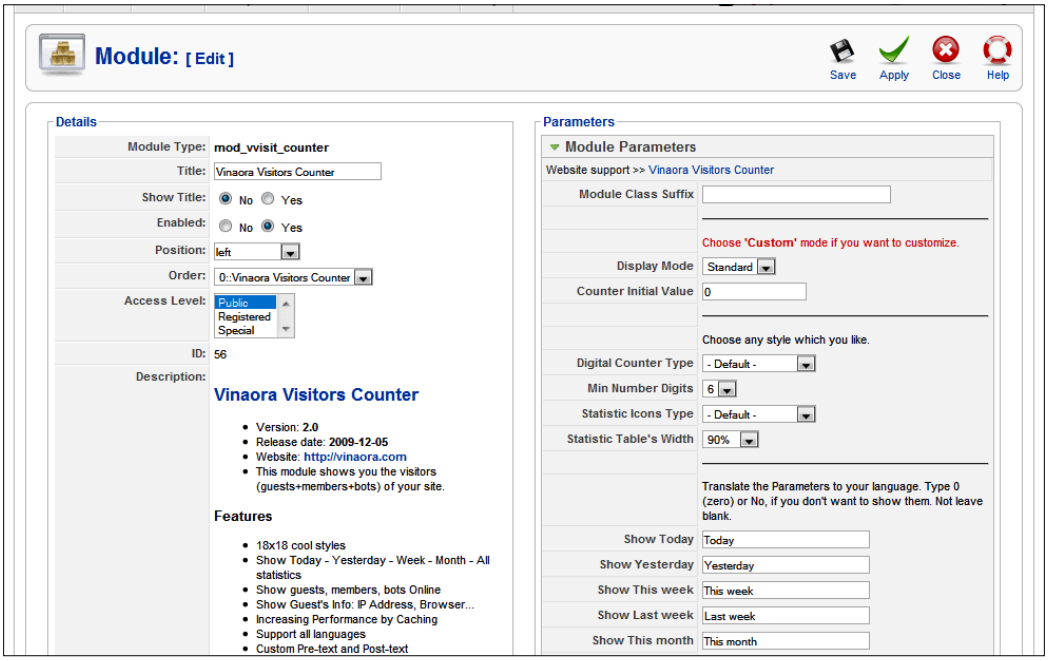
Getting ready...

The Vinaora visitor counter is a popular extension that helps you to include a visitor counter in different attractive formats. Download this extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/download/frsrelease/11645/46845/vinaora_visitors_counter_2.0.zip` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen. This package installs one module and one plugin.

How to do it...

After installing the extension package, follow these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, select **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This will show the **Module Manager** screen, listing all the installed modules. From the list, select the **Vinaora Visitors Counter** module to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen for this module.



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field and select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. From the **Module Parameters** section, select **Full** in the **Display Mode** drop-down list. You can set an initial value in the **Counter Initial Value** field. From **Digital Counter Type**, you can choose a style from the drop-down list. Similarly, you can choose an icon type from the **Statistic Icons Type** drop-down list. When finished, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Now click **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing all installed plugins. From this list, enable the **System - Vinaora Visitors Counter** plugin.
4. Preview the site's frontend, and you will find the module with the available visitor statistics, as shown in the following screenshot:



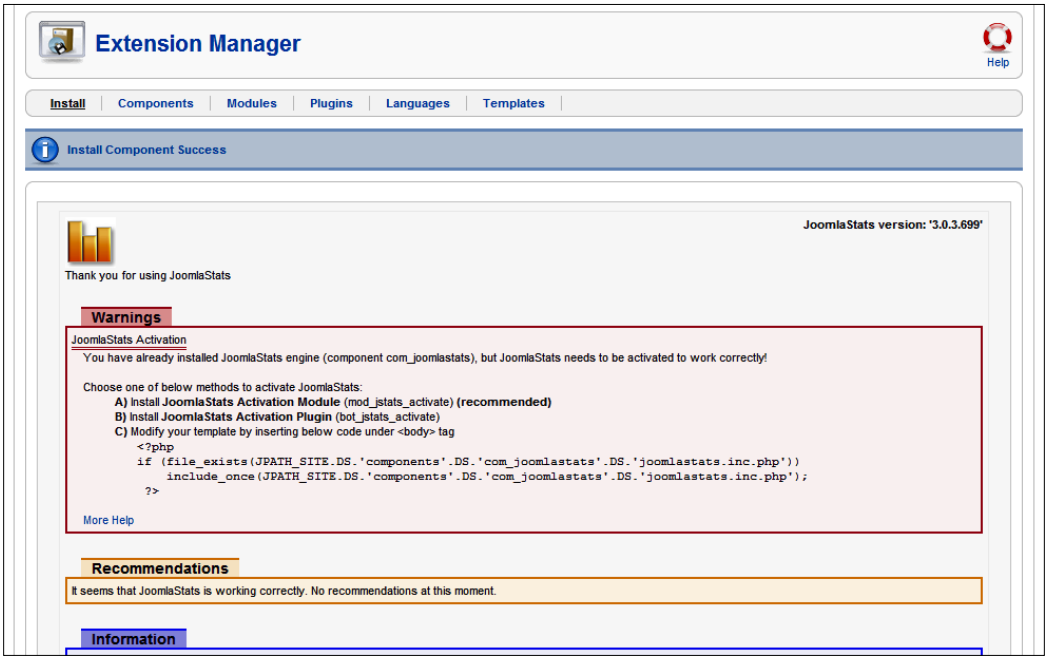
5. As you can see, this module shows visitor statistics by **Today**, **Yesterday**, **This week**, **Last week**, **This month**, **Last month**, and **All days**. When we first use this module, some statistics may not be available, they will be visible after a certain time. You can hide the statistics with zero values by selecting **Yes** in the **Zero-Statistic** field in the **Module: [Edit]** screen.

Viewing user statistics on your Joomla! site

The Joomla! core application provides very basic user statistics. For many sites, detailed visitor statistics will be useful. For example, detailed analysis by browser, operating system, and country will help the site owner to design the site better. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to collect and view detailed user statistics in Joomla!.

Getting ready...

JoomlaStats is a popular extension for collecting and displaying detailed user statistics on a Joomla! site. You need to download at least two files, namely, `com_joomlastats_v3.0.x.zip` and `mod_jstats_activate_v3.0.x.zip`. Download both from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/joomlastats/frs/`. After downloading the files, install them from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen. Upon installation of the components, you will see instructions as shown in the following screenshot.



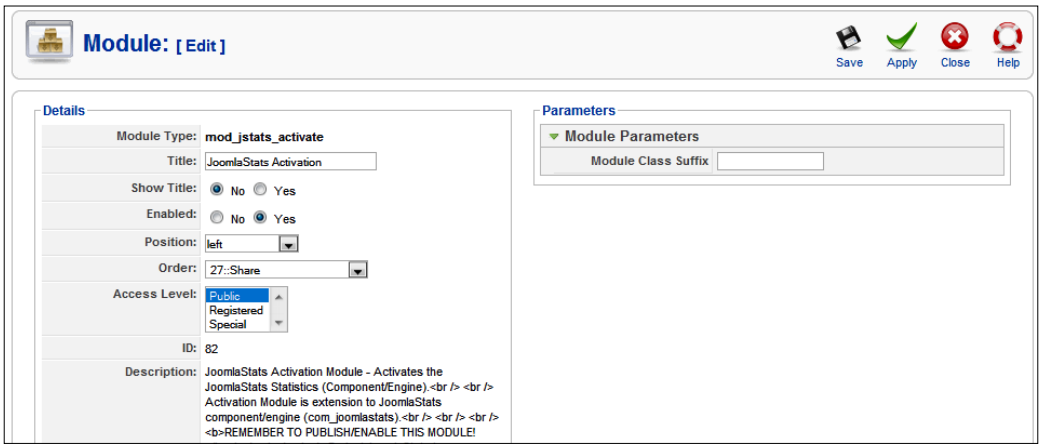
In the **Warnings** section, three ways of activating this component are described. The first one is by installing and activating the JoomlaStats Activation module. The second one is no longer supported now. The third way to activate the component is by adding two lines in the Joomla! template.

Follow the easiest one; install the `mod_jstats_activate_v3.0.x.zip` file from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

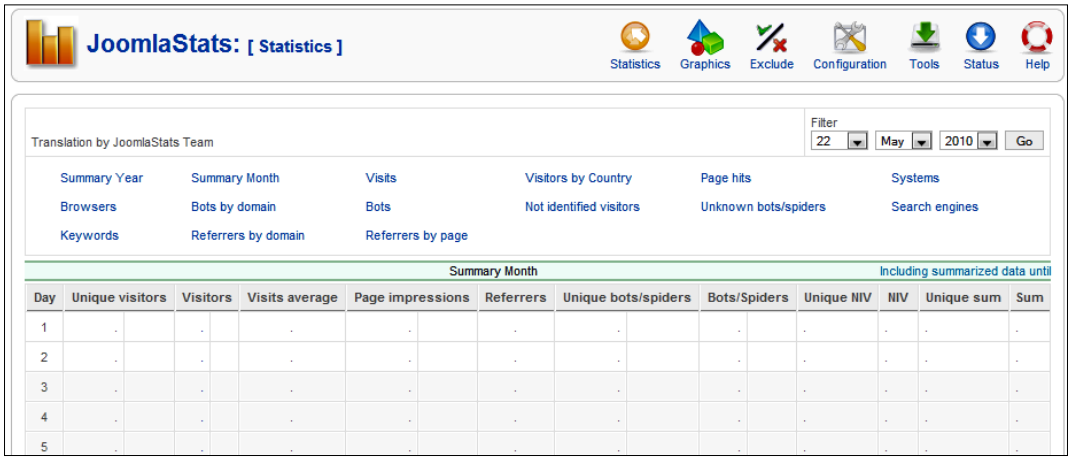
How to do it...

After installing both the component and the module, follow these steps:

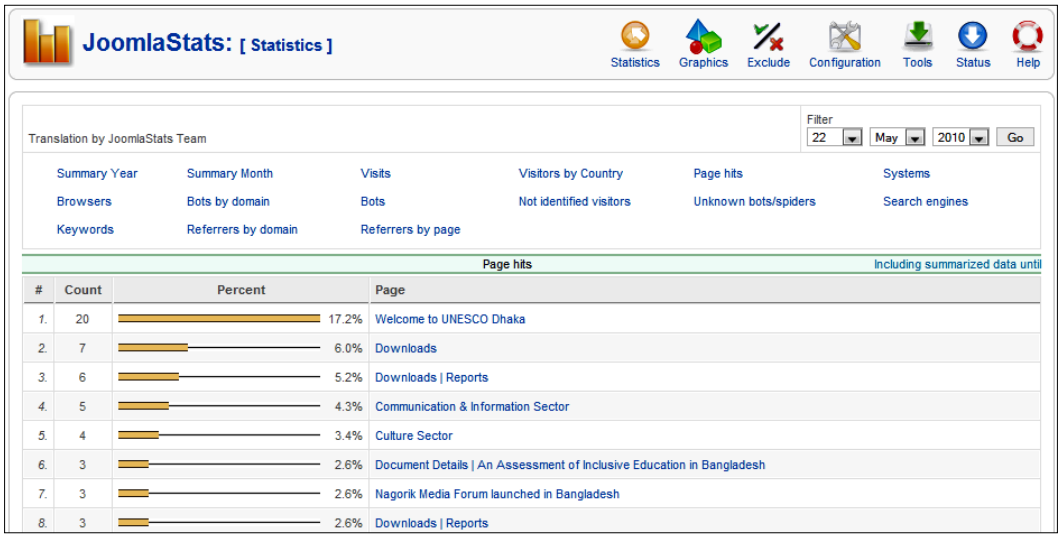
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, select **Extensions | Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From the list, select the **JoomlaStats Activation** module to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



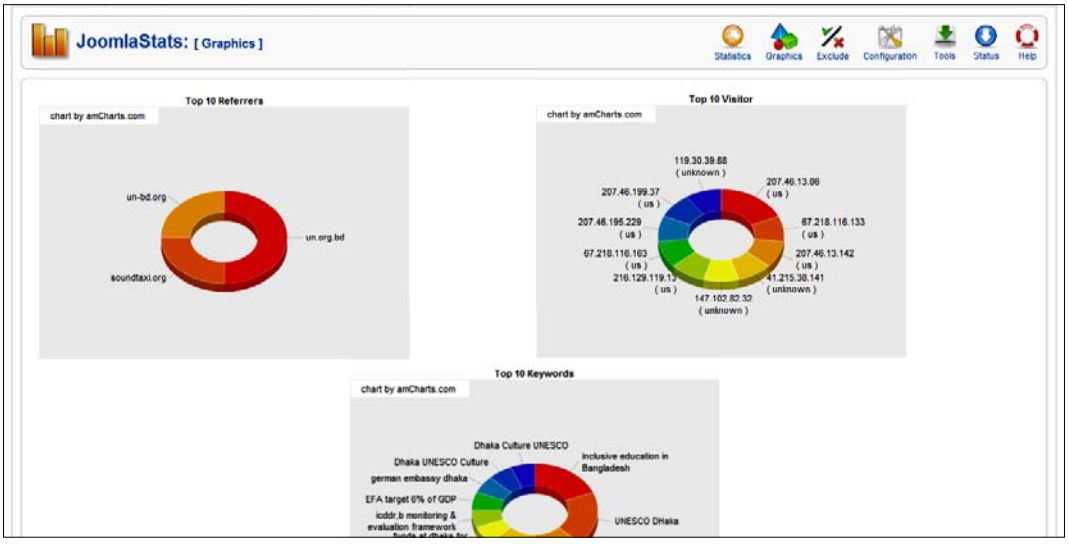
2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.
3. Now select **Components | JoomlaStats**. This will show the **JoomlaStats: [Statistics]** screen.



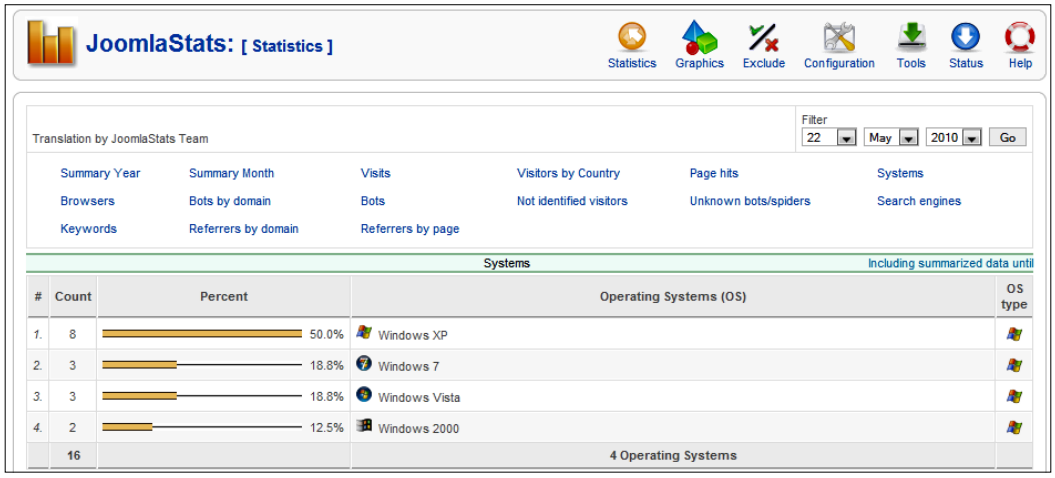
4. You can view statistics by different types for example by month, by week, by operating system, by country, by page hits, and so on. As an example, click on **Page hits** to show the following screen:



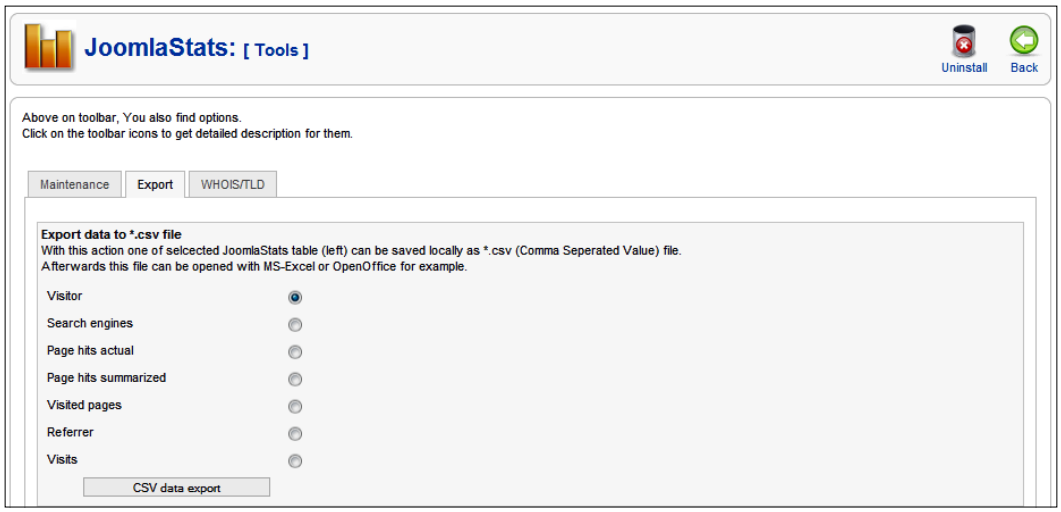
5. Any report can be viewed as a graph. For viewing the report as a graph, click on the **Graphics** button in the toolbar. This will show you the appropriate graph, as seen in the following screenshot.



6. For viewing information on the user operating systems, click on the **Systems** link. This shows statistics by operating systems used by the visitors, as seen in the following screenshot:



7. You can export these statistics to the CSV file for further analysis, or for exporting to other applications. To do so, click on the **Tools** button on the toolbar, this will show the **JoomlaStats: [Tools]** screen. Click on the **Export** tab to show you the following screenshot:



8. Select the type of data you want to export and click on the **CSV data export** button. It will ask for a path to save the data, the CSV file will be saved at the location you specify.
9. For configuring JoomlaStats, click on the **Configuration** button on the toolbar. This shows the **JoomlaStats: [Configuration]** screen.



10. By default, a user's stay on a site for 15 minutes is considered as one visit. You can change this time from the **Onlinetime** drop-down list. Also, specify the default report in the **Startoption** drop-down list. From the **Performance** tab, you can choose to show summarized data. When you have finished configuring, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

Once the activation module is published and the component is activated, it will collect visitor statistics and you can view this data anytime.

Watching visitor activity in real time

We have seen already how we can find out about the site visitors in detail. However, it is collected data and we see the data at a later stage. What about finding out about visitor activity in real time? For many site administrators, it will be exciting to know who the visitors are and which pages they are currently browsing. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add an extension for watching your visitors' activity in real time.

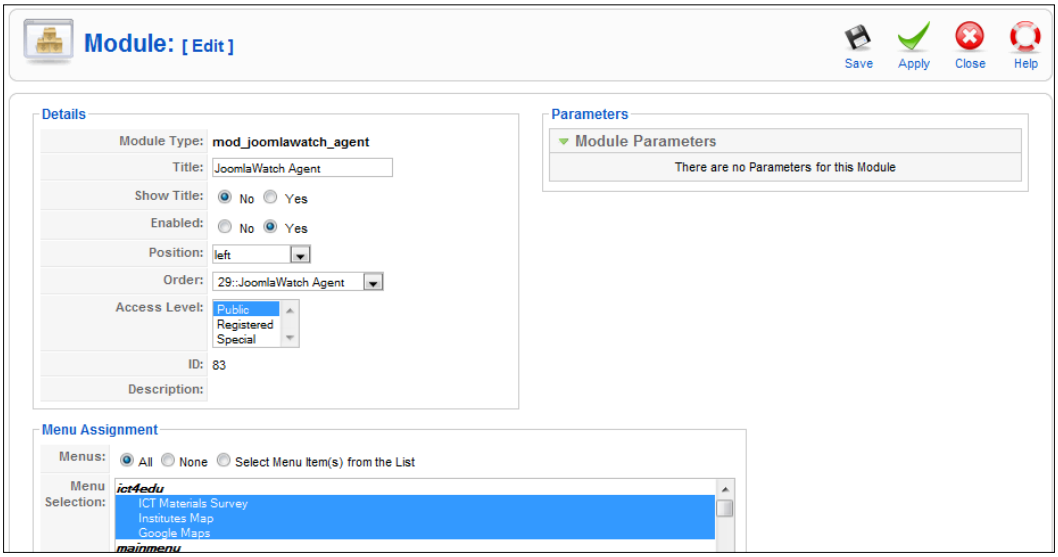
Getting ready...

JoomlaWatch is a popular extension for watching visitor activities in real time. You can download this extension from `www.codegravity.com`. First you need to register to this site for downloading the extension. Once you have downloaded the extension package, unzip it. Then you will get four installation files including `com_joomlawatch.zip` and `mod_joomlawatch_agent.zip`. From the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen, install `com_joomlawatch.zip` and `mod_joomlawatch_agent.zip` file.

How to do it...

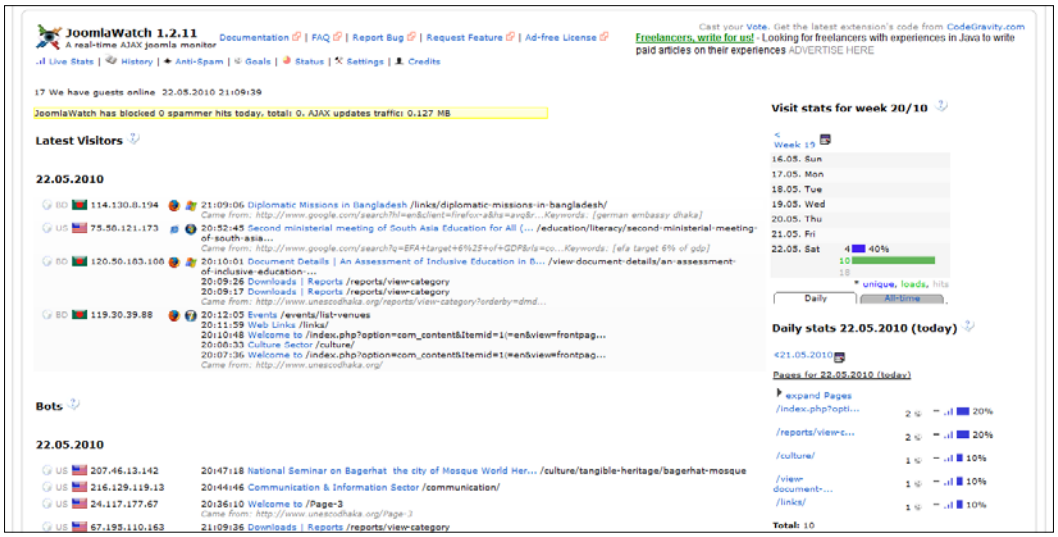
After installing the component and module, follow these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click **Extensions** | **Module Manager**. This shows the **Module Manager** screen, listing all installed modules. From this list, click on the **JoomlaWatch Agent** module to show the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



2. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list. In the **Menu Assisgnment** section, select **All** (this module must be displayed on each page of the site). When you have finished, click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

3. Now select **Components** | **JoomlaWatch**. This shows the **JoomlaWatch** screen, listing the current visitors and bots, as shown in the following screenshot:



4. Note that the **JoomlaWatch** screen lists the latest visitors by country, IP address, browser, operating system, and pages browsing on the site. Similarly, it also lists bots that are crawling your site.



5. Whenever you want to watch visitors, just open the **Components | JoomlaWatch** screen and it will list all visitors to your site.

16
Enhancing the Core, Search, and Indexing

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Browsing and managing files on your Joomla! host
- Automatically updating Joomla! to a newer version
- Adding an Ajax search module to your Joomla! site
- Adding tags to your Joomla! content

Introduction

Joomla! 1.5 has many interesting features at its core. However, you may need to add some of the desired features through extensions. For example, you may expect to have an explorer like file management in Joomla!. This is not a part of the core, but you can add this functionality by installing either the eXtplorer or JXplorer component.

Similarly, you may want to update the website to a newer version of Joomla!, but the core does not provide an update mechanism. Some extensions, like Update Manager for Joomla!, can help you automate the process of updating your site to a newer version of Joomla!.

Nowadays many sites have Ajax search, which enables users to search the site without refreshing the whole page. You can add this to Joomla! using the PixSearch module that provides Ajax search for Joomla! sites.

Many websites, especially blogging platforms, have a tagging facility through which you can add tags to articles. Tags provide a better search and classification of articles. You can add tagging to your Joomla! site through an extension named Joomla! Tags.

Browsing and managing files on your Joomla! host

In Joomla!, you can explore media files using Media Manager. There is no way of exploring the files in a Joomla! installation from within the Joomla! administration panel. You need to use an FTP program to explore and manage the files. However, you can add features to explore and manage files within Joomla! by installing third-party extensions. In this recipe, we are going to show you how you can add an explorer-like extension to Joomla!.

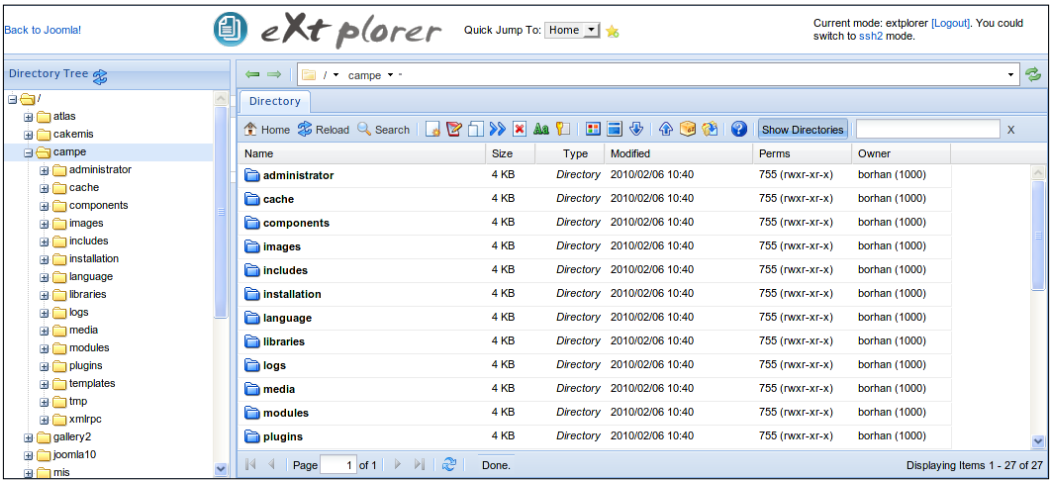
Getting ready...

eXtplorer is a popular extension for adding explorer-like file management to Joomla!. Download the eXtplorer extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/joomlaxplorer/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

How to do it...

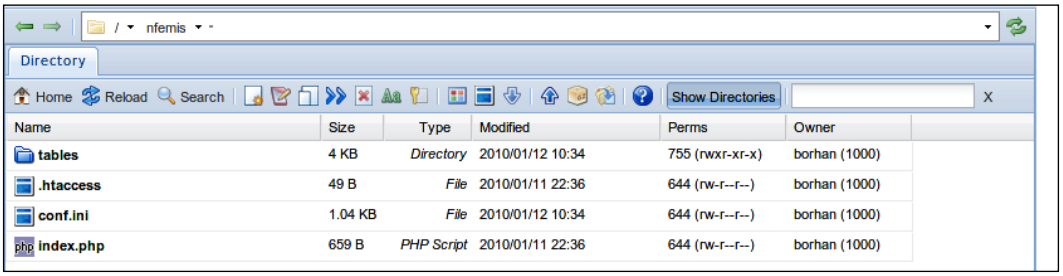
Once you have installed the extension, carry out the following steps to use eXtplorer:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | eXtplorer**. This shows the **eXtplorer** screen.



2. On the left pane, you will see the **Directory Tree**. This lists all the directories in your web server's document root.

3. Click on the directory from **Directory Tree**. The contents, sub-directories and files, under that directory will be displayed in the right pane.



4. The right pane shows a toolbar with several command buttons: **Home**, **Reload**, **Search**, **New File/Directory**, **Edit**, **Copy**, **Move**, **Delete**, **Rename**, **Change** (**chmod**) **Rights (Folders/File(s))**, **View**, **Diff**, **Download**, **Upload**, **Archive**, **Extract Archive**, **About**.
5. To return to the Joomla! control panel, click on the **Back to Joomla!** link in the top-left corner of the screen.

Automatically updating Joomla! to a newer version

Joomla! often releases new versions that may contain new security and management features. Updating to the latest version of Joomla! is most often recommended. However, updating the site is not easy, especially if you have installed and configured custom extensions and templates. In this recipe, I am going to show you how you can update your site to a newer version of Joomla!, without much hassle.

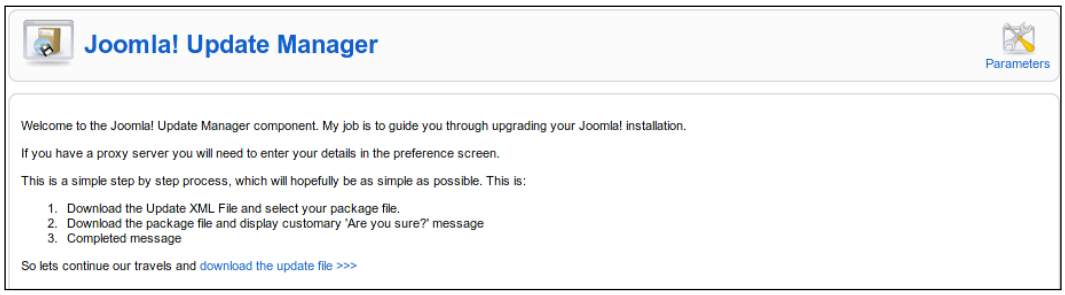
Getting ready...

The Update Manager for Joomla! component can guide you through updating your site to a newer version of Joomla!. The process of updating is almost automatic. Download the installation package of Joomla! Update Manager from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/pasamioprojects/frs/?action=FrsReleaseBrowse&frs_package_id=4728` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installation, carry out the following steps to update your site to a newer version of Joomla!:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Update Manager**. This shows the **Joomla! Update Manager** screen.



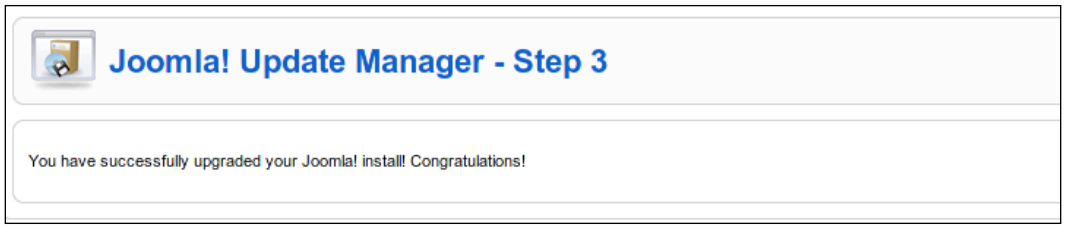
2. Click on the **download the update file>>>** link at the bottom of the instructions. This shows the **Joomla! Update Manager - Step 1** screen, listing the available packages for download, depending upon your existing version of Joomla!.



3. Click on the file link, for example **Patch Package**, to download the package. This will download the package and display the **Joomla! Update Manager, Step 2** screen to show that the file has been downloaded.



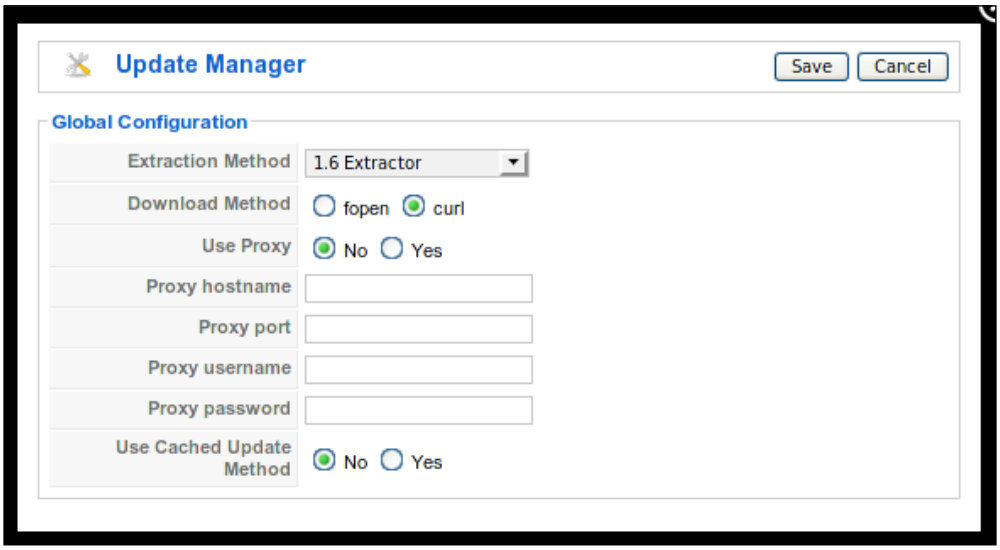
4. Click on the **you can proceed with the install>>>** link to start the installation of the patch file. Finally, you will see the **Joomla! Update Manager – Step 3** screen, informing you that the update is complete.



5. On completion of the update to the newer version of Joomla!, you will see the version number indicated in the top-right corner of the Joomla! administration panel.

There's more...

You can configure how Update Manager for Joomla! will work. For configuring this component, click on **Components | Update Manager** and click on the **Parameters** icon on the **Joomla! Update Manager** screen. This shows the **Update Manager** screen for configuring the parameters.



You can configure the following parameters from the Update Manager screen:

- **Extraction method**: Select an extraction method to be used for extracting zipped files. You can choose **1.6 Extractor**, **1.5 Default Extractor**, or **1.5 PEAR Archive_Tar**. Keeping the default selection will work fine for most systems.
- **Download method**: Update manager can download the update package by using either **fopen** or **curl**. Choose the one you want to use, depending on your server settings.

- **Use Proxy**: Select **Yes** if your server needs a proxy server to download the update package.
- **Proxy hostname**: Provide a proxy server address—either IP address or hostname.
- **Proxy port**: Specify the port number for the proxy server, for example 8080.
- **Proxy username**: Specify the username to log in to the proxy server, if needed.
- **Proxy password**: Specify the password for the proxy server, if needed.
- **Use Cached Update Method**: Select **Yes** to use the update files from the cache. To get the latest version of Joomla!, this should be turned off.

Adding an Ajax search module to your Joomla! site

Joomla! has a search module that works fine, but does not provide Ajax functionality. You may be tempted to add Ajax functionality in a search, as seen at `www.apple.com`. In this recipe, I am going to show you how you can add an Ajax search module to your existing Joomla! website.

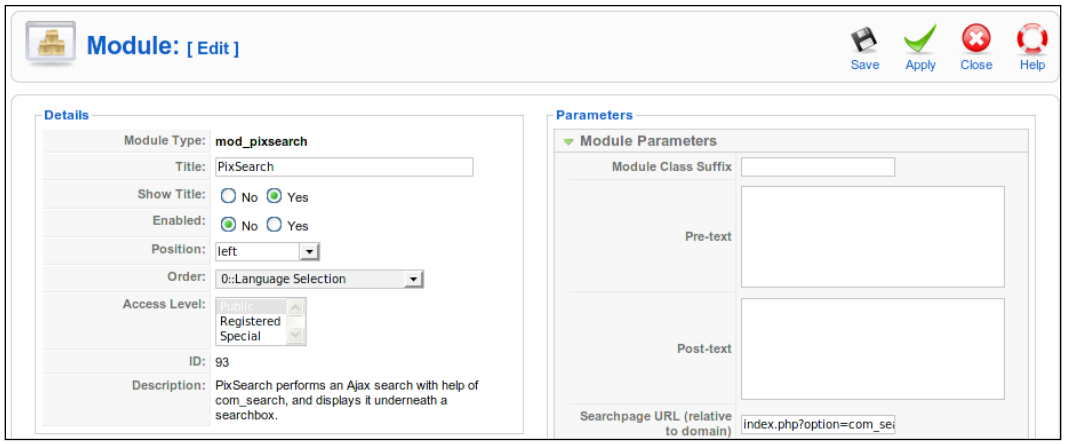
Getting ready...

The PixSearch module is a Joomla! extension that can add an Ajax search box to your Joomla! site. Download the installation package from `http://labs.pixpro.net/pixdownloads/pixsearch/joomla-1/32-modpixsearch050-tar/download` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

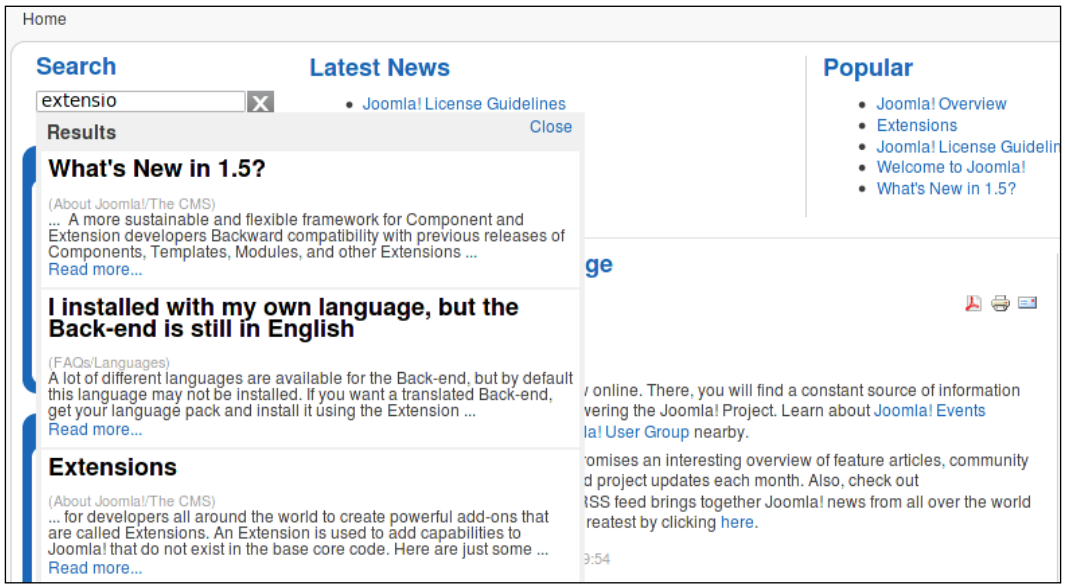
How to do it ...

Once you have installed the module, carry out the following steps to add an Ajax search box:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**. This will take you to the **Module Manager** screen, showing the installed modules.
2. Click on the **PixSearch** module. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen for the **mod_pixsearch** module.



3. Give a title for the module, for example, **Search**, and select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Select a module position from the **Position** drop-down list.
4. Click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
5. Preview the site's frontend to see the module. Type some keywords to search, and you will see a drop-down list showing the results.



To go to a specific result, click on the article title or click on the **Read more...** link. You can close the drop-down window by clicking on the close button in the top-right corner of this box.

There's more...

The module works fine without any configuration. However, you may like to change some of its behavior. You can configure it from the **Module Parameters** section in the **Module: [Edit]** screen.

The parameters allow you to add pre- and post- text to the module. You can also choose whether to use PixSearch CSS or not. It's better to use PixSearch CSS for correctly displaying the search results. More importantly, you can set how to search: by any word, all words, or the exact phrase typed in the search box. You can also select in which order the search results will be displayed.

Adding tags to your Joomla! content

Tagging is common to most web content, especially blog posts. It helps visitors to find similar kinds of articles easily. Joomla! has no tagging facility in the core. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add tagging to your content on a Joomla!-based website.

Getting ready...

Download the Joomla! Tags, still in the beta stage, installation package from `http://www.joomlatags.org/attachments/010_joomlatags-core1.3.0.zip` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

How to do it...

After installation, carry out the following steps to add tagging to Joomla! contents.

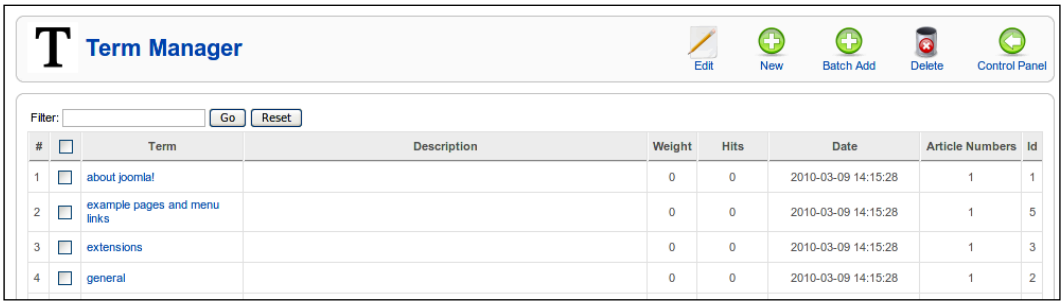
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Joomla Tags**. This shows the **Joomla Tags** control panel.



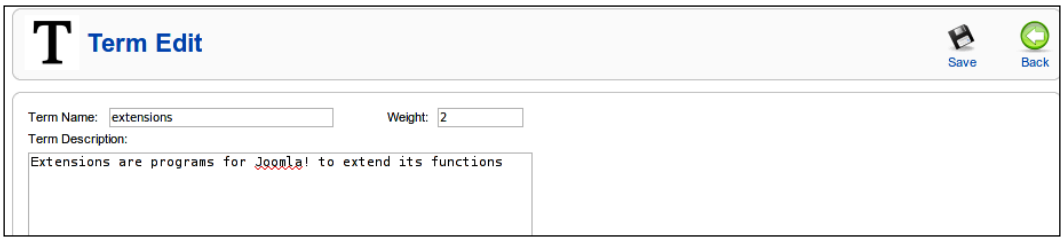
2. Click on the **Import Tags** icon in the control panel. This shows the **Import tags from other components** screen.



3. In the **Source** drop-down list, select **Meta Keywords** and click on the **Import** button. This will import tags from the meta keywords for the content.
4. Click on the **Term Manager** icon in the **Joomla Tags** screen. This shows the **Term Manager** screen, listing the available tags (imported in the previous step).

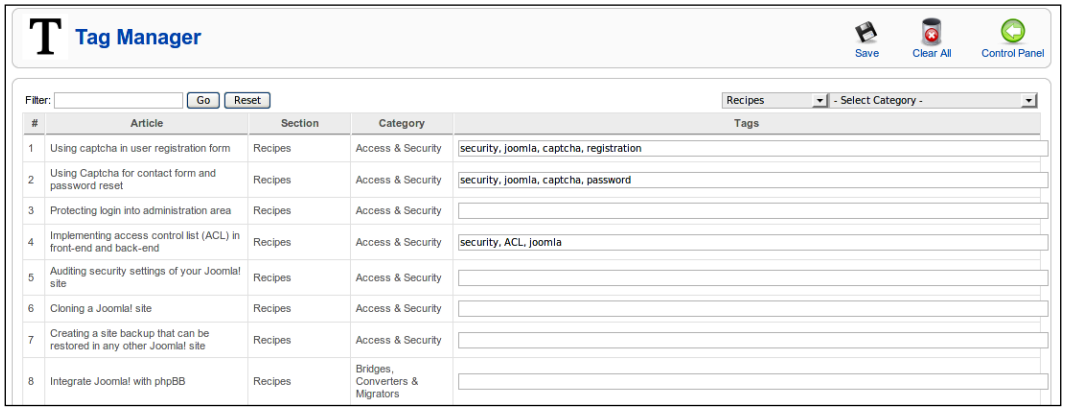


5. For editing a term, click on the term name in the **Term** column. This shows the **Term Edit** screen.



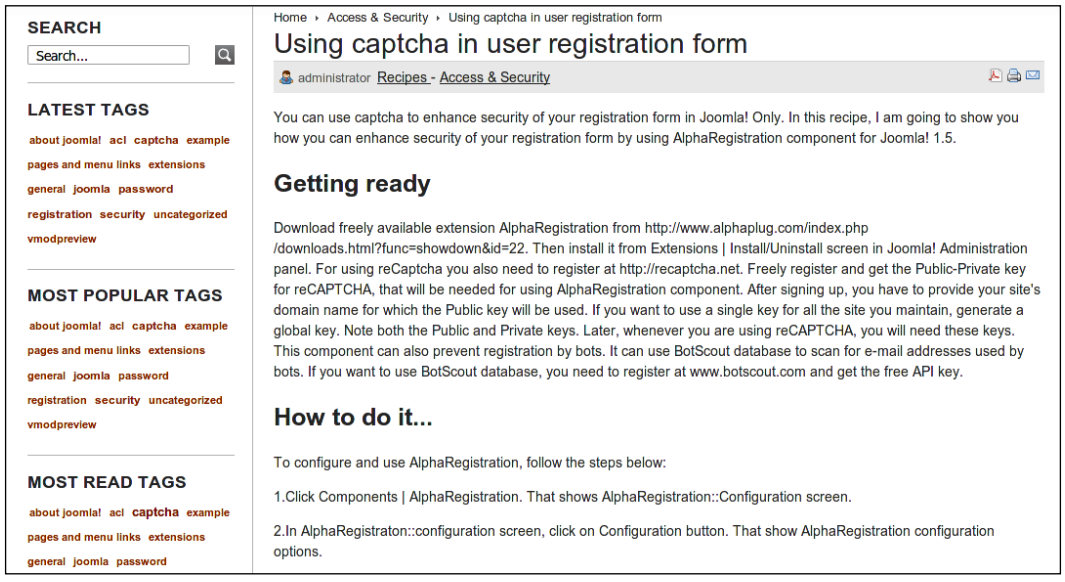
6. In the **Term Edit** screen, you see the **Term Name**, **Weight**, and **Term Description** fields. Type a description of the term in the **Term Description** field. Optionally, you can add a weight for the term in the **Weight** field. Click on the **Save** icon to save your changes. Then click on the **Back** icon to go back to the **Joomla Tags** screen.

7. Click on the **Tag Manager** icon in the **Joomla Tags** screen. This shows a list of articles available.



8. For adding tags in an article, type the tags separated by a comma (,) in the **Tags** column. You can add as many tags as you want. When you are finished, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar to save your changes. Now click on the **Control Panel** icon in the toolbar to go back to **Joomla Tags** control panel.
9. Again, click on the **Tag Manager** icon in the control panel. You will find the newly-added tags in the **Tag Manager** screen.

Preview the site's frontend and you will see four modules showing tags: **LATEST TAGS**, **MOST POPULAR TAGS**, **MOST READ TAGS**, and **RANDOM TAGS**.



Click on any tag and you will see a listing of all the related articles.

Now try to edit one article from the article manager. At the bottom of the HTML editor, you will see the **Add Tags** button, as shown in the following screenshot:



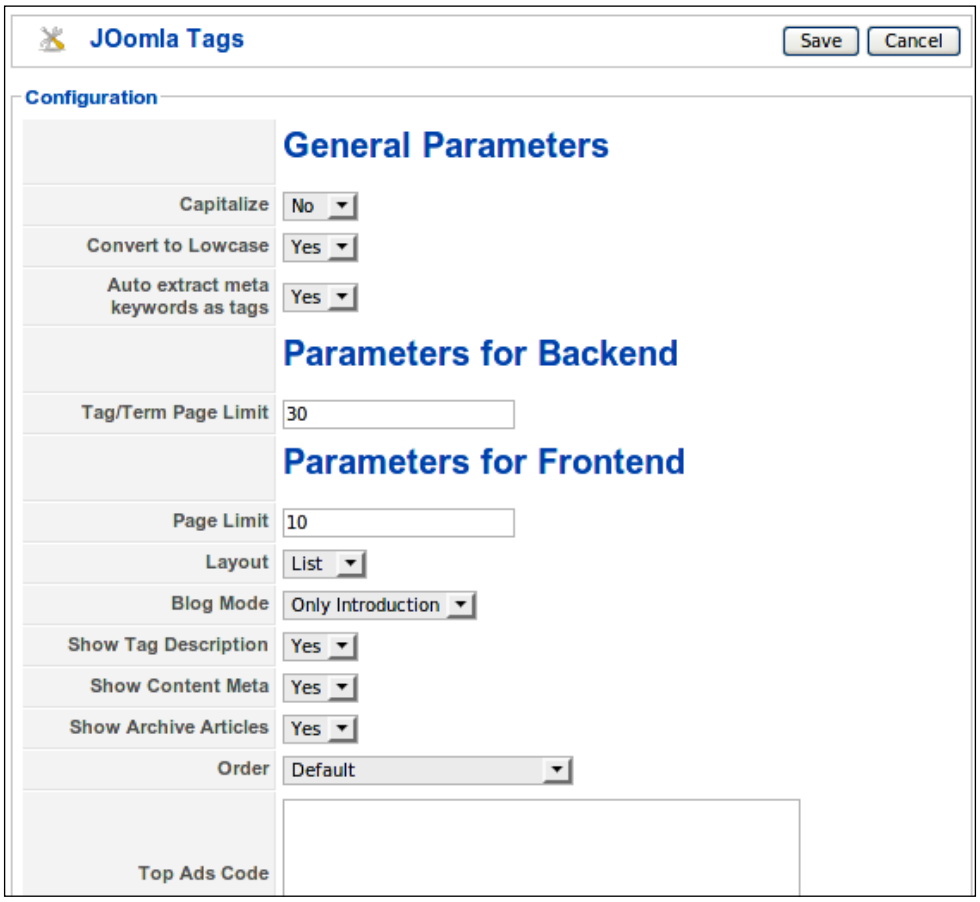
Click on the **Add Tags** button, and you will get a box to insert tags for the article.

There's more...

The `Joomlatags-core1.3.0.zip` file installs components, some modules, and plugins. All these are activated by default. Modules are published to the left module position. You don't need to configure and publish these modules and plugins. However, you can fine tune their behavior by setting some parameters.

Configuring Joomla Tags

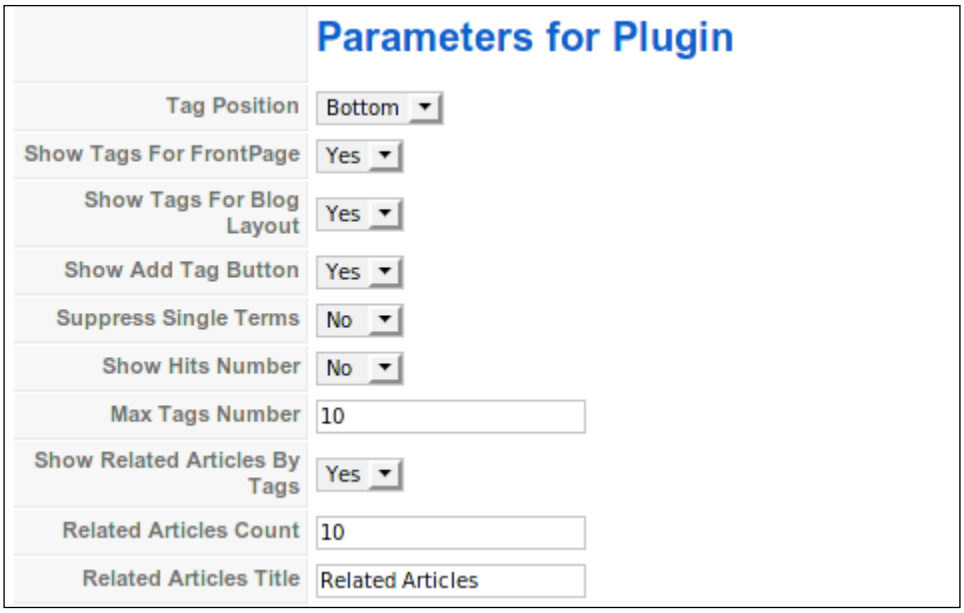
To configure Joomla Tags, click on **Components | Joomla Tags** and then click on the **Configuration** icon in the control panel. This shows the **Configuration** screen.



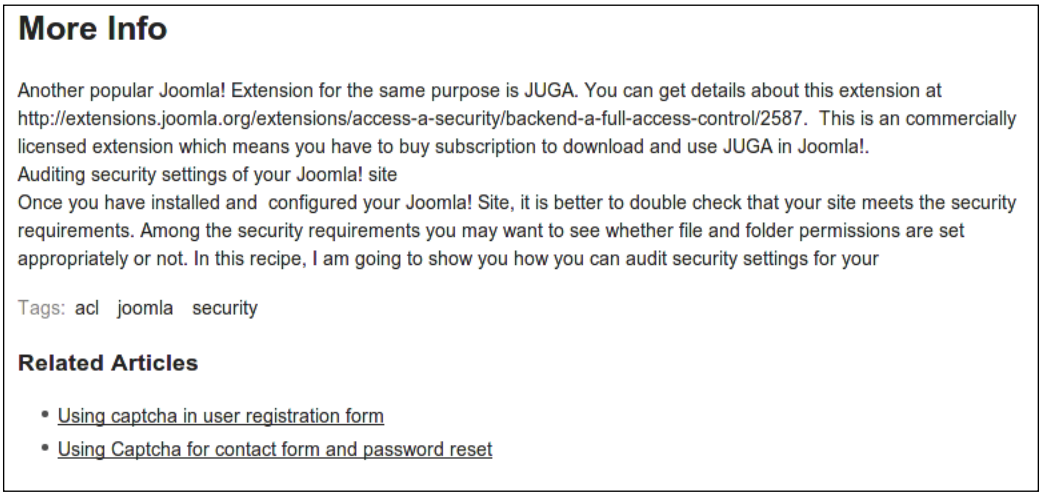
As you see, you can choose to make the tags uppercase, lowercase, or automatically extract meta keywords as tags. You can also set how many articles will be listed in a page in the backend and frontend.

Showing related articles

You can show a list of related articles based on tags at the end of each article. For doing so, click on the **Configuration** icon in the Joomla Tags control panel. Then move to the **Parameters for Plugin** section.



Select **Yes** in the **Show Related Articles By Tags** drop-down list. Specify a number, say 10, in the **Related Articles Count** field. Optionally, you can change the title in the **Related Articles Title** field. When finished, click on the **Save** icon.



Now you will see a list of related articles at the end of the article. This relation is based on the common tags they are using.

17
Converting, Migrating, and Bridging

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Exporting site content to another site running the same or different versions of Joomla!
- Migrating site content from Joomla! 1.0 to 1.5
- Importing users from a CSV file
- Integrating Joomla! with phpBB

Introduction

Migrating a website to a newer version is often a pain. If you have a Joomla! 1.0.x website, you will understand the complexity of migrating the site content to a newer site, running version 1.5.x of Joomla!. The Joomla! core has no easy way of performing such a migration. Luckily, a third-party migrator exists that prepares your old site content to insert it into Joomla! 1.5's new database tables. The migrator component can save you time in migrating such a site.

For a larger site, migrating the users is also a challenge. If you start a site, which should have hundreds of users, and you need to create those users beforehand, you certainly need a tool to do so. The Joomla! Extensions Directory lists some good extensions to do such work. In this chapter, we will learn how to use one popular extension that can help import users to Joomla! from a CSV file.

Besides importing users from one site to another (or the in same site), you may also need to export site content to another site. For example, you may need to export your local site's content to the site maintained in the public web server. Each section, category, and article in the Joomla! database has a unique ID. Maintaining these unique IDs when exporting content is daunting. However, a Joomla! extension named Export Content can help you to migrate such content. We will learn how to use this component for exporting the site's content to another site.

Sometimes, it happens that the application that you have been using for a long time has a large user base. For practical reasons you cannot leave this application, but you need a solution so that the application works well with Joomla!. First, you may want the Joomla! users to be able to use any other application seamlessly without logging in to that application separately. On the other hand, you may want the users of the other application be able to access the Joomla! content. Previously, such integration of applications with Joomla! was really difficult. However, fortunately the JFusion component has come to solve the problems of integration and multiple authentications. In this chapter, we will introduce the JFusion component by showing how we can integrate a popular web forum application, phpBB, to Joomla!.

Exporting site content to another site running the same or different versions of Joomla!

The Joomla! 1.0.x table structure is different from that of Joomla! 1.5.x. This implies that when exporting the Joomla! 1.0.x content to Joomla! 1.5.x, the site will face some difficulties. Even migrating content from one site to another is difficult, as you have to deal with the uniqueness of each article ID. However, you may often need to export content from one site to another, running the same version or a previous version of Joomla!. For example, we have set up a Joomla! website inside LAN that acts as the intranet. We have posted articles that need to be published to an external website which is also running Joomla!. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to export the content of a site to another site, running the same or a different version of Joomla!.

Getting ready...

The **Export Content** extension allows you to export a site's content to another Joomla! site. The component has three versions: one for Mambo, one for Joomla! 1.0.x, and another for Joomla! 1.5.x. It can export sections, categories, and articles from Joomla! 1.0.x to Joomla! 1.5.x, to another installation of Joomla! 1.5.x. Download the latest package labeled for your version of Joomla! from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/com_export_co1/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.



Please note that the component runs on Joomla! 1.5.x in the legacy mode. Before installing it to Joomla! 1.5.x, you need to enable the **System - Legacy** plugin from the **Plugin Manager** screen.

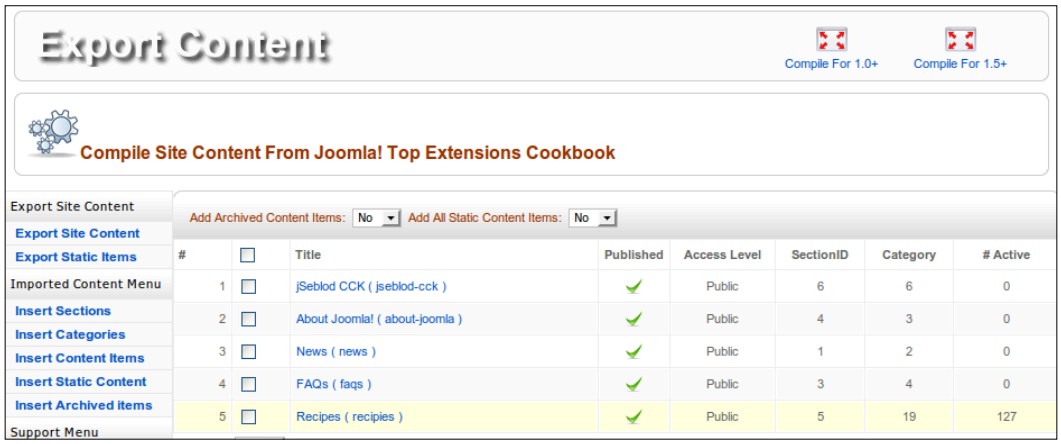
How to do it...

Once the component is installed, follow the steps as shown:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Export Content**. This shows the **Export Content Component** screen:



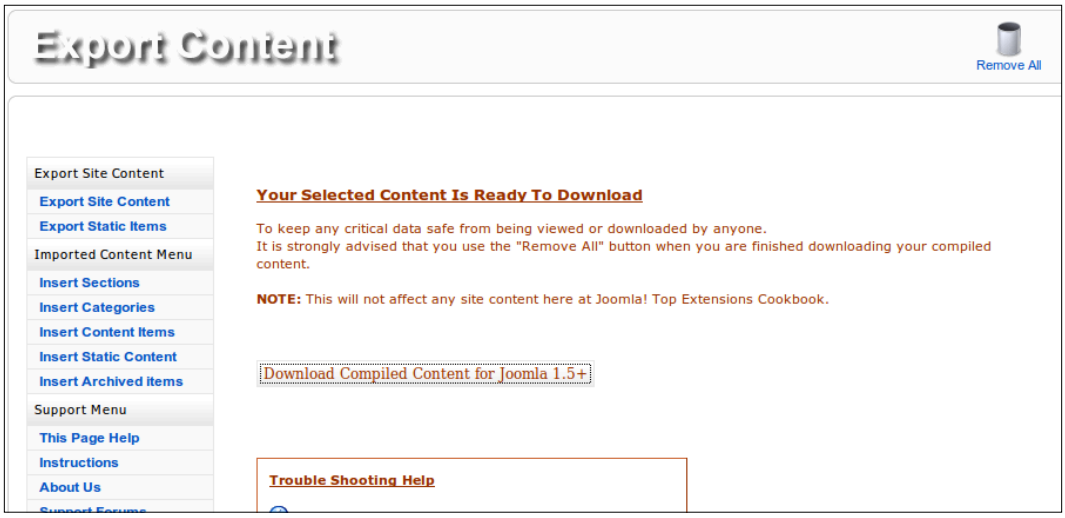
2. Click on the **Export-Compile Site Data by sections** icon in this screen. This shows the **Export Content** screen, listing the available sections.



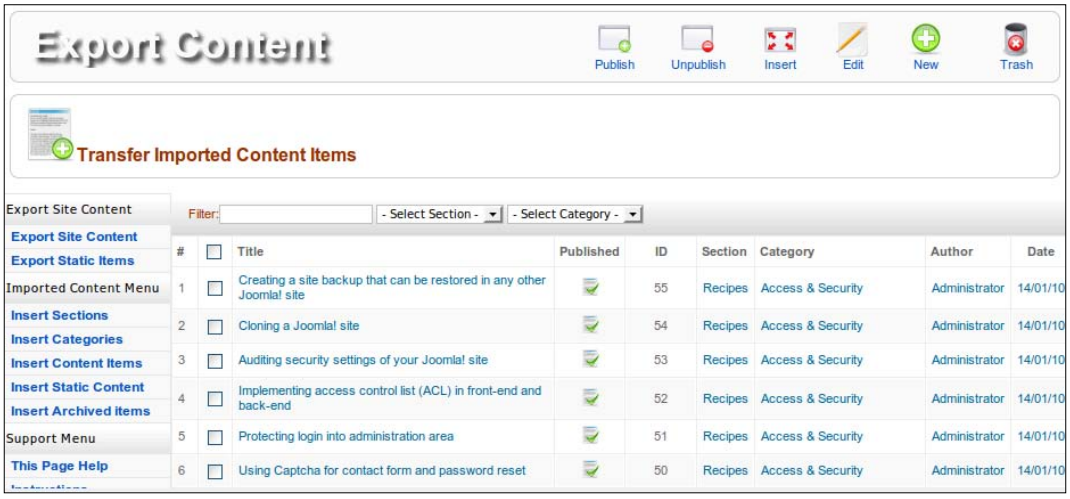
3. Select the sections you want to export. For example, we will select the **Recipes** section and then click on either the **Compile For 1.0+** or the **Compile For 1.5+** button at the top, depending on the Joomla! version of the target site. For example, we want to export this content to another Joomla! 1.5+ site. Therefore, we click on the **Compile For 1.5+** button. This compiles the sections (categories and articles beneath that section) and shows a message indicating the success. Now you will see a **Download 1.5+ Data** button at the top.



4. Click on the **Download 1.5+ Data** button. This will show the following screenshot, confirming that the content is ready for download:



5. Click on the **Download Compiled Content for Joomla 1.5+** link and save the file to your local computer.
6. Click on the **Remove All** button after downloading the file.
7. Now log in to the administration area on the target Joomla! 1.5.x site, where you want the content to be imported. If you have not installed the **Export Content Component** on the target Joomla! site yet, install the correct version of it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.
8. Click on **Components** | **Export Content**, and then on the **Transfer Imported Content Items** icon on the **Export Content** screen. This screen lists the imported articles:





If you encounter an error message saying that there is a problem on line 693 in `/administrator/components/com_export_content/admin.export_content.html.php`, then open the file with the text editor and go to line 693. You will see `$now = new JDate();` and comment this out by putting '`//`' before this line (that is, `//$now = new JDate();`). The component should work fine after this amendment.

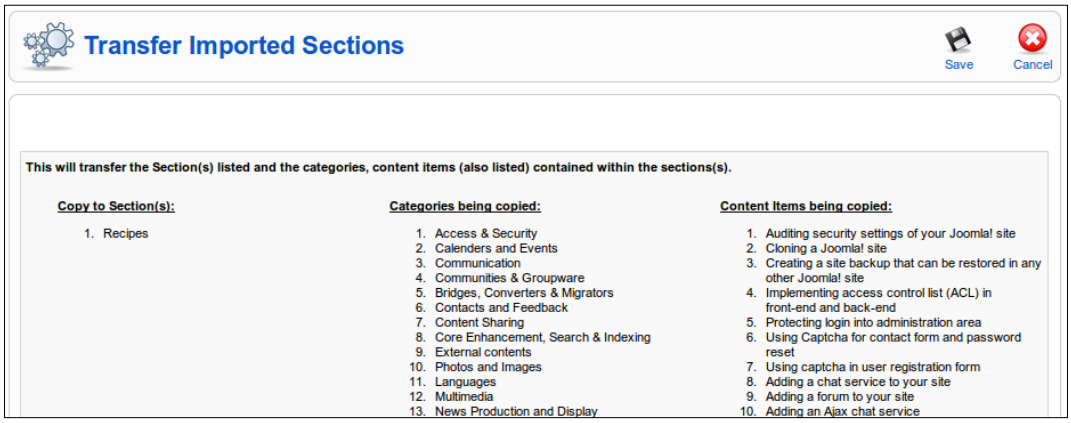
9. Select the articles you want to add to your current site and click on the **Insert** button in the toolbar. This will add the articles to the current site and take you to the **Article Manager**. You will see the articles listed in the **Article Manager** screen.

How it works...

The **Export Content** component helps you export the sections, categories, articles, and static content to different versions of Joomla!, or another site running the same version of Joomla!. First, it creates the SQL database so that content items (sections, categories, and articles) can be created on a target computer and stored in temporary tables. Then it creates a SQL file and makes a component installer package. Site administrators can install this component installer package on the target site. Once installed on the target site, the administrator can view the imported sections, categories, and articles, and edit them if needed. Once satisfied with the articles, the content can finally be added to the target site by clicking on the **Insert** button. Once the section, category, or article is added to the target site, it will be removed from the temporary tables.

There's more...

Instead of adding articles one at a time to the target site, you can import by section or category. To import by section, click on **Components** | **Export Content** and then click on the **Transfer Imported Data by Sections** icon. This will list the available sections. Select the sections you want to import and click on the **Insert** button. This will show the **Transfer Imported Sections** screen, listing the selected sections, categories, and articles under those sections. Finally, click on the **Save** button to complete the import.



Similarly, you can import the items by selecting categories.

Moving linked images

You may notice that the images inserted in the articles are not displayed. This may happen when the images are added using a relative path. One solution would be to copy the `/images` folder and its sub-folders to the target site.

See also...

For more information on updated versions and troubleshooting this component, please visit the developer site at `http://www.bestdownloadsites.com/joomla/export-content`.

Migrating site content from Joomla! 1.0 to 1.5

The Joomla! 1.0.x table structure is different from that of Joomla! 1.5.x. This implies that migrating Joomla! 1.0.x content and users to Joomla! 1.5.x will cause some difficulties. If you have ever tried migrating such a site to Joomla! 1.5.x, you probably know the pain. In migrating such a site, you have to consider two issues, migrating users and migrating content. Some third-party extensions can help you to migrate these safely to Joomla! 1.5.x. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to migrate content from a Joomla! 1.0.x site to a Joomla! 1.5.x site.

Getting ready...

The **Migrator** component can help you migrate your site's users and content safely, from a Joomla! 1.0.x site to a Joomla! 1.5.x site. Download the latest version of the Migrator component from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/pasamioprojects/frs`. Once downloaded, install it from the **Installers** | **Component** screen in your Joomla! 1.0.x site. If you have other extensions, such as DOCman, EventList, or Joom!Fish installed, you can find a third-party migrator ETL at `http://extensions.joomla.org/extensions/extension-specific/migrator-extensions`. Download the ETL extensions and install these on the Joomla! 1.0.x site from the **Installers** | **Mambots** screen.

For migrating to Joomla! 1.5.x, you need to install Joomla! 1.5.x in a new directory other than existing Joomla! 1.0.x site. The new Joomla! 1.5.x site should also use a new database or a new table prefix. For example, if your old site's database prefix is `mos__`, you could use `jos__` to differentiate between tables created in Joomla! 1.0.x and Joomla! 1.5.x. The `./tmp` directory of your new site should be writable by the web server process.

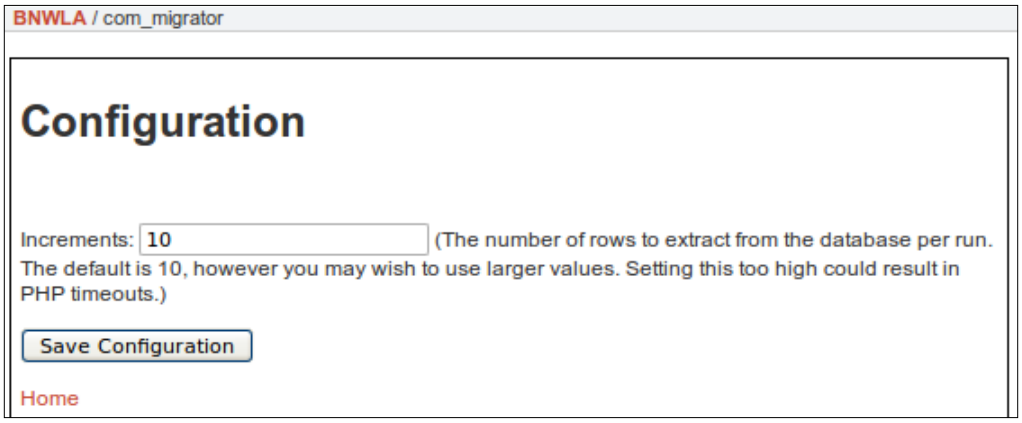


Warning: before proceeding with migrating your site to Joomla! 1.5, you must backup your site's database and the files. The Joomla! migration to 1.5 will preserve only the contents of your Joomla! 1.0.x site. No components, modules, plugins, and templates you have will be available in the upgraded Joomla! 1.5.

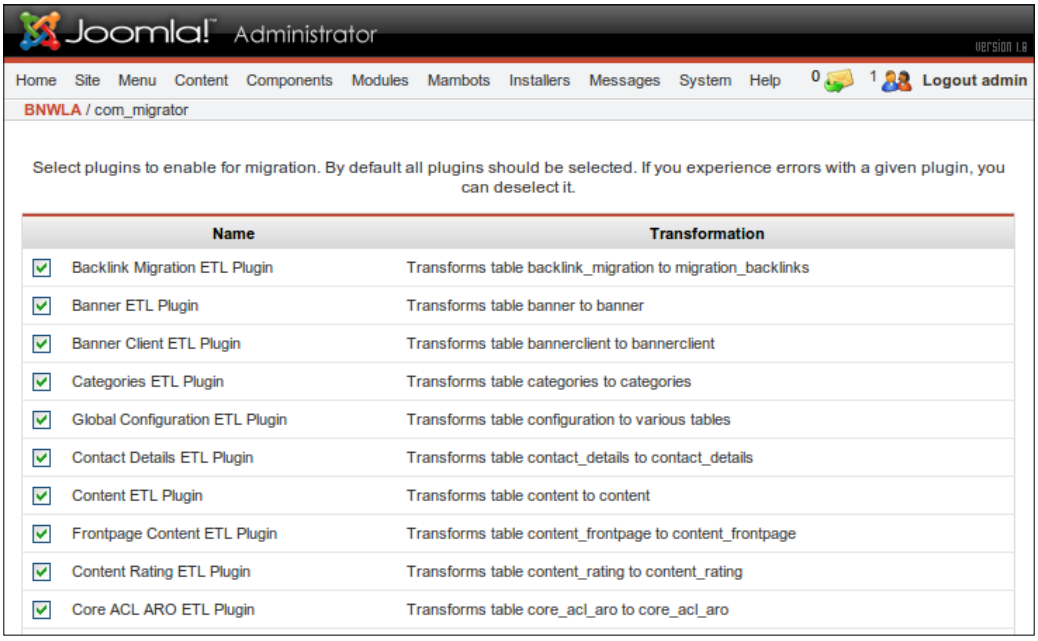
How to do it...

After installing the Migrator 1.5 component and other ETL extensions, follow the steps, as shown, to migrate from Joomla! 1.0.x to Joomla! 1.5.x:

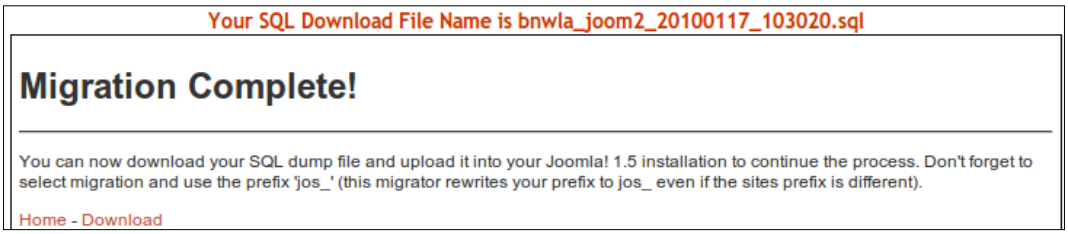
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Migrator**. This shows a screen stating the steps you need to follow for using the migrator component. On this screen, click on the **Configuration** link, and type **10** in the **Increments** field. Then click on the **Save Configuration** button and the **Home** link.



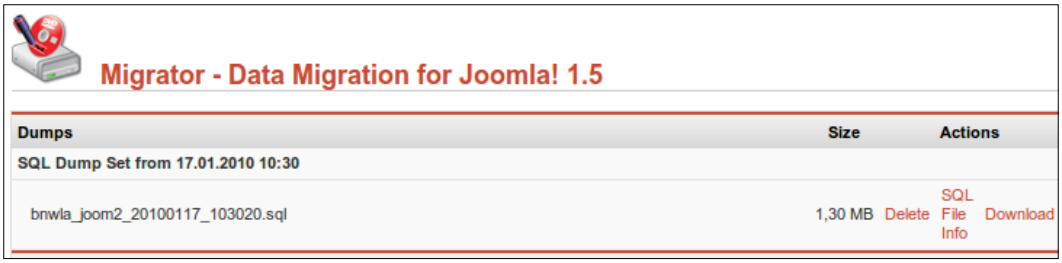
2. Click on the **Add 3rd Party Migrators** link. This will show the **Installing Migrators** screen. You can download and install third-party Migrators from this screen. Click on the **Back** link to go to main page.
3. Click on **List Plugins** to see the list of installed plugins. Click on **Create Migration SQL File** to start creating the database dump in SQL. It shows a list of available Migrator plugins. Select the plugin whose content you want to migrate. At the bottom of this list, you will see a **Start Migration** link. Click on this link to start migration.



4. This shows the progress of migration, and finally a success screen informing you that you can now download the migration SQL file.



5. Click on the **Download** link to download the SQL file. This shows a list of migration SQL dumps available for download. Find the latest one on the list and click on the **Download** link next to that file. This downloads the file to your computer.



6. Now it's time to start your new Joomla! 1.5.x installation from a new directory. For example, you are starting the installation in the `/home/user/public_html/j15` directory, then upload the downloaded SQL file to the `/home/user/public_html/j15/installation/sql/migration` directory through the FTP client, or wait to be prompted for uploading this file during installation.
7. From the web browser, point your cursor to the URL of the new site, for example `http://yourdomain.com/j15/`. This will start the Joomla! 1.5 installation wizard.
8. In **Step 6: Configuration**, select the **Load Migration Script** radio box, then type the **Old Table Prefix** and **Old Site Encoding**. In the **Migration Script** field, click on the **Browse** button and select the SQL file previously created by the Migrator component. If you have already uploaded the file to `./installation/sql/migration` using FTP/SCP, enable **I have already uploaded the migration script to the server (e.g. via FTP/SCP)**. Then enable **This script is a Joomla! 1.0 migration script**.
9. Click on the **Upload and Execute** button. Once the data is imported, you will see a message saying that the data import was successful. Click on the **Next** button to proceed.
10. When the installation finishes, you will see a message asking you to completely remove the installation directory. Do it and browse to your new site's frontend and backend. You will see the articles from your old sites.

How it works...

The Migrator component formats your data from Joomla! 1.0.x tables appropriately for Joomla! 1.5.x. Through the Migrator component, you create a database SQL dump. During installation of Joomla! 1.5, you provide the old site's SQL dump. The content of the old site is recreated from this SQL dump, then you can see the content from your old site in the migrated new Joomla! 1.5 site.

There's more...

Note that the Migrator component only migrates the content from the database; images and other files associated with these articles are not migrated. Therefore, you need to copy the images to the new location, for example from the `oldsite/images` to `newsite/images` location. To be sure that the images are displayed correctly, look into the migrated content and correct the missing images and links manually, if possible.

Online documentation

Upgrading to a newer version of Joomla! or migrating a Joomla! 1.0 site to a Joomla! 1.5 site needs careful planning and informed decisions. Before proceeding with such a task, you must understand the consequences of each step. For a full guide to migration, please consult the online documentation and discussions at `http://docs.joomla.org/Migrating_from_1.0.x_to_1.5_Stable`.

Importing users from a CSV file

If you need to add a large number of users to your Joomla! site, you may consider adding them quickly. For example, you are creating a site where all members of that organization will join. Instead of leaving the option of registering themselves, you can create accounts for them and let them log in. This can be done through simple methods such as importing users from a comma separated variable (CSV) file. In this recipe, we are going to show you how you can import hundreds of users from a CSV file.

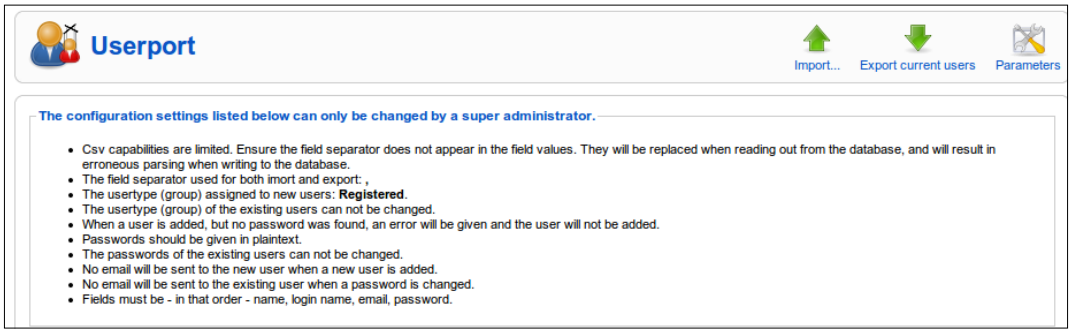
Getting ready...

A third-party Joomla! extension, **UserPort**, allows you to import users from a CSV file. Download this freely-available component from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/userport/frs/` and install it from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

Once the UserPort component is installed, follow the steps as shown:

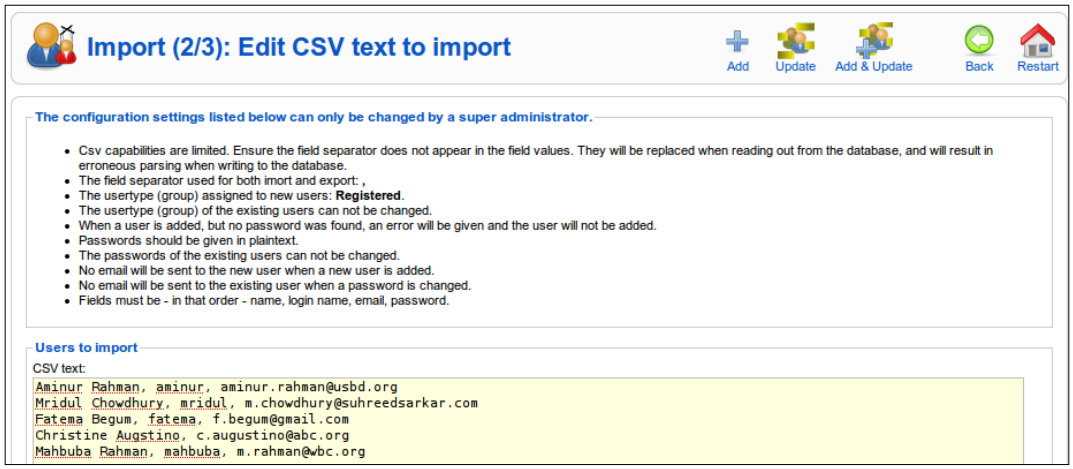
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **Userport**. This shows the **Userport** screen.



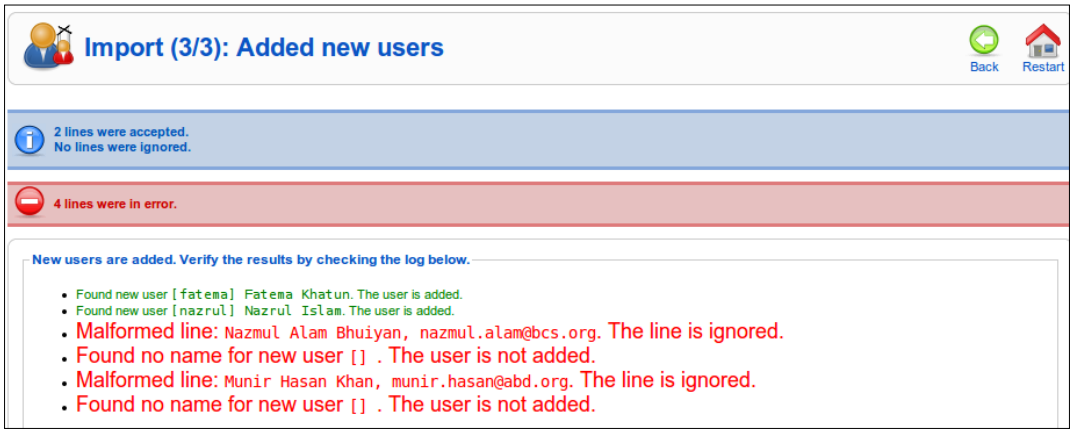
2. The **Userport** screen lists what you can do with this component with the current configuration. Click on the **Import** button, and you will get the **Import(1/3): Choose initial text** screen, as shown in the following screenshot:



3. If you have a CSV file saved, select the **Use the contents (no parsing beforehand) of the file** radio button and click on the **Browse...** button, then select the CSV file and click on the **Continue...** button. The CSV file needs to have specific fields in it. It should have at least four fields: name, login name, e-mail address, and password. For starting with new entries, select **No initial text. Give me an empty textbox** and click on the **Continue...** button. This shows the **Import (2/3): Edit CSV text to import** screen.



4. This screen shows the configuration settings and a textbox to type the user details. In the **Users to import** textbox, type the user details as: `<full name>, <login name>, <email>, <password>`, as shown in the preceding screenshot. Once all the user details are typed, click on the **Add** button.
5. The **Import (3/3): Added new users** screen will be displayed. Note that lines with errors are not accepted. This screen clearly shows which lines have been added, which have not, and why.



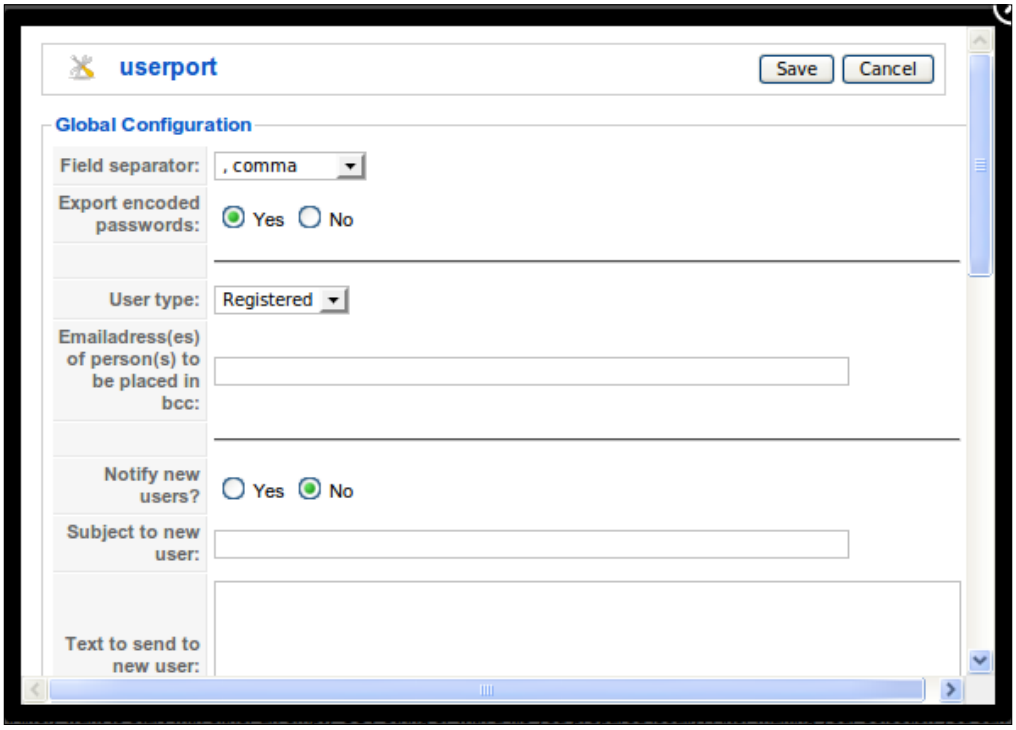
6. Now click on **Site** | **User Manager** and you should see the newly imported users listed in the **User Manager** screen.

How it works...

The UserPort component simply takes user details—full name, login name, e-mail address, and password separated by commas (,)—and adds those to the Joomla! user database. It can detect errors in a malformed list, and shows the causes of not adding or ignoring a few lines. You can make the CSV file with hundreds of users on the list and thus add the users to the Joomla! 1.5.x sites.

There's more...

From the UserPort component, you can also export and update existing users. You can set options to notify the updated users or the newly created ones. To change the configurations, click on the **Parameters** button in the toolbar. This shows the configuration options, as shown in the following screenshot:



If you need to update users' information, first export the users and view the list. Make changes to that list and click on the **Add and Update** button. This will first search for new entries and add them, it will then update the existing user, based on changes provided in the list.

Integrating Joomla! with phpBB

phpBB is one of the most popular bulletin boards, well known for forum services. It has been used long before Joomla! CMS. If you have such a bulletin board service or forum, it must contain a large user base. Joomla! has some user-friendly bulletin board services and forum applications, but migrating the content and users from phpBB will be time consuming. In that case, it is better to keep Joomla! and phpBB separate and use a mechanism so that users from both applications use Joomla! and phpBB, without the need to register to both applications. In this recipe, you will learn how to integrate phpBB with Joomla! so that users from phpBB can access Joomla! and users of Joomla! can also use phpBB, without further registration and by a single login.

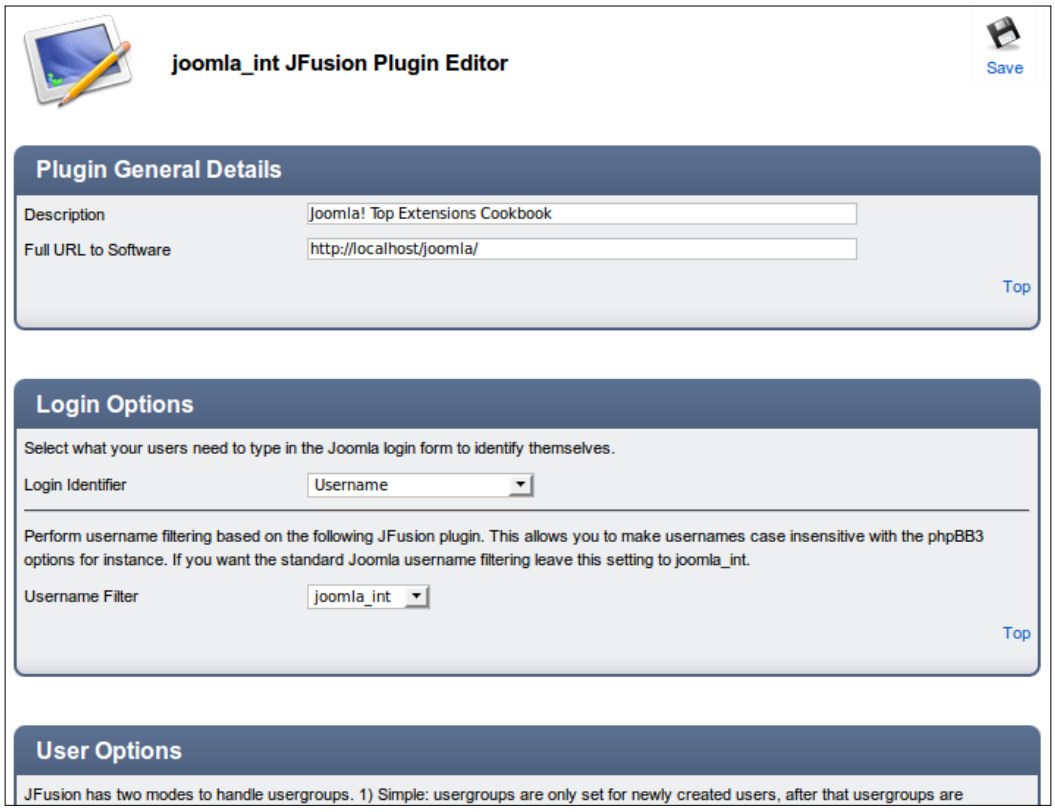
Getting ready...

JFusion is a universal extension for bridging Joomla!—phpBB and other applications, such as docuWiki, Elgg, Gallery 2, and so on. To integrate phpBB with Joomla!, first download the freely-available JFusion component from `http://www.jfusion.org/downloads/category/1-latest_release`. Once downloaded, install the component from the **Extensions** | **Install/Uninstall** screen.

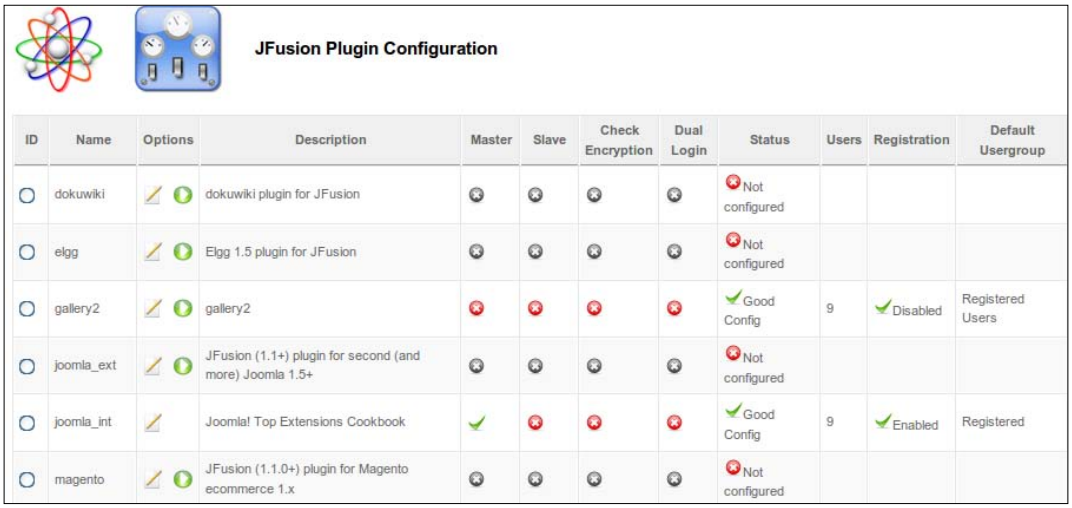
How to do it...

After installing JFusion, follow the steps as shown below to integrate phpBB with Joomla!:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components** | **JFusion** | **CPanel**. This shows the **JFusion Control Panel**. Click on the **Joomla! Options** button in this control panel to show the **joomla_int JFusion Plugin Editor** screen.



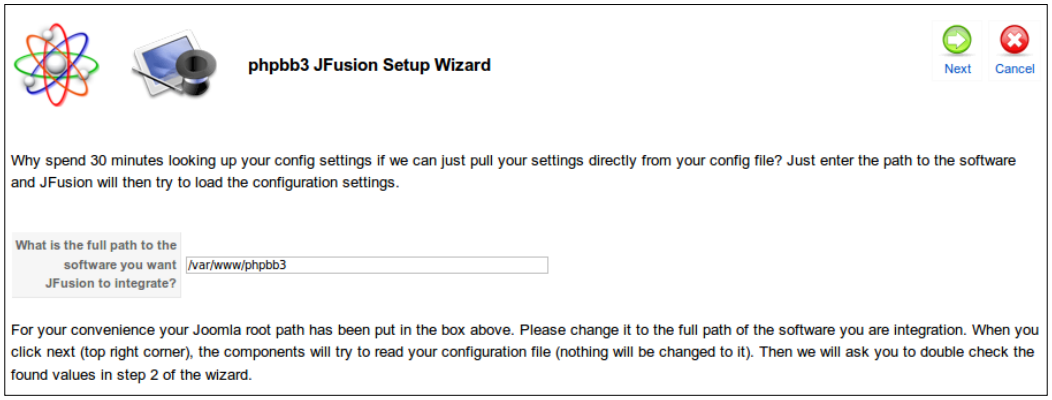
2. In the **Plugin General Details** section, check the site's URL. In the **Login Options** section, take the default settings and also check the settings in the **User Options** section. Select **Registered** in the **Default usergroup** drop-down list. Keep **Yes** selected in all other fields. Then click on the **Save** button. This will show the **JFusion Plugin Configuration** screen.



JFusion Plugin Configuration

ID	Name	Options	Description	Master	Slave	Check Encryption	Dual Login	Status	Users	Registration	Default Usergroup
○	dokuwiki		dokuwiki plugin for JFusion	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	Not configured			
○	elgg		Elgg 1.5 plugin for JFusion	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	Not configured			
○	gallery2		gallery2	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	Good Config	9	Disabled	Registered Users
○	joomla_ext		JFusion (1.1+) plugin for second (and more) Joomla 1.5+	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	Not configured			
○	joomla_int		Joomla! Top Extensions Cookbook	✓	⊗	⊗	⊗	Good Config	9	Enabled	Registered
○	magento		JFusion (1.1.0+) plugin for Magento ecommerce 1.x	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	Not configured			

3. Select the **phpBB3** plugin and click on the arrow icon in the green circle in the **Options** column. This shows the **phpbb3 JFusion Setup Wizard** screen.



phpbb3 JFusion Setup Wizard

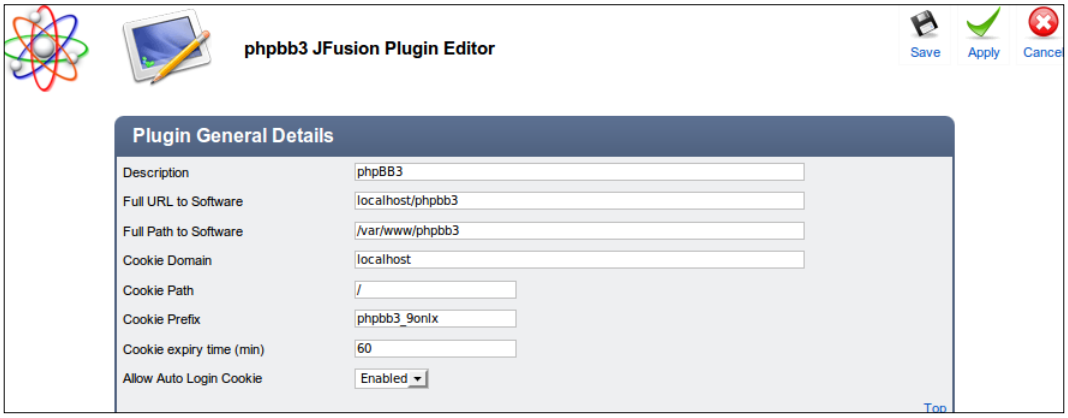
Next Cancel

Why spend 30 minutes looking up your config settings if we can just pull your settings directly from your config file? Just enter the path to the software and JFusion will then try to load the configuration settings.

What is the full path to the software you want JFusion to integrate? /var/www/phpbb3

For your convenience your Joomla root path has been put in the box above. Please change it to the full path of the software you are integration. When you click next (top right corner), the components will try to read your configuration file (nothing will be changed to it). Then we will ask you to double check the found values in step 2 of the wizard.

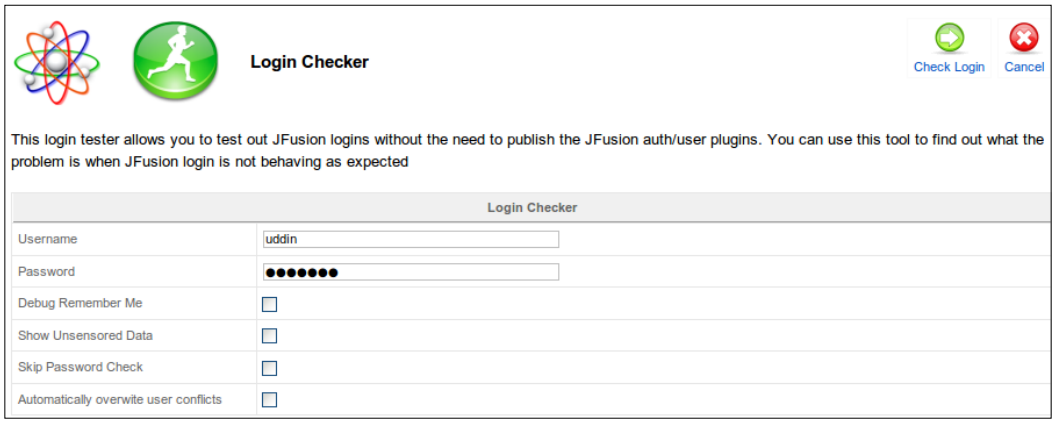
4. **phpbb3 JFusion Setup Wizard** will ask for the application path. Type the path of the phpBB3 application in the textbox and then click on the **Next** button. This shows the **phpbb3 JFusion Plugin Editor** screen.



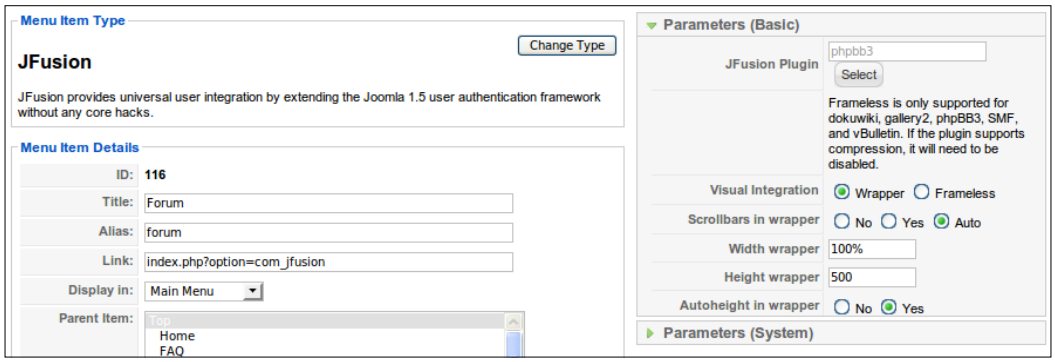
5. In the **Plugin General Details** section, check that the paths shown are correct. Then check the database connection details in the **Database Options** section. In the **Login Options** section, select the **Username** as **Login identifier** and **Let JFusion create cookies without accessing files** in the next drop-down list. Click on the **Save** button when you have finished changing the settings.
6. In the **JFusion Plugin Configuration** screen, find the **phpBB** plugin and click on the button under the **Slave** column. This enables the plugin as a slave. When enabled, the plugin row will look like the following screenshot:



7. Now click on the **Login Checker** link. This will display the following screen:



8. Type the **Username** and **Password** for an existing Joomla! user and click on the **Check Login** button. This will check the login to the Master and Slave (that is, Joomla! and phpBB3) and show the results. If you see the success message for logging in to both applications, your configurations are fine.
9. Now click on **Menus** | **Main Menu** and then the **New** button. This will show the **Menu Item: [New]** screen. Click on **JFusion** from the list, and you will get a form to configure the menu. In the **Menu Item Details** section, type the **Title** of this menu as **Forum** and keep other settings as the default values. Then move to the **Parameters (Basic)** section.



10. Click on the **Select** button to the right of the **JFusion Plugin** field. This will show a pop-up dialog. Select **phpBB3** from the drop-down list and click on the **Save** button. Keep the default values for all the other fields.
11. Now preview the site. In the frontend, you will find the menu link **Forum**. Click on this link to show the phpBB3 forum inside Joomla! as a wrapper.
12. Log in to your Joomla! frontend with a username and password, and you will be able to use the phpBB3 forum.

How it works...

The JFusion component is a unique bridge to integrate Joomla! with many popular php applications. It has several plugins for authentication with external applications and vice versa. Here we have configured the `joomla_int` (which means Joomla internal site) plugin as `Master`. This means that users will register to Joomla! and be authenticated by Joomla!. Any user created in Joomla! will be replicated to other applications that have been configured as Slave. In this case, we have configured the phpBB3 plugin as `Slave`. Configuring the phpBB3 plugin was very much automated in this case. The setup wizard just needs to know the installation path of phpBB3. We have provided this and JFusion extracted all other configuration options for phpBB3, including database options. After configuring the plugin, we made it a Slave and then created a menu for the phpBB3 plugin through **Menu Manager**.

There's more

JFusion can be used for other applications, such as Magento e-commerce, Gallery2, and so on. Configuring the plugins for other applications is almost the same. However, depending on the plugin, there may be many other options to configure. For help with configuring other options, please see the JFusion documentation at `http://www.jfusion.org/index.php/docs`.

18
Managing Access and Security

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Using Captcha on a user registration form
- Using Captcha on a contact and password reset form
- Implementing an Access Control List (ACL) in the frontend and backend
- Auditing the security settings of a Joomla! site
- Creating a site backup that can be restored in any other Joomla! site
- Cloning a Joomla! site from an existing backup

Introduction

Joomla! has many extensions for controlling access to your Joomla site and ensuring the site's security. By default, Joomla! allows users to register and log in to Joomla!. Based on group membership, it allows users to perform certain tasks. The registration and password retrieval forms have been designed to be safe. However, an extra layer of security can be added. For example, Captcha images can be added to forms such as the user registration form and others to verify that a human is registering to your Joomla! site, not an automated bot or script.

Although Joomla! has a default Access Control system in place, there is room for improvement. Several third-party extensions have tried to implement ACL in Joomla!, **noixACL** is one of them, freely available and popular. We will show a recipe in this chapter to implement enhanced ACL through noixACL.

Joomla! has no in-built mechanism for auditing security. However, third-party extensions such as **Joomla! Tools Suite** (**JTS**) can be used to audit the security of your Joomla! site.

As a webmaster of a Joomla!-based website, you also need to back up your site from time to time, and, in a worst case scenario, you will need to restore the site from the backup to a new server. Third-party extensions like Akeeba Core Backup, formerly known as JoomlaPack, can help you to perform such backups and restoration.

Using Captcha on a user registration form

The default registration form in Joomla! doesn't provide any means to check whether the registrant is a human or a bot. Introducing a check for humans—such as placing a cryptic image or a math challenge—can prevent automated registration by bots. Using Captcha for registration forms can enhance security by preventing such automated registrations. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to enhance the security of your registration form by adding Captcha to Joomla! 1.5.

Getting ready...

AlphaRegistration is a popular extension that allows Captcha images to be shown on registration forms. Download this freely available extension from `http://www.alphaplug.com/index.php/downloads.html?func=showdown&id=22`. Then install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

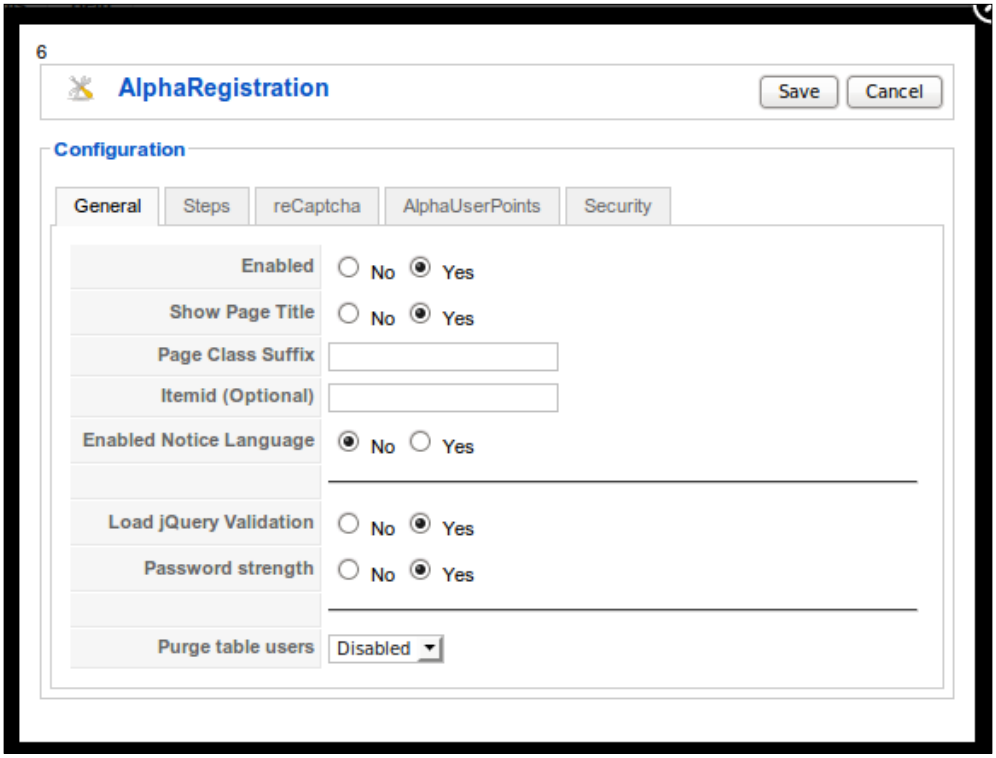
For using reCAPTCHA—a famous Captcha service provider—you will need to register at `http://recaptcha.net`. Register for free and get the Public-Private key for reCAPTCHA, which will be needed for using the AlphaRegistration component. After signing up, you have to provide your site's domain name for which the Public key will be used. If you want to use a single key for all the sites you maintain, generate a global key. Note both the Public and Private keys. Later, you will need these keys whenever using reCAPTCHA.

AlphaRegistration can use the BotScout database to scan for e-mail addresses used by bots. If you want to use the BotScout database, you will need to register at `www.botscout.com` and get the free API key.

How to do it...

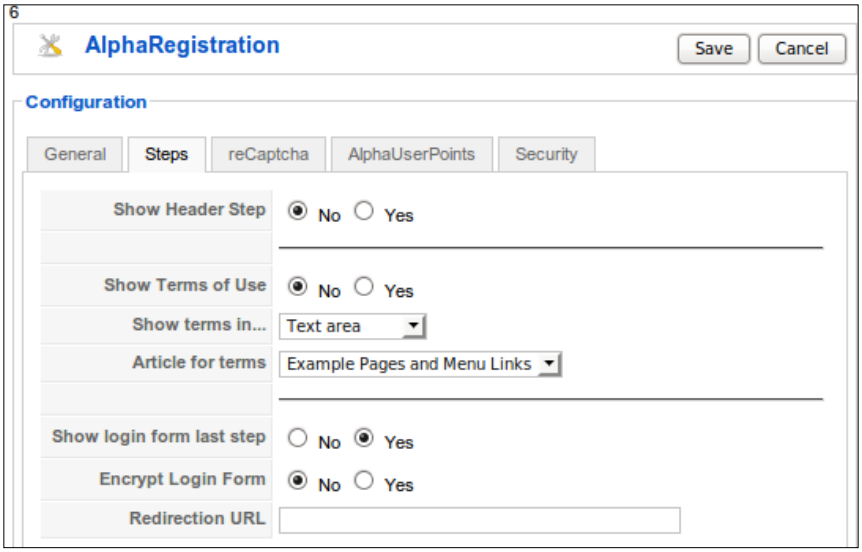
After installing the extension, carry out the following steps to configure and use AlphaRegistration:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | AlphaRegistration**. This shows the **AlphaRegistration::Configuration** screen.
2. In the **AlphaRegistration::configuration** screen, click on the **Configuration** button. This will show the **AlphaRegistration** configuration option pop-up screen.

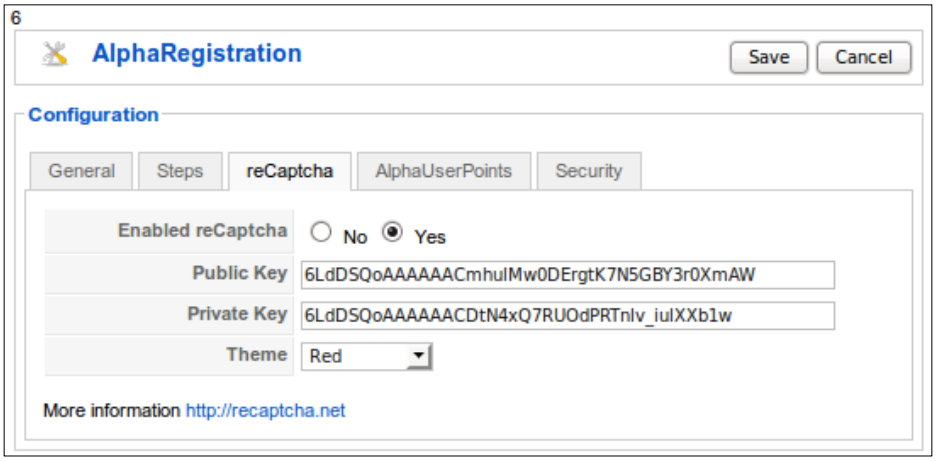


3. In the **General** tab, check **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Select **Yes** in the **Show Page Title** field and accept the default values for the other fields on this tab, so that it looks like the previous screenshot.

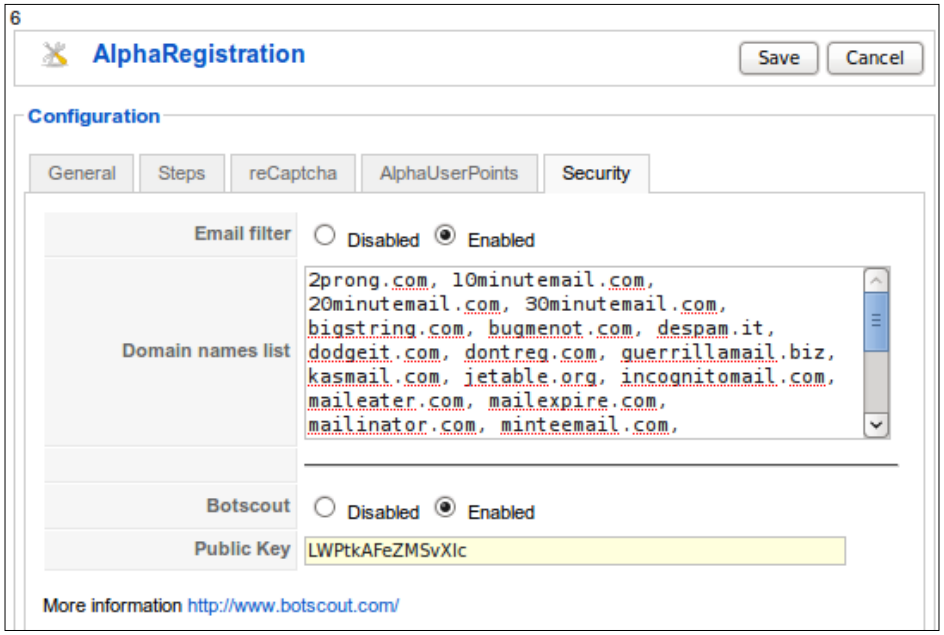
4. In the **Steps** tab, select **No** in the **Show Header Step** field and **Yes** in the **Show Terms of Use** field. We have selected **No** in this field, as we don't want to show the terms of service on the registration page. Keep the default settings for other fields, so that the tab looks like the following screenshot:



5. In the **reCaptcha** tab, select **Yes** in the **Enabled reCaptcha** field and then paste the Public and Private keys for reCaptcha in their respective fields. From the **Theme** drop-down list select a theme, for example **Red** for reCaptcha. The tab will look like the following screenshot:

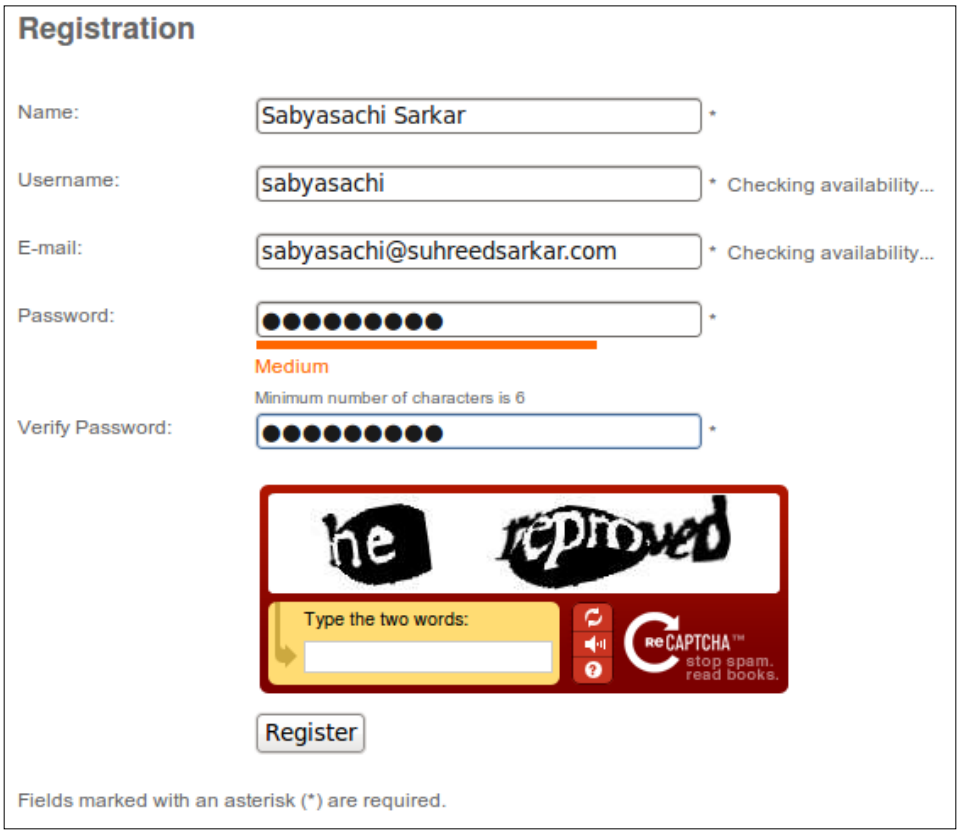


6. In the **AlphaUserPoints** tab, select **No** in all fields, as we don't want to use referral code or coupons.
7. In the **Security** tab, select **Enabled** in the **Email filter** field and **Enabled** in the **Botscout** field. Type the API key that you received from `botscout.com` in the **Public Key** field. The tab will now look like the following screenshot:



8. Click on the **Save** button. Now browse the site's frontend. Click on the **Create an account** link displayed in the **Login Form** module.

9. The **Registration** form will be displayed, as shown in the following screenshot:



How it works...

The AlphaRegistration component replaces the core user registration system. Whenever a visitor clicks on the **Create an account** link in the Login module, the browser displays the AlphaRegistration Form for registration. When the visitor types his/her username and e-mail address, it checks the availability of that username and e-mail address. If you activate e-mail filtering, it also checks the e-mail address against the BotScout database and the list for detecting bots. If an e-mail address matches one of the addresses in the bot database, the visitor will not be allowed to register to your site.

The **Registration** form also checks the strength of the password the visitor types. Finally, the visitor sees a reCaptcha image. It shows two words that the user needs to type correctly. They can also refresh an image or listen to an audio version by clicking on the refresh or audio button on the reCaptcha image. The user must type the words correctly to be registered with the site.

Whenever the registration form is displayed, a new image with challenging words is also displayed. This image is generated by the `recaptcha.net` site and displayed on your Joomla! site.

There's more...

Captcha is a popular method of preventing bots from registering and commenting on sites. For more information on Captcha and the different methods of implementing Captcha on a website, please visit `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Captcha`.

See also...

There are many other extensions that can implement Captcha in Joomla!. Another such popular extension can implement Captcha on a contact form as well as a password reset form. For details, please read the next recipe, *Using Captcha on a contact and password reset form*.

Using Captcha on a contact and password reset form

We have just seen how to use Captcha in a user registration form. There are many other pages from where spamming may happen. For example, the contact form for the site may be one source. Similarly, the password reset request form may be another source for being spammed. In this recipe, you will learn how to use Captcha in the contact and password reset forms.

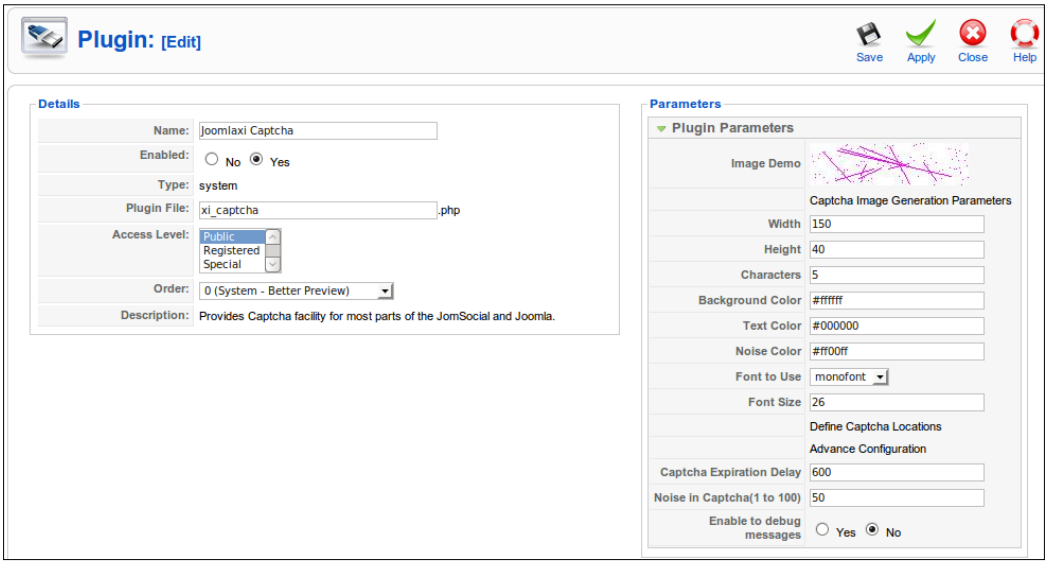
Getting ready...

For adding Captcha to the contact, password reset, and registration forms, you need to download and install the Captcha Plugin for Joomla!. For downloading the extension, visit `http://www.joomlaxi.com/` and register to the site. Once registered, log in to the site, go to the `http://www.joomlaxi.com/downloads/free-products.html` page, and click on the **Download** button in the **JoomlaXi Captcha 2.0.56 Stable** section. Once the download is complete, install the package from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

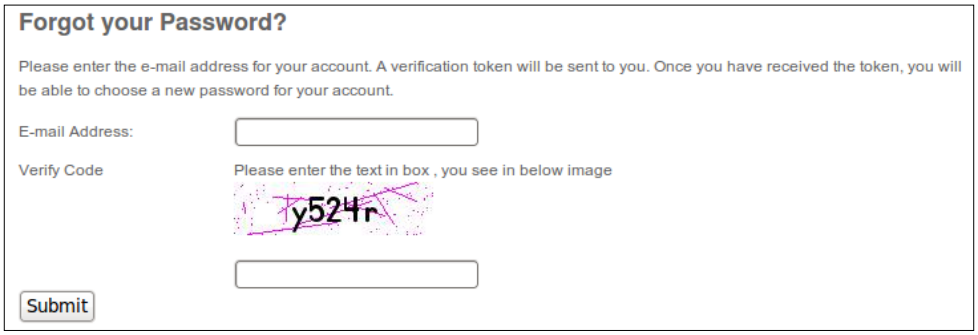
How to do it...

After installing the plugin, carry out the following steps to configure and use the plugin:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **JoomlaXi Captcha** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen for the JoomlaXi Captcha plugin.



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. In the **Plugin Parameters** section, specify the width and height for the Captcha image. Select **primerb** in the **Font to Use** drop-down list. Accept the default settings for all other fields.
3. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar. Preview the site and click on the **Forgot your password?** link in the **Login Form** module. This will show the **Forgot your Password?** screen as follows:



How it works...

The workings of the plugin are quite simple. When we enable this plugin, it adds a Captcha image to the Contact Us or Reset Password form. This is done without modifying the actual forms that came with Joomla!. This is the beauty of this plugin. Furthermore, we can customize the look and feel of the Captcha image displayed. This is done by setting the fonts to be used, the height and width of image, and some other options in the **Plugin Parameters** section.

There's more...

Besides configuring the width, height, and font, you can also configure the following options to better suit your needs:

- **Characters**: By default, five characters are shown as the verification code. You can specify the number of characters to be displayed in this field. A number from five to ten will be enough for such verification.
- **Background Color**: You can specify the background color for the Captcha image in this field.
- **Text Color**: Specify the text color in the Captcha image. Adjust this color with background color so that this is visible to users.
- **Noise Color**: Specify the color for the noise in the image.
- **Font Size**: You can specify the font size of the code in this field. For most of the cases, the default size will be fine.
- **Captcha Expiration Delay**: Specify the time in seconds, after which the Captcha code will expire.
- **Noise in Captcha (1 to 100)**: Specify the percentage of noise in the Captcha image. The default is 50, you may increase this to 70 to make the image more noisy.
- **Enable to debug messages**: Selecting **Yes** in this field will display debug messages on the screen. For the first stage of configuring this plugin, you may enable it for troubleshooting. Once you see that the plugin is working as expected, disable debugging by selecting **No** in this field.

Implementing an ACL in the frontend and backend

Joomla! has built-in groups, through which access to different areas of the site is controlled. However, the access control in Joomla! can be fine-tuned by creating groups and assigning permissions to groups. In this recipe, we are going to show you how you can implement an ACL by creating groups and assigning permissions to groups.

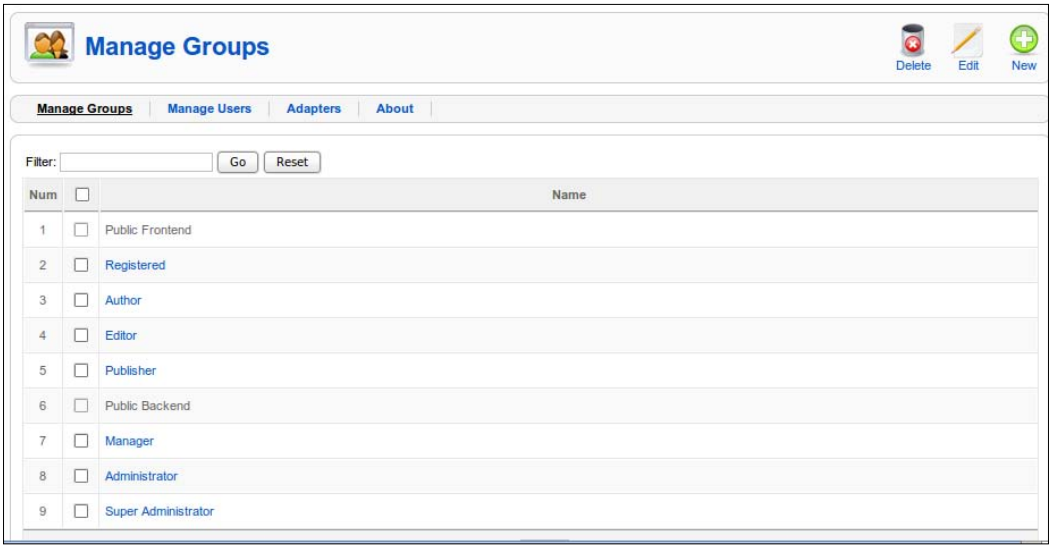
Getting ready

For implementing an ACL in Joomla!, we need to use an extension called **noixACL**, which is available freely to download at `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/noixacl/frs/`. After downloading the package `com_noixacl2.0.5beta.zip`, install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel. Also plan for the groups you need, as well as the permissions each group needs. For example, you may think of the group contributors who will have access to only the main menu in the frontend and can submit articles from the frontend.

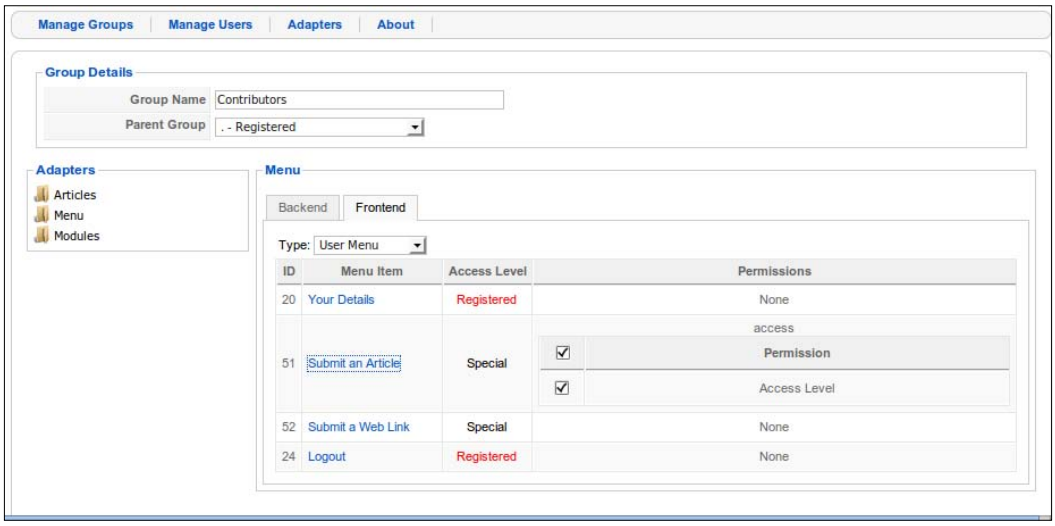
How to do it...

Once you have installed the extension, configure it by following these steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Access Control | Manage Groups**. This will show the **Manage Groups** screen, listing all available user groups for the frontend and backend.

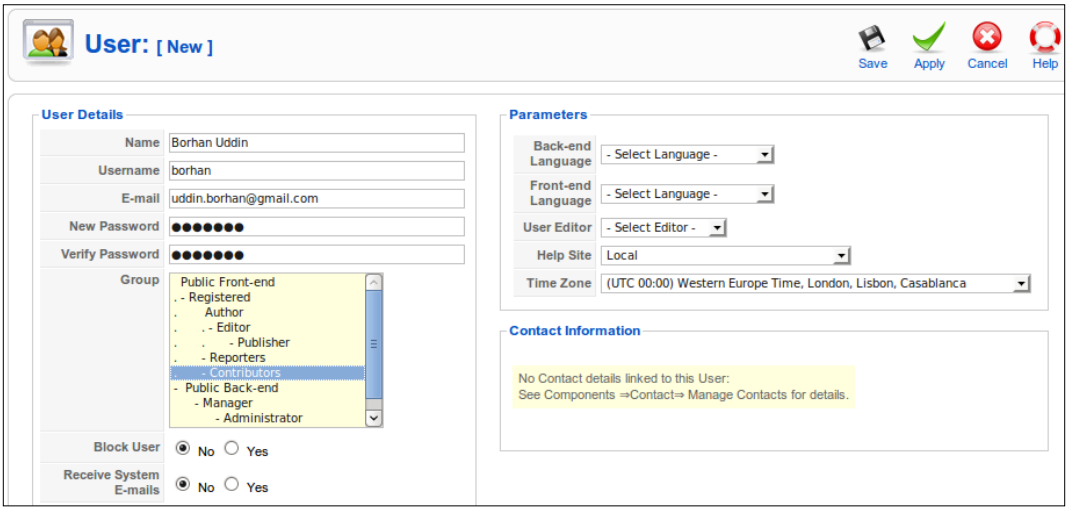


2. For creating a new group, click on the **New** button in the toolbar. This shows the **Group: [New]** screen.



3. In the **Group Name** field, type a name for the group, for example **Contributors**. Then select a parent group, for example **Registered**, in the **Parent Group** drop-down list.
4. In the **Adapters** section, click on **Menu**. Click on the **Frontend** tab. From the **Type** drop-down list, select **User Menu**. This shows items present in the **User Menu**.
5. Click on the two **Submit an Article** checkboxes in the **Permissions** column. This allows the group members to submit articles from the frontend.
6. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar.

7. Now click on **Manage Users** to show the **User Manager** screen, listing all registered users. For creating a new user, click on the **New** button in the toolbar. This shows the **User: [New]** screen.



8. In the **User: [New]** screen, type the name, username, e-mail address, and password for the user. Then select the group you have created, that is **Contributors**, from the **Group** list.
9. Click on the **Save** button in the toolbar to save the user details.
10. Click on the **Preview** button to preview the site. In the Login Form module, type the username and password you have just created.
11. Once logged in, you can click on the **Submit an Article** link in **User Menu**. This opens the article submission form.

You can add other types of access control using the same steps and try to access the respective resources. This will show the effectiveness of the applied ACLs on the resources. For example, you can add permission to deny access to a specific section of content area, the members of that group will not be able to access any article in that section.

How it works...

In Joomla! there are some built-in groups, both for the frontend and backend. These groups have a specific set of permissions to perform some tasks in Joomla! CMS. You cannot create a new group or assign permissions to a group. However, using the noixACL component, we have created custom user groups and assigned a certain permission (that is, accessing the **Submit an Article** link in the User Menu) to that group. Later, we can add a user to the newly created user group.

When the user logs in to the Joomla! frontend, he/she becomes eligible to perform the task we have assigned. Attempting to do things other than the assigned task will be unsuccessful. It will display that access is denied for this task.

There's more...

In the noixACL component, you can use adapters to control ACL. By default, you have three adapters installed, namely, Article, Menu, and Module. Through these adapters, you can set access for a particular article, a menu or menu item, or for a particular module. The noixACL component allows you to configure access to backend menus and modules too.

Alternative

Another popular Joomla! extension for the same purpose is **JUGA**. You can get details about this extension at `http://extensions.joomla.org/extensions/access-a-security/backend-a-full-access-control/2587`. This is a commercially licensed extension, which means you have to buy a subscription to download and use JUGA in Joomla!.

Auditing the security settings of your Joomla! site

Once you have installed and configured your Joomla! site, it is better to double-check that your site meets the security requirements. Among the security requirements, you may want to see whether the file and folder permissions are set appropriately or not. Usually site owners check file permissions using FTP clients or other means. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to audit security settings for your Joomla! site from within the Joomla! administration panel.

Getting ready...

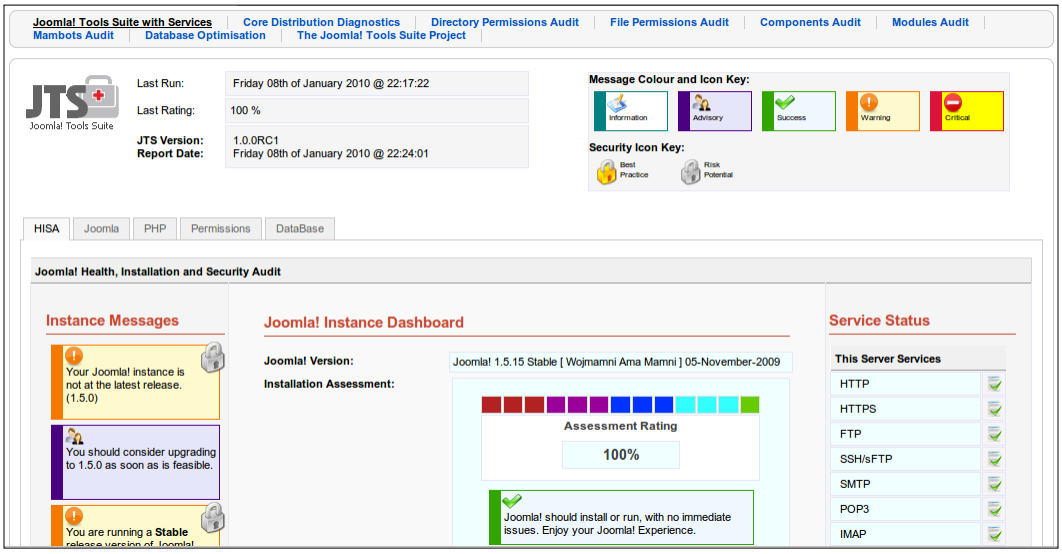
For auditing the security settings of a Joomla! site, there is a component called Joomla Tools Set or JTS. You can download the extension for free from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/project/jts/frs/`. Download the package and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

The extension works in Joomla! 1.5 with Legacy Mode enabled. You may not like to use in Legacy Mode on a Joomla! 1.5 site. However, there is a new version in development that may run in Joomla! 1.5 natively. For running this version, you need to enable the **System – Legacy** plugin in the **Plugin Manager** screen.

How to do it...

Once installed, carry out the following steps to audit your security settings:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Joomla! Tools Set | Joomla! Tools Set with Services**. This opens up the **Joomla! Tools Suite** dashboard.



2. The dashboard shows the security audit report. Click on the different tabs (**HISA**, **Joomla**, **PHP**, **Permissions**, **DataBase**) to see specific audit reports.
3. For getting a report on distribution files, click on the **Core Distribution Diagnostics** link at the top. This shows the integrity of the Joomla! distribution files.
4. For getting an audit report on Folder and File permissions, click on the **Directory Permissions Audit** and **File Permissions Audit** links respectively.
5. For getting an audit report on components, modules, and plugins, you can click on the **Components Audit**, **Modules Audit**, or **Mambots Audit** link.

Joomla! Tools Suite audits Joomla! settings and shows the results onscreen. It uses several color codes and icons to express the severity of the problem or the absence of a problem. For example, green means the settings are fine, whereas red indicates inappropriate settings.

Creating a site backup that can be restored in any other Joomla! site

As part of managing a Joomla! site, you need to backup the site database and files regularly. The backup should be such that if the site gets destroyed, you can build a new site taking the content from the backup. Akeeba Core Backup (formerly JoomlaPack) is a free component for Joomla! that can be used to back up and restore Joomla! sites, as well as relocate Joomla! sites to different servers. In this recipe, we are going to show you how to create backups that can be restored on any other Joomla! site.

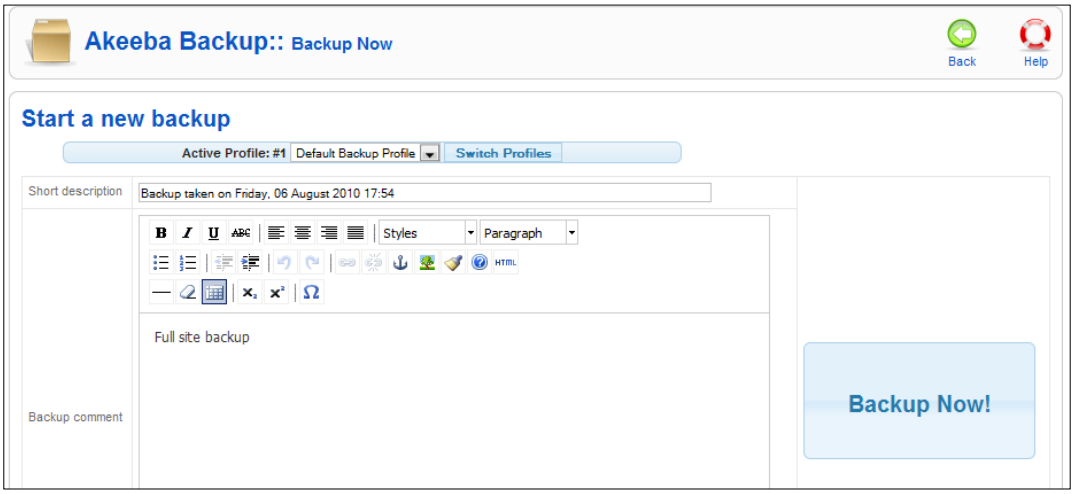
Getting ready...

Download Akeeba Core Backup from `http://www.akeebabackup.com/download/doc_download/50-akeeba-backup-core-30-stable.html` and install this component from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen of the Joomla! administration panel.

How to do it...

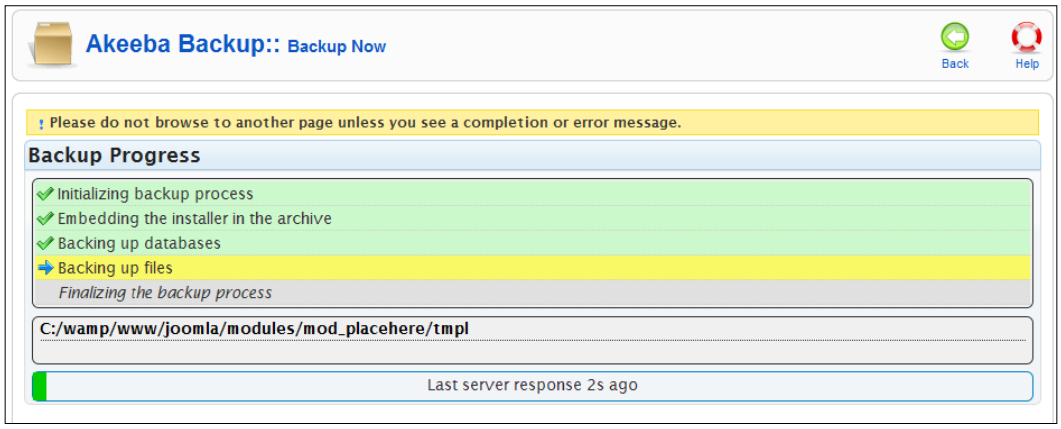
Once Akeeba Core Backup is installed, carry out the following steps to create a backup of your Joomla! site:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | Akeeba Backup | Backup Now**. This will show the **Akeeba Backup::Backup Now** screen.

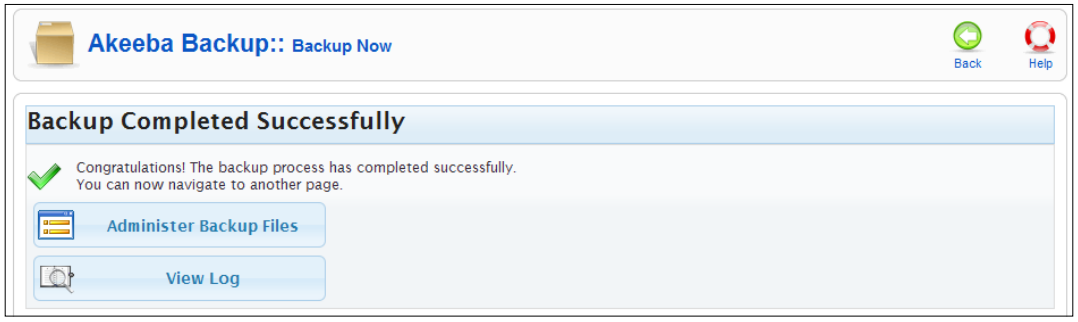


2. Type a short description of the backup and leave a comment about it. Then click on the **Backup Now!** button at the bottom.

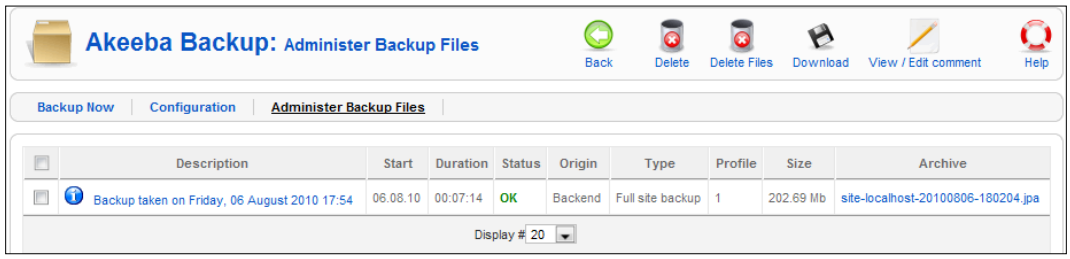
3. This starts the back up process and shows the progress of the database and file backing up on the **Backup Progress** screen.



4. The **Backup Completed Successfully** message will be displayed on completion of the backup.



5. For viewing the backed up files, click on the **Administer Backup Files** link. This shows the **Akeeba Backup: Administer Backup Files** screen with a list of the backup files created by JoomlaPack.

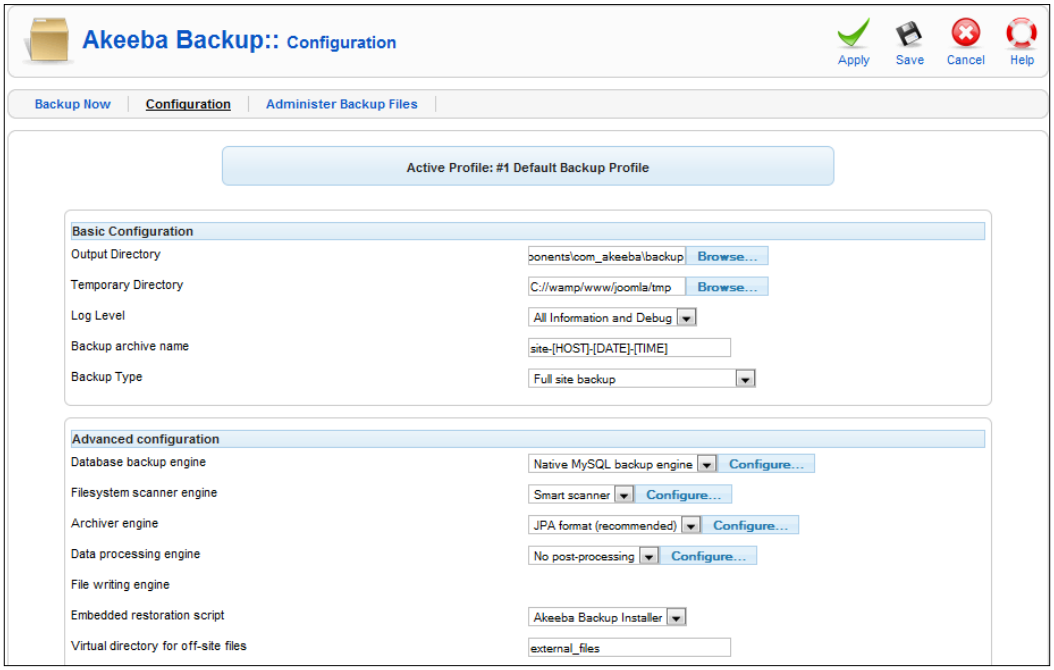


6. For downloading any backup file on your computer, select the backup file and click on the **Download** icon in the toolbar.

The Akeeba Core Backup component backs up a site's database as well as its files. By default, it is stored in a default location on the server as a ZIP file. You can download the ZIP file and preserve it offline until you need to restore the database or files.

There's more...

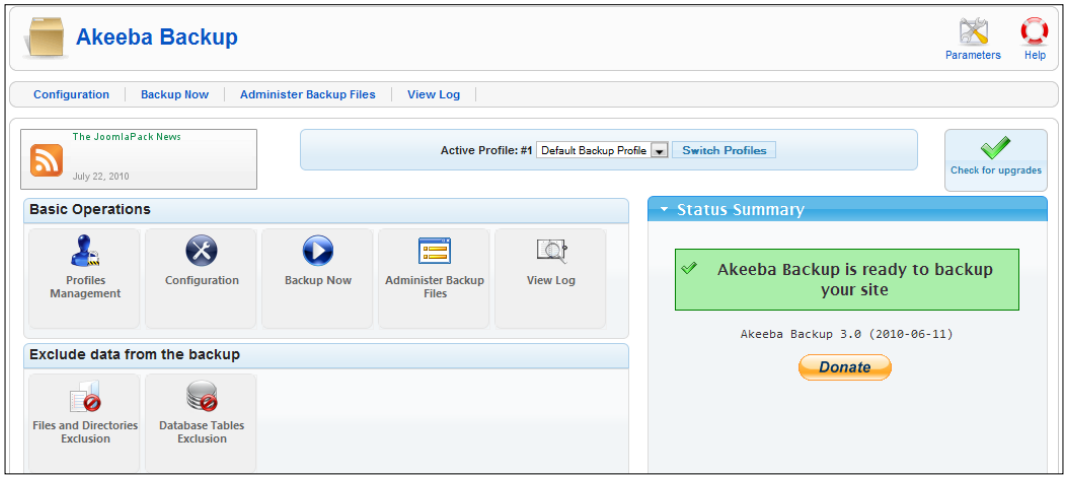
By default, Akeeba Core Backup creates the backup files in the `/administrator/components/com_akeeba/backup` directory. You can change this default location from the **Akeeba Backup :: Configuration** screen. Click on the **Configuration** link to get this screen.



From the **Akeeba Backup :: Configuration** screen, you can define multiple profiles, configure Akeeba Backup, and configure backup types and processes.

Exclusion of directories and files

You can have better control over what to backup by configuring the exclusion of a single file, a directory, or all content in a directory. You can do it by selecting **Components | Akeeba Backup** and then clicking on the **Files and Directories Exclusion** icon.

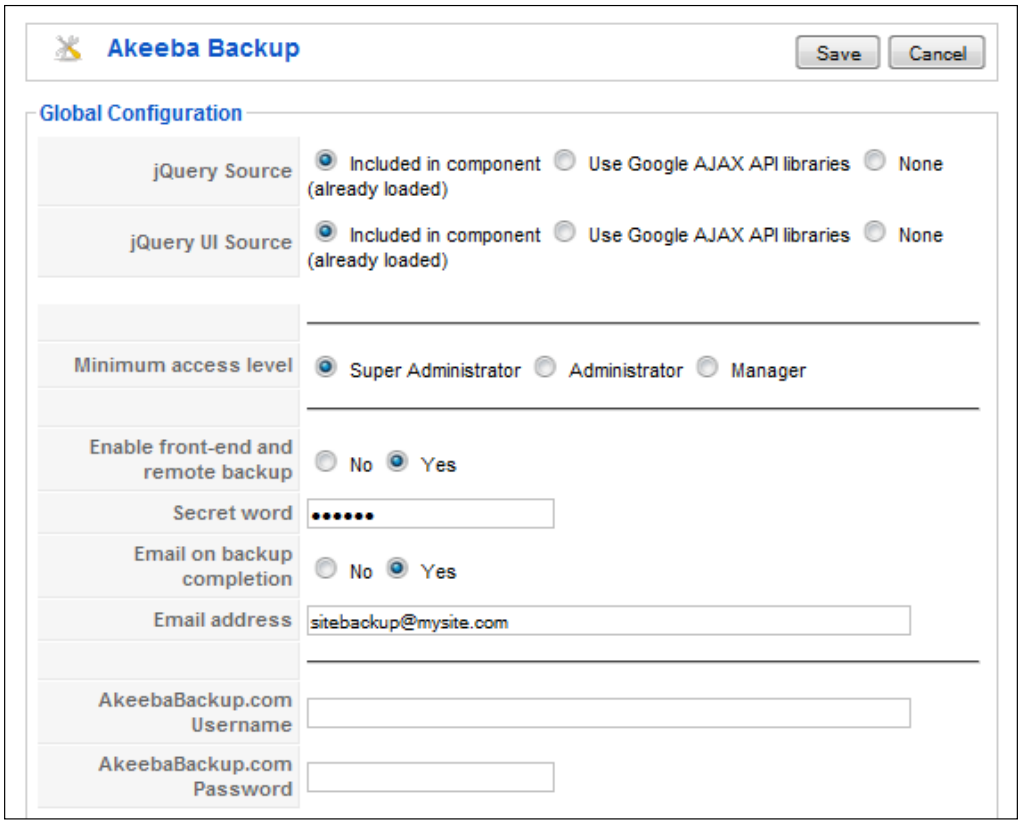


Unattended backup

Akeeba Backup can also perform an unattended, timed backup, which is known as a frontend backup. This frontend backup is actually running a script using your server scheduling utility, like **cron** for Linux/Unix hosts. If you are using Linux hosting and cPanel, you can schedule the **cron** job by clicking on the **Cron Jobs** icon in cPanel. The command to run through **cron** will be as follows:

```
wget --max-redirect=1000
"http://www.yourserver.com/index2.php?option=
com_akeeba&view=backup&key=yoursecretkey&format=raw"
```

The preceding command should be a single line and must contain the `--max-redirect=1000` option. You must provide a secret key in the place of the text `yoursecretkey` shown in the last code. For configuring this secret key and enable frontend backup, click on **Components | Akeeba Backup** and then click on the **Parameters** icon in the **Akeeba Backup** screen. This will show the **Parameters** screen for Akeeba Backup.



Enable front-end and remote backup by selecting **Yes** from this screen, assign the secret key, and get the URL to be run by **wget**.

See also...

The backup file created by Akeeba Backup can be restored on any Joomla! site, even when creating a new site. You will learn how to restore the backup file, and thus clone a Joomla! site through Akeeba Backup in the next recipe, *Restoring or cloning a Joomla! site*.

Restoring or cloning a Joomla! site

If the Joomla! site you are maintaining suddenly crashes, then you may need to rebuild it from the scratch. Often, you may also need to relocate your Joomla! site to another server. The site relocation or transfer of the local site to a remote web server may take some time if you want to do it by creating a database and then restore every file you have backed up. A script called **KickStart** can help restore a backup made by Akeeba Backup, and thus clone a site. In this recipe, you are going to learn how you can relocate a site to another server without any hassle.

Getting ready...

For this recipe, we need the Akeeba Backup component, which you have already downloaded and installed in the previous recipe, *Creating a site backup that can be restored in any other Joomla! site*. If you have not done so, download Akeeba Backup from `http://www.akeebabackup.com/download/doc_download/50-akeeba-backup-core-30-stable.html` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen in the Joomla! administration panel.

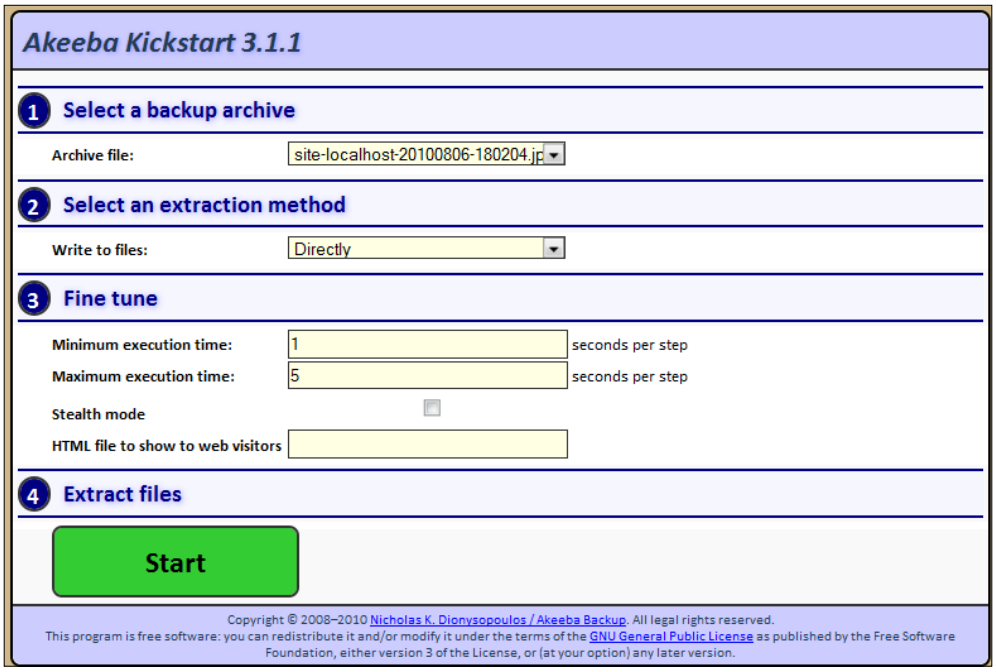
Follow the previous recipe, *Creating a site backup that can be restored in any other Joomla! Site*, to create a site backup. Now upload the backup file, for example, `site-localhost-20100806-180204.jpa`, to the web root on the server, for example, `http://www.suhreedsarkar.com`.

Also download the Kickstart 3.1 file from `http://www.akeebabackup.com/download/doc_download/63-akeeba-kickstart-31-stable.html`. Then extract and upload the `kickstart.php` file and the accompanying `.ini` files to the remote web server's web root.

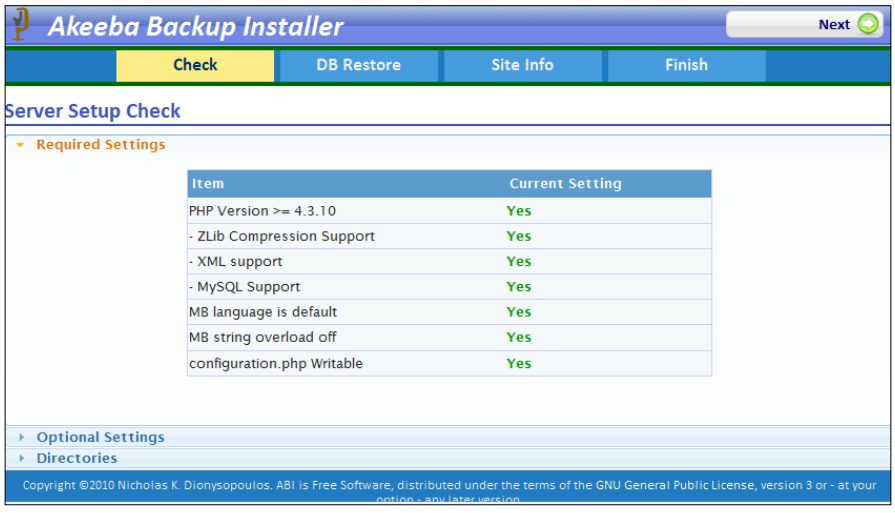
How to do it...

When the files are uploaded completely, carry out the following steps:

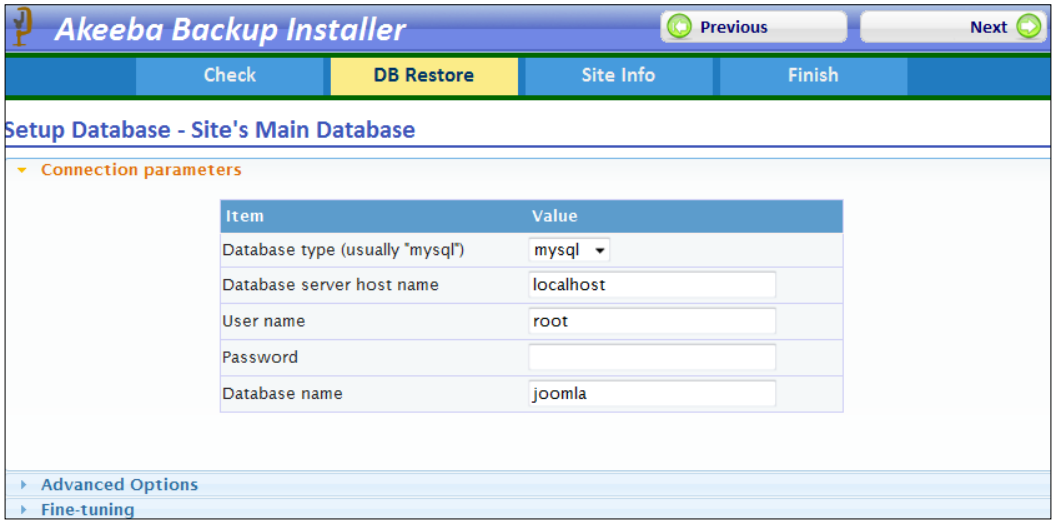
1. Open your browser and point it to the Kickstart file: `http://www.yourserver.com/kickstart.php`. It will show the things to know page. Close this by pressing the *Esc* key. Then you will see the **Akeeba Kickstart 3.1.1** page.



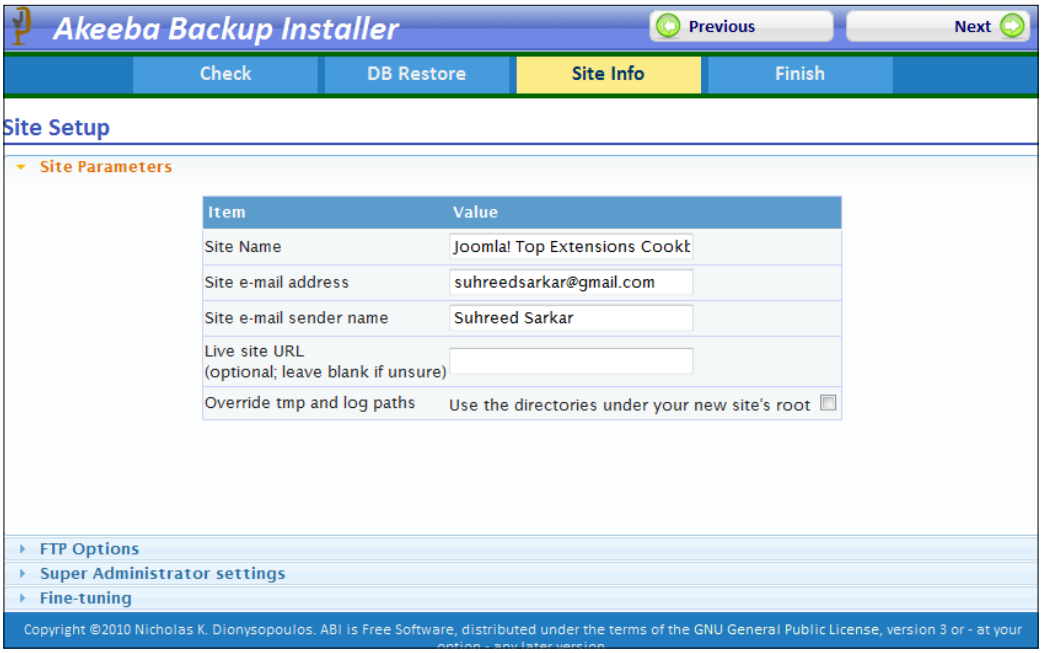
2. First, select the backup archive from the drop-down list and select **Directly** in the **Write to files** drop-down list. Accept the default settings in the **Fine tune** section and then click on the **Start** button.
3. Akeeba Kickstart will show the file processing progress. After extracting all the files from the archive, it will display Step 6, **Restoration and Cleanup**. Click on the **Run Installer** button on this screen. This will show the **Akeeba Backup Installer** screen.



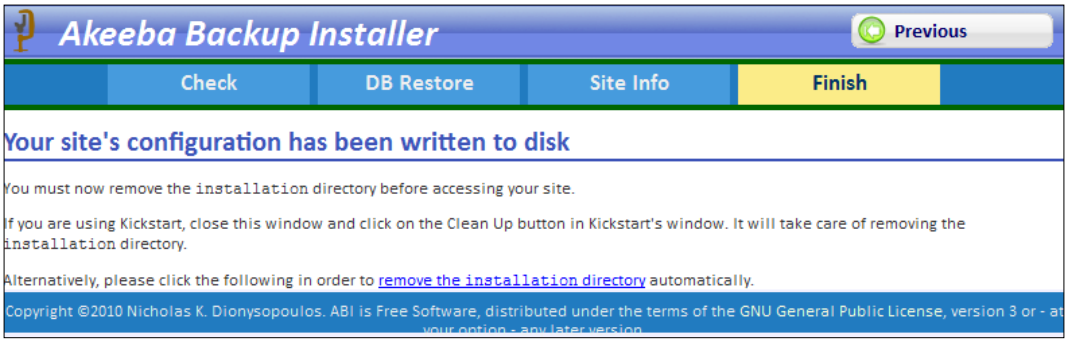
4 Akeeba Backup Installer has several steps. On the **Check** step, you can see the status of **Required Settings**, **Optional Settings**, and **Directories**. If any setting is inappropriate, it will be displayed in red. Click on the **Next** button to go to the **DB Restore** step.



5. In the **Connection parameters** section, you will see the database connection setting of the server from where you had taken the backup. If you are restoring it to a new server, provide the server's name, username, password, and the database name in this screen. Then click on the **Next** button. This shows the restoration progress. When complete, click **OK** in the Restoration progress dialog. You will then see the **Site Setup** screen.



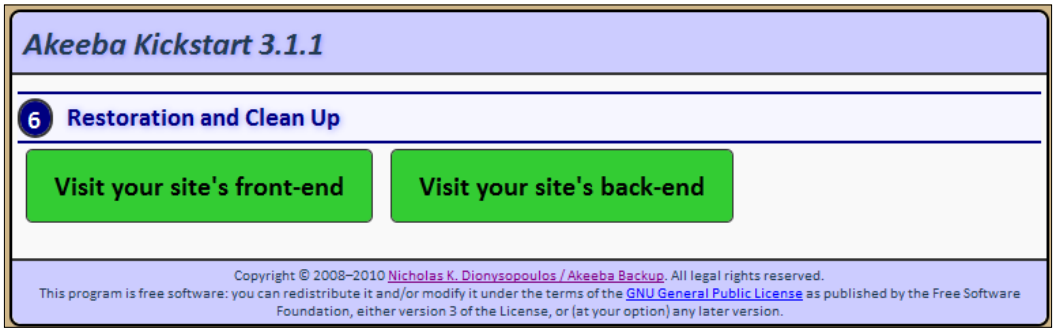
6. In the **Site Setup** screen, you can configure FTP settings for Joomla! by clicking **FTP Options**. By clicking on **Site Parameters**, you can change the site's name, site's e-mail address, and the site e-mail sender's name. Also check the **Use the directories under your new site's root** checkbox. Click on **Super Administrator Settings** to assign a new password for the super administrator user. When these have been inserted, click on the **Next** button. You will get the **Finish** step.



7. Now go back to the **Akeeba Kickstart 3.1.1** screen where you started the restoration. Now you will see Step 6 here with a **Clean Up** button.



8. Click on the **Clean Up** button. This activates the `.htaccess` file for the Joomla! root, deletes the `./installation` folder under the Joomla! directory, and deletes the backup archive file, along with the kickstart file and associated `.ini` files. Finally, it shows the following screen:



9. Click on the **Visit your site's front-end** button, or the **Visit your site's back-end** button, and you will be taken to that part of the site.

How it works...

Akeeba Kickstart works by restoring a site from the backup and thus cloning a site fully. For the kickstart file to work, we need to upload the backup file created by Akeeba Backup (`.zip` or `.jpa`) and `kickstart.php` to the new location. Then you need to invoke the `kickstart.php` file and select the archive file you want to restore. The `kickstart.php` file extracts the archive and provides you with a link to start the Akeeba Kickstart restoration process. Then it takes some parameters from you to restore the database. Then you can configure the site's settings such as the site's name, site's e-mail address, and so on. You can also change the super administrator account password.

19
Enhancing Administration and Other

In this chapter, we will cover:

- Better previewing of site content
- Scheduling an administrative task
- Using custom icons for the administration control panel
- Adding custom code inside Joomla! content
- Adding the FCK editor to Joomla!

Introduction

The Joomla! administration panel is rich with different icons and controls. From the administration panel, we can configure the Joomla! site, its components, modules, and plugins. We also maintain the extensions from the administration panel. A vast number of content is also created from the administration panel.

We can enhance the administration panel's strength by installing some other third-party extensions. For example, by using the Better Preview extension, we can view a better preview of the content items we create, we can also view the menu and other items better. Similarly, we can configure and run scheduled tasks from within the Joomla! administration panel using the JCron extension.

The Joomla! control panel shows a fixed number of icons for quick access to frequently performed tasks. However, the frequency of the use of these icons may vary based on the type of site you are building. Therefore, you may need to customize the quick icons and add the icons for your frequently performed tasks. This can be done through another extension.

Extending Joomla! is another issue most site builders face with Joomla!. For example, you have designed a form in PHP. This shows some content from your old database. How will you use that with Joomla!? You will need to instal Jumi. Any custom code can be run from a component, module, or within content by using Jumi. It helps you to build your own application within Joomla!. We will learn how to use Joomla! to run custom code.

Finally, we will discuss changing the default WYSIWYG editor for Joomla!. Instead of using TinyMCE, we may use FCKEditor (now known as CKEditor) with a very rich outlook. The last recipe shows you how to use CKEditor with Joomla!.

Better previewing of site content

The Joomla! control panel has a **Preview** button through which you can preview the site's frontend. One of the limitations of this **Preview** button is that it takes you only to the site's home page. If you are editing a content section and click on the **Preview** button, it doesn't show that section; instead it shows the home page. However, site administrators are much more inclined to use a friendlier preview system, where they can see the exact URL of the page they are editing and can preview the section or page they are working on, just by clicking on the **Preview** button. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add a better preview system to the Joomla! administration panel.

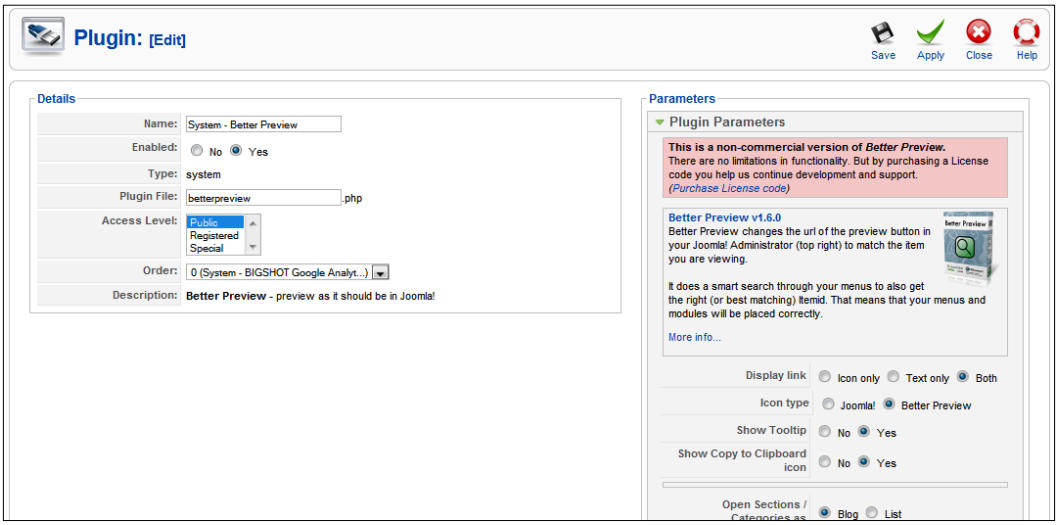
Getting ready...

The Better Preview plugin will help you to add a better preview system to the Joomla! administration panel. Download this plugin from `http://www.nonumber.nl/extensions/betterpreview?tab=download` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

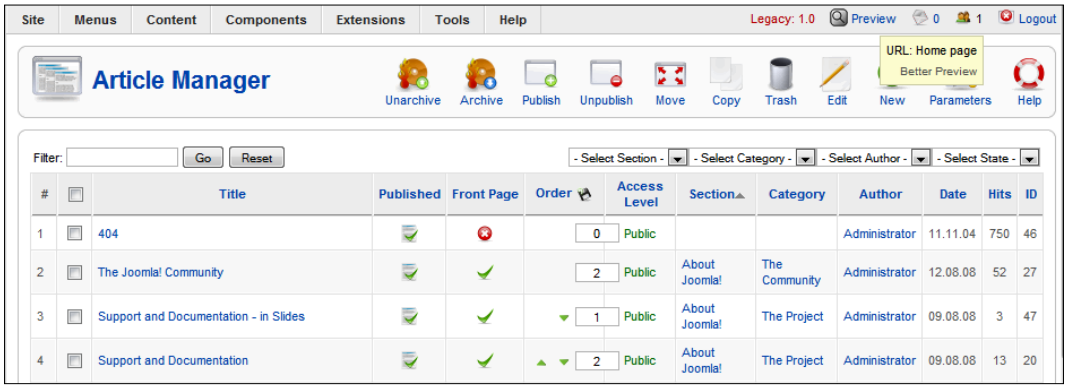
How to do it...

After installing the plugin, carry out the following steps:

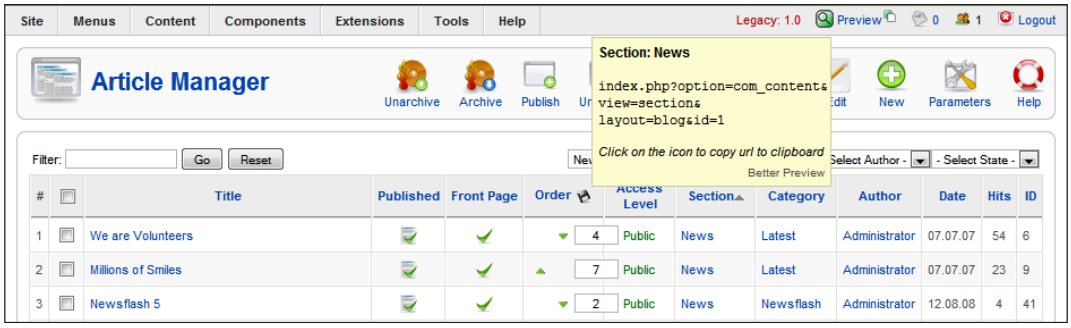
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **System – Better Preview** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.



2. Make sure that **Yes** is checked in the **Enabled** field. From the **Plugin Parameters** section, you can configure the plugin. However, the default settings work fine with most of the sites. Accept the default settings and click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Now click on **Contents | Article Manager**. This lists the available articles for the site. Hover the mouse pointer over the **Preview** icon, and you will see the URL for it, for example, home page. This means that what we see on this screen will be available through the home page URL.



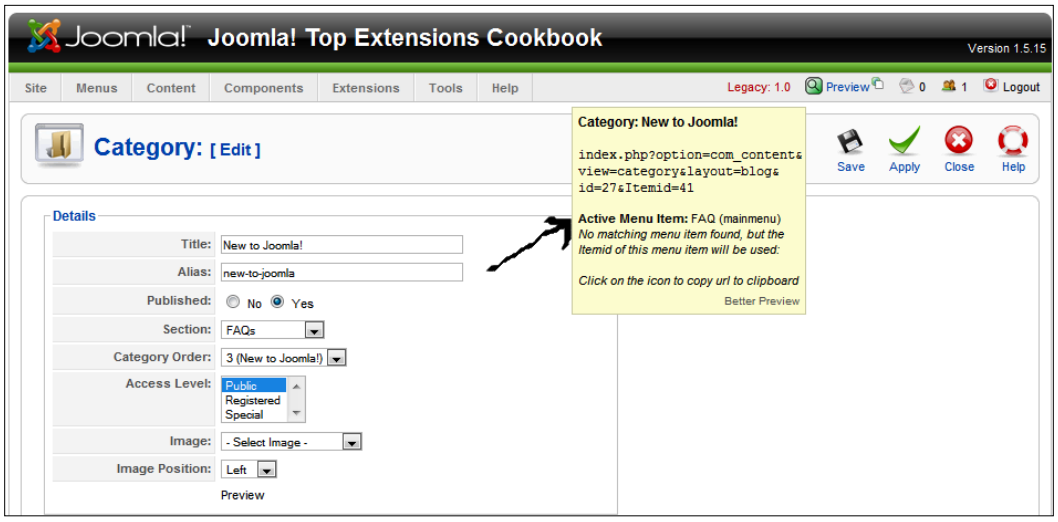
4. Now select **News** from the **–Select Section –** drop-down box. This filters the articles for the **News** section. Hover the mouse pointer over the **Preview** icon and you will see a new URL now, for example **index.php?option=com_content&view=section&layout=blog&id=1**.



5. Now click on the **Preview** button to show you the site's frontend and specifically the content of the **News** section, as seen in the following screenshot:



6. Besides taking you to the exact URL and showing the URL in the administration panel, it also lets you know about the menu item for that content. To see this, click on **Content | Category Manager** and click on **News to Joomla!**. This shows the **Category: [Edit]** screen.



7. As you can see, hovering the mouse pointer over the **Preview** button pops up the info box where the **Active Menu Item** is shown. In this case, it is indicated that this item can be accessed through the **FAQ** menu item **mainmenu**. However, no exact match for this item is found in menus.

Better Preview thus helps administrators find out what the URL will be for that section, category, or article. It also shows a direct preview of that section, category, or article.

Scheduling an administrative task

Running scheduled tasks on a server may be necessary at times. If you need to run such scheduled tasks, a program called cron is the best friend of a Linux or Unix hosting server. However, configuring `cron` jobs is not easy for all administrators, especially those who have recently started using Linux servers. In that case, a graphical tool for configuring and running `cron` jobs will be helpful. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to configure and run `cron` jobs from inside Joomla!.

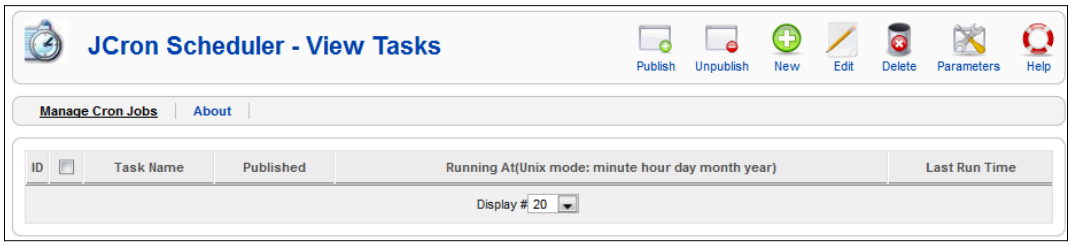
Getting ready...

JCron Scheduler is a popular extension for Joomla! that allows administrators to schedule cron jobs graphically from within the Joomla! administration panel. Download this extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/download/frsrelease/11754/47271/com_jcron1.4vJ1.5.zip` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen. It will install a component and a plugin.

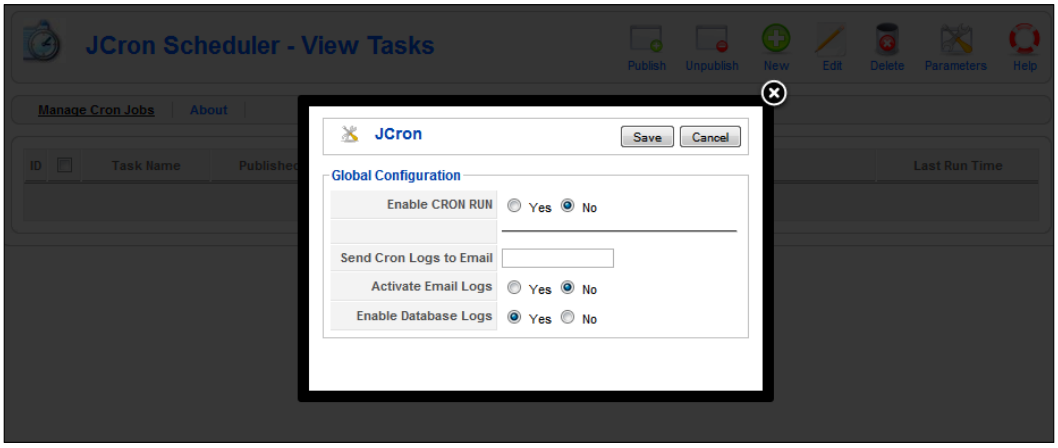
How to do it...

After installing the extension, carry out the following steps:

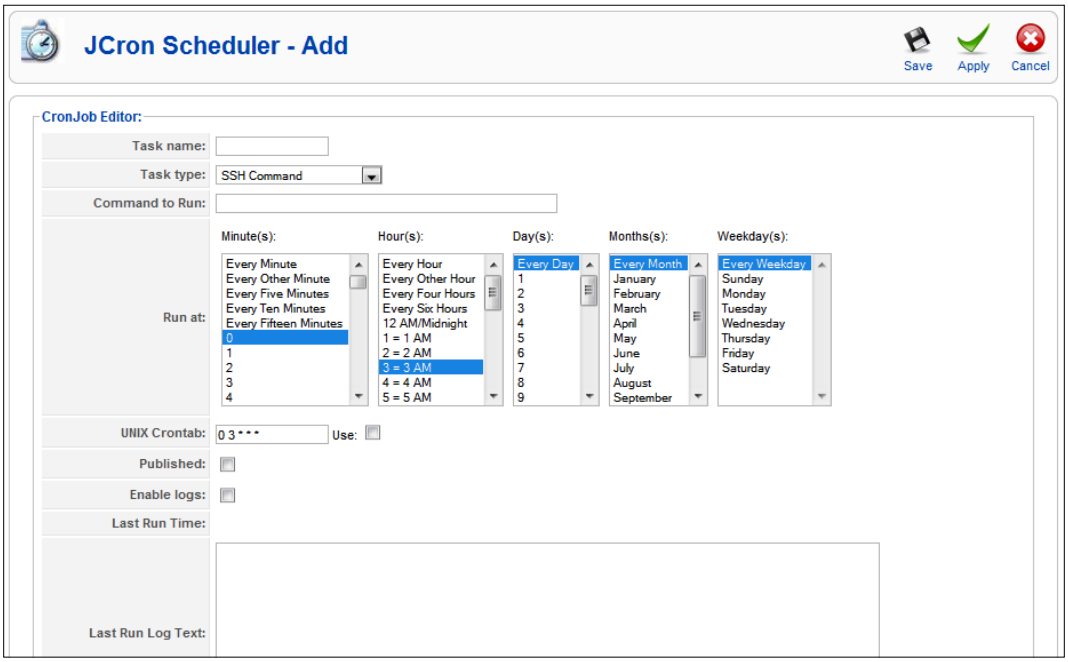
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **System – Cron** plugin and select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
2. Now click on **Components | JCron | Manage Cron Jobs**. This shows the **JCron Scheduler – View Tasks** screen.



3. Click on the **Parameters** icon in the toolbar to show the **JCron** dialog with configuration options.



4. Select **Yes** in the **Enable CRON RUN** field. In the **Send Cron Logs to Email** field, type the e-mail address where you want to receive the cron logs. Then select **Yes** in the **Activate E-mail logs** and **Enable Database Logs** fields. Click on the **Save** icon.
5. On the **JCron Scheduler – View Tasks** screen, click on the **New** icon. This shows the **JCron Scheduler – Add** screen.



6. Give a name to the task in the **Task name** field. Then select a task type, for example, the **SSH Command**. Then type the command in the **Command to Run** field. From the **Run at** field, select intervals by **Minute(s)**, **Hour(s)**, **Day(s)**, **Month(s)** and/or **Weekday(s)**. On selecting these intervals, the text in the **UNIX Crontab** field changes. Check the **Use** checkbox. Then check the **Published** and **Enable logs** checkbox. Click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar to save the task.

Now the task will run in the schedule you have specified. Logs will be sent to the e-mail specified in the **Parameters** configuration.

Using custom icons for the administration control panel

The Joomla! control panel in the administration section shows some icons for performing quick tasks. What about adding some more icons to perform common tasks? If you mostly create banners, why don't you add an icon in this control panel to create a new banner? Yes, that can be done. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add custom icons to the Joomla! control panel.

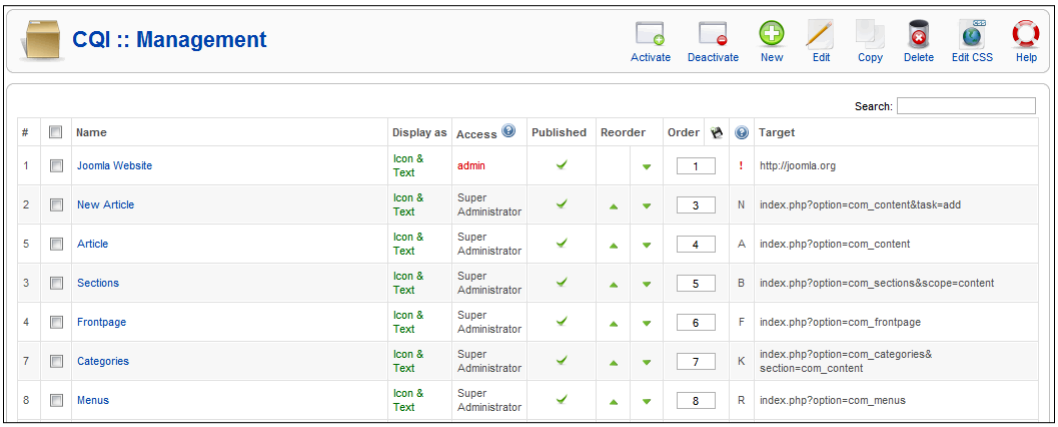
Getting ready...

The Custom Quick Icons extension allows you to add custom icons to the Joomla! control panel. Download this extension from `http://joomlacode.org/gf/download/frsrelease/11117/44155/com_CQI_J.1.5.x_2.1.6.tar.gz` and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

How to do it...

After installing the extension, carry out the following steps:

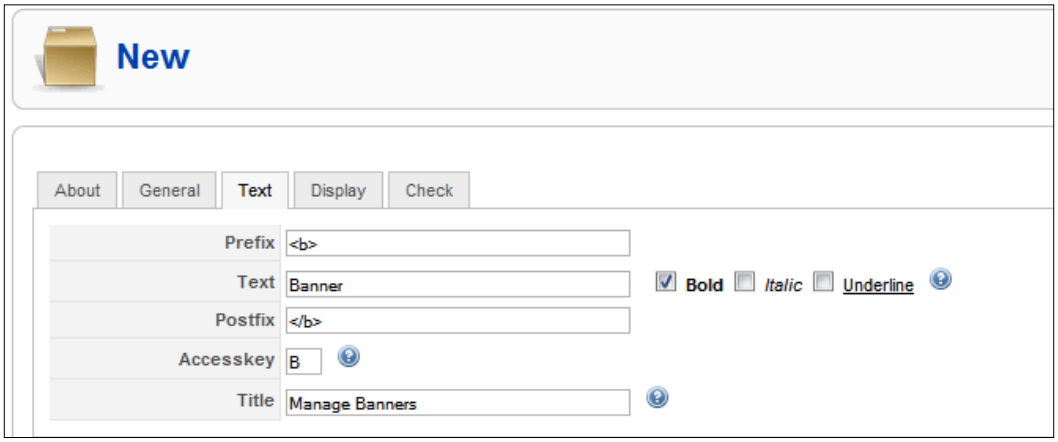
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Components | CQI Custom Quick Icons**. This shows the **CQI :: Management** screen.



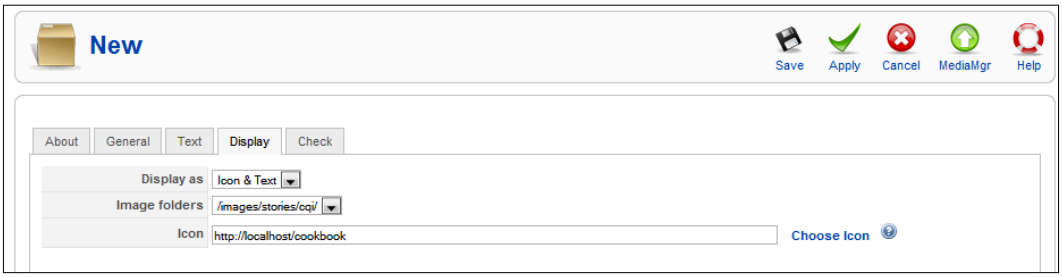
2. The **CQI :: Management** screen lists the available quick icons. To create a new icon, click on the **New** icon in the toolbar. This shows the **New** screen.



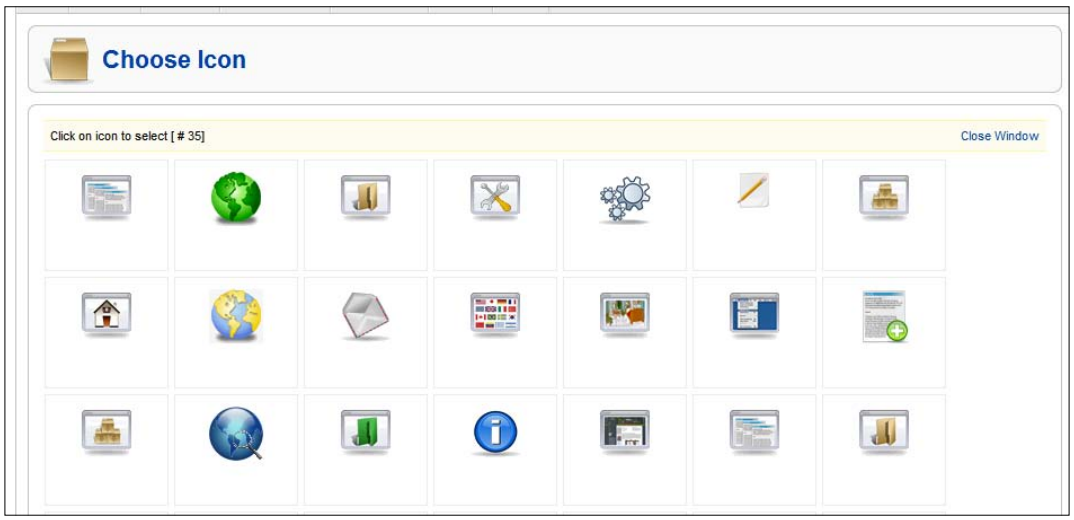
3. Read the instructions on the **About** tab. Then click on the **General** tab. From the drop-down list to the right of the **Target** field, select the component to which you want to add an icon and then click on the arrow button. That completes the **Target** field. Select **Yes** in the **Published** field. Select **Manager**, **Administrator** or **Super Administrator** in the **Access** list box. Now click on the **Text** tab.



4. Type a name for this icon in the **Text** field. Then check the **Bold**, **Italic**, or **Underline** checkbox. The **Prefix** and **Postfix** boxes are filled in. Type a letter in the **Accesskey** field. You can press *Alt*, and the chosen letter together to activate this icon link. When done in this tab, click on the **Display** tab.



5. In the **Display as** the drop-down list, select what will be displayed: **Icon & Text**, **Icon only**, or **Text only**. Select an image folder. Then click on the **Choose Icon** link. This shows the available icons, as seen in the following screenshot:



6. Select an image from the **Choose Icon** screen. The path of this icon will be displayed in the **Icon** field on the **Display** tab. Now click on the **Check** tab.



7. Optionally, you can specify the path of the component in the administration area as well as the user area. If you check the **Check Component** checkbox, the system will check the component for its availability and then display the icon. Keep the default settings in this tab and click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
8. Now click on **Site | Control Panel**. This shows the control panel with a new icon for the banner component that has just been created.



Click on the newly-created icon to take you to the respective component, say **Banner Manager**, for our icon. You can create multiple icons in this way and use those for quick access to certain administration tasks.

Adding custom code inside Joomla! content

So far, you have written many articles to publish on your Joomla! website. They are plain articles with images, videos, or at most, some animations like Flash objects. But how about adding some plain code inside your content? Yes, adding some plain code—that may be PHP, HTML, JS, or any code stored in a file or written directly. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add custom code inside Joomla! content.

Getting ready...

JUMI is a popular extension for adding custom code to Joomla! content. It can insert code from a file or can directly execute written code. Moreover, it can work as a component, inside a module or through a plugin. Download JUMI from `http://edo.webmaster.am/jumi` and install the package from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen. This installs one component, one module, and one plugin.

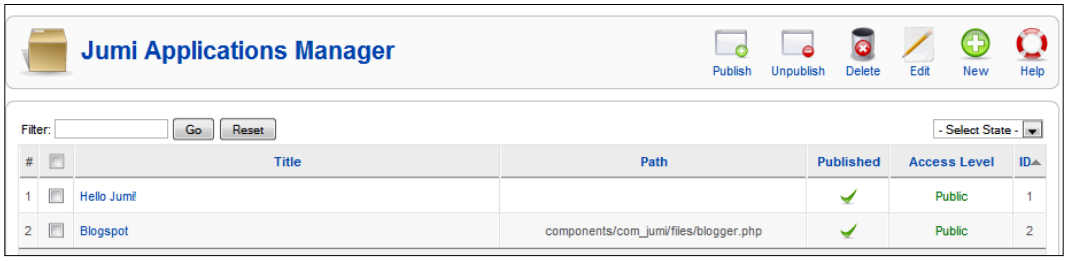
How to do it...

After installing the extension, carry out the following steps:

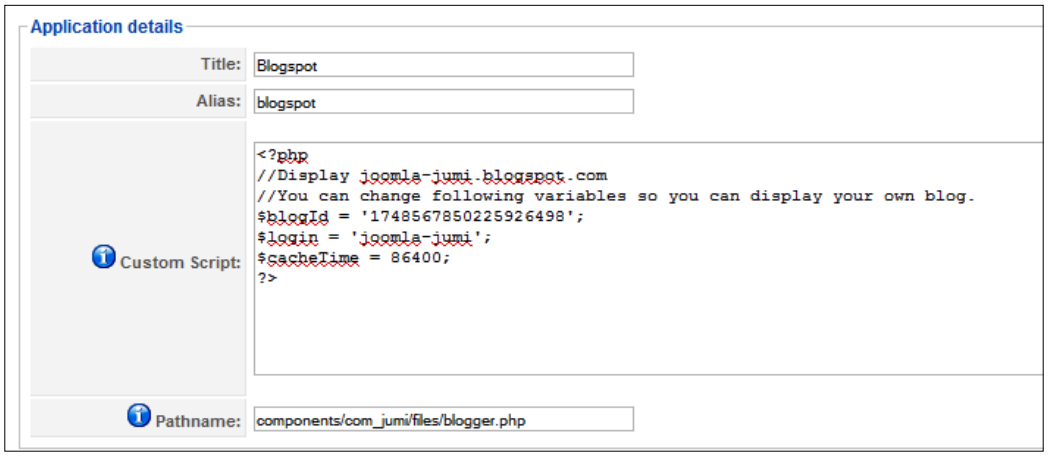
1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing the installed plugins. From the list, click on the **Jumi** plugin to show the **Plugin:[Edit]** screen.



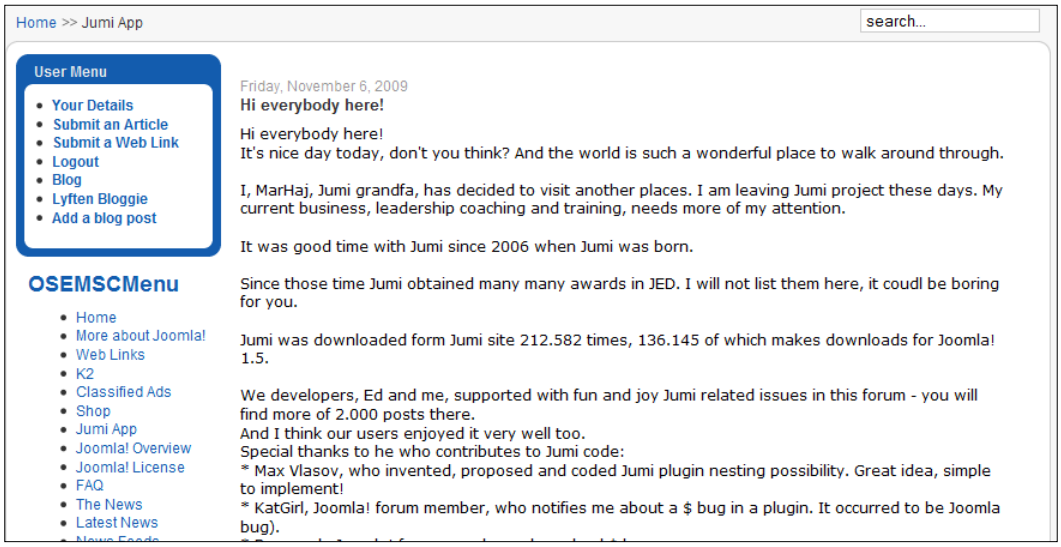
2. In the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen, make sure that **Yes** is selected in the **Enabled** field, and **No** is selected both for the **Hide Jumi code** and the **Nested replace** fields. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Now click on **Components | Jumi**. This shows the **Jumi Applications Manager** screen.



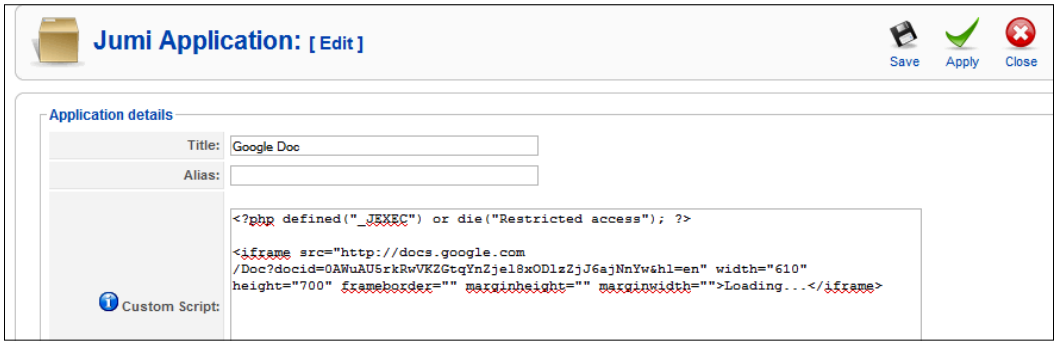
4. By default, you will see two Jumi applications. Click on **Blogspot** to see this example. It will show code similar to the following screenshot:



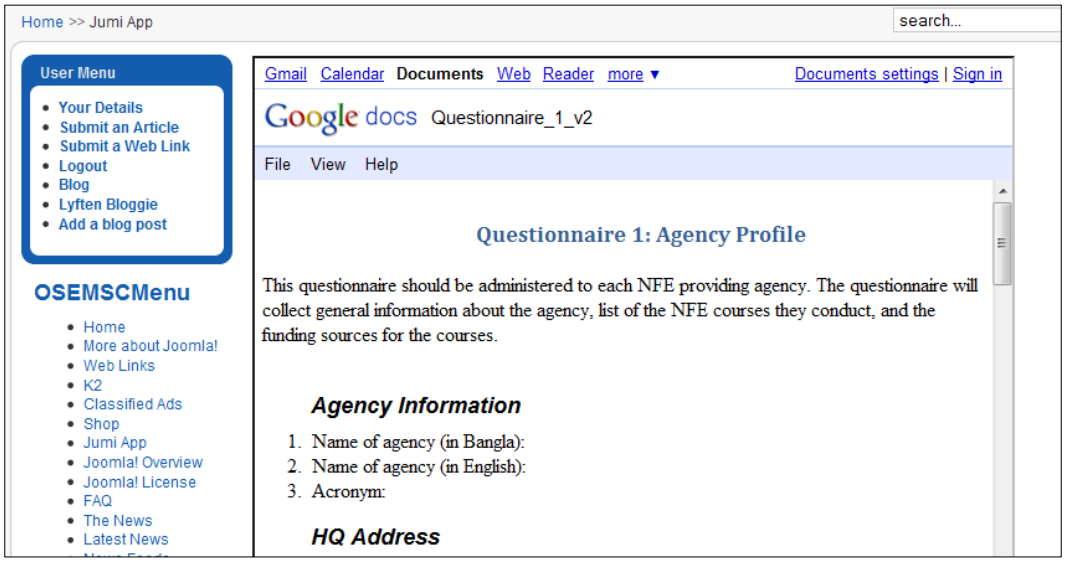
5. It has been given a title and alias. Then in the **Custom Script** field, some variables have been set. In the **Pathname** field, the script file for showing a blogspot blog has been mentioned. You can create a menu item pointing to the Blogspot application or can directly access this application through this URL: `http://yourjoomlasite.com/index.php?option=com_jumi&fileid=2&Itemid=66`. The result of the Blogspot application will look similar to the following screenshot:



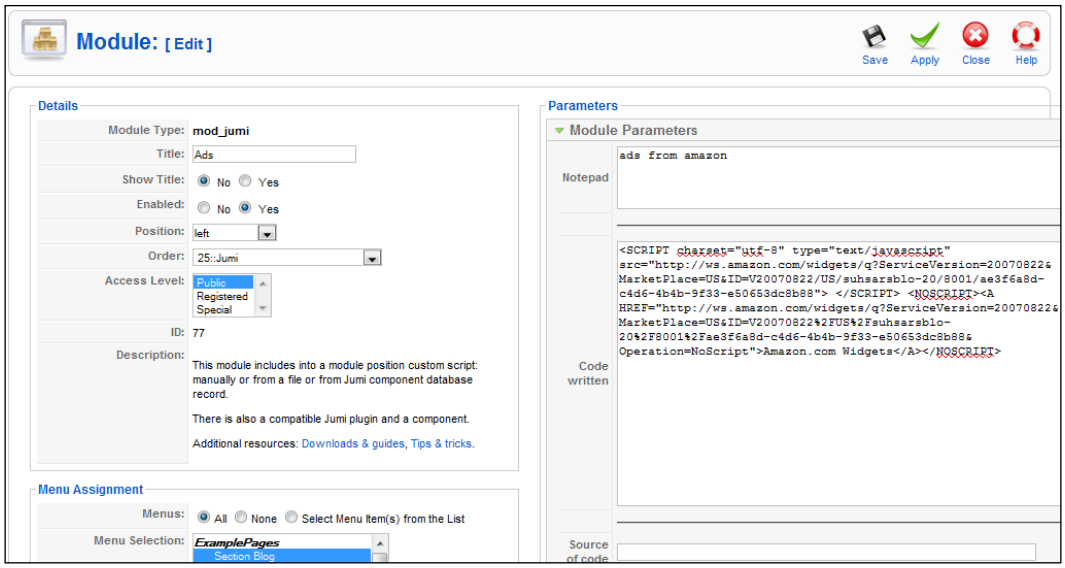
6. You can create your own application. For example, if you want to show a Google Document, then create that document inside Google Docs and use the linking URL. Then click on the **New** icon in the toolbar and fill in the form, as shown in the following screenshot:



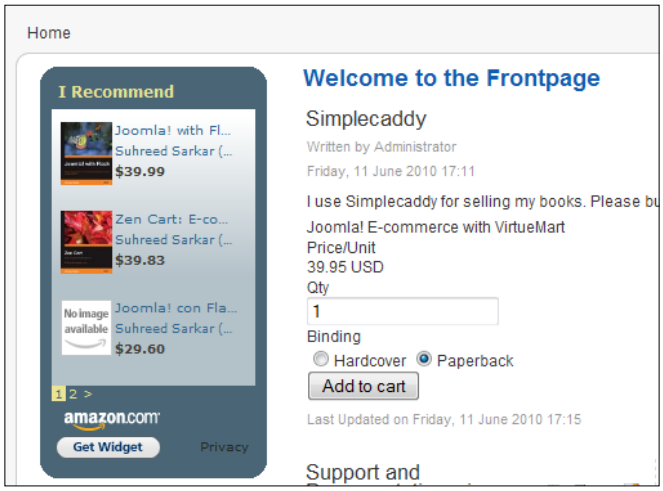
7. Save this code, create a menu link to **Jumi** and select the **Google Doc** application. Then preview it from the site's frontend. The document will look like the following screenshot:



8. You can write any code, including the use of Joomla! API, as the code will run within Joomla! and any PHP environment. Code can also be run from a module. If you want to run any code as a module, click on **Extensions | Module Manager**, and from **Module Manager**, click on **Jumi**. This shows the **Module: [Edit]** screen.



9. Select **No** in the **Show Title** field and **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. Then in **Module Parameters**, type a note in the **Notepad** field and type the code, for example, Amazon advertising code, in the **Code written** box. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar. Preview the site's frontend, and you will see the module with the code results, that is the Amazon ads.



10. As you can see, the code just displays the advertisement as intended. You can also insert such custom code inside content articles. Inside content articles, we can use the `{jumi [path/to/file.php] }` syntax, where `path/to/file.php` will be relative to the Joomla! installation directory.

As you have seen, Jumi allows you to add code inside articles, modules, or in components, and it gives flexibility when developing applications with Joomla!. Now you can use your custom-designed applications or forms inside Joomla!, using the Jumi component, module, or plugin.

Adding the FCK editor to Joomla!

The Joomla! article manager has a default WYSIWYG editor. For most users, this will work fine. However, you may like to use some other editor, such as an FCK editor or JCE editor with Joomla!. In this recipe, I am going to show you how to add FCK editor (now CKeditor) with Joomla!.

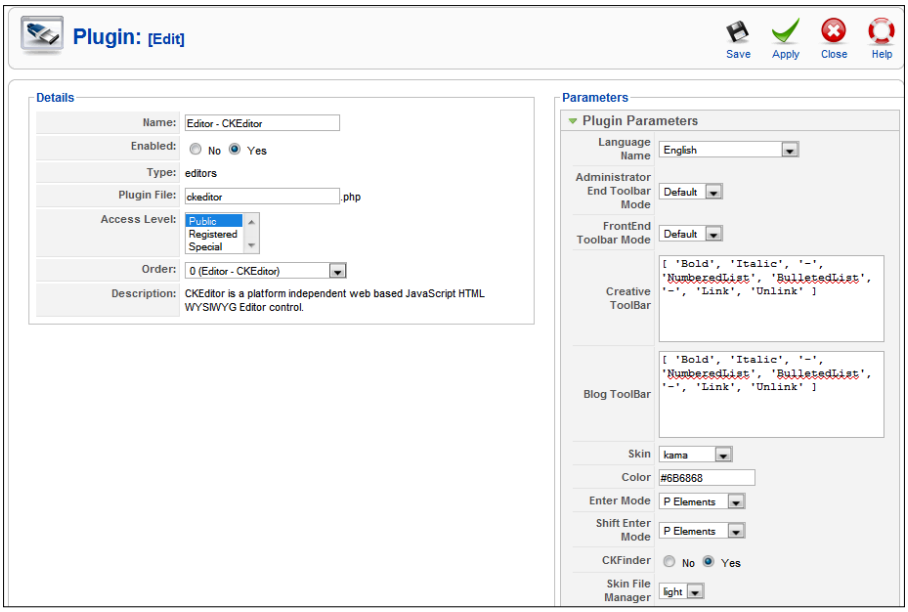
Getting ready...

CKEditor is the extension for integrating FCK editor with Joomla! 1.5. Download this from the `http://www.cmsspace.com/download.html` page and install it from the **Extensions | Install/Uninstall** screen.

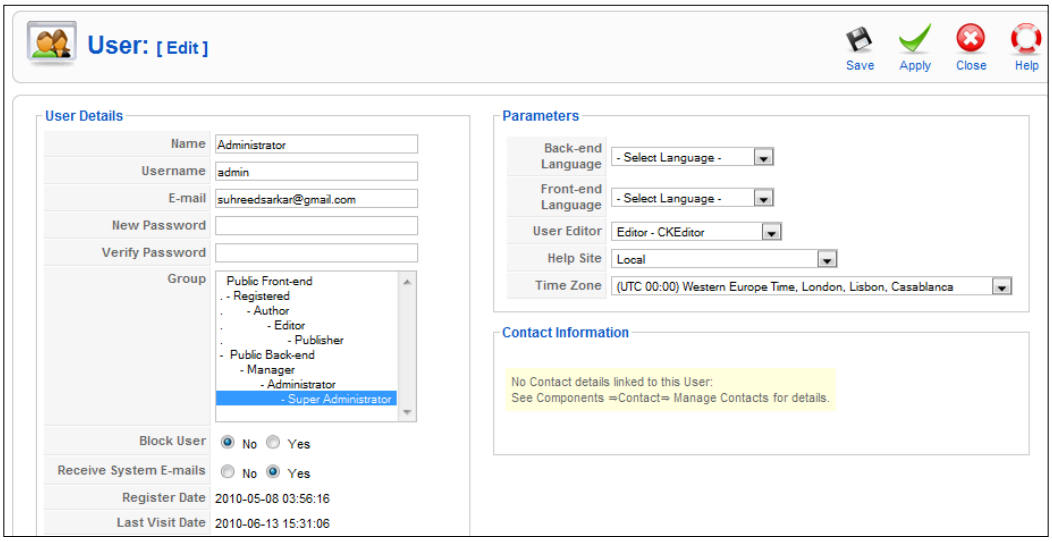
How to do it...

After installing the extension, carry out the following steps:

1. From the Joomla! administration panel, click on **Extensions | Plugin Manager**. This shows the **Plugin Manager** screen, listing all plugins. From the list, click on the **Editor - CKEditor** plugin. This shows the **Plugin: [Edit]** screen.

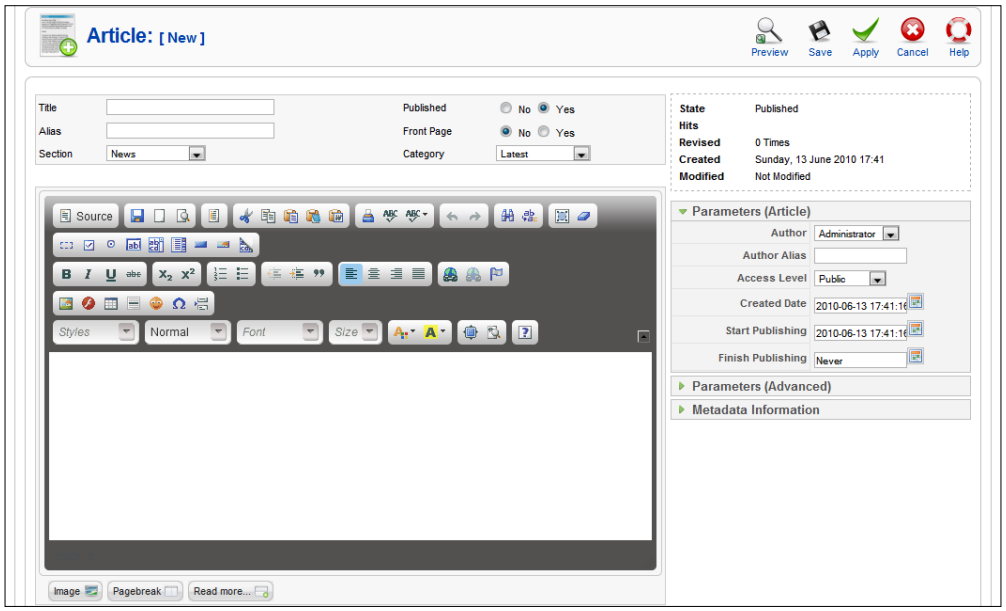


2. Select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field. From the **Plugin Parameters** section, select a language for the editor. Then select **Toolbar mode** for the administrator end and the frontend. In the **Creative Toolbar** and **Blog Toolbar** boxes, you can specify which tools will be available. You can also select the **Skin**, **Color**, **Enter Mode**, and **Skin File Manager** type. When done, click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.
3. Click on **Site | User Manager** and click on the **Administrator** user. This shows the **User: [Edit]** screen.



4. From the **Parameters** section, select **Editor –CKEditor** in the **User Editor** drop-down list. Then click on the **Save** icon in the toolbar.

5. Now click on **Content | Article Manager** and the **New** button to open up the editor.



Note the look and feel of the editor. You can change this by changing the **Skin** and **Color** from the **Plugin Parameters** section.

Index

Symbols

!JoomlaComment
about 99
download link 99
working 100

A

Acajoom News
about 68
configuration options 70
download link 68
ACL
implementing, in frontend and backend 402-404
administrative task
scheduling 421-423
ads
displaying, inside contents 285-287
AdsManager
about 272
download link 272
AG Google Analytics
about 336
download link 336
installing 336
Agora forum
about 135
censoring 152
customizing 149
downloading 143
feeds, aggregating 156
global options 150
ranking system 153
smileys, adding 151
users, banning 153, 154
warnings 155
aiContactSafe
about 108
contact form, displaying as module 113
contact form, placing anywhere in content 115
download link 108
features 112, 113
Ajax contact form, with custom fields
adding, to Joomla! site 107-112
Ajax image slideshow
adding, to Joomla! site 200-202
Ajax RSS Reader
about 32
download link 32
Ajax search
adding, to Joomla! site 364, 365
Ajax Shoutbox
about 140
adding, to Joomla! site 140, 142
download link 140
Akeeba Backup component
about 412
working 416
Akeeba Core Backup
about 394, 407
download link 407
exclusion of file, configuring 410
features 409
unattended backup 410
Akeeba Kickstart restoration process 416
AllVideos Reloaded 206
alphabetical list of contents
creating 222, 223

AlphaContent
about 221, 222
download link 222
features 224
AlphaRegistration
about 394
download link 394
working 398
ARITO JoomSEF component 335, 344
articles
adding, to Joomla! site 13, 14
attachment, adding to 246-248
article slideshow
adding, to Joomla! frontend 22-24
attachment
adding, to articles 246-248
attachment plugin
about 246
download link 246
features 249
automatic tweeting
adding 59
automatic updates
sending, to subscribers 59-62
AutoTweet content plugin
about 58
configuring 58, 59
AutoTweet NG extension
about 54
configuring 57, 58
download link 54

B

banner ads
improving, on Joomla! site 270-272
Better Preview plugin
about 418
download link 418
blog
adding, to Joomla! site 8-12
booking system
adding, for events 83-89

C

Camp26 Automatic Slide Menu
about 313
download link 313
Captcha
about 399
download link 399
using, for contact and password reset forms 399, 400
using, on user registration form 394-397
working 401
categories
adding, to Joomla! site 13, 14
ccNewsletter
about 50, 63
download link 63
chat service
adding, to Joomla! site 135-139
CKEditor
about 432
download link 432
classified ads
displaying, on Joomla! site 272-283
commenting
adding, to Joomla! contents 99-103
Community Builder
about 162
download link 162
contact us form, Joomla! site
extending 103-107
content sharing 49
content slider
adding, on site front page 16, 17
Content Slider Module 16
Content Templater
about 322
download link 322
installing 322
custom code
adding, in Joomla! contents 427-431
custom icons
using, for control panel 423-426
Custom Quick Icons extension
about 424
download link 424

D

database application
adding, without coding 116-130
directories 221
DOCMan 380
DOCMan 1.4
configuring 240-242
documents, adding to uploaded filed 243
features 239
links, inserting to uploaded documents 244, 245
multiple files, uploading 242
thumbnails, generating automatically 244
document repository
building 233-239
drop-down menu
adding, to Joomla! site 300, 301
dynamic photo gallery
about 186
adding, to Joomla! site 186-192
building 186-192

E

Embed PDF plugin
about 40
download link 40
event calendar
adding, to Joomla! site 72-77
EventList 380
Export Content extension
about 374
download link 374
features 374, 378
working 378
Expose photo gallery
about 194
download link 194
Extended Menu module
about 308
download link 308
external website
viewing, in Lightbox 325-327
eXtplorer
about 360
download link 360
installing 360

F

Fabrik component
about 116
calendar visualization, adding 132-134
download link 116
features 130
filtering, adding 131, 132
FCK editor
adding, for Joomla! 432-434
files
browsing, on Joomla! host 360, 361
managing, on Joomla! host 360, 361
FishEye menu
about 302
adding, to Joomla! site 301-303
download link 302
Flash menu
about 303
adding, to Joomla! site 303-306
download link 303
Flash photo gallery
adding, to Joomla! site 193-199
FOLLOW ME ON badge
adding, to Joomla! site 52, 53
forum
adding, to Joomla! site 143-149

G

GCalendar extension
about 79
download link 79
Google AdSense
about 284
Phoca Google AdSense Easy Module 284
Google Analytics
adding, to site 336-343
Google calendar
about 78
displaying, on Joomla! site 78-83
GoogleDocs Plugin
about 37
download link 37
Google documents
about 37
embedding, in Joomla! contents 37-39

Google Map
about 25
adding, in articles 26, 27
Google Maps plugin
about 29
download link 26
features 28
GTranslate
about 259
download link 259
GTranslate component 251
guestbook
adding, Joomla! site 92-95

H

Hot newsflash module
about 19
displaying, on frontend 19-22

I

image menu
about 311
adding, to Joomla! site 311, 312

J

JCron Scheduler
about 421
download link 421
JEvents
about 72
download link 72
JFusion component
about 374, 387
download link 387
features 387, 392
working 392
Joom!Fish
about 262
download link 262
features 268
Joomla!
advertisement system 269
banner advertising 269
FCK editor, adding 432-434
features 251, 359
phpBB, integrating with 387-391
Update Manager 361
updating automatically 361, 362
site management 335
Joomla! 1.0
migrating, to Joomla! 1.5 379-382
Joomla! 1.0.x 374
Joomla! component
about 83
download 83
Joomla! contents
commenting, adding to 99-103
custom code, adding 427-431
tags, adding 366-369
tabs and slides, using 331-334
Joomla! control panel 418
Joomla! host
files, browsing 360, 361
files, managing 360, 361
Joomla! site
content, translating 259-261
content, translating to desired language 262-267
Google Analytics, adding 336-343
ACL, implementing in frontend and backend 402-404
administrative task, scheduling 421-423
ads, displaying inside contents 285-287
Ajax contact form, with custom fields, adding 107-112
Ajax image slideshow, adding 200-202
Ajax search, adding 364, 365
Ajax Shoutbox, adding 140, 142
alphabetical list of contents, creating 222, 223
articles, adding 13, 14
article slideshow, adding to frontend 22-24
banner ads, improving 270-272
blog, adding 8, 9, 10, 12
booking system, adding 83-89
Captcha, using for contact and password reset forms 399, 400
Captcha, using on user registration form 394-397
categories, adding 13, 14
chat service, adding 135-139
classified ads, displaying 272-283

cloning 412-416
contact us form, extending 103-107
content sharing 49
content slider, adding on front page 16, 17
custom icons, using for control panel 423-426
database application, adding without coding 116-130
document repository, building 233-239
drop-down menu, adding 300, 301
dynamic photo gallery, adding 186-192
event calendar, adding 72-77
featured articles on front page, making sticky 17-19
FishEye menu, adding 301-303
Flash menu, adding 303-306
Flash photo gallery, adding 193-199
FOLLOW ME ON badge, adding 52, 53
forum, adding 143-149
Google AdSense module, using 284, 285
Google calendar, displaying 78-83
Google documents, embedding in content 37-39
Google Map, adding in articles 26, 27
guestbook, adding 92-95
Hot newsflash module, displaying on frontend 19-22
image menu, adding 311, 312
map directory, adding 42-48
MP3 Browser, adding 218, 219
multimedia file, displaying 206-208
multimedia files, ripping 210
multiple sections, adding 13, 14
newsletters, building 68, 70
newsletters, sending to subscribers 63
PDF documents, embedding in articles 40, 41
photo gallery, creating, in article 184-186
players, managing 208, 209
private messaging system, adding 156- 159
project management, adding 166-176
Quick Jump menu, adding 306, 308
restoring 412-416
RSS contents, displaying 29-31
RSS feeds, reading through Ajax 32-34
security settings, auditing 405, 406
selected articles, auto-compiling 59
selected articles, e-mailing to subscribers 59
simple Flash video player, adding 212-217
simple shop, adding 287-298
site backup, creating 407, 408
site content, exporting to another site 374-78
site content, previewing 418-421
site maps, generating 314- 320
SlideShare presentations, displaying 34-36
sliding menu, adding 312, 314
social bookmarking, adding 50, 51
thumbnails, creating in articles 182-184
tree menu, adding 308-310
tweets, sending automatically upon publishing article 54, 56
user profiles, extending with custom fields 162-166
users, importing from CSV file 383-385
videos, displaying from local server 211, 212
Yellow Pages-like directory, building 225-233
language, adding 252, 253
language files, translating 253-258
modules, publishing as tabs 327-330
reusable content templates, creating 322-325
SEF, implementing 343, 344, 345
user statistics, viewing 351-356
visitors activities, watching 356, 357, 358
visitors counter, displaying 349, 350

JoomlaStats
about 352
download link 352
installing 353

Joomla! Tags
about 366
configuring 370
download link 366
related articles, displaying 370, 371

Joomla! Tools Suite (JTS)
about 394, 405
download link 405

Joomla! translations
about 252
download link 252

JoomlaWatch
about 356
download link 356
installing 357

JoomSEF. *See* **SEF**
JoomSEF extensions
managing 346, 347
jPFChat
about 136
download link 136
JUGA 405
JUMI
about 427
download link 427

L

language
adding, to Joomla! site 252, 253
language files
translating, for Joomla! site 253-258
Lightbox
about 325
external website, viewing 325-327
Lightbox+
about 325
download link 325
installing 325
Lof ArticleSlideShows Module 22

M

map directory
adding, in Joomla! 42-48
mavik Thumbnails
about 182
download link 182
meta tags, JoomSEF
managing 349
Migrator component
about 380
download link 380
features 380, 383
installing 380
online documentation 383
working 383
MiniFrontPage 17
modules
publishing as tabs 327-330
MP3 Browser
adding, to Joomla! site 218, 219
MultiAds
about 285
download link 285
installing 286
multimedia file
displaying, in Joomla! articles 206-208
ripping 210
multiple sections
adding, to Joomla! site 13, 14

N

newsletters
building, with Joomla! articles 68, 70
importing/exporting 67
sending, to subscribers 63-66
subscriptions, managing 66, 67
newsletter subscriptions
managing 66, 67
Ninja Simple Icons
about 311
download link 311
noixACL
about 393, 402
download link 402
features 405
working 404

P

Page Peel Banner
about 270
download link 270
PDF documents
embedding, in articles 40, 41
Phoca Gallery
about 187
download link 187
features 193
Phoca Google AdSense Easy Module
about 284
download link 284
installing 284
Phoca Guestbook
about 92
configuring 96-98
download link 92
features 96

guestbook entries, managing 98
PhocaMap component
about 42
download link 42
photo gallery
creating, in Joomla! article 184-186
phpBB
about 387
integrating, with Joomla! 387-391
phpBB-Joomla! integration 387
PixSearch module
about 364
download link 364
private messaging system
about 156
adding, to Joomla! site 156-159
ProjectFork
about 167
download link 167
features 177
global configurations 177
groups, managing 180
languages, managing 179
profiles, managing 177
sections, managing 178
themes, managing 179
project management
adding 166-176

Q

QContacts
about 104
download link 104
QuickContent extension 13
Quick Jump menu
about 306
adding, to Joomla! site 306, 308
download link 306

R

reusable content templates
creating 322-325
RokSlideShow 200
RSS contents
displaying, in Joomla! 29-31
RSS feeds
reading, through Ajax 32-34

S

search-engine friendly *see* **SEF 335**
security settings, Joomla! site
auditing 405, 406
SEF
configuring 346
extensions, managing 346, 347
features 345
implementing, for Joomla! site 343-345
meta tags, managing 349
SEF URLs, managing 348
SEF URLs
managing 348
Sexy Bookmark plugin
about 50
download link 50
sh404SEF
about 344
download link 344
installing 344
Shoutbox 135
sigplus Image Gallery Plus
about 184
download link 184
SimpleCaddy
about 288
download link 288
installing 288
Simple MP3 Bar
about 218
download link 218
simple shop
adding, to site 287-298
Simple Tab and Slider Module
about 327
download link 327
installing 328
Simple Video Flash Player
about 212
adding, to Joomla! site 212-217
download link 212
site backup
creating 407, 408

site content
exporting, to another site 374-378
previewing 418-421
translating, Google translation service used 259-261
translating, to desired language67
site management 335
site maps
about 314
generaring 314-320
Slick RSS module 29
SlideShare plugin
about 34
download link 34
SlideShare presentations
displaying in Joomla! 34-36
sliding menu
about 312
adding, to Joomla! site 312, 314
social bookmarking
adding, to Joomla! site 50, 51
Stalker extension
download link 52
Stalkerextension 52
SuperFish extension
about 300
download link 300

T

tabs and slides
using, in contents 331-334
Tabs & Slides
about 331
download link 331
installing 332
tagging 366
tags
adding, to Joomla! contents 366-369
third-party advertisement extensions 269
thumbnails
creating, in Joomla! articles 182-184
Translation Manager
about 253
download link 254
tree menu
about 308
adding, to Joomla! site 308-310
tweets
sending automatically, upon publishing artciles 54, 56
Twitter 54

U

uddeIM
about 156
downloading 156
Update Manager
about 361
configuring 363
download link 361
parameters, configuring 363
UserPort
about 383
download link 383
features 386
working 386
user profiles
extending, with custom fields 162-166
users
importing, from CSV file 383-385
user statistics, Joomla! site
viewing 351-356

V

Vemod News Mailer extension
about 60
configuring 63
download link 60
Vinaora visitors counter
about 349
download link 349
installing 350
VirtueMart 269
visitors activities, Joomla! site
watching 356-358
visitors counter
displaying, on Joomla! site 349, 350

X

Xmap
about 314
download link 314

Y

Yellow Pages-like directory
building 225-233



Thank you for buying

Joomla! 1.5 Top Extensions Cookbook

About Packt Publishing

Packt, pronounced 'packed', published its first book "*Mastering phpMyAdmin for Effective MySQL Management*" in April 2004 and subsequently continued to specialize in publishing highly focused books on specific technologies and solutions.

Our books and publications share the experiences of your fellow IT professionals in adapting and customizing today's systems, applications, and frameworks. Our solution based books give you the knowledge and power to customize the software and technologies you're using to get the job done. Packt books are more specific and less general than the IT books you have seen in the past. Our unique business model allows us to bring you more focused information, giving you more of what you need to know, and less of what you don't.

Packt is a modern, yet unique publishing company, which focuses on producing quality, cutting-edge books for communities of developers, administrators, and newbies alike. For more information, please visit our website: `www.packtpub.com`.

About Packt Open Source

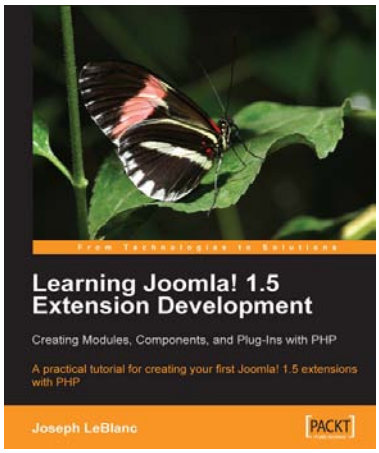
In 2010, Packt launched two new brands, Packt Open Source and Packt Enterprise, in order to continue its focus on specialization. This book is part of the Packt Open Source brand, home to books published on software built around Open Source licences, and offering information to anybody from advanced developers to budding web designers. The Open Source brand also runs Packt's Open Source Royalty Scheme, by which Packt gives a royalty to each Open Source project about whose software a book is sold.

Writing for Packt

We welcome all inquiries from people who are interested in authoring. Book proposals should be sent to author@packtpub.com. If your book idea is still at an early stage and you would like to discuss it first before writing a formal book proposal, contact us; one of our commissioning editors will get in touch with you.

We're not just looking for published authors; if you have strong technical skills but no writing experience, our experienced editors can help you develop a writing career, or simply get some additional reward for your expertise.

[PACKT] open source
community experience distilled
PUBLISHING



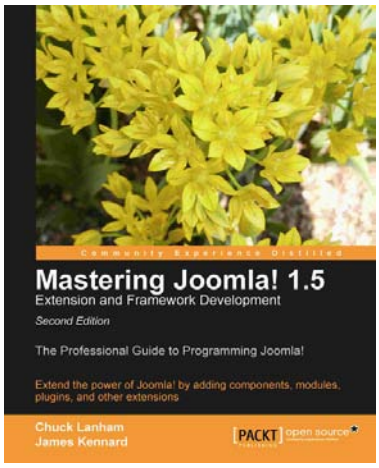
Learning Joomla! 1.5 Extension Development: Creating Modules, Components, and Plugins with PHP

ISBN: 978-1-847191-30-4 Paperback: 176 pages

A practical tutorial for creating your first Joomla! 1.5 extensions with PHP

1. Program your own extensions to Joomla!
2. Create new, self-contained components with both back-end and front-end functionality
3. Create configurable site modules to show information on every page

---



Mastering Joomla! 1.5 Extension and Framework Development Second Edition

ISBN: 978-1-849510-52-3 Paperback: 560 pages

Extend the power of Joomla! by adding components, modules, plugins, and other extensions

1. In-depth guide to programming Joomla! 1.5 Framework
2. Design and build secure and robust components, modules, and plugins
3. Customize the document properties, add multilingual capabilities, and provide an interactive user experience

Please check **www.PacktPub.com** for information on our titles